

# A GEOGRAPHICAL HISTORIE of AFRICA,

*Written in Arabicke and Italian*

by IOHN LEO a More, borne  
in Granáda, and brought up  
in Barbarie.

*Whercin he hath at large described, not onely the qualities, situations, and true distances of the regions, cities, townes, mountaines, rivers, and other places throughout all the north and principall partes of Africa; but also the descents and families of their kings, the causes and euent of their warres, with their manners, customes, religions, and ciuile gouernment, and many other memorable matters: gathered partly out of his owne diligent obseruations, and partly out of the ancient records and Chronicles of the Arabians and Moors.*

Before which, out of the best ancient and moderne writers, is prefixed a generall description of Africa, and also a particular treatise of all the maine lands and Illes vndescribed by *John Leo*.

*And after the same is annexed a relation of the great Princes, and the manifold religions in that part of the world.*

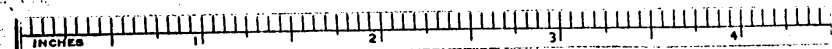
Translated and collected by IOHN PORY, lately  
of Goueuill and Caius College  
in Cambridge.



L O N D O N,

*Jmpensis Georg. Bishop.*

1 6 0 0



TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE  
ble sir ROBERT CECIL Knight, principall  
*Secretarie to her Maiestie, Master of the*  
Court of Wardes and Liueries, and one  
*of her Highnes most Honorable*  
*priuie Counsell.*



O heere the first fruits, or rather the  
tender buddes and blossomes of my la-  
bours. Which least in this their winterly  
sprouting they might perhaps by some  
bitter blasts of censure be frost-nipped,  
I humbly recommend to your Honora-  
ble protection.

Most due they are onely to your selfe,  
being for the greatest part nothing else, but a large illustration  
of certaine southern voiage of the English, already dedicated  
to your Honour. And at this time especially I thought they  
would prooue the more acceptable: in that the Marocan am-  
bassadour (whose Kings dominions are heere most amplie and  
particularly described) hath so lately treated with your Honour  
concerning matters of that estate.

Vouchsafe therefore (right Honorable) according to your  
accustomed humanitie towards learning, to accept of this Geo-  
graphicall historie, in like manner as it pleased your Honour  
not long since most fauourable to take in good part those com-  
mendable indeuours of my reuerend friend M. *Richard Hakluyt*:  
who out of his mature iudgement in these studies, knowing the  
excellencie of this storie aboue all others in the same kinde,  
was the onely man that moued me to translate it.

At London this three and fortieth most  
ioisfull Coronation-day of her  
sacred Maiestie.

1600.

*Your Honors alwaies most*

readie to be commanded

JOHN PORY.



## To the Reader.



*Give me leave (gentle Readers) if not to present unto your knowledge, because some perhaps may aswell be informed as my selfe; yet, to call to your remembrance, some few particulars, concerning this Geographickall Historie, and Iohn Leo the author thereof.*

*Who albeit by birth a More, and by religion for many yeeres a Mahumetan: yet if you consider his Parentage, Witte, Education, Learning,*

*Employments, Trauels, and his conuersion to Christianitie; you shall finde him not altogether unfit to undertake such an enterprize; nor unworthy to be regarded.*

*First therefore his Parentage seemeth not to haue bin ignoble: seeing (as in his second booke himselfe testifieth) an Vncle of his was so Honorable a person, and so excellent an Oratour and Poet; that he was sent as a principall Ambassadour, from the king of Fez, to the king of Tombuto.*

*And whether this our Author were borne at Granada in Spaine, (as it is most likely) or in some part of Africa; certaine it is, that in naturall sharpnes and vivacitie of Wit, he most lively resembled those great and classicall authours, Pomponius Mela, Iustinus Historicus, Columella, Seneca, Quintilian, Orosius, Prudentius, Martial, Iuuenal, Auicen, &c. reputed all for Spanish writers; as likewise Terentius Afer, Tertullian, Saint Augustine, Victor, Optatus, &c. known to be writers of Africa. But amongst great varietie which are to be found in the processe of this notable discourse, I will heere lay before your view one onely patterne of his surpassing wit. In his second booke therefore, if you peruse the description of Mount Tenuenes, you shall there finde the learned and sweete Arabian verses of Iohn Leo, not being then fully sixteene yeeres of age, so highly esteemed by the Prince of the same mountaine, that in recompence thereof, after bountifull entertainment, he dismissed him with gifts of great value.*

*Neither wanted he the best Education that all Barbarie could afford. For being euen from his tender yeeres trained up at the Vniuersitie of Fez, in Grammar, Poetrie, Rhetorick, Philosophie, Historie, Cabala, Astronomie, and other ingenuous sciences, and hauing so great acquaintance and conuersation in the kings court: how could he chooseth but prooue in his kinde a most accomplished and absolute man? So as I may iustly say (if the comparison be tolerable) that as Moses was learned in all the wisdoms of the Egyptians; so likewise was Leo, in that of the Arabians and Mores.*

*And that he was not meanely, but extraordinarily learned; let me keepe silence, that the admirable fruits of his rare Learning, and this Geographickall Historie among the rest may beare record. Besides which, he wrote an Arabian Grammar,*

## To the Reader.

*Grammar, highly commended by a great Linguist of Italie, who had the sight and examination thereof; as likewise a booke of the liues of the Arabian Philosophers; and a discourse of the religion of Mahumet; with diuers excellent Poems, and other monuments of his industrie, which are not come to light.*

*Now as concerning his Employments, were they not such as might well be seeme a man of good worth? For (to omit how many courts and camps of princes he had frequented) did not he, as himselfe in his third booke witnesseth, personally serue king Mahumet of Fez in his wars against Arzilla? And was he not at another time, as appeereth out of his second Booke, in seruice and honorable place vnder the same king of Fez, and sent ambassadour by him to the king of Maroco? Yea, how often in regard of his singular knowledge and iudgement in the lawes of those countries, was he appointed, and sometimes constrained at diuers strange cities and townes through which he trauelled, to become a iudge and arbiter in matters of greatest moment?*

*Moreover as touching his exceeding great Trauels, had he not at the first bene a More and a Mahumetan in religion, and most skilfull in the languages and customes of the Arabians and Africans, and for the most part trauelled in Carouans, or vnder the authoritie, safe conduct, and commendation of great princes: I maruell much how euer he should haue escaped so manie thousands of imminent dangers. And (all the former notwithstanding) I maruell much more how euer he escaped them. For how many desolate cold mountaines, and huge drie, and barren deserts passed he? How often was he in hazard to haue bene captined, or to haue had his throte cut by the prouling Arabians, and wilde Mores? And how hardly manie times escaped he the Lyons greedie mouth, and the deuouring iawes of the Crocodile? But if you will needes haue a brieue iournall of his trauels: you may see in the end of his eight booke, what he writeth for himselfe. Wherefore (saith he) if it shall please God to vouchsafe me longer life, I purpose to describe all the regions of Asia which I haue trauelled: to wit, Arabia Deserta, Arabia Petrea, Arabia Felix, the Asian part of Egypt, Armenia, and some part of Tartaria; all which countries I sawe and passed through in the time of my youth. Likewise I will describe my last voiajes from Constantinople to Egypt, and from thence vnto Italy, &c. Besides all which places he had also bene at Tauris in Persia: and of his owne countrey, and other African regions adioining and remote, he was so diligent a traeller; that there was no kingdome, province, signorie, or citie; nor scarceelie any towne, village, mountaine, valley, riuer, or Forrest, &c. which he left vnvisited. And so much the more credite and commendation deserueth this worthy Historie of his; in that it is (except the antiquities, and certaine other incidents) nothing else but a large Itinerarium or Iournal of his African voiajes: neither describeth he almost any one particular place, where himselfe had not sometime bene an eie-witnes.*

*But, not to forget His conuersion to Christianitie, amidst all these his busie and dangerous trauels, it pleased the diuine providence, for the discouery and manifestation of Gods wonderfull works, and of his dreadfull and iust iudgements performed*

## To the Reader.

performed in Africa (which before the time of Iohn Leo, were either utterly concealed, or vnperfectly and fabulouſly reported both by ancient and late writers) to deliuer this author of ours, and this present Geographicall Historie, into the hands of certaine Italian Pirates, about the isle of Gerbi, situate in the gulfe of Capes, betweene the cities of Tunis and Tripolis in Barbarie. Being thus taken, the Pirates presented him and his Booke vnto Pope Leo the tenth: who esteeming of him as of a most rich and inualluable prize, greatly reioiced at his arriuall, and gaue him most kinde entertainment and liberall maintenance, till such time as he had woone him to be baptized in the name of Christ, and to be called Iohn Leo, after the Popes owne name. And so during his abode in Italy, learning the Italian toong, he translated this booke thereinto, being before written in Arabick. Thus much of Iohn Leo.

Now let vs acquaint you with the Historie it selfe. First therefore from so woorthy an author, how could an historie proceed but of speciall woorth and consequence? For prooffe whereof, I appeale vnto the translations thereof into Latine, Italian, Spanish, French, English, and (if I be not deceiued) into some other languages; which argue a generall approbation of the same. I appeale also to the grand and most iudiciall Cosmographer \* Master Iohn Baptista Ramusius, sometime Secretarie to the state of Venice, who in the Preface to his first volume of voiajes, so highly commendeth it to learned Fracastoro, and placeth it euery word in the very forefront of his discourses, as the principal & most praise-woorthy of the all. And were renowned Ortelius alieue, I would vnder correction report me to him; whether his map of Barbarie and Biledulgerid, as also in his last Additament that of the kingdomes of Maroco and Fez, were not particularly and from point to point framed out of this present relation, which he also in two places at the least preferreth farre before all other histories written of Africa. But to leaue the testimonies of others, and to come neerer to the matter it selfe; like as our prime and peerelesse English Antiquarie master William Camden in his learned Britannia, hath exactly described England, Scotland, Ireland, and the isles adiacent (the which by Leander for Italie, by Damianus a Goetz briefly for Spaine, by Belforest for France, by Munster for vpper Germanie, by Guiccardini for the Netherlandes, and by others for other countries hath beene performed) so likewise this our author Iohn Leo in the historie ensuing hath so largely, particularly, and methodically deciphered the countries of Barbarie, Numidia, Libya, The land of Negros, and the hisher part of Egypt, as (I take it) neuer any writer either before or since his time hath done. For if you shall thoroughly consider him, what kingdome, prouince, citie, towne, village, mountaine, vallie, riuer; yea, what temple, college, hospitall, bath-stone, mine; or what other memorable matter doth he omit? So doth he most iudicially describe the temperature of the climate, and the nature of the soile, as also the dispositions, manners, rites, customes, and most ancient pedigrees of the inhabitants, together with the alterations of religion and estate, the conquests and ouerthrowes of the Romaines, Goths, and Arabians, and other things (by the way) right woorthie the obseruation. So that the

\* Read pag. 58.  
of places vnder-  
scribed by Iohn  
Leo.

## To the Reader.

Africans may iustly say to him, and the English to master Camden, as the prince of Roman oratours did vnto Marcus Varro the learnedst of his nation. Nos in patria nostra peregrinantes errantesque tanquam hospites, tui libri quasi domum deduxerunt, vt possemus aliquando, qui & vbi essemus, agnoscere. Tu ætatem patriæ, tu descriptiones temporum, tu sacrorum iura, tu domesticam, tu bellicam disciplinam, tu fedem regionum & locorum, &c. Which may thus be rudely Englished. Wandring vp and downe like Pilgrimes in our owne native soile, thy bookes haue as it were led vs the right way home; that we might at length acknowledge both who and where we are. Thou hast reuealed the antiquitie of our nation, the order of times, the rites of our religion, our manner of gouernment both in peace and warre, yea thou hast described the situations of countries and places, &c.

Now as concerning the additions before and after this Geographicall Historie; hauing had some spare-houers since it came first vnder the presse; I thought good (both for the Readers satisfaction, and that Iohn Leo might not appeere too solitarie vpon the stage) to bestowe a part of them in collecting and digesting the same. The chiefe scope of this my enterprize is, to make a brieſe and cursorie description of all those maine lands and isles of Africa, which mine author in his nine bookes hath omitted. For he in very deed leaueth vntouched all those parts of the African continent which lie to the south of the fiftene kingdomes of Negros, and to the east of Nilus. For the manifestation whereof, I haue (as truly as I could coniecture) in the mappe adioined to this booke, caused a list or border of small prickles to be engraued; which running westward from the mouth of Nilus to The streights of Gibraltar, and from thence southward to the coast of Guinie, and then eastward to the banks of Nilus, and so northward to the place where it began; doth with aduantage include all places treated of by Leo, and excludeth the residue which by way of Preface we haue described before the beginning of his African historie. Likewise at the latter end I haue put downe certaine relations of the great Princes of Africa, and of the Christian, Iewish, Mahumetan, and Gentilish religions there professed. The Princes of greatest account either inhabiting or at least possessing large territories there, are first The grand Neguz or Christian Emperour of Abassia or the higher Ethiopia, commonly called Presbyter Iohn, or (as Zagazabo his owne ambassadour would haue him) Pretious Iohn; but because throughout all the Ethiopick relation of Francis Aluarez, being the best that euer was written of those parts, he is continually named Prete Ianni, in imitation of him I also most commonly call him by that name. And so likewise though Zagazabo (for the more magnificent reputation of his prince) will haue his dominions called Ethiopia; yet with the consent of some approoued authors, and also to distinguish the country of this emperour from many other regions situate both in the higher Ethiopia, and in the lower; I haue set it downe in my mappe, and in my discourses do most vsually speake thereof vnder the name of Abassia. The other great Princes intreated of in the said relations, are The K. of Spaine, The Turkish Emperour, The \* Xarifo otherwise called The Miramonin, or the king of

Tull. Acad.  
quælibet.

The varietie of  
this emperours  
names read in  
a marginall note  
Pag. 12. of places  
vndercribed by  
Iohn Leo.

\* Or Xerifo, or  
Scrifo.

Maroco

## To the Reader.

Maroco Sus and Fez, and the emperor of Monomotapa.

*My methode in the discourse before Leo is, after a generall preface of Africa, to begin at the Red sea, where Leo endeth; and thence (as well in the description of the maine lands, as of the isles by him vntouched) to proceed on southerly to the cape of Buena esperança; from which cape we returne toward the north, describing all along the westerne countries and isles of Africa, till we haue brought our whole descriptions to an end upon the most southwesterly parts of Barbarie, where our author Iohn Leo beginneth his.*

Et quoniam (as one saith) turpe non est, per quos profeceris, agnoscere: my principall authors out of whom I haue gathered this store, are, of the ancienter note, Ptolemey, Strabo, Plinie, Diodorus Siculus, &c. and amongst later writers, I haue helped my selfe out of sundrie discourses in the first Italian volume of Baptista Ramusio, as likewise out of Iohn Barros, Castanneda, Ortelius, Oforius de reb. gest. Eman. Matthew Dresserus, Quadus, Isolario del mundo, Iohn Huighen van Linschoten, & out of the Hollanders late voiages to the east Indies, and to San Tomé: but I am much more beholding to the history of Philippo Pigafetta, to the Ethiopick relations of Francis Aluarez, & of Damianus a Gocz, and beyond all comparison (both for matter and method) most of all, to the learned Astronomer and Geographer Antonius Maginus of Padua, and to the vniuersall relations written in Italian by G. B. B.

And heere, before I surcease, I must admonish the Reader of certaine faults escaped in some copies: as namely in the description of the isles in the Barbarian bay, Açotatado, for Açotado; in a marginall note ouer against the description of Tombuto in the seuenth booke of Iohn Leo, Money for Gold; in the relation of the Christianitie of Egypt, Hypostasius twise together, in stead of Hypostasies; and in the discourse of the Christianitie of Congo,

Paulo Aquitino, for Panfo Aquitimo. Other literall faults (if there be any) will not be hard for the Reader himselfe to amend.

## A generall description of all Africa, together with a comparison of the ancient and new

ith- Africa other-  
Li- wise called Li-  
the bya.

ve-  
ed, The greater  
nai- part of Africa  
ous vnknownen in  
former ages.

put  
and  
sts,  
pati-  
ere

on-  
to- When Africa  
es it was sailed  
round about.  
ear- \* And since  
the also by the En-  
lish, French,  
and Dutch.

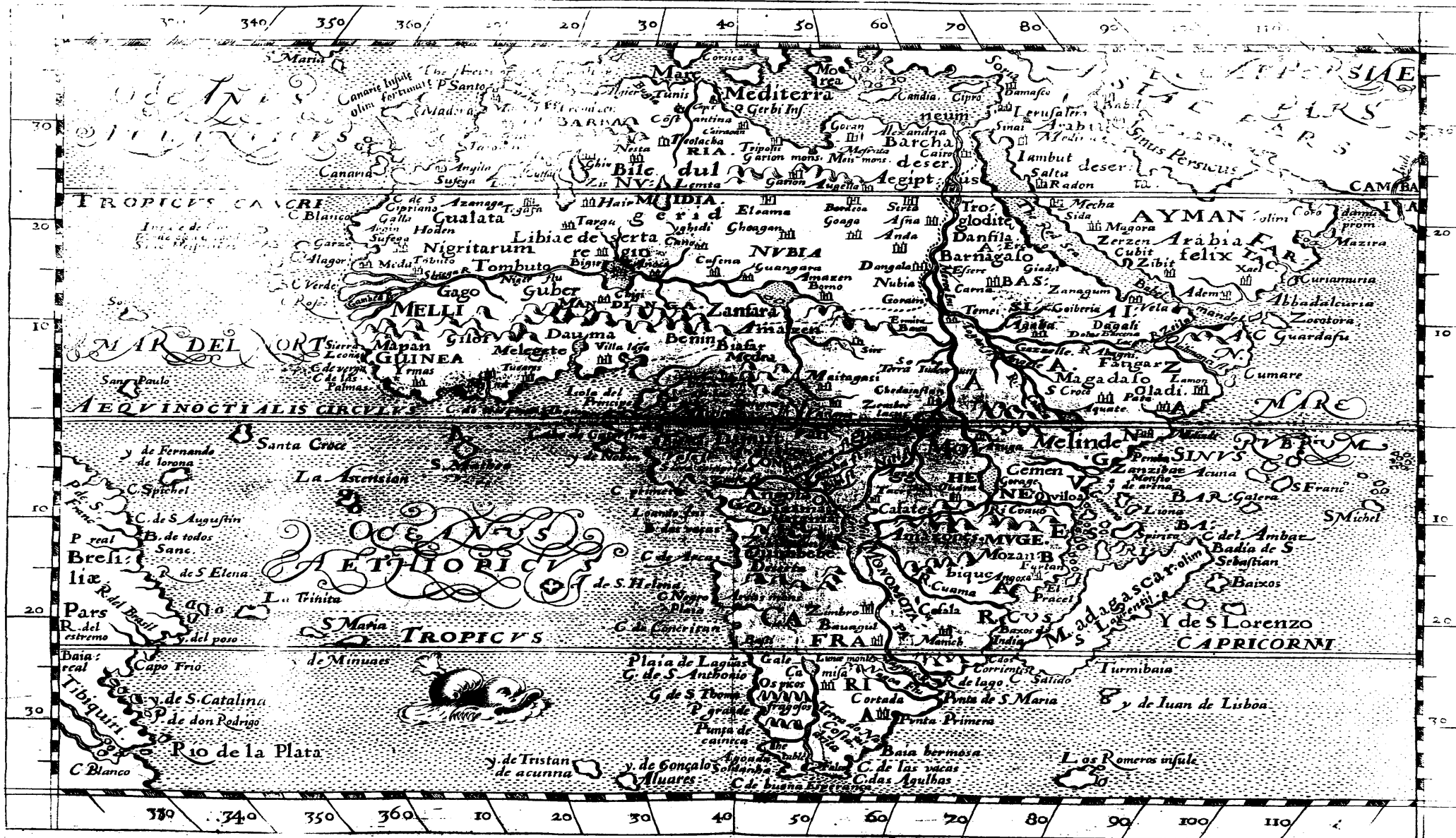
ape \* Bartholomew  
a in Dias doubled  
om the cape before;  
the but returned  
fearefully with-  
out proceeding  
any farther.

iauc  
or or The etymologie  
is a or derivation  
of this worde  
Africa.

n to  
Afri-  
the  
iauc  
rom  
bya,  
the  
Al-  
Why Africa  
was called Li-  
bya.

small and narrow necke and (pausing betwene the Mediterranean and the gulfes of Arabia, and the red sea) conioined to Asia, and in extension of  
ground

# A F R I C A



## To the Reader.

Maroco Sus and Fez, and the emperor of Monomotapa.

My methode in the discourse before Leo is, after a generall prefate of Africa, to begin at the Red sea, where Leo endeth; and thence (as well in the descripti-

on  
the  
de)  
br  
Ba

my  
not  
wr  
lun  
teli  
mu  
ron  
stor  
of I  
mo  
Pae

esc  
bay  
of

## A generall description of all Africa, together with a comparison of the ancient and new names of all the principall countries and prouinces therein.



That part of inhabited lande extending southward, which we call Africa, and the Greeks Libya, is one of the three generall parts of the world known vnto our ancestors; which in very deed was not throughly by them discovered, both because the Inlands could not be trauielled in regard of huge deserts full of dangerous sands, which being driuen with the winde, put trauiailers in extreme hazard of their lines; and

*Africa otherwise called Libya.*

*The greater part of Africa vnknown in former ages.*

also by reason of the long and perilous nauigation vpon the African coasts, for which cause it was by very few of ancient times compassed by nauigation, much lesse searched or intirely known. Of which few, the principall were *Hanno* a Carthaginian captaine sent by the gouernours of that commonweith for discouerie of the saide lande, and one *Eudoxus* that fled from *Ptolemaeus Lathyrus*, the king of Alexandria. Howbeit in these latter times it hath bene often \* by the Portugals sailed round about, and diligently searched, especially along the shore, euen from the streights of Gibraltar to the enterance of the red sea: \* but the first Portugall that euer doubled the cape of Buena esperança, and coasted the south and southeast parts of Africa in former times vnknowne, was *Vasco da Gama*, in the yeere 1497. who from hence sailed to Calicut in the east Indies, to the vnspokeable gaine of the Portugals.

*When Africa was sailed round about.*

*\* And since also by the English, French, and Dutch.*

*\* Bartholomew Dias doubled the cape before; but returned fearefully without proceeding any farther.*

To omit *John Leo* his etymologies of this name Africa; *Festus* will haue it to be deriued from the Greeke worde *geinn*, which signifieth horror or colde, and from *z* the particle priuatiue, as who shoulde say, Africa is a place free from all horror and extremitie of colde, because it lieth open to the heauens, and is sandie, drie, and desert. Others say that it is called *Africa quasi Aprica*, that is exposed and subiect to the scorching beames of the sunne, the most part thereof lying betweene the Tropicks. *Iosephus* wil haue it so called from *Afer* one of the posteritie of *Abraham*, and others from *Afer* sonne to *Hercules* of Libya. But it was by the Greekes called Libya, because it was in old time conquered by *Libs* the king of Mauritania. In the holie Scriptures it is called Chamefis, by the Arabians and Ethiopians Alkebulam, and by the Indians Belecath.

*The etymologie or derivation of this worde Africa.*

*Why Africa was called Libya.*

In situation & shape this land of Africa is almost an isle, being by a very small and narrow neckland (passing betweene the Meditteran sea and the gulse of Arabia, ~~also the red sea~~) conioined to Asia, and in extension of

*The situation and shape of Africa.*



A comparison  
betwene Afri-  
ca and Europe.

The causes why  
Africa is so  
spendly inha-  
bited.

Sandie seas in  
Africa.

The position of  
Africa, accord-  
ing to the hea-  
vens.

ground being almost twice as bigge as Europe, albeit for inhabitants it is not halfe so populous. Wherefore though in longitude from west to east Africa be shorter then Europe in some places, yet extendeth it so farre vnto the south, that Europe in that respect is nothing comparable vnto it: for Africa containeth almost seuentie degrees in latitude, whereas Europe stretcheth but siue and thirtie degrees: moreover Africa is more vniforme and spacious; but Europe is of a more distracted and manifolde shape, being in sundry places dispersed & restrained by the sea. Howbeit notwithstanding Africa hath farre greater extension of ground then Europe, yet is it not so populous, nor so commodious to inhabite: for the lande of Africa is in many places vnhabitable; the principall causes whereof are, the scarcitie of water, the barrennes of the soile, being either couered with vnprofitable sande, dust, or ashes, or else being subiect to extreme heate of the sunne: also there are certaine dangerous heapes of sande, which being raised by the winde, are driuen vp and downe like the waues of a tempestuous sea: In briefe, there are such abundance of venomous and hurtfull creatures, that for feare of them the land in some places can very hardly, & in others by no meanes be manured or inhabited, be it neuer so fruitfull. Wherefore in diuers parts this region lieth waste and vnpeopled: howbeit where it is inhabited, it is exceeding fertile, and that especially in the north parts thereof, lying ouer against Europe, where (according to the report of many historiographers, and cosmographers) it was in ancient times abundantly furnished with inhabitants: so likewise all the westerne coast betwene Cabo de buena esperanza, and Cabo Negro situate about nineteene degrees of southerly latitude, containeth many plaines, hills, vallies, and other places most fruitfull and pleasant, it being there a continuall spring, and elsewhere also it is verie fertile, as it shall be declared more at large in the particular descriptions of each region.

The Equinoctiall circle doth in a manner diuide Africa in the verie midst thereof; from whence it stretcheth not onely to each tropique, but also twelue degrees almost beyond them both: wherefore the greater part is comprized betwene the saide Tropiques vnder the Torrid or burnt Zone, for which onely cause the ancient writers supposed it to be vnhabitable and desert in so many places: which indeed is much rather to be ascribed to the waste wilderness, the barren and sandie soile, and the scarcitie of waters and fountaines. It comprehendeth therefore fully and perfectly the three first northerly climates, and so many and the like climates southerly for it is situate betwene the eleuenth north Parallele, and the eleuenth Antiparallele, or south Parallele, both which are equally distant from the Equinoctiall on either side. But about either of the foresaid extremes, the longest day consisteth of fower teene howers and one fourth part, and about the midst, of twelue howers exactly. Likewise as touching the longitude, Africa stretcheth from the Meridian vnder fower degrees to the Meridian vnder fower score and two degrees of longitude, to wit, from Cabo Roxo, or the

Red

Red cape on the west, to Cape Guardafu on the east side, betwene which two capes is the greatest bredth of Africa.

Africa hath too narrow boundes allotted vnto it by *John Leo* and certain others, for they disioine the greater part of Egypt and all Ethiopia therefrom. Wherefore it is more conuenient in this behalfe to follow *Ptolemy*, and the late writers, limiting the same on the north with the Mediterranean sea, and the streights of Gibraltar; on the east with the Red sea or the Arabian gulf, and the small neckland of Asia passing betwene the Mediterranean sea, and the said gulf; on the south (at the cape of Buena esperanza, where it endeth in forme of a wedge) with the maine Ocean partly called the Ethiopian sea, as being neere vnto the land of Ethiopia; and on the west, from the hither side of the Equinoctiall line, with the Atlantike Ocean, (called by *Ptolemy* *Mare Occiduum*, by *Dionysius* *Hesperium*, and part thereof by the Spaniards *Mar del Norte*) but beyond the Equinoctiall line it is bounded westward with the Ethiopian sea.

Africa hath very many and most exceeding great mountaines, the principal wherof is Mount Atlas, whose tops of incredible height rising out of the midst of sandy desertes, exalt themselves aboue the cloudes. This mountaine beginneth westward at that place, where it distinguisheth the Ocean by the name of Atlanticus: from whence by a perpetuall ridge, after many windings and turnings, it extendeth east toward the confines of Egypt: moreover it is in most places rounde, hard to ascend, craggie, steepe, impassable, cold, barren, shadie, and euery where full of woods and fountaines, with cloudes alwaies houering about the tops thereof, being torlorn and desolate toward the Ocean, but ouer against\* Africa minor, most fertile, and abounding with plentie of corne and of thick woods which are clad with a kinde of mosse no whit inferior to silke.

The tops of this mountaine are couered with deepe snowes euen in the midst of sommer: and sometimes when the North winds blow any thing sharpe, the snow falleth in such abundance, that it hideth the trees growing vpon the sides therof, and is deadly both to man and beast.

Moreover the fountaines which are here found, are so extreame cold in the hottest of sommer, as if a man should dip his hand therein but for a short space, it would loose both life, sence, and motion. Besides Mount Atlas those mountaines likewise are very famous, which being situate on the south part of Africa, are called by the Portugales Os Picos fragosos: for by reason of their surpassing height and craggie cliffes it is impossible to skale them, and they are bare, torlorn, and destitute of all reliefe.

Likewise the cape commonly called Sierra Leonais as it were framed out of an exceeding high mountaine, which may be kenne a mightie distance off: the top of this mountaine is continuallie ouershadowed with cloudes, which often send forth dreadfull thunder and lightening: whereupon some thinke it to haue bin called by *Ptolemy*, and by *Hanno* of Carthage, The chariot of the gods.

The boundes of  
Africa.

The mountaines  
of Africa.  
Mount Atlas.

\* The provin-  
ces of Temizen,  
Ager, Bugia,  
Constantina,  
and Tunis.

Extreme cold  
fountaines.

Mountaines  
called Os Picos  
fragosos: that is  
to say, sharpe  
pointed. *John*  
*Barros*: Dec. 1.  
lib. 8. cap. 4.

Luna montes.

The mountaines of the moone also, known of old, and situate vnder the Tropique of Capricorne, being very high and craggie, are inhabited by barbarous and sauage people, nere vnto which are valles of such exceeding depth, as if they reached to the center of the earth. Likewise there are certain mountaines in Angola called Cabambe containing most rich siluer-mines, &c.

The lake of Zembre, which by some others is placed vnder the Equinoctiall.

Also in Africa are certaine mightie lakes, which for their extension seem rather to be seas, the principal wherof called by some Zembre, being situate by a number of huge mountaines, and distant from the Equinoctialeleuen or twelue degrees to the south, containeth about fise hundred leagues in compasse, out of which lake doe spring the famous riuers of Nilus, Zaire, and Cuama, and some affirme very strange sea-monsters to be therein.

The riuers of Africa.

Africa likewise hath many exceeding great riuers, as namely Nilus, Niger, Senaga, Gambia, Zaire, Abagni, Tagassi, Coluez, Coauo, Cuama, and Maniche, or Rio del spirito santo, all which are in a manner of the same qualitie and disposition; for with their yeerlie inundations they doe most wonderfullie fatten and enrich the soile of the territories adioyning. Nilus the most famous riuier of the world, diuiding Egypt in the midst, and with his ouerflowes making it most fruitfull, continueth in his yeerely increase fortie daies, and forty daies in decrease; to wit, from the seuenteenth of Iune to the sixt of October: and this riuier after a mightie long course through Ethiopia and Egypt, dischargeth his streames into the Mediterran sea. The riuier of Niger, running through the land of Negros, called of old (as Solinus supposed) by the naturall inhabitants Astabus, and (according to Marmolius) Hued Nijar in the Arabian tounge, is now esteemed by Paulus Iouius to be Gambia, and by Cadamosta the riuier of Senaga; but that both of them are deceiued, it is euident out of the description of Sanutus, who putteth downe the two foresaid riuers seuerallie, and thinketh Niger to be that which is now called Rio grande. This riuier taketh his beginning, as some thinke, out of a certain desert to the east, called Seu, or springeth rather out of a lake, and after a long race, falleth at length into the western Ocean. It increaseth also, for the space of fortie daies like Nilus, and is for so long space decreasing about the verie same time; by which inundation it bringeth such fruitfulness vnto all the land of Negros (certain mountaines onely excepted) as no place in the world can be imagined more fertile. Senaga or Canaga, a most notable riuier, called, as some thinke, Baratis by Ptolemy, and for the length therof, and manifold strange creatures therein contained, comparable to Nilus, feuereth by his winding chanel the barren and naked soile, from the Greene and fruitfull. Moreouer it maketh a separation between nations of sundrie colours: for the people on this side are of a dead ashen-colour, leane, and of a small stature; but on the farther side they are exceeding blacke, of tall and manly stature, and very well proportioned: howbeit nere vnto the riuier on either side, they are of a meane colour, complexion, and stature betweene both the aboue mentioned. It falleth into

Nilus.

Niger.

into the sea by two mouthes, the principall whereof is about a mile broad, vp into the which the sea entrench almost 60. miles. It springeth (according to John Barros) out of two lakes (the greater whereof is now called the lake of Gaoga, but heretofore by Ptolemy *Chelonide paludes*, and the lesser Ptolemy calleth *Nubae palus*) as also out of a riuier named by Ptolemy Ghir. This riuier of Senaga hath great variety of strange fishes, and other creatures that liue in the water, as namely, sea-horses, crocodiles, winged serpents, and such like: nere vnto it also are great store of Elephants, wilde bores, lions, and leopards. Gambia or Gambea a very great riuier, lying betweene Senaga and Niger, and esteemed by Sanutus to be that which Ptolemy called Stachir, fetcheth his originall from the lake of Libya, and from the fountaines which Ptolemy assigneth to the riuier of Niger: this riuier in greatnes and depth exceedeth Senaga, and hath many vnknowne riuers falling thereinto, and bringeth forth all kindes of liuing creatures that Senaga doth. In the midst of this riuier standeth the Isle of Elephants, so called, in regarde of great numbers of those beasts. The riuier Zaire beginneth out of the same lake from whence Nilus springeth: this being one of the greatest riuers of all Africa, and vterly vnknowne vnto ancient writers, containeth at the mouth eight and twentie miles in bredth, hauing a very safe harbour for ships to ride in: also there are many and great Islands in the chanell thereof, and sundrie riuers do fall thereinto, the principall whereof are Vumba, Barbela, Coanza, and Lelunda: in brieft, this riuier Zaire running through the kingdome of Congo, disgorgeth it selfe into the maine Ethiopian sea. Out of the same lake, which is the very fountaine of Nilus, springeth another notable and famous riuier, which after a long race toward the south and east, is diuided into two branches: the northerly branch, which is exceeding great (for it receiveth sixe great riuers thereinto, and is nauigable for the space of seuen hundred miles) being properly called Cuama, and the other branch more southerly, which is verie great also, being named Manich or Magnice, or Rio del spirito santo.

The promontories, capes, or headlands of Africa be verie many, the most famous and principal wherof are, The cape of Buena esperanza, or good hope, Cabo verde, and Cabo de los corrientes. The cape of Buena esperanza or good hope is the extreame southerly point of all Africa, being a most renowned and dangerous promontorie, which in the yeere one thousand foure hundred nintie seuen was the second time discovered by Vasco da Gama at the commandement of Don Emanuel king of Portugal: this cape the mariners were wont to cal the lion of the Ocean, and the tempestuous cape, by reason of the ruffling and roing of the windes, which they found there for the most part very boisterous: for the sea thereabout is exceeding rough, by reason of the continual fury of the windes; neither will any nauigatours touch vpon the cape, except they be enforced by meere necessitie. Cabo verde or The Greene head-land, is esteemed by some to be the same

These two riuers of Senaga and Gambia are not certainly known, whether they be maine riuers of themselves, or branches and mouthes of Niger.

The Isle of Elephants.

These two riuers of Cuama and Magnice (according to Philippo Pigafetta) spring both out of the great lake and are not branches of one riuier.

The promontories or capes of Africa. Cabo de buena esperanza.

Cabo verde.

Cabo de los cor-  
rientes.

side by the riuers of Senega and Gambra. Cabo de los corrientes, otherwise called the cape of San Sebastian, stretcheth forth it selfe right ouer against the south ende of the great Isle of Madagascar: it is a cape well knowne, by reason it is so dangerous to double, which the Moores durst not passe for a very long time.

And heere as concerning the strange beasts, fishes, serpents, trees, plants, and roots of Africa, as likewise touching the diseases, whereto the African people are most subiect; and the varietie of languages (excepting the Chaldaean, Egyptian, Turkish, Italian, and Spanish toongs) which are now and haue beene of ancient times spoken in Africa; I refer the Reader to the first and last bookes of *Iohn Leo*, and to other places, where they are at large and purposely intreated of.

The inhabi-  
tants of Africa

The diuersitie  
of religions in  
Africa.

Moreouer this part of the worlde is inhabited especially by five principall nations, to wit, by the people called Casiri or Cafates, that is to say out-lawes, or lawlesse, by the Abassins, the Egyptians, the Arabians, and the Africans or Moores, properly so called; which last are of two kinds, namely white or tawne Moores, and Negros or blacke Moores. Of all which nations some are Gentiles which worship Idols; others of the sect of Mahomet; some others Christians; and some Iewish in religion; the greatest part of which people are thought to be descended from *Cham* the cursed son of *Noah*; except some Arabians of the lineage of *Sem*, which afterward passed into Africa. Now the Arabians inhabiting Africa are diuided into many severall kinds, possessing diuers and sundrie habitations and regions; for some dwell neere the sea shore, which retain the name of Arabians; but others inhabiting the inland, are called *Baduini*. There bee likewise infinite swarmes of Arabians, which with their wives and children, leade a vagrant and roguish life in the deserts, vsing tents in stead of houses: these are notable theues, and very troublesome both to their neighbour-inhabitants, and also to merchants: for which cause travellers and merchants dare not passe ouer the African deserts alone, but onely in Carouans, which are great companies of merchants riding; and transporting their goods vpon their camels and asses: who go very strong, and in great numbers, for feare of the said theeuish Arabians.

The ancient di-  
uision of Africa  
by Ptolemy;  
and a compari-  
son of the an-  
cient with the  
moderne names.

Mauritania  
Tingitana, be-  
ing all one with  
the kingdomes  
of Maroco and  
Fez.

*Ptolemy* in his fourth booke of Geography diuideth Africa into twelue regions or prouinces: namely, Mauritania Tingitana, Mauritania Casariensis, Numidia, Africa propria, Cyrenaica, Marmarica, Libya propria, Aegyptus superior, Aegyptus inferior, Libya interior, Aethiopia sub Aegypto, & Aethiopia interior.

Mauritania Tingitana, the most rich and beautifull countrey of Africa, so named of the citie Tingis, which we at this day call Tanger, was sometimes also (as *Plinie* witnesseth) called *Borgundiana*: moreouer others haue called it by the names of Mauritania Sitiphensis, Hispania Transfretana, and Hispania Tingitana: but *Solinus* termeth the same Mauritania inferior. The inhabitants were of old named by the Græcians Maurusij, and by the

Romaines

Romaines Mauri, but the Spaniards at this present terme them Alarabes. In this part of Africa are now contained two stately kingdomes, namely the kingdom of Maroco, and the kingdom of Fez; both which are enuironed with the mountaines of Atlas, the Ocean and the Mediterran seas, and to the east with the riuer of Mulua.

Mauritania Casariensis, named according to the citie of Casaria, which was so called after the name of *Claudius Cesar*, at this present bearing the name of Tiguidet or Tegdemt, which worde in the Arabian toong signifieth ancient; was by *Victor Vitensis*, termed Mauritania maior; by *Strabo* Massilia, and Massasilia, and the inhabitants thereof by *Plinie* Masfeli. At this present it containeth the kingdom of Tremizen, as *Dominicus Niger*, and *Girana* are of opinion.

Numidia the ancient, called in the time of *Ptolemy*, The new, but by the Greekes (as *Plinie* testifieth) Metagonitis, and the inhabitants thereof Numidæ, and Nomades; is that region which lieth betweene The great riuer, and the riuer Megerada, ouer which countrey king *Masimissa* bare rule. It containeth now (as I coniecture) the prouinces of Bugia, Constantina, Bona, and Mezzab. Howbeit at this present we vnderstande by Numidia that region which lieth betweene the mountaines of Atlas and the Libyan deserts, called by *Iohn Leo* and *Marmolius* Biledulgerid, or the lande of Dates, because this is the onely region for plentie of Dates, in all Africa.

Africa propria, situate vpon the Mediterran sea, betweene the regions of old Numidia, and the Cyrene, is called by *Plinie* Zeugitania, who diuideth it into the ancient and the new. At this present it is the kingdom of Tunis, for it containeth Byzacium, which by *Strabo* is accounted a part of Africa propria. The head of this prouince in times past was Carthage, whereof at this present there are nothing but ruines extant.

Cyrene, or Cyrenaica, by *Plinie* called Pentapolis, and by the Hebrews *Lebahim*, is esteemed by *Girana* to be at this present called Corene, and by *Andrew Theuet*, Assadib; but *Iohn Leo* and *Marmolius* name it Mejrata.

Marmarica is called by *Plinie* Mareotis, and Libya: howbeit at this present the desert of Barcha, described by *Iohn Leo* in his sixth booke, containeth a great part of Cyrenaica, and all Marmarica.

But Libya propria, retaineth till this present the name of Libya, and is that part which the Arabians call Sarra, which worde signifieth a desert.

Both the ancient Ethiopias are now possessed by the Abassins, vnder the dominion of *Prete Iannu*.

Egypt retaineth euen till this day, the ancient name.

The best moderne diuision of Africa, for these our times is to adde vnto the foure general partes, Barbaria, Numidia, Libya, and the land of Negros, set downe by *Iohn Leo*, three other generall partes to wit, Egypt; the inner or the vpper Ethiopia, containing Troglodytica, Nubia, and the empire of *Prete Iannis*; and the lower, or the extreme Ethiopia, stretching from the

said



saide empire along the sea-coast, and through the Inland euen to the Cape of Buena Esperança.

Thus much of Africa in generall. Now it remaineth that we briefly describe in particular all the principall maine landes, and islands, (vndescribed by *John Leo*) which thereto belong, or adioyne; beginning first with the Red sea one of the chiefe limites of Africa, and from thence shaping our course along the easterne or farthest quarters thereof, through the dominions of *Prete Ianni*, the lande of *Zanguebar*, the empires of *Mohenemuge*, and *Monomotapa*, and the region of *Cassaria*: and then, hauing doubled the cape of Buena esperança, range we along the westerne partes by the kingdomes of *Angola*, *Congo*, *Anzichi*, *Benin*, *Ghinea*, and by the capes of *Sierra Leona*, *Capo verde*, and the castle of *Arguin*, till we haue brought our selues to finish our course, vpon the most southwestern partes of *Barbarie*, from whence our author *John Leo* beginneth his.

A particular description of all the knowne borders, coastes and inlandes of Africa, which *John Leo* hath left vndescribed: collected out of sundry ancient and late writers.

*Of the red sea.*

This isle I take  
to be Babel-  
mandel.

**T**He red sea called by others the Arabian gulfe, and the streight of *Mecha*, containing in length twelue hundred miles, and in bredth but one hundred, is diuided into three partitions or chanelles; the middlemost whereof being called The large or deepe sea, is without danger nauigable both day and night, because it hath from fise and twentie to fiftie fathomes water, especially from the isle of *Camaran* euen to *Suez* stāding at the very bottome of the gulfe: the other two partitions, which are the easterne and westerne extremities, are incumbred with so manie little isles and rockes, as it is impossible to saile ouer them but onely by day-light, and with most expert pilots, which are to be hired at a small island lying ouerthwart the very mouth or entrance of the red sea; which the ancient kings of *Egypt* (if the report of *Strabo* be true) barred with a chaine, from the African, to the Arabian side. This sea is very skarse of fish; perhaps because there fall no riuers thereinto, which with their fresh and sweete waters doe much delight and nourish the fish; and the strand or shore thereof is destitute of all greene grasse, herbes, or weedes. The portes and hauens of this sea are for the most part very dangerous and difficult to enter, by reason of the manifold windings and turnings, which must be made, to auoide the rockes.

Suez called of  
olde Hieronym  
cinitas, and  
Hazon Geber.

At the very head or North end of this gulfe, standeth *Suez*, which heretofore seemeth to haue bin called *Ciuitas Hieroum*, and in the times of *Darius* and *Salomon Hazon-Geber*, from whence the fleets of those partes

were

were sent to *Ophir* for golde and other rich commodities. Vnder the Egyptian *Ptolemeys* and the *Romans*, this towne flourished exceedingly, by reason of the infinite quantitie of merchandize brought thither from the east Indies, and Arabia. But now it is nothing so frequented; partly in regard of the mighty concurse and traffique which *Mecha* draweth vnto it selfe, and partly by reason of the Portugales conueiance of spices and other Indian commodities about the cape of Buena esperança. At this present the great Turke hath there an *Arsenale*, with certaine gallies, for feare of the Portugals afore said: against whome there haue bin dispatched from this place two greate fleets, one for the assailing of *Diu*, and another for *Ormuz*. Howbeit because all the countries round about are vterly destitute of wood, it is a matter of infinite charge to furnish foorth a fleet from hence; for they are constrained to fetch their timber as far as *Caramania*, partly by sea, and partly vpon camels backs. At this towne of *Suez* they haue no fresh water, but all their water is brought them from a place fixe miles distant vpon camels backs, being notwithstanding brackish and bitter.

*Arsenale* signifieth a store-house for munition, and for all necessaries to build, repaire, and furnish a fleet.

The western shore of the Red sea is inhabited with people called in old time *Troglodytae*, which at this present do all of them yeelde obedience to the great Turke: who considering, that the fleets of the Portugales entered very often into the Red sea, and were there receiued by the subiects of *Prete Gianni*, and did him great damage; hath thereupon taken occasion not onely to conquer the *Troglodytae*, but also to wast and subdue a great part of *Barnagasso*, the most Northerlie prouince of the said *Prete*. So that the audacious attempts of the Portugales in those partes haue bred two most dangerous and bad effects; the one is, that the Arabians haue most strongly fortified all their sea-townes, which before lay naked and without fortification; the other, for that the Turke also hath bin occasioned thereby to make warre against the *Prete*. Wherefore they ought not to haue vndertaken any such enterprize, but with full resolution and sufficient forces to accomplish the same: for lesser attempts serue to no other end, but onely to rouse and arme the enimie, which was before secure and quiet.

*Troglodytae* were a people that lived in caves vnder the earth to auoide the extrem heat, being deriued from the Troglodytae.

Neither is it heere to be omitted, that in the foresaide sea, a man can saile in no ships nor barks, but only those of the great Turke, or at least with his licence, paying vnto him for tribute a good part of the freight. For this purpose he hath certaine Magazines or store-houses of timber, which is brought partly from the gulfe of *Satalia*, and partly from *Nicomedia*, and other places vpon the *Euxin* sea, vnto *Rosetto* and *Alexandria*; from whence it is afterwaie transported to *Cairo*, and thence to *Suez*.

This sea is called the Red sea, not in regard that the waters thereof be all red, but (as some thinke) from certaine red rushes which growe vpon the shore: and (as others are of opinion) from a kinde of red earth which in sundry places it hath at the bottome: which earth dieth not the very substance of the water red, but by transparence causeth it (especially neere the shore) to appeere of that colour.

adwvi

Africa

## Africa Troglodytica.

**T**Hat sandie, barren, and desert part of Africa which lieth betweene Nilus and the Red sea, especially to the south of the tropike, was in old times inhabited by the Troglodytæ, a people so called, because of their dwelling in caues vnder the ground. Along this western coast of the Red sea runneth a ridge of mountaines, which being an occasion that the inland riuers can not fall into the saide sea, they are forced to discharge themselves into Nilus. The foresaide mountaines and sea coast are now inhabited by Mahumetans, being partly Arabians, and partly Turkes: which not many yeeres ago haue attempted to saile that sea, and to inuade the regions adioining. The naturall inhabitants are a rude barbarous people, and very poore and beggerly. The chiefe places of habitation are Corondol, a speciall good porte; Alcosser a place well knowne, because that neere vnto it the saide mountaines open themselves, and giue passage to the bringing in of the fruits and commodities of Abassia; Suachen esteemed one of the principall ports in all the streights, and being made by an island. Here resideth the Bassa of the great Turke, which is called the gouernour of Abassia, with three thousand soldiers or thereabout.

Next followeth Ercoco the onely hauen towne of the *Prete*, lying ouer against the little isle of Mazua: and heere the mountaines make an other opening or passage; for transporting of victuals out of the lande of the saide *Prete Ianni*. From hence almost to the very entrance of the Red sea, the coast is at this present vninhabited, forlorne, and desert. Likewise from Suachen to Mazua is a continuall woode, the trees whereof are but of small woorth. Iust within the saide entrance standeth the towne and port of Vela, vnder the iurisdiction of the king of Dancali a Moore.

Vpon all this west shore of the Red sea, as likewise vpon the contrary east shore, scarcitie of water is the cause, why there are so fewe, and so small places of habitation: and the people runne and flocke together, where they may finde any pit or fountaine of water.

Some curious reader might here expect, because I haue nowe passed so neere the frontiers of Egypt, that I should make an exact description of that most famous and fruitfull prouince; and likewise of the great city of Alcair, and of the inundation and decrease of Nilus: all which, because they are expressed in most orient & liuelie colours by our author *John Leo*; I should shew my selfe both iniurious to him, and tedious to all iudiciall readers; in anticipating and forestalling that, before the beginning of his booke, which he so neere the end doth in such large and particular wise intreate of. Now therefore let vs proceed to the vpper or inner Ethiopia, beginning with the first and most northerly prouince thereof called Nubia.

Nubia.

## Nubia.

**P**assing therefore westward from the Island of Siene, you enter into the prouince of Nubia, bordering on the west vpon Gaoga, eastward vpon the riuer Nilus, towards the North, vpon Egypt, and southward vpon the desert of Goran. The inhabitants thereof called by *Strabo Nicæu*, liue at this present (as *Francisco Alvarez* reporteth) a most miserable and wretched kinde of life: for hauing lost the sinceritie and light of the gospel, they do embrace infinite corruptions of the Iewish and Mahumetan religions. At the same time when the foresaid *Alvarez* was in Abassia, there came certaine messengers out of Nubia, to make suit vnto the *Prete*, that he would send them priests, and such persons as might preach and administer the sacraments vnto them. But he returned answere, that he coule not in regard of the scarcitie of great clergie-men in his dominions: The said messengers reported, that the Nubians had sent often to Rome for a bishop; but being afterward by the inuasions of the Moores and the calamitie of warre, cut short of that assistance, they fell for want of teachers and ministers, into extreme ignorance of Christian religion, and by little and little were infected with the impious and abominable sects of the Iewes and Mahumetans. Some Portugals traouailing to those parts, sawe many churches destroyed by the handes of the Arabians, and in some places the pictures of saints painted vpon the wals. They are gouerned by women, and call their Queene *Gana*. Their principall citie called Dangala, and consisting of about ten thousand households, is a place of great traffike, because it is so neere vnto Egypt and the riuer Nilus. All their other habitations are villages and base cottages. Their houses are built of claie, and couered with strawe. The chiefe commodities of this region are rice, stone-sugar, sanders, iuorie, (for they take many elephants) as likewise abundance of ciuer, and golde in great plentie. The countrey is for the most part sandie: howbeit there are certaine mightie lakes, by the benefite whereof a great part of Nubia is watred and made fruitfull.

Dangala the head citie of Nubia.

## The Isle of Meroe.

**M**Eroe called at this time by the names of Guengare, Amara, and Nobe, being the greatest and fairest isle which Nilus maketh, and resembled by *Herodotus* to the shape of a target, containeth in bredth a thousand; and in length three thousand stadios or furlongs. It aboundeth with golde, siluer, copper, iron, Eben-wood, palme-trees, and other such commodities as are in Nubia. Some write, that there growe canes or reeds of so huge a bignes, that the people make botes of them. Heere also you haue minerall salt, and lions, elephants, and leopards. This island is inhabited by Mahumetans, who are confederate with the Moores against

against *Prete Ianni*. *Strabo* affirmeth, that in old time the authoritie of the priests of this island was so great, that by a meane and ordinarie messenger they would command the king to murder himselfe, and would substitute an other in his roome. But at length, one king hauing in a certaine temple put all the saide priests to death, quite abolished that monstrous custome. And heere as Nilus vnfoldeth himselfe into two branches, to embrace this Islande, he receiueth from the east the riuer of Abagni, and from the west the riuer Sarabotto, which haue likewise other smaller riuers falling into them. The Abassins are of opinion, that the Queene of Saba, which travelled so farre to heare the wisdome of *Salomon*, was mistresse of this isle. *Paulus Iouius* saith, here are three kings, one a Gentile, the second a Moore, and the third a Christian, subiect vnto the *Prete*. From Meroe to Siene it is accounted fiftene daies iourney by water.

\* *Abassia, or the empire of Prete Ianni.*

\* Or *Aethiopia* the higher.

\* Commonly called in Latine writers, *Presbiter Iohannes*, by the Moores *Asiclabassi*, and by the Abassins his owne subiects *Aegue*, that is, *Emperour*, & *Neguz* which importeth a king, and *Delul* also, being all one with *Encoc* in the Chaldean tongue, both which wordes signifie pretious or high.

\* Or *Barnagasso*

Most rich gold-mines.

\* And by the late writers *Quilimanci*.

**T**HE Abassins are a people subiect to \* *Prete Ianni*: whose empire (if we consider the stile which he useth in his letters) hath most ample confines. For he intituleth himselfe emperour of the great and higher Ethiopia, king of Goiamé, which (as *Botero* supposeth) is situate betweene Nilus and Zaire; of Vangue a kingdom beyond Zaire; of Damut which confineth with the land of the Anzichi; and towards the south he is called king of Cafate and Bagamidri, two prouinces bordering vpon the first great lake, which is the originall fountaine of Nilus; as likewise of the kingdomes of Xoa, Fatigar, Angote, Baru, Baaliganze, Adea, Amara, Ambea, Vangue, Tigremahon, Sabaim, where the Queene of Saba gouerned, and lastly of \* *Barnagacs*, and Iorde as farre as Nubia, which bordereth vpon Egypt. But at this present the center or midst of his Empire (as *John Barros* writeth) is the lake of Barcena. For it extendeth eastward toward the Red sea, as farre as Suaquen, the space of two hundred twentie and two leagues. Howbeit betweene the sea and his dominions runneth a ridge of mountains inhabited by Moores, who are masters of al the sea-coast along, except the porte of Ercoco, which belongeth to the *Prete*. And likewise on the west, his empire is restrained by another mountainous ridge stretching along the riuer of Nilus, where are founde most rich mines of golde; amongst which are the mines of Damut and of Sinassij, wholie in the possession of Gentiles which pay tribute vnto the *Prete*. Northward it is bounded by an imaginarie line supposed to be drawn from Suacher to the beginning of the isle Meroe aboue mentioned; which line extendeth an hundred and fife and twentie leagues. From thence the Abassin borders tend south somewhat crookedly in manner of a bowe, as farre as the kingdom of Adea (from the mountaines whereof springeth a riuer called by *Ptolemy* \* *Raptus* which falleth into the sea about Melinde) for the space of two hundred and fiftie nine leagues; next vnto the which borders, inhabite certaine Gentiles of blacke colour, with curled haire. And heere the saide empire

empire is limited by the kingdome of Adel, the head citie whereof called Arar, standeth in the latitude nine degrees. So that all this great empire may containe in compasse fixe hundred threescore and two leagues, little more or lesse. It is refreshed and watered by two mightie riuers which conuey their streames into Nilus, called by *Ptolemy* Astaboras and Astapus, and by the naturall inhabitants Abagni and Tagassi; the first whereof taketh his originall from the lake of Barcena, and the second from the lake of Colue. Barcena lieth in seuen degrees of north latitude; & Colue vnder the verie Equinoctiall. The first (besides Abagni) ingendereth also the riuer of Zeila: and the second (besides Tagassi) giueth essence to the riuer of Quilimanci. Between Abagni and the Red sea lieth the prouince of Barnagasso: betweene Abagni and Tagassi are the kingdomes of Angote and Fatigar; and more towards the \* bay of Barbarians, the prouinces of Adea and of Baru; and somewhat lower, that of Amara. In brieft, beyond the riuer of Tagassi ly the regions of Bileguanzi, and of Tigremahon.

The Abassins haue no great knowledge of Nilus by reason of the mountaines which deuide them from it; for which cause they call Abagni the father of riuers. Howbeit they say that vpon Nilus do inhabite two great and populous nations; one of Iewes towards the west, vnder the gouernment of a mighty king; the other more southerly, consisting of Amazones or warlike women; whereof wee will speake more at large in our relation of Monomotapa.

Throughout all the dominion of the *Prete* there is not any one city of importance, either for multitude of inhabitantes, for magnificent buildings, or for any other respect. For the greatest townes there, containe not aboue two thousand houlds; the houses being (cottage-like) reared vp with clay and couered with straw, or such like base matter. Also *Ptolemy* intreating of these partes, maketh mention but of three or foure cities onely, which he appointeth to the south of the Isle Meroe. Howbeit in some places vpon the frontiers of Abassia there are certaine townes verie fairely built, and much frequented for traffique. The Portugales in their trauailes throughout the empire haue often declared vnto the Abassins, how much better it were, for auoiding of the outragious iniuries and losses daily inflicted by the Moores and Mahumetans both vpon their goods and persons, if the emperour would build cities and castles stronglic walled and fortified. Whereunto they made answere, that the power of their Neguz, or emperour, consisted not in stone-walles, but in the armes of his people. They vse not ordinarily any lime or stone, but onely for the building of churches (saying, that so it becommeth vs to make a difference between the houses of men, and churches dedicated to God) and of their Beteneguz or houses of the emperour, wherein the gouernours of prouinces are placed to execute iustice. These Beteneguz stand continually open, and yet in the gouernours absence no man dare enter into them, vnder paine of being punished as a traytour. Moreouer in the city of Axuma (esteemed by them to haue beene

\* *Sinus Barbaricus*, a mightie gulfe on the backside of Africa, stretching (as some will haue it) from 4. degrees of northerly to 17. of southerly latitude.

Of these Beteneguz read Francis Aluarez cap. 42.

\* Or yarde:  
for Braccia fig-  
nifieth both.

Of Melich  
read more at  
large in Fran-  
cisco Aluarez  
cap. 37. and  
cap. 138.

the seate of the Queene of *Saba*) stand certaine ruinous buildings like vnto pyramides; which by reason of their greatnes, remaine euen til this present, notwithstanding their many yeeres antiquitie. Likewise there are in this countrie diuers churches and oratories hewen out of the hard rocke, consisting but of one onely stone, some sixtie, some fortie, and some thirtie\* fathomes long, being full of windowes; and engrauen with strange and vknowne characters. Three such churches there are of twelue\* fathomes broade and eightie in length.

The Abassins which are subiect to the *Prete*, hold opinion, that their prince deriueh his petigree from *Melich* the sonne of *Salomon*, which (as they say) he begot of the Queene of *Saba*; and that themselues are descended from the officers and attendants which *Salomon* appointed vnto this his sonne when he sent him home vnto his mother: which seemeth not altogether vnlkely, if you consider the Iewish ceremonies of circumcision, obseruing of the sabbath, & such like, which they vse vntill this present like wise they abhorre swines flesh and certaine other meates, which they call vnclane. The *Prete* absolutely gouerneth in all matters, except it be in administering of the sacraments, and ordaining of priests. Hee giueth and taketh away benefices at his pleasure; and in punishing offenders, maketh no difference betweene his clergie and laitie. The administration of their sacraments is wholie referred to the Abuna or Patriarke. The *Prete* is lord and owner of all the lands and possessions in his empire, except those of the church; which are in number infinite; for the monasteries of saint *Antonie* (besides which there are none of any other order) and the colleges of the Canons and of the Hermites, together with the parishes, are innumerable. They are all provided by the king, both of reuenues and of ornaments.

They haue two winters and two summers; which they discernie not by colde and heate, but by rainie and faire weather. They begin their yeere vpon the 26. of August, and diuide it into twelue moneths, each moneth containing thirtie daies, whereunto they adde euery common yeere five daies, and in the leape yeere sixe, which odde daies they call *Pagomen*, that is, The end of the yeere. Their ordinarie iourneies in traouelling are twelue miles a day. The common harlots dwell without their townes, and haue wages allowed them out of the common purse: neither may they enter into any cities, nor apparell themselues, but only in yellow.

The soile of Abassia aboundeth generally with graine, and in especiall with barley and all kindes of Pulse, but not so much with wheate; they haue sugar likewise (not knowing how to refine it) and hony, and cotton-wooll, oranges, cedars, and limons, grow naturally there. They haue neither melons, citrons, nor rape-roots: but many plants & herbes different from ours. Their drinke is made of barley and miller: neither haue they any wine made of grapes, but onely in the houses of the emperour, and the\* Abuna. They are not destitute of Elephants, mules, lions, tygres, ounces, and deere. Their

owne

owne countrey horses are but of a small size: howbeit they haue also of the Arabian and Egyptian breed, the coltes whereof within fower daies after they be foled, they vse to suckle with kine. They haue great and terribles apes; and infinite sorts of birds; but neither cuckowes nor Pies, so farre as euer could bee learned. Heere are likewise great store of mines of gold, siluer, iron, and copper; but they know not how to digge and refine the same: for the people of this countrey are so rude and ignorant, that they haue no knowledge nor vse of any arte or occupation. Inasmuch as they esteeme the carpenters or smithes craft for an vnlawfull and diabolicall kinde of science; and such as exercise the same, liue among them like infamous persons; neither are they permitted to enter into any of their churches. In the kingdome of *Bagamidri* are founde most excellent mines of siluer, which they knowe none other way how to take from the ore, but onely by melting it with fire into thinn plates. Goame aboundeth with base gold. In the kingdome of *Damut* they digge and refine it somewhat better. They haue neither the arte of making cloth (for which cause the greater part of them go clad in beasts skins) nor yet the manner of hauking, fowling, or hunting; so that their countries swarme with partridges, quails, fessants, cranes, geese, hens, hares, deere, and other like creatures: neither knowe they how to make any full vse or benefite of the fruitfulness of their countrey, nor of the commoditie of riuers. They sowe mill for the most parte, sometimes in one place, and sometimes in another, according as the raine giueth them opportunitie. In summe, they shew no wit nor dexterity in any thing so much as in robbery and warre; vnto both which they haue a kind of naturall inclination. Which is occasioned (as I suppose) by the continuall voiajes made by the *Prete*, and by their vsuall liuing in the wide fields, and that in diuers and sundry places. For to trauaile continually, and remaine in the fields without any stable or firme habitation, compelleth men as it were, of necessitie, to lay holde on all that comes next to hande, be it their owne, or belonging to others.

They are not much subiect to tempests; but to an inconuenience far more intollerable, namely to innumerable swarmes of locusts, which bring such desolation vpon them, as is most dreadfull to consider: for they consume whole prouinces, leauing them quite destitute of succour both for man and beast. They vse no stamped coine in all this empire, but insteade thereof certaine rude pieces of golde, and little balles of iron, especially in *Angote*; as likewise salt and pepper, which are the greatest riches that they can enioy.

Hence it is, that the tributes which are payed to the prince, consist onely of such things as his owne dominions do naturally afforde; as namely of salt, gold, siluer, corne, hides, elephants teeth, the horne of the Rhinoceros, with slaues, and such like. Which forme of tribute (being most agreeable to nature) is vsed also in other parts of Africa. Their salt is taken out of a certaine great mountaine in the prouince of *Balgada*, and is made into square pieces.

b 2

The



The most populous place in all Abassia is the court of the *Prete*, where-  
foeuer it resideth; and there are erected fūe or sixe thousand tents of  
cotton of diuers colours, with so notable a distinction of streetes, lanes,  
market-places, and Tribunals; that euen in a moment euery man knoweth  
his owne station and the place where he is to doe his busines. A man may  
coniecture the greatnes of this court, if he doe but consider, that (ac-  
cording to the report of some who haue there bin personally present) besides  
the camels which carry the tents, the mules of carriage exceede the num-  
ber of fiftie thousand. Their mules serue them to carry burthens, and to  
ride vpon; but their horses are onely for the warres. The Mahumetans haue  
now brought this prince to great extremity: but heretofore while he was in  
his flourishing estate, he liued so maiestically, that he neuer spake but by an  
interpreter; nor would be seene to his subiects, but onely vpon soleimne  
dayes. At other times it was held as a great fauour, if he did shew but the  
halfe part of his feete to ambassadours, and to his fauorites. And no maruel-  
for amongst the Ethiopians it hath beene an ancient custome (as *Sirabo*  
writeth) To adore their kinges like gods, who for the most part liue en-  
closed at home. This so strange and stately kinde of gouernment, did ex-  
ceedingly abase his subiects, whom the *Prete* vsed like slaues; so that vpon the  
smallest occasions that might be, he would deprive them of all honour and  
dignity, were they neuer so great. Abassia containeth many large plaines,  
and very high mountaines, all fruitfull. In some places you shall haue most  
extreme coule and frostie weather: but not any snowe throughout the  
whole empire, no not in the mountaines.

The *Prete* hath many moores in his dominions, and vpon his borders;  
but the most populous of all others are the Moores called Dobas, who are  
bound by a law neuer to marry, till they can bring most euident testimony,  
that each of them hath slaine twelue Christians. Wherefore the Abassin  
merchants passe not by their country, but with most strong guardes.

A particular and brieue relation of all the kingdomes and  
prouinces subiect to the Christian Emperour of  
Abassia, commonly called  
*Prete Ianni.*

*Barnagasso.*

\* *Barnagass.*



F all the prouinces subiect vnto the *Prete*, that of \* *Barna-*  
gasso is best knowne vnto vs, bicause it is so neere vnto the  
Red sea; ouer against the shore whereof it stretcheth in length  
from Suachen, almost as farre as the very mouth or entrance  
of the streight, being (as is before saide) bounded on the  
south

south part with the mightie riuer of Abagni, which runneth westward out  
of the lake of Barcena into Nilus. Howbeit it hath no other port vpon the  
Red sea but onely Ercoco, situate neere the Isle of Mazua; neither hath the  
*Prete* any porte but this, in all his dominions; so that he is (as it were) on all  
sides land-locked; which is one of the greatest defects in any empire, king-  
dome or state, that can be imagined. This prouince is full of townes & villa-  
ges, as likewise of riuers and pooles which make it exceeding fruitfull. The  
Viceroy or gouernour hercof, called also by the name of \* *Barnagasso*, resi-  
deth in the citie of Beroa, otherwise called Barua; and by *Ptolemy* (as *Sa-*  
*nutus* thinketh) Coloue, situate vpon a pleasant riuer abounding with fish.  
Vnto him likewise are subiect the gouernments of Danfila and of Canfila,  
neere vnto the borders of Egypt.

Certaine yeeres past the great Turkes forces haue mightily afflicted  
this prouince, destroying the townes, and leading the people captiue: so  
that in the end *Isaac* the lorde *Barnagasso* was inforced to compound with  
the Turkes lieutenant (bearing title, The Bassa of Abassia, and residing in  
Suachen) for the yeerely tribute of a thousand ounces of golde. Ouer and  
besides he paieth euery yeere vnto his soueraigne the *Prete*, an hundred  
and fiftie excellent horses, with cloth of silke and of cotton, and other ma-  
ters.

On the most westerly part of *Barnagasso*, beginneth a mightie ridge of  
mountaines, which for a good space waxing narrower and narrower, at  
length in the kingdome of Angote dilateth it selfe into a rounde forme,  
enuironing with the steepe sides, and impassable tops thereof, many fruite-  
full and pleasant vallies, for the space of fiftene daies iourney in compasse:  
within which vallies (as it were in walled castles) all persons whatsoever,  
both male and female, of the Abassin blood royall, are vnder paine of most  
extreme punishment, together with their whole families, limited to re-  
maine. Within this great roundell or enclosure of mountaines, there is  
(among many others) contained one lesser, which is begirt arounde with  
a mountainous wall so craggie, steepe, and vnscableable, that no man can  
come in or out, but onely by a certaine basket drawne vp and downe vpon  
a rope: neither is it possible to famish the parties within by a siege, be it ne-  
uer so long: for they haue fruitfull ground, with houses, a church, a mona-  
stie, cesterne of water, and all other necessaries for the continuall main-  
tenance of fūe hundred persons. Within this strong citadell of moun-  
taines (for the auoiding of all tumults and seditions) are locked vp those  
great personages which come neereft in bloud to the *Prete*, and are in pos-  
sibilitie of the crowne; and here must they all liue and die, except a very few  
of them, who attaine at length vnto the gouernment of the empire. The  
Abassins haue a tradition, that one *Abraham* an emperour of theirs being  
admonished in a dreame, that he shoulde keepe his dominions in tranquil-  
litie by the meanes aforesaid, was the first that founde this mountaine, and  
vsed it for the same purpose.

Out of this lake  
also the riuer of  
Zeila runneth  
eastward into  
the Red sea.

\* Bar in the  
Abassin tongue  
signifieth the  
Sea, and Negus  
a king: so that  
*Barnagass*, or  
*Barnagasso*, is  
as much as king  
of the sea, or  
Lord high ad-  
mirall.

All persons of  
the Abassin  
blood royall en-  
closed within a  
mightie roundell  
of mountaines.  
Francis Alua-  
rez cap. 57, 58,  
59, 60, 61, &c.

## Tigremahon.

**T**igremahon, a very large kingdome, lieth betweene the riuier Marabo, Nilus, the Red sea, and the kingdome of Angote. The gouernour heereof paiech for yecrely tribute vnto the *Prete* two hundred Arabian horsēs, a great quantitie of silke and cotton-cloth, and very much golde. Vnto this kingdome is subiect the prouince of Tigray, wherein standes the citie of Caxumo, sometimes the royall seate of the Queene of Saba (which they say was called Maqueda, of whom *Salomon* begat a sonne named *Melich*, before mentioned) which citie was the seate likewise of Queene *Candace*. Also to the said kingdome of Tigremahon belong the prouinces of Sabaim, Torrates, Balgada, and others.

## Angote.

**T**his kingdome standing betweene the kingdomes of Tigremahon and Amara, is full of mountaines and vallicies, and aboundeth mightilie with all kinde of corne and cattell. The inhabitants eate but one meale in fower and twentie howers, and that alwaies in the night: their foode is most commonly rawe flesh, with a kinde of sauce made of an oxe gall. In stead of money they vse salte, and little balles of iron, as is before saide. Vnto this kingdome do belong the prouinces of Abuguna, and Guanamora, with other regions and places.

## Amara.

**T**he kingdome of Amara bordering north vpon Angote, east vpon Xoa, south vpon Damut, and extending west almost as farre as Nilus; is for the most part a plaine region, without mountaines, very fertile, and abounding with cattell. Vpon the frontiers of this kingdome standeth the foresaide large, high, and craggie mountaine, wherein the sonnes, brethren, and kinsfolkes of the *Prete* are most warily kept, and from whence after his decesse the heire apparant is brought, to be inuested in the empire.

The kingdome of Xoa situate betweene the kingdomes of Amara, Damut, and Fatigar, containeth many deepe vallies, and aboundeth with all kinde of corne and cattell.

In the kingdome of Gojame are two mightie lakes, from which Nilus is saide to fetch his originall. Heere is exceeding plentie of golde vnrifined; the north part of this region is full of deserts and mountainous places.

Bagamjidi one of the largest kingdomes in all the vpper Ethiopia, extending in length by the riuier Nilus, the space almost of six hundred miles: and in this kingdome are many most rich siluer-mines.

The

The kingdome of Fatigar lying betweene the kingdomes of Adel, and of Xoa, consisteth the greatest parte of champion groundes, which yeelde wheate, barley, and other graine most plentifully. In this kingdome standes an exceeding high mountaine, on the toppe whereof is a lake of twelue miles in compasse, abounding with great varietie of fish; and from this mountaine runne many riuers stored with fish also.

The kingdome of Damut (as *Sanutus* affirmeth) doth border vpon the kingdome of Xoa, and is enclosed on either side with the lake of Barcena, and the lande of Zanguebar. Howbeit others place Damut betweene the kingdomes of Vangue and Gojame towards the west, which opinion seemeth most probable. This countrey aboundeth with golde, ginger, grapes, corne, and beafts of all sortes. The slaues of this kingdome are much esteemed, and are commonly solde throughout all Arabia, Persia, and Egypt, where they prooue most valiant soldiers. The greater part of the people of Damut are Gentiles, and the residue Christians, who haue certaine monasteries. In this kingdome is that exceeding high and dreadfull mountaine, (hauing one narrow passage onely to ascend by) whither the *Prete* sendeth his nobles which are convicted of any heinous crime, to suffer ignominious death with hunger and cold. About the fountaines of Nilus some say, that there are Amazones or women-warriers, most valiant and redoubted, which vse bowes and arrowes, and liue vnder the gouernement of a Queene: as likewise the people called Caffi or Cafates, being as blacke as pitch, and of a mightie stature, and (as some thinke) descended of the Iewes; but now they are idolaters, and most deadly enemies to the Christians; for they make continuall assaults vpon the Abassins, dispoiling them both of life and goods: but all the day-time they lie lurking in mountaines, woods, and deepe vallicies.

The mountaine of death.

Of these Amazones read more in the discourse of Monomotapa following.

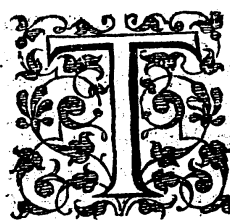
## The stile vsed by Prete Ianmi in his letters.

I the king, whose name the lions doe reuerence, and who by the grace of God was at my baptisme called *Athani Timgil*, that is, *The incense of the virgine*; but now at the beginning of my raigne, tooke vpon me the name of *Dauid*, beloued of God, the pillar of faith, descended of the tribe of *Juda*, the sonne of *Dauid*, the sonne of *Salomon*, the sonne of the pillar of *Sion*, the sonne of the seede of *Jacob*, the sonne of the hand of *Marie*, the sonne of *Nabu* according to the flesh, the sonne of the holy Apostles *Peter* and *Paul* according to grace, Emperour of the higher and greater AEthiopia, and of most large kingdomes, territories, and iurisdicions; the king of Xoa, Caffate, Fatigar, Angote, Barú, Baaliganze, Adea, Vangue, and Gojame, where the fountaines of Nilus are; as likewise of Amara, Baguamedri, Ambea, Vague, Tigremahon, Sabaim, the countrie of the Queene of Saba, of Barnagallo, and lorde as farre as Nubia, which confineth vpon Egypt.

This stile is taken out of a letter written by *Dauid* the Emperour of AEthiopia 1524.

The

Certaine answeres of Don *Francisco Aluarez*,  
(who from the yeere 1520. for the space of sixe yeeres  
next ensuing, had trauailed and remained in the countrey of  
PRETE IANNI with the Portugall ambassadour Rodrigo de  
Lima) made vnto sundrie demaunds or questions of the Archbishop of  
*Bragança, concerning the state of the foresaide countrey and prince,  
and of the disposition, manners, and customes of the peo-  
ple.* Io. Bap. Ramusius, vol. 1. delle uoiag.  
fol. 254. 255.



He Ethiopian Emperour called *Prete Ianni* hath no  
setled place of abode where he continually resideth;  
but is alwaies sitting vp and downe, sometimes to one  
place, and sometimes to another, and liueth in tentes  
set vp in the fields, enuironed with a kinde of fortifica-  
tion; of which tentes there may be in his campe of all  
sorts to the number of 5000. or 6000; and of horse-  
men and mules 50000. and vpwards.

It is a generall custome of the *Prete* and of all his subiects not to passe  
on horsebacke by any church (so great is their reuerence to holy places)  
but so soone as they approach thereunto, they light vpon the ground, and ha-  
uing passed by, they mount on horsebacke againe.

Whensoever the *Prete* marcheth with all his troupes, there is carried  
before him vpon the shoulders of certaine priests an altar and a consecrated  
stone, whereon they vse to administer their communion: the priests ap-  
pointed to cary it vpon a frame of wood, are eight in number, seruing fower  
and fower by turnes; before whom goeth a clerke with a censer and a little  
bell sounding; at the sight and noise whereof all persons forsake the way,  
and such as are on horsebacke, dismount.

In all this countrey there is not any towne consisting of about 1600.  
families, & there are very few that haue so many; neither are there any castles  
or walled places; but verie manie villages, and infinite numbers of people.  
Their houses are built round, all of earth, flat-roofed, and couered with a kind  
of thatch which wil last the time of a mans life, being compassed about with  
courts or yards. They haue no bridges of stone vpon their riuers; but all  
of wood. They sleep commonly vpon oxen-hides, or else vpon certaine cou-  
ches corded & sustained with thongs made of the said hides. They haue no  
kind of table to eat their meate vpon, but haue it serued in vpon plaine & ve-  
ry broad platters of wood, without any table-cloth at all. Also they haue cer-  
taine great deep dishes like basons made of black earth shining in maner of  
Iet, with other cups of the same earth, out of which they vse to drinke water  
& wine. Many of them eat raw flesh, but others broile it vpon the coles or  
firebrands

firebrands: and some places there are so destitute of wood, that the people  
are faine to dresse their meate with oxen-dung.

Their armour and weapons be Azagaie or short darts, some few swords,  
and certaine shirts of male verie long and streight, and (as some of our men  
which haue seene them doe report) made of naughtie and vnseruiceable  
matter. They haue bowes and arrowes great store, but not with feathers as  
ours be: as likewise helmets and head-pees, but very few, and first brought  
in since they began to haue traffique with the Portugals: howbeit they haue  
manie strong targets. Of artillerie they had \*at our departure foureteene  
small yron-pees, which they had bought of certaine Turkes that vsually  
came to trafficke vpon the coast; for which peeces the *Prete* willed that they  
should haue their vttermoost demande, to the end they might be the willin-  
ger to returne and bring more; and he caused some of his seruants also to  
learne how to discharge them.

The riuer of Nilus, I my selfe neuer saw, although at one time I was  
within thirtie miles thereof: howbeit some of our Portugales haue trauelled  
to the very fountaines of Nilus, which are two great lakes comparable to  
seas, situate in the kingdome of Goame; out of which hauing conueyed it  
selfe a small distance, this riuer embraceth certaine Islets, and then holderth  
on his course to Egypt.

The reason why Nilus yeerely ouerfloweth Egypt, is, because the gene-  
rall winter of Ethiopia holding on with most mightie and continual raines  
from the middle of Iune to the midst of September, doth make the said ri-  
uer so exceedingly to swell, that the waters thereof couer all the plaine coun-  
trie of Egypt.

In all the foresaid dominions of the *Prete*, they vse not to write one to  
another, neither do the officers of Iustice commit any of their affaires to  
writing, but all matters are dispatched by messengers and by wordes of  
mouth: onely it was told me, that the reuenues and tributes of the *Prete*,  
are put downe in writing both vpon the receite, and at the disbursement.

The emperour *Prete Ianni* hath two speciall princely names, to wit, Ace-  
gue, which signifieth an emperour, and Neguz, a king.

The Patriarke or arche-prelate of all Abassia is called Abuna, that is to  
say, Father; neither is there any in all the whole empire which ordaineth mi-  
nisters; but onely hee.

There is no wine of the grape made publicly in any place, but onely  
in the houses of the *Prete* and of the Patriarke; for if it be made anie other  
where, it is done by stealth.

The wine which is vsed in their communions, they make of raisins steeped  
ten daies in water, and afterward streined in a wine-press; and it is a  
most cordiall, delicate, and strong wine.

In this countrey is great abundance of golde, siluer, copper, and tinne,  
but the people are ignorant how to worke it out of the mines: neither haue  
they any coine of golde or siluer, but all their bargaines are made by  
bartering

*Philippo Pigafetta will haue  
Nilus to spring  
out of one great  
lake onely,  
which is to the  
south of  
Goame.*

*The true cause  
of the increase  
of Nilus.*

\* 1526.

bartering of one commoditie for another. Also they trucke little peeces of gold, some weighing a dram, and some an ounce. But salt is the principall thing which runneth currant for money throughout all the emperours dominions.

Some places there are which yeeld wheat and barley, and others miller in great plentie; and where the saide graines are not reaped, there groweth Tafo da guza, a feede vtterly vnknowne in these parts, as likewise lentiles, beanes, pease, fitches, and all kinde of pulse in abundance.

Heere are infinite store of sugar canes, which they know neither how to boile nor refine, but cate it rawe.

There be great plentie of faire grapes and peaches, which are ripe in the moneths of Februarie and Aprill. Of oranges, limons, and citrons, the quantitie is innumerable; for they growe most naturally out of the Abassin soile: garden-herbes there are but fewe, bicause the people delight neither to set nor sowe them.

All the whole countrey is full of Basill, which groweth very tall both in the woods and vpon the mountaines: so are there likewise other odoriferous herbes of diuers sorts, but vnknowne vnto vs. Of trees common with vs I remember none other kinds growing there, but onely Cypresses, damfin-trees, fallowes by the waters side, and trees of Iuiubas.

Honie there is exceeding great plentie all the countrey ouer: neither are their bee-hiues placed abroad in the open aire as ours are: but they set them in chambers, where making a little hole in the wall, the bees go thicke in and out, and come home laden with honie. Wherefore there is great quantitie gathered in all the empire, but especially in the monasteries, where they make it a great part of their sustenance. There are founde also swarmes of bees in the woodes and vpon the mountaines, neere whom they place certaine hollowe boxes made of barke, which being filled with honi-combes, they take vp, and carrie home to their houses.

They gather much waxe, whereof they make their candles, because they haue no vse of tallow.

They haue no oyle of oliues, but of another kinde which they call Hena: and the hearbe whereout they straine it, is like a little vine-leave: neither hath this oyle any smell at all, but in colour it is as beautifull as gold.

Heere likewise they haue store of flax, but they know not how to make cloth thereof.

Here is also great plenty of cotton, whereof they make cloth of diuers colours.

One countrey there is so extreame colde, that the people are inforced to clad themselves in very course cloth of a darke tawnic.

Concerning phisicke, and the cure of diseases, they know verie little or nothing; but for aches in any partes of their bodies the onely remedy which they vse is to apply cupping-glasses; and for head-aches they let the great vaine of the temples bloud.

Howbeit

Howbeit they haue certaine herbes, the iuice whereof being drunke, serueth them in steede of a purgation.

There would in this countrey be gathered infinite store of fruit, and far greater quantitie of corne; were not the poore commons most miserablie oppressed by their superiours, who extorte all their substance from them; so that they neuer till nor plant any more, then they must of meere necessitie.

In no place wherefoeuer I trauelled, could I see any shambles of flesh, but onely at the court of the *Prete*: for in other places no man may kill an ox, though it bee his owne, without licence from the gouernour of the countrey.

As touching their ordinary proceeding in iustice, they vse not to put any to sudden death, but beate them with bastonados according to the quality of the offence, and likewise they plucke out their eyes, and cut off their hands and feete; howbeit during mine abode there I saw one burnt for robbing of a church.

The common sort speake truth very seldome, though it bee vpon an oathe, vnlesse they be forced to sweare *By the head of the King*. They feare exceedingly to be excommunicated; so that being enioined any thing that tendeth to their preiudice, if they do it at all, it is done for feare of excommunication.

Their depositions or othes are performed in this manner. The partie to be deposed goeth accompanied with two priests, carrying with them fire and incense to the church-doore, whereon he layeth his hand; and then the said priests adiure him to tell the truth, saying: *If thou sweare falsely, as the Lyon deuoureth the beasts of the forest, so let the diuell deuoure thy soule; and as corne is ground vnder the mill-stone, so let him grinde thy bones; and finally, as the fire burneth vpon the wood, so may thy soule burne in the fire of hell*: and the partie sworne, answereth to euery of the former clauses, Amen. *But if thou speake truth, let thy life be prolonged with honour, and thy soule enter into Paradise with the blessed*: and he againe answereth, Amen. Which being done, hee giueth testimonie of the matter in question.

No person may sit in their churches, nor enter into them with his shooes on, nor spit within them, neither may any dogge or any other creature voide of reason come within them. They confesse themselves standing vpon their feete, and so standing likewise, receiue absolution. They say their forme of publike praier after one and the same manner, both in the churches of their Canons, and of their friers: which friers haue no wiues; but the Canons and priests are permitted to haue. Where the Canons liue together, they go each man to diet at his owne house; but the friers cate their meate in common.

Their ecclesiasticall gouernours are called Licanati. The sonnes of the Canons are, as it were by inheritance, Canons; but priests sonnes haue no such priuilege, vnlesse they be ordained by the Abuna. They pay no tithes



to any churches, but the clergie are maintained by great possessions belonging to their churches and monasteries. Also when any priest is cited, he is conuened before a secular iudge.

Whereas I saide, they sit not in their churches, it is to bee vnderstoode, that alwaies without the church doore stande a great number of wooden crutches, such as lame men vse to goe vpon; where euery man taketh his owne, and leaneth thereupon all the time of their diuine seruice.

All their books (which they haue in great numbers) are written in parchment, for paper they haue none; and the language wherein they are written named Tigia, is all one with the Abassin language: but so it was called from the name of the first towne in all that empire, which was conuerted to the Christian religion.

All their churches haue two curtaines, one about their great altar, with belles, within which curtaine none may enter but onely priests: also they haue another curtaine stretching through the midst of their church, and within that may no man come, but such as haue taken holy orders: insomuch that many gentlemen and honorable persons take orders vpon them, onely that they may haue acceffe into their churches.

The greater part of their monasteries are built vpon high mountaines, or in some deepe valley: they haue great reuenues and iurisdiccions; and in many of them they eate no flesh all the yeere long. Neither do they spende any store of fish, because they know not how to take it.

Vpon the wals of all their churches are painted the pictures of Christ, of the blessed virgine Marie, of the apostles, prophets and angels, and in euery one the picture of Saint George a horseback. They haue no Roodes, neither will they suffer Christ crucified to be painted, because they say, they are not woorthly to behold him in that passion. All their priests, friers, and noble-men continually carrie crosses in their hands; but the meaner sort of people carrie them about their neckes.

Their moouable feasts, namely Easter, the feast of Ascension & Whitsontide, they obserue at the verie same daies and times that we do. Likewise as concerning the feasts of Christmas, the Circumcision, the Epiphanie, and other the feasts of the saints, they agree whollie with vs, though in some other things they varie.

They haue great store of leproous persons, who are not put apart from the rest of the people, but liue in company with them: and many there are who for charitie and deuotions sake do wash them, and heale their wounds.

*Their musical instruments.*

They haue a kinde of trumpets, but not of the best, and likewise certaine drums of brasse which are brought from Cairo, and of woode also couered with leather at both endes, and cimbals like vnto ours, and certaine great basons whereon they make a noise. There are flutes in like sort, and a kinde of square instruments with strings, not much vnlike to an harpe, which they call *Dauid Mozan*, that is to say, the harpe of *Dauid*; and with these harpes they sounde before the *Prete*, but somewhat rudely.

*Their*

Their horses of the countrey-breed are in number infinite, but such small hackney-iades, that they doe them little seruice: howbeit those that are brought out of Arabia and Egypt are most excellent and beautifull horses: and the great horse-masters also in Abassia haue certaine breeds or races of them, which being new soled, they suffer not to sucke the damme about three daies, if they be such as they meane to backe betimes: but separating them from their dammes, they suckle them with kine, and by that means they prooue most sightly and gallant horses. Hitherto *Aluarez*.

Thus much (I hope) may suffice to haue bin spoken concerning the vpper or Inner Ethiopia which containeth the empire of *Prete Ianm*: now si-thens we are so far proceeded, let vs take also a cursory and brieue surueie of the lower or extreme Ethiopia, extending it selfe in forme of a speares point, or a wedge, as far as thirtie fiue degrees of southerly latitude.

*Of the lower or extreme Ethiopia.*

**T**His parte of Africa being vtterly vnknowne to *Ptolemey* and all the ancient writers, but in these later times, throughly discovered by the Portugales, especially along the coast, beginneth to the Northwest about the great riuer of Zaire, not far from the Equinoctial: from whence stretching southward to thirtie fiue degrees, and then Northward along the sea-coast on the backside of Africa, as far as the very mouth or entrance of the Arabian gulf, it limiteth the south and east frontiers of the Abassin Empire last before described.

In this part also are many particulars very memorable, as namely besides sundry great empires & kingdomes, The famous mountaines of the moon, the mightie riuers of Magnice Cuama, and Coauo, springing out of the lake Zembre, the renowned cape of good hope, and other matters whereof we will intreate in their due places.

This portion of Africa is diuided into sixe principall partes, namely: The land of Aian, the land of Zanguebar, the empire of Mohenemugi, the empire of Monomorapa, the region of Cafraria, & the kingdome of Congo.

*Aian the first generall part of Ethiopia the lower.*

**T**He land of Aian is accounted by the Arabians to be that region which lyeth betwene the narrow entrance into the Red sea, and the riuer of Quilimanci; being vpon the sea-coast for the most part inhabited by the said Arabians; but the inland-partes thereof are peopled with a black nation which are Idolaters. It comprehendeth two kingdomes, Adel and Adea.

*The riuer of Quilimanci in nine degrees of northerly latitude.*

Adel is a very large kingdome, and extendeth from the mouth of the Arabian gulf to the cape of Guardafu called of olde by *Ptolemey* *Aromatopromontorium*. South and west it bordereth vpon the dominions of *Prete Ianm*, about the kingdome of Fatigar. The king of this countrey being a

*Adel the first generall part of Aian.*

Moore, is accounted amongst the Mahumetans a most holy man, and very much reuerenced by them, because he wageth continuall war with the Christians, taking captiue many of the Abassins, and sending them to the great Turke, and the princes of Arabia, of whome he receiueh greate ayde for the maintenance of his warres, both of horse and foote. The people of Adel are of the colour of an oliue, being very warlike, notwithstanding that the greatest part of them want weapons. Their principall city is called \* Anar, as some are of opinion. Vnto this kingdome is subiect the citie of Zeila inhabited by Mooes, situate on a sandie and low soile, which some suppose to be built in the very same place, without the enterance of the Red sea, where *Ptolemy* placed the ancient mart-towne of Aualites. This citie is a place of great traffike; for hither they bring out of India, cloth, clephants teeth, frankincense, pepper, golde, and other rich merchandize. The territorie adioining yeeldeth abundance of honie, waxe, and great quantitie of oile, which they make not of oliues, but of a kinde of daintie plums: it affourdeth likewise such plentie of corne, of cattell, and of fruits differing from ours, that they are transported by shipping to other nations. Barbora likewise, a citie of the Moores, standeth in this kingdome of Adel, and hath a commodious haven, whereunto resort many ships laden with merchandize, from Aden in Arabia, and from Cambaya vpon the riuier of Indus. The citizens are blacke people, and their wealth consisteth most of all in flesh.

In the yeere 1541. *Gradaameth* the king of this place, after manie mischiefs which he had done to *Claudius* the emperour of Abassia, being vanquished by *Christopher de Gama*, the Indian Viceroy of *John* the third king of Portugale; hee did by meanes of the souldiers and warlike prouisions, which were sent him from the Sheque or gouernour of Zebit, overcome the Portugals & the Abassins. Howbeit afterward hauing sent the said forces backe againe to Zebit, himselfe was slaine, and his whole armie ouerthrowne by king *Claudius* aforesaide. But certaine yeeres after, the successeur of *Gradaameth* hauing in a warlike encounter subdued the *Prete*, rode in triumph vpon a little asse; signifying thereby, that he ascribed not the victorie to his owne forces, but to the power of God,

Aden, the second part of Aian.

Aden, the second part of Aian, situate vpon the easterne Ocean, is confined northward by the kingdome of Adel, & westward by the Abassin empire. It is exceeding fruitfull, & one part thereof mightily aboundeth with woods, the residue being sufficiently stored with cattell & corne. The inhabitants being Moores by religion, and paying tribute to the emperour of Abassia, are (as they of Adel before-named) originally descended of the Arabians: who many hundred yeeres agoe, partly by their rich traffike, and especially by force of armes, became lords not onely of Aian, but of all the sea-coast along as farre as Cabo de los corrientes, standing in the southerly latitude of fower and twentie degrees. In all which space the cities standing vpon the sea-coast; before the Portugals discovered the east

Indies

Indies; lay open and vnfortified to the sea (because the Arabians themselves were absolute lords thereof) but were strongly walled toward the lande, for feare of the Caffi, or lawlesse wilde Negros, who were deadly enemies to the Arabians, and vtterly misliked their so neere neighbourhood. Howbeit since the Portugals taking of Magadazo, and diuers other townes vpon the coast, they haue applied themselves very much to fortification. But, to returne to the matter where we left, vnto the foresaid kingdome of Aden, belongeth the kingdome of Magadazo, so called of the principall citie therein, which is a most strong, beautifull, and rich place, and is subiect to the kingly gouernment of a Moore. The territorie adiacent is exceeding fruitfull, abounding with sheepe, kine, horses, wheate, barley, and other kinds of graine. It hath also an excellent haven, and much frequented by the ships of Aden and Cambaya, which come thither laden with sundrie kinds of cloth, with spices and other merchandize; and from hence they carrie elephants teeth, golde, slaues, honie, and waxe. The inhabitants are of an oliue-colour, and some of them blacke, like vnto the nations adioining, and they go naked from the girdle-stead vpward, and speak the Arabian toong. They are but meapely weaponed, which causeth them to shoote poisoned arrows. This citie was in times past head of all the townes and cities of the Moores standing along this coast for a great distance.

The kingdome and citie of Magadazo.

*Zanguebar or Zanzibar, the second generall part of the lower Ethioopia.*

**Z**anzibar or Zanguebar, so called by the Arabians and Persians, is that tract of lande, which runneth along some parte of the dominions of *Prete Ianni*, and from thence extendeth it selfe by the east of Mohenemugi, til it ioyneth with the frontiers of Monomotapa. Howbeit some there are who vnder the name of Zanzibar will haue all the south part of Africa to be vnderstood, euen as far as Cabo Negro, which stretcheth into the western Ocean about 18. degrees of southerly latitude: so that they comprehend therein the empires of Mohenemugi and Monomotapa, and all the land of Cafraria. But in this controuersie wee rather chuse to follow the opinion of *Sanutus*, affirming with him, that the said maritime tract of Zanguebar (as it is by vs before limited) is a lowe, fennie, and woodie cuntry, with many greate and small riuers running through it: which extremity of moisture in those hot climates causeth the ayer to be most vnwholesome and pestilent. The inhabitants are for the most part black, with curled haire, being Idolaters, and much addicted to sorcery and witchcraft. They go naked all the vpper part of their bodies, couering their nether partes with clothes of diuers colours, and with beasts skins. And this tract of lande stretching along the sea-coast from the riuier Quilimanci to the riuier of Magnice containeth the kingdomes and territories of Melinde, Mombaza, Quiloa, Moçambique, Sofala, and others.

C 2

Melinde

Melinde the  
first part of  
Zanguebar.

Melinde, the most Northerly kingdome of Zanguebar, situate in two degrees and an halfe of southerly latitude, and stretching from the coast vpon into the main for the space of an hundred miles, hath a strong and stately city of the same name, being seuentie miles distant from Mombaça. It aboundeth with Rice, Millet, flesh, limons, citrons, and all kinds of fruites: but as for come, it is brought hither out of Cambaya. The inhabitants (especially on the sea coast) are Moores and Mahumetans: who build their houses very sumptuously after the manner of Europe. They are of a colour inclining to white; and some blacke people they haue also among them, which are for the greatest part Idolaters: howbeit all of them pretend a kinde of ciuilitie both in their apparell, and in the decencie and furniture of their houses. The women are white, and sumptuously attired after the Arabian fashion with cloth of silke. Likewise they adorne their neckes, armes, hands, and feete with bracelets and iewels of golde and siluer. When they go abroad out of their houses, they couer themselves with a vaile of taffata, so that they are not knowne but when they themselves list. Vpon this coast of Melinde you haue a very safe harborough, wherunto the ships that saile those seas do vsually resort. In brieft the inhabitants are a kind, true-hearted, & trustie people, & courteous to strangers. They haue alwaies beene in league with the Portugals, giuing them most friendly entertainmēt, & reposing much confidence in them; neither haue they euer done them any iniury.

Mombaça the  
second portion  
of Zanguebar.

The kingdome of Mombaça, being the second generall part of Zanguebar, and situate in three degrees and an halfe beyond the Equinoctiall line, bordering to the north vpon Melinde, and to the south vpon Quiloa; is so called after the name of a certaine isle and citie vpon the coast, both which are named Mombaça, and are peopled with Mahumetans: their houses are of many stories high, and beautified with pictures both grauen and painted. Their kings are Mahumetans, and most deadly enemies to the Christians: one of the which taking vpon him to resist the Portugals, was himselfe quite vanquished and ouerthrowen, and constrained to leaue his citie to the sacke and spoile of his enemies, who found therein a good quantitie of gold, siluer, and pearle; and likewise cloth of cotton, of silke, and of gold, with great numbers of slaues, & such other commodities. Howbeit they remained not there any long time, but were inforced to abandon the place in regard of the most vnwholesome and infectious aire. This kingdome is tributarie to the great empire of Mohenemugi.

Quiloa the  
third part of  
Zanguebar.

The kingdome of Quiloa situate in nine degrees towards the pole Antarticke, and (like the last before mentioned) taking the denomination thereof from a certaine isle and citie both called by the name of Quiloa; may be accounted for the third portion of the lande of Zanguebar. This island hath a very fresh and coole aire, and is replenished with trees alwaies greene, and with plentie of all kinde of victuals. It is situate at the mouth of the great riuer Coauo which springeth out of the same lake from whence Nilus floweth, and is called also by some Quiloa, and by others Tahina, and

and runneth from the saide lake, eastward for the space of fixe hundred miles, till it approcheth neere the sea, where the streame thereof is so forcible, that at the very mouth or out-let, dispersing it selfe into two branches, it shapeth out a great island, to the west whereof vpon the coast you may behold the little isle and the citie of Quiloa, being separated from the maine by a very narrow arme of the sea. This isle (as also the great isle before named) is inhabited by Mahumetans, who are of colour whitish. Their women are comely, and rich in their attire. Their houses are fairely builde of lime and stone, and haue within them very gallant and costly furniture, and without they are enuironed with gardens and orchards full of sundry delicate fruits and herbes. Of this island the whole kingdome (as is aforesaid) tooke the name; which vpon the coast extendeth it selfe to Cabo Delgado, or the slender Cape (being the limite betweene Moçambique and this kingdome of Quiloa) & from thence it stretcheth vnto the foresaid riuer of Coauo. In old time this kingdome of Quiloa was the chiefeft of all the principalities there adioining; for the Arabians which were masters thereof had enlarged their dominions for the space of nine hundred miles, so that all the sea-coast and the islands, as farre as Cabo de los Corrientes situate in fower and twentie degrees of southerly latitude, were tributarie and subiect thereto. Whereupon when the Portugals arrived in those countries, the king of this place trusted so much to himselfe, that he thought he was able with his owne forces, not onely to make a defensiu warre against them, but also to driue them from those places, which they had already surprized. Howbeit, quite contrarie to his expectation, he was by the Portugals vterly vanquished and put to flight. Who seizing vpon the isle and citie, enriched themselves with the great booties & spoiles that they found therein. Thus the mightie king of Quiloa (who before the Portugals arrivall in those parts, enioied also the chiefe commoditie of the rich gold mines of Sofala) became at length, by a composition made with *Don Pedro Cabral*, tributarie to the crowne of Portugall, paying for tribute at the first five hundred, and afterward fifteene hundred peeces of gold. Vpon the foresaid isle the Portugals erected a fortresse, which their king afterward commanded them to desace, considering that there were other forts sufficient enough for that coast.

Betweene the two mightie riuers of Coauo and Cuama (both which spring out of one lake with Nilus) among the kingdomes of Mombaça, Mozimba, Maeuas, and Embeoe, which are not as yet perfectly discovered, lieth the kingdome of Moçambique, so called of three small islets, situate in the mouth of the riuer \*Meghincate in fowerteene and a halfe, or fifteene degrees of southerly latitude, which kingdome in ancient time by *Ptolemy* was called *Promontorium Prassium*. In the principall of the three foresaid isles, there is a very commodious and secure haven, capable of all kinde of vessels, and there also the Portugals haue built a very strong forte: where albeit in regard of the lownes and moisture of the soile, being

Mozambique  
the fourth part  
of Zanguebar.

\* Or Moghincats.

full of bogges and fens, the aire be most vnholosome, and in manner pestilent: yet the oportunitie of the place, and the plentie of victuals, haue made it one of the most famous and frequented hauens in all that Ocean. For which cause the fleetes which saile from Portugall to the east Indies, when they are out of hope to performe their voiage in summer, do vsually resort to spend the whole winter at Moçambique: and those Portugale ships also which come from the Indies toward Europe, must of necessitie touch at this place, to furnish themselves with victuals. Along these coasts do saile certaine Moores in vessels sowed or fastened together with thongs of leather, the sailes whereof they make of Palme-leaues, and in stead of pitch and tallow, they calke them with gumme which they gather in the woods. Vnto this kingdome of Moçambique belongeth the prouince of Angoscia, so called from certaine isles of that name, lying directly ouer against it, which prouince stretcheth to the riuer of Cuama. It is inhabited by Mahumetans and Gentiles, who are for the greatest part merchants, and do trafficke along that coast with the same wares and commodities wherewith the people of Sofala do trade.

*Angoscia.**Sofala the fift  
part of Zanguebar.*

Sofala, or Sefala, the fift and last general part of Zanguebar, is a small kingdome lying vpon the sea-coast, between the riuers of Cuama and Magnice, being so called after the name of a riuer running through it, in which riuer lyeth an Island; which is the head and principal place of the whole countrie. On this Island the Portugales haue built a most strong forte, by meanes whereof they are become Lordes of the richest trade in all those parts. For (to say nothing of the Iuorie, Amber, and slaues which are hither brought) all the gold in a manner that is taken out of those manifolde and endlesse mines of Sofala and all the Inland-countries thereabouts, is here exchanged vnto the Portugales for cotton-cloth, silkes, and other commodities of Cambaia: all which is thought yeerely to amount vnto the summe of two millions of gold. This golden trade was first in the power of the Moores of Magadazo; and afterward it befell to them of Quiloa. The inhabitants of Sofala are Mahumetans, being gouerned by a king of the same sect, who yeeldeth obedience to the crowne of Portugale, because hee will not be subiect to the empire of Monomotapa.

Neither is it heere to bee omitted, that in these parts vnder the name of Iuorie, are bartered not onely elephants teeth, but also the teeth of sea-horses: which creatures are commonly found in the riuers of Nilus, Niger, Coauo, Cuama, Magnice, and all other the great riuers of Africa.

*The empire of Mohenemugi, the third generall part of the lower Ethiopia.*

**T**His mightie empire bordering south vpon the kingdome of Moçambique, and the empire of Monomotapa; to the riuer Coauo, and beyond; west with the riuer Nilus; North vpon the dominions of *Prete Ianni*; and east vpon the kingdomes of Melinde, Mombaça, and Quiloa, hath

hath not many yeeres ago bin discouered or at least heard of by the Portugales, vpon occasion perhaps of the warres, which with vnfortunate successe they haue waged against Monomotapa. The emperour of this country holdeth a continuall league with the princes of Melinde, Mombaça, and Quiloa, towards the sea, for traffiques sake: for they provide his dominions with cloth of cotton, cloth of silke, and sundrie other commodities brought from Arabia, Persia, Cambaya, and India, which are very well esteemed in those parts: but among the rest they bring especially certaine little balles, of a red colour, and in substance like vnto glasse, being made in Cambaya of a kinde of Bitumen or clammie claie, which balles they vse to weare like beades about their necks. They serue also to them in stead of money, for gold they make none account of. Likewise with the silkes that are brought vnto them they apparel themselves from the girdle downward. In exchange of all the foresaide wares and commodities they giue gold, siluer, copper, and iuorie. Howbeit vpon his Inland frontiers to the south and south-west, he maintaineth continuall and bloudie warres against the emperour of Monomotapa, his principall and greatest forces consisting of a most barbarous and fierce nation, called by the people of Congo Giachi, but by themselves Agag, who inhabite from the first great lake which is the fountaine of Nilus, for a certaine space vpon both sides of the said riuer, and then afterward on the westerne banke as farre as the second great lake from whence Zaire hath his chiefe original, & thence euen to the confines of *Prete Ianni*. They are a wilde and lawles people, liuing (after the manner of the ancient Scythians and Nomades, and like the Tartars and Baduin-Arabians of these times) a vagrant kind of life, vnder cabbins and cottages in the open forrests. They are of stature tall, and of countenance most terrible, making lines vpon their cheekes with certaine iron-instruments, and turning their eie-lids backward, whereby they cast vpon their enemies a most dreadfull and astonishing aspect. They are man-eaters, and couragious in battaile. For their armour of defence they vse certaine Pauises or great targets wherewith they couer their whole bodies, being otherwise naked: and their offensive weapons are darts and daggers. It is not many yeeres since these cruel sauages ranging westward from Nilus, inuaded the kingdome of Congo, vanquished the inhabitants in sundrie battels, tooke the head citie, and forced the king *Don Aluaro* to flee for succour and safetie vnto the isle of horses, in the mouth of the great riuer Zaire, being one of the extreme frontiers of his dominions. Where the king himselfe was taken with an incurable dropisie, and his people in great numbers died of famine; who to relieue their extreme necessities, sold their wiues, their children, and their owne selues for slaues vnto the Portugals. Howbeit these warlike Giacchi, notwithstanding their haucie courage, and great exploits, are no whit feared, but rather most boldly encountered, and sometimes vanquished by the Amazones or women warriors of Monomotapa. Which two nations, what by warlike stratagems, and what by open and maine force, do often fight the



the most desperate and doubtfull battailes, that are performed in all those southern parts.

*The empire of Monomotapa, the fourth general part  
of the lower Ethiopia.*

**B**Enomotapa, Benomotaxa, or Monomotapa is a large empire, so called after the name of the prince thereof, who in religion is a Gentile, and for extension of dominions, and military forces, a renowned and mightie emperor; in the language of whose subjects an emperor is signified by this word Monomotapa. This empire of his lyeth, as it were, in an Island which containeth in compasse seven hundred and fiftie, or (as some thinke) one thousand leagues, being limited on the north-west by the great lake wherebut Nilus springeth; on the south, by the river Magnice and the tributarie kingdome of Butua or Toroa; on the east it hath the sea-coast and the kingdome of Sofala, which in very deed is a member thereof; and the North part butteth vpon the river of Cuama, and the empire of Mohenemugi. That part of this great Island which lyeth betwene the mouth of Cuama, and the cape de los Corrientes, is a very pleasant, wholesome, and fruitful country. And from the said cape to the river of Magnice, the whole region aboundeth with beasts both great and small; but it is cold by reason of the sharp brizes which come off the sea; and so destitute of wood, that the people for fewel are constrained to vse the dung of beasts, and they apparel themselves in their skinnies. Along the banke of the river Cuama are diuers hilles and downes couered with trees, and vallies likewise watered with rivers, being pleasantly situate, and well peopled. Here are such plenty of Elephants, as it seemeth by the great quantitie of their teeth, that there are yeerely slaine betwene foure and fife thousand. Their elephants are nine cubites high, and fife cubites in thicknes: They haue long and broad eares, little eyes, shorte tailes, and great bellies: and some are of opinion, that Ethiopia yeeldeth as many elephants, as Europe doth oxen. The townes and villages of this empire are very few, and their buildings are of wood and clay, couered with thatch. None may haue doores to their houses but onely great personages. Their principal cities are \*Zimbaz, and Benamataza; the first whereof is one and twentie, and the second fiftene daies journey from Sofala. They serue this emperor at the table vpon their knees: to sit before him is all one, as with vs for a man to stand vpon his feete, neither may any presume to stand in his presence, but onely great lords. He is tasted vnto, not before, but after he hath eaten and drunke. For his armes he hath a spade and two darts. Tribute he taketh none, but onely certaine daies seruice and giftes presented vnto him; without which there is no appearing in his sight. Hee carrieth, whithersoever he go, foure hundred dogs, as a most sure and trustie guard. Hee keepeth all the heires of his tributary princes, as vassals, and as pledges of their fathers loialtie. There are no prisons in all his empire: for

Some will haue  
Magnice and  
Cuama to be  
two branches of  
one mightie ri-  
uer springing  
out of the great  
lake, which be-  
ing so, they must  
quite separate  
Monomotapa  
from the same  
lake.

\* This place  
both in regard  
of the name and  
situation may  
seeme to haue  
been Agysimba  
mentioned by  
Ptolemy.

for sufficient testimonie being brought of the commission of any crime, iustice is executed out of hand: and of all offences none are punished with greater seueritie and rigour, then witchcraft, theft, and adulterie. His people are of a meane stature, blacke, and well proportioned. They are Gentiles in religion, hauing no idols, but worshipping one onely God whom they call Mozimo. They go apparelled in cloth of cotton, either made by themselves, or brought from other countries: howbeit the king will in no case weare any forrein cloth for feare of poison or such like trecherie: and the meaner sort of his subjects are clad in beasts skins. Among all the armies and legions of soldiers, which this emperor (for the defence of his great estate) is forced to maintaine, his Amazonas or women warriors before mentioned are the most valiant, being indeed the very sinewes and chiefe strength of all his militarie forces. These women, after the manner of the ancient Scythian or Asiatike Amazonas, so much spoken of in histories of former times, seare off their left paps, that they might not be an hinderance vnto them in their shooting. They are most expert in warlike stratagems, and swift of foote. Their weapons are bowes and arrowes. At certaine times for generations sake they accompany with men; sending the male children home to their fathers, but keeping their daughters vnto themselves. They inhabite towards the west, not farre from the beginning of Nilus, in certaine places which themselves make choise of, and which are graunted vnto them by the fauour of the Emperor.

This empire of Monomotapa comprehendeth not onely the foresaid great island, but stretcheth it selfe farther also toward the cape of Buena esperança, as farre as the kingdomes of Butua or Toroa, which being gouerned by particular lords, do acknowledge Monomotapa for their soueraigne. Throughout all this emperours dominions is found infinite quantitie of gold, in the earth, in the rockes, and in the rivers. The gold-mines of this countrey neereft vnto Sofala are those of Manica, vpon a plaine enuironed with mountaines; and those also in the prouince of Matuca, which is inhabited by the people called Battonghi, and situate betwene the Equinoctiall line and the Tropique of Capricorne. These mines are distant from Sofala, betwene the space of 300. and sixe hundred miles: but those of the prouinces of Boro and Quiticui are fiftene hundred miles distant towards the west. Others there are also in the kingdomes of Toroa or Butua: so that from hence or from Sofala, or from some other part of Monomotapa, some are of opinion, that Salomons gold for the adorning of the temple at Ierusalem, was brought by sea. A thing in truth not very vnlikely: for here in Toroa, and in diuers places of Monomotapa are till this day remaining manie huge and ancient buildings of timber, lime and stone, being of singular workmanship, the like whereof are not to be found in all the prouinces thereabouts. Heere is also a mightie wall of fife and twentie spannes thicke, which the people ascribe to the workmanship of the diuell, being accounted from Sofala fife hundred and ten miles the neereft way. All other houses

houses throughout this empire (as is aforesaid) consist of timber, claie, and thatch. And heere I may boldly affirme, that the ancient buildings of this part of Africa, & along the coast of the east Indies, may not onely be compared, but euen preferred before the buildings of Europe. The authors of which ancient monuments are vnknown: but the later African buildings haue beene erected by the Arabians. In the time of *Sebastian* king of Portugale, the emperour of Monomotapa and many of his nobles were baptized: howbeit afterward being seduced by certaine Moores, hee put *Gonsaluo Silua* to death, who conuerted him to the Christian religion. Whereupon *Sebastian* king of Portugall sent against him an armie of sixteene thousand, consisting for the most part of gentlemen and men of qualitie, vnder the conduct of *Francisco Barretto*. The Monomotapa being afraid of the Portugall forces, offered *Barretto* as good and acceptable conditions of peace as might be desired: but he not contented with reason, was quite ouerthrowne, not by his enimies, but by the vnwholesome aire of Ethiopias, and by the manifold diseases which consumed his people.

\* Mine author here setteth downe too great a number.

*Casraria the fift generall part of the lower Ethiopia.*

**C**asraria, or the land of the Casri we esteeme to be both the coasts and inlands of the extreame southerly point of Africa, beginning from the riuier Magnice, and thence extending by Cabo da pescaria, Terra do Natal, Bahia da lagoa, Bahia fermosa, about the cape of Buena esperanza, by the bay called Agoada Saldanha, and thence Northward along the western coast of Africa, as far as Cabo Negro, or the blacke cape, which is situate verie neere vnto eighteene degrees of Southerly latitude. The faide Cape of Buena esperanza is deuided into three smaller headlands or capes; The westernmost, being called Cabo de buena esperanza, or The cape of good hope after the name of the whole promontorie, and being cut from the rest of the firme land: The middlemost is named Cabo falso, because the Portugales in their voyage homewards from the east Indies, haue sometimes mistaken this for the true cape beforementioned; betweene which two capes runneth into the sea a mightie riuier called by the Portugales Rio dulce (where their caraks often take in fresh water) and by the naturall inhabitants Camissa, which springeth out of a small lake called Gale, situate among The mountaines of the moon so much celebrated by ancient geographers: The third and eastermost cape stretching farthest into the sea, is called Cabo das Agulhas, or the cape of Needles, because there the needles of dialles touched with the loadstone, stand directly North, without any variation either to the east or to the west: betweene this cape and the foresaid westernmost cape (which ly forth into the sea like two hornes) is the bredth of this mightie promontorie, containing about fife and twentie leagues; the length whereof from the riuier of Fernando Poo, where it be- ginneth to iuttie forth into the sea, along the western coast southward, to the

the cape das Agulhas, amounteth to two thousand two hundred Italian miles; and from Cabo das Agulhas, along the easterne shore northward, to Cape Guardafui, are three thousand three hundred of the same miles. This cape at the first discouerie thereof was called by Nauigators, The Lyon of the sea; & Cabo tormentoso, or The tempestuous cape; not so much, as I take it, for the dangerous and stormie seas more about this cape then any other; but partly in regard of the chargeable, dangerous, and long trauels of the Portugals before they could attaine vnto it; and partly bicause of the great compasse which in their voiges outward they are constrained to fetch for the doubling thereof; and partly also in regard of some tempestuous and stormie weather wherewith they haue beene encountered at this Cape; which notwithstanding at certaine times is an ordinarie matter vpon all shores and promontories ouer the face of the whole earth. And albeit some will not come within sight of this cape, but keepe a great distance off, for feare of the dangerous seas beating thereupon (as namely *Francis de Almeida* who sailed about an hundred leagues to the south, in fortie degrees of latitude; *Pedro de Agnia* in fortie fife; and *Vasco Carnalho* in fortie seuen, where in the moneth of Iuly eight of his men died for cold) yet we finde by the late and moderne experience of sir *Francis Drake*, master *Candish*, master *Launcester* in his returne from the east Indies, and of the Hollanders in their navigations thither, begun in the yeere 1595. that those seas are at sometimes not onely free from stormie tempests, but most pleasant also to saile vpon, with faire and gentle weather. And as the Spaniards for a long time (that they might discourage all other nations from attempting navigation vpon The south sea beyond America) blinded all Christendome with a report, that the streights of Magellan were vnrepasable: so perhaps the Portugals, to terrifie all others from sailing to the east Indies, and to keepe the gaine and secrets of that rich trade entire vnto themselves, haue in their writings and relations made the doubling of the cape of Buena Esperança, and the crossing ouer those seas, a matter of farre greater difficultie and danger, then it is of late manifestly found to be. The name of Buena esperanza or good hope, was giuen vnto this promontory by *Iohn* the second king of Portugall; bicause that when his fleetes had once doubled this cape, either outward or homeward, they then stedfastly hoped in good time to performe the residue of their voyage; otherwise not. In the midst of this cape lieth a plot of ground of that beautie and delight, as that without any humane industrie it may compare with the most artificiall gardens of Europe. On the top of this place, nature minding as it were to excell her selfe, hath framed a great plaine, which for beautifull situation, fruitfulness of herbes, varietie of flowers, and flourishing verdure of all things, seemeth to resemble a terrestriall paradise. The Portugals terme it not altogether vnfitly, The table of the cape. And to the end they might not faile of the meanes to enioy so pleasant a place, there is close vnder it a very good harbour which is called The port of Conception.

G. B. E. Rel. am. dell. Afr. Part. 1. lib. 2.

The people of this place called in the Arabian toong *Caffi*, *Cafres*, or *Cafates*, that is to say, lawlesse or outlawes, are for the most part exceeding blacke of colour, which very thing may be a sufficient argument, that the sunne is not the sole or chiefe cause of their blacknes; for in diuers other countries where the heate thereof is farre more scorching and intolerable, there are rawnie, browne, yellowish, ash-coloured, and white people; so that the cause thereof seemeth rather to be an hereditarie qualitic transfused from the parents, then the intemperature of an hot climate, though it also may be some furtherance thereunto. The Hollanders in the yeere 1595. entering the harbour of Saint Bras, somewhat to the east of Cabo das Agulhas, had conuersation & truck with some of these Cafres, whom they found to be a stout and valiant people, but very base and contemptible in their behauiour and apparell, being clad in ox and sheeps skins, wrapped about their shoulders with the hairie sides inward, in forme of a mantle. Their weapons are a kinde of small slender darts or pikes, some whereof are headed with some kinde of mettall, the residue being vnheaded, and hardened onely at the points with fire. They couer their priue parts with a sheeps tayle, which is bound vp before and behinde with a girdle. Their horn-beasts are, like those of Spaine, verie well limmed and proportioned. Their sheepe are great and faire, not hauing any wooll on their backs, but a kinde of harsh haire like goates. Other particulars by them obserued, for breuities sake, I omit.

Now that we may proceede in describing the residue of Cafraria, hauing sayled about the cape of Buena esperanza westward, albeit the coast in regard of the greatnes thereof may seem to ly directly north, yet for the space of seuentene degrees, till you come to Cabo Negro, (the farthest North-westerne bound of this sith part of the lower Ethiopia) it trendeth somewhat to the west: along which coast somewhat within the lande appeareth a mighty ranke or ridge of mountaines, called by the Portugales *Os picos fragosos*, that is, the ragged points or spires, being besides their excessiue height, craggie, rough, and steepe, lying bare, desolate, and vterly voide of all succour, and seruing for no other end, but for an object to the windes, and a mark for the tempests. The residue of the coast, till you come to Cabo Negro, sometimes lying lowe and sometimes high, sometimes shooting into the sea, and sometimes again gently retiring, containeth many plaines, hills, vallies, and places most fertile and delightful; some of them being alwaies of so fresh and pleasant view, as they seeme to represent a continuall spring.

*Os Picos fragosos.*

The

The sixt and last part of the lower or extreme Ethiopia, containing the kingdome of Congo; whereunto in times past were tributarie and subiect the kingdomes of Matama, and Angola to the south; the kingdomes of Quisama, and Pangelungos to the east; and to the north the kingdome of Anzicana inhabited by the Anzichi, and Loango peopled by the Bramas.



First therefore (according to our proposed order) that we may begin with the most southerly parts; The kingdome of Matama so called after the name of the king thereof, (who being a Gentile ruleth ouer diuers prouinces named Quimbebe) bordereth north vpon the first great lake whereout Nilus springeth, and vpon the south frontiers of Angola; east it abutteth vpon the western banke of the riuer Bagamidri; and stretcheth south as far as the riuer Brauagul,

which springeth out of the mountains of the moone. This countrey standeth in a good & holesome aire, & aboundeth with mines of cristall & other metalls, & hath victuals great plenty. And although the people thereof & their neighbour-borderers doe traffike together; yet the king of Matama and the king of Angola wage war oftentimes one against another: also the said riuer Bagamidri deuidenth this kingdome of Matama from the great empire of Monomotapa before described, which lieth to the east thereof.

Next followeth Angola, a kingdome subiect in times past to the king of Congo, the gouernour whereof not verie many yeeres ago, growing exceedingly rich & mightie, rebelled against his soueraigne, & by diuers attempts shaking off the yoke of superioritie, became himselfe an absolute prince. This countrey, by reason that the people are suffered to haue as many wiues as they list, is a place most woonderfully populous. They goe whole millions of them to the warres, not leauing any men of seruice behinde: but for want of victuals they are often constrained to leaue their enterprises halfe vndone. Vpon this king, *Paulo Diaz*, who remained gouernour in these parts for the king of Portugall, waged warre: the reason was, bicause certaine Portugall merchants and others going by way of traffike to Cabaza, a towne situate an hundred and fiftie miles from the sea, where the king of Angola vsually resideth; they were by order from this king, the same yeere that king *Sebastian* died in Barbarie, sodainly spoiled of their goods, and part of them slaine; it being alleaged, that they were all spies, and came

d i

to

to vndermine the present state. Whereupon *Paulo Diaz* provided himselfe, and with two galeots did many notable exploits on both sides of the riuer Coanza. Finally hauing built a forte in a very commodious and hillie ground, at the confluence or meeting of the riuer last mentioned, and the riuer Luiola, with a small number of Portugals, ioined to the aide sent him from the king of Congo and from certaine princes of Angola his confederates, he gaue the foresaid king (notwithstanding his innumerable troupes of Negros) diuers & sundry ouerthrowes. The said riuer Coanza springeth out of the lake of Aquelunda, situate westward of the great lake whereout Nilus takes his originall. In this kingdome are the mountaines of Cabambe, abounding with rich and excellent siluer mines; which haue ministred the chiefe occasion of all the foresaid warres. This region aboundeth also with other minerals, and with cattell of all sorts. Most true it is, that dog-flesh is heere accounted of all others the daintiest meate; for which cause they bring vp and fatten great plentie of dogs for the shambles. Yea it hath beene constantly affirmed, that a great dogge accustomed to the bull was sold in exchange of two and twentie slaues, the value of whom coulede not amount to much lesse then two hundred and twentie ducats. The priests of Angola called Gange, are helde in such estimation and account, as the people are verily perswaded, that they haue in their power abundance and scarcitie, life and death. For they haue knowledge of medicinable hearbes, and of deadly poisons also, which they keepe secret vnto themselves; and by meanes of their familiaritie with the diuell, they often foretell things to come.

The siluer-  
mines of Ca-  
bambe.

Quizama.

Towards the lake of Aquelunda before mentioned, lieth a countrey called Quizama; the inhabitants whereof being gouerned after the manner of a common wealth, haue shewed themselves very friendly to the Portugals, and haue done them speciall good seruice in their warres against the king of Angola.

Bahia das va-  
cas, or the baye  
of Cowes.

Thus hauing briefly pointed at the former three bordering countries, let vs now with like breuitie passe through the kingdome of Congo it selfe. This kingdome therefore (accounting Angola, as indeede it is, a member thereof) beginneth at Bahia das vacas in thirteene, and endeth at Cabo da Caterina in two degrees and an halfe of southerly latitude. True it is that the coast neere vnto the saide Bay of Cowes is subiect to the king of Congo, but the inland is gouerned by him of Angola. East and west it stretcheth from the sea in bredth as farre as the lake of Aquelunda, for the space of sixe hundred miles, and is diuided into sixe prouinces: namely, the prouince of Pemba, situate in the very hart and center of the whole kingdome; Batta, the most easterly prouince, where the ancient writers seeme to haue placed Agisymba; Pango which bordereth vpon the Pangelungi; Sundi the most Northerly prouince; Sogno which stretcheth ouer the mouth of the great riuer Zaire; and Bamba which is the principall of all the rest both for extension of ground, for riches, and for militarie forces. In the

The sixe prouin-  
ces of Congo.

prouince

prouince of Pemba, or rather in a seuerall territorie by it selfe, standeth the citie of Sant Saluador; in former times called Banza, being the metropolitane of all Congo; and the seate of the king, situate an hundred and fiftie miles from the sea, vpon a rockie and high mountaine; on the verie top whereof is a goodly plaine abounding with fountaines of holesome and sweete water, and with all other good things which are requisite either for the sustenance, or solace of mankind: and vpon this plaine where Sant Saluador is seated, there may inhabite to the number of an hundred thousand persons. In this citie the Portugals haue a warde by themselves, separate from the rest, containing a mile in compasse: and about that bignes also is the palace or house of the king. The residue of the people dwell for the most part scatteringly in villages. It is a place enriched by nature with corne, cattell, fruits, and holesome springs of water in great abundance. The principall riuer of all Congo called Zaire, taketh his chiefe originall out of the second lake of Nilus, lying vnder the Equinoctiall line: and albeit this is one of the mightiest riuers of all Africa, being eight and twentie miles broad at the mouth, yet was it vterly vnknownen to ancient writers. Amongst other riuers it receiueth Vumba and Barbela, which spring out of the first great lake. In this countrey are sundry other riuers also, which fetch their originall out of the lake of Aquelunda: the principall whereof are Coanza, which diuideth the kingdome of Congo from that of Angola, and the riuer Lelunda, which breedeth crocodiles & water-horses which the Greeks call Hippopotami, of which creatures the isle of horses in the mouth of the riuer Zaire taketh denomination. The Hippopotamus or water-horse is somewhat tawnie, of the colour of a lion; in the night he comes on lande to feed vpon the grasse, and keepeth in the water all the day time. The Africans tame and manage some of these horses, and they prooue exceeding swift; but a man must beware how he passe ouer deepe riuers with them, for they will sodainly diue vnder water. Also in these riuers of Ethiopia are bred a kinde of oxen, which liue euery night vpon the lande. Here likewise breedeth another strange creature, called in the Congonian language Ambize Angulo, that is to say, a hogge-fish, being so exceeding fatte, and of such greatnes, that some of them weie about fife hundred pound. This abundance of waters, together with the heat of the climate, which proceedeth from the neerenes of the sunne, causeth the countrey to be most fruitfull of plants, herbes, fruits, and corne; & much more fertile would it be, if nature were helped forward by the industrie of the inhabitants. Heere also, besides goates, sheepe, deere, Gugelle, conies, hares, ciuet-cats, and ostriches, are great swarmes of tigres, which are very hurtfull both to man and beast. The Zebra or Zabra of this countrey being about the bignes of a mule, is a beast of incomparable swiftnes, straked about the body, legges, eares, and other parts, with blacke, white and browne circles of three fingers broad; which do make a pleasant shew. Buffles, wilde asses called by the Greekes Onagri, and Dantes (of whose hard skins they make all their targets) range

S. Saluador the  
chiefe citie of  
Congo.

The great riuer  
of Zaire.

Crocodiles,

Water-horses,

The Zabra.



The elephants.

in heards vp and downe the woods. Also here are infinite store of elephants of such monstrous bignes, that by the report of sundrie credible persons, some of their teeth do weigh two hundred pounds, at sixteene ounces the pound: vpon the plaines this beast is swifter then any horse, by reason of his long steps; onely he cannot turne with such celeritie. Trees he ouerturneth with the strength of his backe, or breaketh them between his teeth; or standeth vpright vpon his hinder feete, to browse vpon the leaues and tender sprigs. The she elephants beare their brood in their wombes two yeeres before they bring forth yoong ones: neither are they great with yoong, but onely from seuen yeeres to seuen yeeres. This creature is saide to liue 150. yeeres; hee is of a gentle disposition; and relying vpon his great strength, he hurteth none but such as do him iniurie; only he will in a sporting maner gently heaue vp with his snout such persons as he meeteth. He loueth the water beyond measure, and will stande vp to the mid-body therein, bathing the ridge of his backe, and other parts with his long promiscis or trunk. His skin is fower fingers thicke; and it is reported, that an elephant of this countrey being stricken with a little gunne called Pettera, was not wounded therewith, but so sore brused inwardly, that within three daies after he died. Heere are likewise reported to be mightie adders or snakes of fure and twentie spannes long, and fure spans broad, which will swallow vp an whole stagge, or any other creature of that bignes. Neither are they here destitute of Indie-cockes and hens, partridges, sea-fants, and innumerable birds of prae, both of the lande and of the sea; whereof some diue vnder the water, which the Portugals call Pelicans.

The isle and haues of Loanda.

Ouer against the most southerly part of the said kingdome of Congo, where it confineth with Angola, lyeth an Isle called Loanda, being twentie miles long, and but one mile broad at the most, betweene which and the maine land is the best port of all that Ocean. About this Isle do haunt infinite store of whales, where notwithstanding no amber at all is found; which is a manifest argument that it proceedeth not from these creatures. Here they fish for certaine little shels, which in Congo and the countries adioyning are vsed in steed of mony. The well-waters of this Isle, when the sea ebbereth, are salte, but when it floweth they are most fresh and sweet. In this Isle the Portugals haue a towne from whence they traffique to Congo and Angola: and amongst other commodities, they get euery yeere in those parts about fure thousand slaues; the custome of which trade belongeth by ancient constitutions vnto the crowne of Portugale.

Loango.

To the north of Congo vpon the sea coast beginneth the kingdome of Loango tributarie in times past to the king of Congo: It aboundeth with elephants; and the inhabitants called Bramas are circumcised after the Iewish manner.

Anzichi.

Next vpon them doe border the Anzichi, who are possessed of large countries, namely from the riuer Zaire euen to the deserts of Nubia. They abound with mines of copper, and with sanders both Red, and Gray which

are

are the best; and some are of opinion, that here groweth the right Lignum Aquilæ, which is of so excellent vertue in phisick. They haue one supreme king, with many princes vnder him. They traffique in Congo, and carrie home from thence salt and great shels to be vsed for coine (which are brought thither from the Isle of San Tomé) in exchange of their cloth of the palme tree, and of Iuory: but the chiefe commodities which they part from, are slaues of their owne nation and of Nubia: and the said shels they vse also instead of Iewels and ornaments. Both they and the Bramas before mentioned do carry for their defence in the warres, certaine targets made of the skin of a beast which in Germany is called Dante: their weapons offensive be little bowes and short arrows, which they shoot with such woonderfull celerity, as they will discharge twentie one after another, before the first arrow fall to the ground. They haue shambles of mans-flesh as wee haue of beeuies and muttons. They eat their enemies which they take in the warres: their slaues which they cannot make away for a good round price, they sell vnto the butchers: and some will offer themselves to the slaughter, for the loue of their princes and patrons: so fillie they are, that to do their lordes a pleasure, they will not refuse present death: wherefore the Portugals repose not so much trust in any kinde of slaues as in them: and they are very valiant also in the warres.

But, to returne vnto the sea-coast; from the mouth of the riuer Zaire Northward, the land bearing out somewhat more to the west, is framed into three headlands, namely, Cabo primero, Cabo da Caterina, and the cape of Lopo Gonsalues, which is a cape very well known in regard of the eminency and outstretching thereof. It lyeth in one degree of southerly latitude, Ouer against which cape within the land do inhabite the people called Bramas in the kingdome of Loango beforementioned. From hence for the space of fure or fixe degrees, till you come to Punta delgada, or The slender point, the coast lyeth in a manner directly North; most of which tract is inhabited by a nation of Negros called Ambus. North of the said slender point you haue Rio dos Camarones, or the riuer of shrimpes, which is full of little Isles; not far from which riuer are The countries of Biafar and Medra, inhabited with people which are addicted to inchantments, witchcrafts, and all kind of abominable sorceries.

Much more might be said concerning this sixt part of the lower Ethiopia: but because it is in so ample and methodicall a manner described in the historie of Philippo Pigafetta, most iudiciously and aptly Englished by the learned Master Abraham Hartwell, I refer the reader thereunto, as to the principal and the very fountaine of all other discourses which haue bin written to any purpose of Congo and the countries adioyning.

Of the countries of Benin, Meleghete, Ghinea,  
and Sierra Leona.

**W**estward from the countries last mentioned lyeth the kingdome of Benin, hauing a very proper towne of that name, and an hauen called Gurte. The inhabitants liue in Idolatry, and are a rude and brutish nation; notwithstanding that their prince is serued with such high reuerence, and neuer commeth in sight but with great solemnity; & many ceremonies: at whose death his chiefe fauorites count it the greatest point of honour to be buried with him, to the end (as they vainely imagine) they may doe him seruice in another world. This countrey aboundeth with long pepper called by the Portugals Pimienta dal rabo, which is as much to say, as ppeper with a tayle: This tailed or long pepper so far excelleth the pepper of the east Indies, that an ounce therof is of more force then halfe a pound of that other. For which cause the kings of Portugale haue done what lay in them, to keep it from being brought into these parts of Europe, least it should too much abase the estimation and price of their Indian pepper. All which notwithstanding there hath bin great quantitie secretly conueied from thence by the Portugals: as likewise the English and French nations, and of late yeeres the Hollanders haue had great traffique into those parts.

Of this long pepper read Ramusius, vol. 1. fol. 115. pag. 2.

The provinces of Temian, Dauma, and Meleghete.

Grana Paradisi.

The castle of Mina.

\* Pliny calleth them Autoloies.

Next follow the kingdomes of Temian and Dauma; and lower to the south the prouince of Meleghete, a place very famous and well knowne, in regard of a little red graine which there groweth, being in shape somewhat like to the Millet of Italy, but of a most vehement and fiery tast: and these little graines are by the apothecaries called Grana Paradisi. Here also is made of oile and the ashes of the Palme-tree, a kind of sope, which hath double the force of ours. For which cause it is forbidden by the Portugals, who haue vpon that coast a little to the east of Cabo das tres puntas, in the northerly latitude of fiue degrees, a strong castle called San Georgio de la Mina, whereunto by way of traffike they draw all the gold and riches of the countries adioining.

Westward of these lieth the countrey of Ghinea, inhabited by a people which the ancient writers called \* Autolatae, and Ichthyophagi: Ghinea is so named, according to the chiefe citie thereof called Genni, being situate vpon the riuer of Sanega. The people of this countrey towards the sea-coast liue vpon fish; and they of the inland sustaine themselves with Lizards and such like creatures; & in some places more temperate their food consisteth of herbes and milke. They conuerse together in great families; and they fight oftentimes for water and for pastures; neither haue they anie knowledge of learning or liberall arts. So long as the sun continueth in our northren signes, that is, from the xj. of March to the xij. of September, this people in regard of extreme scorching heat, are constrained all the day time (being ordinarily with them of 12. howers) to retire themselves within their

houses,

houses, and to do all their busines in the night. The countrey in most places is destitute of trees that beare fruite: neither haue the greatest part of the inhabitants any haire on their bodies, saue onely a thicke tuft growing vpon their heads: they sell their children vnto strangers, supposing that their estate cannot possible be impaired. Vnto these naturall miseries of the place, you may ad the insupportable mischiefes which are here done by the locustes: for albeit these creatures do infinite harme likewise in all the inner parts of Africa; yet seemeth it that this countrey of Ghinea is their most proper habitation; whither they do often resort in such innumerable swarmes, thatlike a mightie thicke cloud they come raking along in the skie, and afterward falling downe, they couer the face of the earth, deuouring all things that they light vpon. Their comming towards any place is known two or three daies before by the yellownes of the sunne. But in most places where they haunt, the poore people are reuenged of them by killing and driving them in the aire for their foode: which custome is commonly vsed by the Arabians and Ethiopians; and the Portugals also haue found vessels full of them vpon the coast of Cambaia, where they do the like mischiefes. They which haue eaten of them affirme that they are of a good taste, and that their flesh (so much as it is) is as white as that of a lobster. These may seem to be al one with those grasshoppers which God sent to plague Egypt; and the same kind of locustes, which the holy prophet Iohn Baptist fed vpon in the wilderness.

Locusts.

Moreouer along the coasts of Meleghete and Ghinea are diuers small riuers and freshets, containing little water, and running a slow pace: which notwithstanding are the best and pleasantest things that are to be founde in these forlorne countries. For wheresoever any little water springeth or runneth, thither do the people resort, partly for the watering of their scorched grounds, & partly to quench their own thirst. Also vpon these coasts are diuers and sundry headlands which stretch into the sea; as namely The faire cape, The three-pointed cape, The cape of Palmetrees, Cabo da Verga, & Sierra Leona. This cape last mentioned hath an exceeding high mountaine thereupon, which causeth it to be seene a mightie distance off. It seemeth to be the same promontorie which Hanno and Ptolemy call The chariot of the gods. It is called by the name of a lyon in regard of the dreadfull thunders and lightnings which are continually heard from the top thereof: howbeit neere vnto it are found apes, munqueies, and such other beasts as liue in temperate places.

Sierra Leona.

Of Cabo verde, Sanega, and Gambia or Gambea.

**N**orthward of Sierra Leona lieth Cabo verde, or the greene cape, called by Ptolemy Arfinarium, and being one of the most famous headlands in all Africa. It is enuironed with two riuers, namely the riuer of Gambia or Gambea on the south, and the riuer of Senaga on the north; which last riuer is esteemed to be an arme of Ghibor or Niger.

Gambea

Gambia springeth out of the same fountaines assigned by *Ptolemy* vnto Niger ( which by all the ancient writers is placed heereabout ) and out of the lake of Libya. It is larger and deeper then that other of Senaga, and runneth a crooked course, receiuing many lesser riuers thereinto. One hundred and eightie leagues within the mouth of this riuier the Portugals haue a factorie or place of traffique, called the factorie of Cantor. Hirther by exchange of sundry wares, they draw the gold of all those countries. In the midde way (as it were) vnto the said factorie, there is a place called the isle of Elephants in regard of the huge numbers of those creatures. The riuier of Senaga is thought to take his original out of the lakes called Chelonides. It containeth certaine Isles, which in regard of their rough and ragged shape are good for nothing, but to breed adders and such like hurtfull things, and these Isles in many places make the riuier vtterly in-nauigable. About one hundred and fiftie leagues from the mouth thereof, it falleth spouting-wise with such maine force from certaine high cliffes or rockes, that a man may walke drie vnder the streame thereof. The Negros in their language call this place a Bowe. It is reported that Nilus doth the like at his Cataracts or ouersals. And *Strabo* writeth of certaine riuers of Hircania, which from exceeding steepe and craggie rockes gush with such violence into the Caspian sea, that whole armies may passe vnder them without danger of drowning. Into this riuier of Senaga, among many riuers vnknowne, falleth one, which passing through a red soile, is it selfe also died red: and whosoever drinketh of the waters first of the Red riuier, and after of Senaga, is constrained extremely to vomite. Along the bankes of this mightie riuier inhabite the blacke and barbarous nations of the Gialofi, the Tucuroni, the Caraguloni, and the Bagani. Finally it voideth into the sea at two mouths, one of which mouthes is a mile broad. And it is strange to consider, how vpon the south side of this riuier the people are blacke and well proportioned, and the soile pleasant and fertile; whereas on the north side they are browne and of a small stature, and do inhabite a barren and miserable countrie. In both the said riuers of Gambra and Senaga do breed diuers strange kindes of fishes, and other creatures of the water, as namely crocodiles, sea-horses, and winged serpents; and hither come to drinke sundry sorts of wilde beasts. The lands comprehended betweene them both, by reason of their yeerely inundation (for from the xv. of Iune they increafe fortie daies together, and are so long time decreasing, after the manner of Nilus) abound with all kinds of graine and pulse wherof the climate is capable, as namely with beanes, pease, millet, &c. but wheate, rie, barley, and grapes cannot there attaine to ripenes and perfection, by reason of ouer-much moisture: saue onely some small quantitie of wheat neere the deserts where the Caraguloni inhabite. But their chiefe sustenance is Zabur-ro, otherwise called Ghinie-wheate or Maiz, which they sowe after the inundation of their riuers, casting some quantitie of sande thereupon to defend it from the heate, which otherwise would scorch the grounde too

excessiuely.

A factorie of  
the Portugals.

The isle of ele-  
phants.

A mightie ca-  
taract or fall  
of Senaga.

excessiuely. They drinke the iuice of the palme-tree, which they cut and lance for that purpose: and this iuice not being tempered, is as strong and headie as any wine. Neither are they heere destitute of mightie adders, of lions, leopards, and elephants: but beasts for labour they haue none, saue onely a small kinde of oxen, and goates. The horses which are brought thither by merchants, liue but a short time. The aire, by reason of abundance of lakes bredde by the ouerflowes of their riuers, is moist and grosse. And heere fall most vinholesome and palpable dewes. It raineth in these countries from October till the end of Iuly, euery day about noone, with thunder and lightning.

All the kingdomes and countries by vs before described, from the cape of Buena esperança, to the riuier last mentioned, are inhabited by blacke people. The most northerly are the Gialofi, who spread themselues between the two foresaid riuers for the space of fife hundred miles eastward: so that the riuier Senaga is the vtmost northren bound of Negros, or nations extremely blacke; howbeit vpon the bankes thereof are found people of sundry colours, by reason of the varietie of women.

Betweene this riuier of Senaga and Cabo blanco, or the white cape, lieth a countrie called by some Anterote, being all ouer in a manner sandy, barren, lowe, and plaine; neither is there in all this distance any place of account or reckoning, saue onely the isles of Arguin (whereof we will intreat among the isles of Africa) and a territorie or towne fixe daies iourney within the maine, called Hoden. This towne is not walled, but lieth open, and consisteth of the wandring Arabians rude and homely habitations, being notwithstanding a place of Rendeuous or meeting for all such as trauell in Carouans from Tombuto, and other places in the lande of Negros to Barbarie. The principall food of the inhabitants heere, are dates and barley, both which the soile yeeldeth indeed, but not in so plentifull a manner: and they drinke the milke of camels & of other beasts, for wine they haue none at all. These people are Mahumetans, and most deadly enimies to Christians: neither abide they long in any place, but runne rouing and wandring vp and downe those deserts. They are themselues very populous, and haue abundance of camels, vpon whose backs they carrie copper, siluer, and other commodities from Barbarie to Tombuto, and to the residue of the land of Negros.

From Cabo blanco to the regions of Sus, and Hea (which are the first prouinces described by *John Leo*) excepting a small portion onely of Biledulgerid, you haue nothing but part of the vast, fruitles, & vninhabitable desert of Libya, called by the Arabians Sarra, which stretcheth from the westernne Ocean as farre as the frontiers of Egypt.

Thus from the very bottome of the Red sea, hauing coasted along the easterne and westernne shores of the most southerly partes of Africa, and briefly described all the principall knowne empires, kingdomes, and regions within that maine, which are left vntouched by our author *John Leo*;

let

Ramusius vol.  
1 fol. 99.

let vs now with like or more breuitie prosecute the description of the islands which are by the hand of the omnipotent creator planted round about this ample and spacious continent.

A brieue enumeration and description of all the most famous and knowne Islandes situate round about the coasts of Africa, which haue beene omitted by Iohn

LEO: beginning first with the most northeasterly, and so by

little and little bringing our selues about the Cape of Buena Esperança neerer vnto Europe.

*The Islands of the Red sea.*



*Babelmandel.*

Both the shores of the Red sea, as well on the African as on the Arabian side, are euerie where beset with many small islets and rockes, which lie so thicke together, that they make the navigation all along the said coasts to be most dangerous and difficult.

The isles of the Red sea most woorthie to be remembred, are these following. Babelmandel a little isle situate in the very mouth of the Red sea, in twelue degrees, containeth two leagues

in compasse, being from either of the firme lands three miles distant, and standing about twentie paces high out of the water. By *Ptolemy* it is called The isle of *Diodorus*. Vpon this isle, or one of the continents adioining, are to be hired the most experimēted pilots for al that narrow sea, euen as far as Suez. And from the easterne and western side of this islet, *Strabo* reporteth that the twofold enterance of the Arabian Gulfe was barred with a double chaine. More to the north standeth *Camaran*, being about eight leagues from the Arabian coast in fiftene degrees of latitude. Vpon this isle are to be seene great ruines of ancient buildings. It hath one indifferent good ha- uen, and aboundeth with fresh water, (a thing most precious and acceptable in those parts) with salt, and with cattell. On the other side towards *Africa*, in fiftene degrees and an halfe, standeth the isle of *Dalagua* of about thirtie miles in circuite, which space is almost contained in the length thereof, being a place very famous for the abundance of pearles which are there caught; wherewithall likewise the isle of *Mua* neere vnto it is richly endowed. Next followeth *Mazua* in forme like to an halfe moone, and not

about

*The isle of Camaran.*

*Dalagua.*

*Mua. Mazua.*

about a bow-shoot distant from the African maine: betweene which isle and the continent, there is an excellent haven which is now the only porte that *Prese Ianni* hath in all his dominions; for which (as you may read before in the description of the said princes empire) his lieutenant *Barnagasso* is constrained to pay a great yeerely tribute to the Turke.

Ouer against *Mazua*, vpon the firme, standeth the towne of *Ercoco*. Vpon this little isle are diuers houses of Arabians, built of lime and stone; and others of claie couered with thatch. North of *Mazua* standeth *Suaquen* in a certain lake made by the sea, which there insinuateth it selfe within the land, and frameth a most secure and commodious haven. On this small islet is built the faire and stately citie of *Suaquen*, being almost as large as the isle it selfe; wherein resideth the Turkes lieutenant or Bassa of *Abassia*.

*The isle, haven, and citie of Suaquen.*

*Of the Isle of Socotera and other isles lying without the narrow entrance of the Arabian gulfe.*

Without the streight of *Babelmandel* there are no islands woorthy of mention, saue onely *Socotera*; which (as *Iohn Barros* supposeth) was of old called by *Ptolemy* *Dioscoridis* & lieth in sight of cape *Guardafu*, which the same author nameth *Aromata Promōtorium*. Being about threescore miles long, and fife and twentie miles broad, it is diuided with a rough and exceeding high ridge of mountaines, and is subiect vnto most terrible and boisterous windes, which do out of measure dry and parch the same. For which cause, and in regard of the slothfull rudenes of the inhabitants, it is very scarce of victuals: for it yeeldeth neither wheate, rice, wine, nor hony. In the vallies and places of shelter it affoordeth some quantitie of Miller, of dates, and of sundrie kinds of fruits: neither is it altogether destitute of pasture for cattell. It is frequented by merchants for \* *Cinabre*, *Sanguis Dra-* \* *Or vermillion,* *conis*, and the most excellent *Aloës* of the world. It hath no haven of importance. The Portugals are heere possessed of two small townes, one called *Coro*, and the other *Benin*; and here in times past the king of *Fartac* [*A countrey of Arabia Felix*,] had a castle & a garrison of soldiers vpon this isle, which castle being taken by the Portugals, was afterward by them abandoned; bicause it quited not the cost. The inhabitants being of a browne colour, and of a good constitution; are in religion a kind of Christians. They hold an opinion that *Saint Thomas* suffred shipwracke vpon this isle, and that of his ship was built a most ancient church; which as yet is to be seene walled round about, with three allies or partitions, and three doores. Furthermore they liue for the most part in caues or in cabins made of boughes, very farre from the sea. They go apparelled in course cloth, or in the skins of beastes. In war their weapons are slings, and swordes made of base iron: and the women are as good soldiars as the men. They are much addicted vnto Magick and inchantments, and doe bring to passe matters incredible. They haue no vse at all of navigation, nor of traffique, and yet for-

sooth

*Two townes of the Portugales in Socotera.*



sooth they esteeme themselves the most noble and worthy people vnder the heauens; as also they are vterly voide of learning: which I doe note, because that such as are learned make but small account of their wisdom.

The two sisters.

To the North of Socotera are two small Isles which are called the two sisters: the inhabitants whereof being of an oliue-colour, liue without lawe, and haue no conuersation with any other people. The commodities of these Isles are Iuorie, amber, Sanguis draconis, Aloës, and a kind of pretious stones called Nizzolij.

Likewise ouer against Socotera are two other Isles, one called the Isle of men, and the other the Isle of women, being distant thirtie miles asunder, and fise miles from Socotera. They are so termed, because that in the one dwell men onely, and in the other women. Howbeit they visite one another at certaine seasons: but they cannot stay one in the Isle of another about three moneths, in regarde of a secret qualitie of the ayer which is contrary to either sexe. A matter (if it be true) most strange and admirable.

*Of the Isles lying in the sea called Sinus Barbaricus, ouer against the Easterne and Southeasterne shore of Africa.*

**A**ll along from the cape of Guardafu to the cape of Buena Esperança are found sundry Islands, partly dispersed heere and there in the sea, and partly adioining vpon the firme land. Such as are far into the sea, are the greatest part vnhabited, as namly, the Isle of Don García, The \*three and The \*seuen brethren, As rocas partidas, the Isles of Sant Brandan, and those of Mascarenha, of Sant Francis, of Santa Apollonia, of Iohn de Lisboa, of Cosmoledo: and betweene the great Isle of Saint Laurence and the maine, the Isles Do Natal or of the natiuitie, as likewise the three Isles of Comoro, with those of Alioa, of Spirito Santo, and of sant Christopher.

Isles which are not inhabited.

Concerning the

Isles of Mombaza,

Quiloa, & Mo-

gambique read

more at large in

the discourse of

Zanguebar be-

fore set downe,

whereas I

thought it mee-

test to intreat

of them, being

(as it were) cer-

taine fragments

of the maine, &

hauing large

territories ther-

of subiect vnto

them.

But of those which the vicinity of the firme land hath made more noble and frequented, the first that offereth it selfe to our consideration, is the Isle of Mombaza in foure degrees of southerly latitude, cut out by a certaine chanel or arme of the sea, which deuideth the same from the maine of Africa in compasse it containeth twelue miles; and at the entrance of the saide chanel, vpon a downe, standeth the city of Mombaza, built very handsomely after the Arabian fashion. Somewhat farther from the continent are situate the Isles of Pemba, Zanzibar, and Mosia inhabited by Negros; the greatest of which is Zanzibar, the prince whereof is called by the name of a king, and it lyeth vnder fixe degrees of south latitude, being from the main ten leagues distant. But the soueraigne of all these Isles was Quiloa, inhabited like the rest, with Mahumetans of little bodies and abiect mindes. It aboundeth with rice, millet, canel, woods of palme trees, limons, oranges, & sugar-canes; whereof notwithstanding they are ignorant how to make sugar. The city standeth vpon the sea-shore ouer against the firme land: it is built of

pure

pure marble, and the streetes are very narrow: a thing common among the Arabians, whereby they vse to defend themselves, after the enimie hath once entered their townes. From this Isle to Moçambique are about an hundred leagues: Without the porte lieth Misa, and three miles off Songo and Canga inhabited by Moores. Next follow As Ilhas do Açorinado, or The isles of the scourged, bicause here a certaine pilot that was a Moore, who had determined to wracke the whole fleet of Vasco da Gama, receiued punishment. Concerning Moçambique called by Ptolemy and other ancient writers Prassia, we haue intreated before. Fower miles from thence lie the desert isles of Saint George: and then the isles of Angoscia inhabited by Moores. These are stored with indifferent quantitie of victuals: and here vpon an east winde they gather plentie of Ambergrise. An hundred and fiftie miles from Cabo dos corrientes, lieth A Ilha das vacas, or The isle of Cowes, with a castle thereupon, and store of good water. As Ilhas llanas, or The plaine isles are not woorth the speaking of. A Ilha da cruz, otherwise called Ilha das fontanhas, was the farthest limite of Bartholomew Diaz his nauigation, who was the first Portugale that euer doubled the cape of Buena esprança, and hauing doubled it, returned backe without discovering any farther.

Plentie of Ambergrise.

*Of the Isle of Saint Laurence, otherwise called Madagascar.*

**T**his isle called by the Portugales The isle of Sant Laurence, by the naturall inhabitants Madagascar, by Paulus Venerus Magastar, by Ptolemy Menuthias, and by Plinie Cerne, is accounted one of the greatest, noblest, and richest in the whole world. About the midst thereof it approacheth towards the maine of Africa, in forme of an elbowe, being distant from thence an hundred threescore and ten miles. The extreames of this isle are very farre separate from the saide maine, and especially that which stretcheth toward the northeast. The whole isle containeth in bredth fower hundred and fowerscore, in length one thousand two hundred, and in compasse fower thousand miles; so that in bignes it farre excēdeth Italy, though it be not so well inhabited and manured. Situate it is beyond the Equator in seuentene degrees, and stretcheth from thence to fixe and twentie degrees and an halfe of southerly latitude. It is plentifully endowed with all things needfull for mans vse: for it yeeldeth corton, Miller, Rice, Potatos, sweete oranges, sugar-canes, and sundry kindes of pulse: as likewise, amber, Lette, siluer, copper, red sanders, saffron, a spice somewhat like vnto cloues, and some quantitie of ginger. Moreouer, heere are lions, leopards, stags, roe-deere, goates, kine, sheepe, and other beastes both tame and wilde. Heere are likewise innumerable elephants, so that from hence is conueied great quantitie of iuorie. They haue also great store of camels, whose flesh the inhabitants eat: for the holefomenes thereof. The people (except

c i

some

some few Moores vpon the coast) are idolaters, of colour black, with curled haire, very barbarous, and in fashions resembling much the Cafres. They go naked all saue their priuities, which they couer with cloth of cotton: and they vse in the warre certaine crooked staues headed with bone. The Iesuits in their letters report, that in one part of this isle there are white people found; who (as they affirme) are descended from the people of China; whereby may be gathered the great length of the Chinians navigations, and the largenes of their empire. The Portugals sailing towards India in due time, do passe betwene this great isle and the firme land; but if the season groweth towards winter, they holde on their course (as themselves report) on the backe side thereof. In these two courses of navigation they haue found, and daily do discouer sundrie isles, but of small account, part whereof we haue mentioned before. Amongst others, as it were ouer against Moçambique, lieth on a certaine strand or shoal an isle called Langané of a reasonable bignes, with a great riuer therein, being inhabited by Moores. And the farthest toward the west are those isles which the Portugals call Os Romeros. On the northeast part of this isle is the Bay of Antogill, being one of the safest and most commodious harbours in the world.

*Of the Isles of the Ethiopian sea about the cape of Buena esperança.*

**T**His sea I take to be most exceeding deepe, because it hath fewer Isles then the former, and those few which it hath are but little ones. The first that was discovered on this side the cape of Buena Esperança is that of Don Alvarez, situate in thirtie degrees and an halfe. And to the northwest of that is the Isle of Tristan d' Acunna beeing distant 150. miles from the cape, and beyond the Equinoctiall eight and thirtie degrees; which beeing of a round forme, containeth in compasse fiftie leagues. It is full of birdes, and especially of sea-crowes or cormorants, and round about it lie foure other small islets. The marriners hold, that neere vnto this isle, as vnto that of Bermuda, there are continual stormes and tempestes. Not far from the main are certaine dry and rockie isles, and others of none account.

*The Isles of Santa Helena, and of the Ascension.*

**N**Ext followeth in the height of sixteene degrees of southerly latitude the isle of Santa Helena, discovered by *Iuan da Nova*, being so fitly and commodiously situate for such as returne home from the east Indies into Europe, as it seemeth there of purpose to haue bene planted by God for the furtherance of this voiage, and for the refreshing and comfort of nauigators. In compasse it containeth nine miles, & hath a most perfect health-  
full

full aire, and sundry freshets of excellent water. The soile is of a red colour, and like vnto ashes; it giueth way to ones footing like sand, and a man may shake every tree vpon the isle. Heere the kings of Portugall haue enacted, that none may remaine to inhabite, except it be sometime two or three steeke persons for the recouerie of their health; to the end that the fleets may heere plentifully and of free cost furnish themselves with fresh victuals, fruits, and water. So that when they arrive, they vsually plant or sow some one thing or other, which presently springeth and groweth to ripenes; and then the seed falling into the earth, it multiplieth of it selfe. Heere are woods of Eban and Cedar, with infinite store of limons, oranges, and all sorts of fruits; as likewise hogs, geese, hens, partridges, sea-fants, Guinie-cocks, and other like creatures brought thither by the Portugals out of Europe, or from other countries. In sailing from Portugall toward India it is not so easily found: but in their returne home they do heere in fewe daies cure all their diseases, and relieue their wants: and heere to their vspeakable solace and recreation they hunt, fowle, and fish, and provide themselves of water, wood, and all things necessarie. To the west thereof appeere in the sea the isles of Santa Maria, and of the Trinitie, which serue for signes vnto the mariners. To the northwest of this isle, towards the coast of Brasil, are the isles of Ascension, so called, because they were first discovered by *Tristan Ascension*. *Acunna* in his returne from the Indies vpon Ascension day in the yeere 1508. They are all vnhabited and desert, and haue vpon them infinite swarmes of a kinde of fowles of the bignes of duckes.

*Of the Isles of Loanda, Nobon, and Saint Thomas.*

**H**And vpon the firme land of the south part of Congo, is situate the isle of \* Loanda before mentioned. And ouer against the cape of Lopo Gonsalues in a manner, lieth the small isle of Nobon, being a rockie and desolate place, but of great importance for fishing; for which cause it is frequented by the inhabitants of Saint Thomas isle. This isle of Saint Thomas being an hundred and fower-score miles distant from the maine, is of a round forme, containing threescore Italian miles from side to side, and an hundred and fower-score miles also in compasse: of which isle (because it is situate iust vnder the Equinoctiall, so that the horizon thereof passeth by both the poles) it will not be from our purpose to intreat somewhat at large; to the end we may the better vnderstand the qualitie and temperature of such places as are seated in that part of the world. This isle when it was first discovered was nothing else but a woode of vnprofitable trees, with their boughs turning crookedly vpwart. The aire is extremely hot: in the moneths of March and September, when the sunne passeth perpendicularly ouer; it raineth heere out of measure, and in other moneths heere falleth onely a moist dewe which watereth the ground. In the verie midst it hath a woodie mountaine, which is continually ouershadowed with a thick  
cloud,

cloud, which cloud so moistneth the trees that grow in great abundance vpon this mountaine, that from hence droppeth water sufficient for the watering of all their fields of sugar-canes. By how much the sun is more perpendicular ouer this isle, by so much is the aire more cloudie & darke; and contrariwise, the farther it is distant from perpendicularitie, the clearer and brighter is the skie. In the moneths of December, Ianuarie, and Februarie, such as are borne in Europe, can very hardly walke or mooue themselves for faintnes: and all the rest of the yeere, once in eight or ten daies, they seeme to be taken with an hot and a cold fit of an ague, which continueth vpon them for tow howers together. They are thrice or oftner let blood euery yeere: and few of them liue aboute fiftie yeeres; but their Negros remaine more then an hundred yeeres aliue. They which newly arrive there, are commonly surprized with a most dangerous feauer, which holdeth them for twentie daies together. And these are let blood, without any reckoning of ounces. Heere blow no windes at all, but onely from the south-east, south, and southwest, which windes stirre not in the moneths of December, Ianuarie, and Februarie, and therefore these moneths are most extremely hot. But in Iune, Iuly, and August, they blow a fresh gale. In this isle the French euill, and the scuruius are verie rife. The soile is of a meane colour betweene red and yellow, being clammy like claie, and by reason of the continuall nightly dewes, as soft and pliable as waxe, and of incredible fertility. Besides diuers other good ports, it hath one principall among the rest, belonging to the chiefe towne or citie called \* Pauoasan, consisting of aboute seuen hundred families, and inhabited by Portugals, and into the saide port runneth a little riuer of excellent water.

\* Or perhaps Pauoacan, which (as I conjecture) may be all one with Poblacion in Spanish, which signifies a Colonie or towne.

Seuentie Ingenios in San Tomé.

To euery of the Ingenios or sugar-houses (which in all may amount to the number of seuentie) do belong Negro-slaues, for the planting of their canes and the dressing of their sugars; to some, two hundred, and to others, three hundred a piece, who liue vpon Maiz or Ghinay-wheat: the number of which slaues is so great, that oftentimes they rebell, to the great damage of the Portugals. They haue good sustenance also by meanes of a root, called there Igame, but in the west Indies Batata. Wheat that is heere sown, groweth not to any ripenes or graine, but is resolu'd altogether into grasse. They make wine of the Palme-tree. Vines prosper nothing kindly in this place, except it be heere and there one, planted by an house-side, and attended with great diligence. They bring forth clusters at the same time, some ripe, some Greene, and some blossomes onely; and they beare fruit twice in the yeere, as doe the fig-trees likewise. They haue sugar-canes ripe all the yeere long: but melons onely in Iune, Iuly, and August. No tree that beareth fruit with a stone or kernell will fructifie or prosper in this place. Here are found all ouer the Isle certaine crabs or creuises like vnto them of the sea; heere be likewise gray parots; and infinite other birds of diuers sortes; and in the sea are mightie store of whales, especially toward the firme land. The principall riches of this isle consist in sugars, whereof there groweth

great

great abundance. The sugar-canes are planted and cut euery moneth, and in five months they grow to ripenes, but by reason of the moistnes of the ayer, they neither prooue hard nor white, but are of a reddish colour. The tenths which belong to the king amount to the number of 12. or 14. thousand Arrovas, euery Arrova being one and thirtie Italian pound-weight. In times past there were fortie ships yeerely laden therewith; but now of late certaine wormes which eat the roots of the canes, or (as others think) white antes or mice, haue so mightily impaired the growth of this commodity, that now there are not aboute sixe ships laden therewith. The sugar-canes, after they be once ground, they giue vnto their hogges, wherewith they prooue fat, and their flesh is very sauiory. For returne of sugars, the merchants of Europe carry thither meale, wine, swordes, oile, cheefe, hides, drinking-glasse, and certaine shels, which there and in the countries adioining they vse instead of mony. Of the coniunction betweene the men of Europe and the Negro women are bred a generation of browne or tawny people.

This Isle of Saint Thomas together with the principal towne and castle, was in October 1599 taken by part of the same fleet of Hollanders, which not fullie foure moneths before had sacked the isles, castles and townes of Gran Canaria and Gomera.

*Of the Isle del principe, and that of Fernando Po.*

**T**He Isle del principe or of the prince, situate in three degrees of Northerly latitude, and one hundred twentie miles on this side the isle of Saint Thomas, is little in quantitie, but excellent in qualitie: for which cause it is thoroughly tilled and manured. The reuenues thereof (which consist the greatest part in sugars) were in times past allowed vnto the prince of Portugale; whereupon it was named The isle of the prince.

This Isle was in the yeere 1598 taken by certaine ships of war sent forth vnder the conduct of *Julianus Cleuehagen* at the charges of *Balthasar Muscheron* of Camphere in Zeland merchant, who had the conquest thereof giuen him by patent from Prince *Maurice*, and the States generall of the vniited prouinces.

That of *Fernando Po* hath no other matter of speciall note, saue onely a certaine lake which is the originall of sundry freshets of sweete and wholesome water, which make the island to be most pleasant. It seemed so beautiful to the first discoverer thereof, that he termed it *Ilha fermosa*, or The faire isle.

To the west of these two isles are situate the isle of Saint Matthew, and that of Santa Cruz; and afterward hauing passed the Equinoctial, you come to the isle of Saint Paule, and the isle of conception, both which were discovered by *Pedro Aluarez Cabral* in the yeere 1501.

## Of the isles of Cabo verde.

**N**Ext vnto Cape verde it selfe stand The Barbacene which are seuen small isles replenished with greene trees, and full of strange birds vknowne to vs; and yet are they vtterly voide of inhabitants. But those that are called the isles of Cape verde (which by ancient authors are thought to haue bin named Gorgones, or Gorgades, or Helperides) are nine in number, and are situate betwene Cabo verde and Cabo blanco. They were first discovered by Antonio di Nollia Genoway, and began in like sort to be peopled, in the yeere of our Lord 1440. Albeit there are none of them now inhabited, but onely the isle of Sant Iago, and Illa del fogo or The burning isle. The principall of them all is Sant Iago being seuentie miles long, whereon the Portugals haue a faire and strong towne called Ribera grande, with a riuer running through it, and a commodious and secure haven. It is very strongly seated betwene two mountaines, and consisteth of fife hundred families at the least. The riuer (which springeth two leagues from the city) is beautified vpon the bankes thereof with Cedars, Orange-trees, and diuers other plants, amongst which the Palme tree of India that beareth nuts, prospereth exceeding well. The hearbes of Europe grow here as naturally as in their original soile; howbeit the seeds thereof must euery yeere be brought out of Spaine. The isle is generally vneuen and mountainous: but the valleis are passing fertile, and thoroughly inhabited: and here is sowed abundance of rice and Saburro, which groweth to ripenes in fortie daies. Howbeit the soile will beare no wheat. Here is store of cotton also, the cloth whereof is dispersed along the coast of Africa. The shee-gotes here, as likewise in all the isles adjacent, bring forth three and more kids at a birth, euery foure moneths. When the sunne is in Cancer, it raineth here in a manner without ceasing.

To the west of Sant Iago stand the isles of Fogo and Braua being but of small importance (albeit that of Fogo is in some parts thereof inhabited) and to the North of the same is situate the isle of Maio, where there is a lake of two leagues long, which is full of salt; the which is a common thing in all these islands; but in one, more then in any of the other, in that it is full of such like salt-pits, and is therefore called The island of salt, being destitute of all other liuing things, saue onely of wild goates. The isle of Buena vista hath a name contrary to the quality; for it is without all shew of beauty. Of the others I haue nothing woorthie the obseruation.

This towne was taken by sir Francis Drake 1585, and by sir Anthoine Sherley 1596.

## Of the Isles of Arguin.

**A** Little to the south or on the backside of Cabo blanco, within a certaine gulf or baie which entereth thirtie miles into the maine, lie the isles of Arguin, which were discovered in the yeere 1443. so called after the name of the principall of them, which hath great store of fresh water, whereof all the residue are destitute. Here the king of Spaine hath a fortesse, for the traffique of gold and other rich commodities of those countries. These isles are sixe or seuen in number, all little ones, being inhabited by the Azanaghi, who liue of fish, whereof there is plentie in that baie. They go to sea in certaine small botes which they call Almadies. The names of the other isles (as farre as I can see) are The isle of Penguins, The isles of Nar, Tider, and Adeget.

## Of the Isles in the Atlantick Ocean, and first of the Canaries.

**F**Or so the isles named of olde *Insula fortunata* (which euer since the decay of the Romaine empire, till within these two hundred yeeres, lay undiscovered) are at this present called. They are in number twelve, (although the ancient writers make mention but of sixe) that is to say, Canaria, Lantarotta, Fuerte ventura, Hierro, Palma, Gomera, Santa Clara, Illa de lobos, La Roca, Gratirosa, Alegrança, and Inferno. They generally abound with barley, sugar, hony, goates, cheese, hides, and Orchel, being a herbe commodious to die cloth withall, and whereof they make great merchandise. Amongst other beasts they haue also camels. The natural inhabitants of the countrey are of a good disposition, and notable agilitie; but before they were discovered, they were so grosse and rude, as they knewe not the vse of fire. They beleued in one creatour of the world, who punished the euill, and rewarded the good; and in this point they all consented, but in other matters they were very different. They had no iron at all, but yet esteemed it much when any came to their hands, for the vse thereof. They made no account of gold or silver, iudging it a folly to esteem of that mettall, which could not serue for mechanickall instruments. Their weapons were stones and stauces. They shaued their heads with certaine sharpe stones like to flint. The women would not willingly nurse their owne children, but caused them to be suckled by goates. They were and are at this day delighted with a kinde of dance which they vse also in Spaine and in other places, and because it tooke originall from thence, it is called The Canaries. From hence also they bring certaine birds which sing at all times of the yeere. The greatest of all these isles is the \*Gran Canaria, containing fower-score and ten miles in circuit, and it hath to the number of nine thousand inhabitants.

Tenerif

\*This isle with the principall towne and canals was discovered by the Hol-landers in Iune Anno 1599.



The Pike of  
Tenerif.

Tenerif is not altogether so great. This is esteemed one of the highest islands in the world, by reason of a mountaine therein of the forme of a diamond, being (as it is reported) fifteene leagues high, & it may be seene more then three score leagues off. Hierro hath neither spring nor well, but is miraculously furnished with water by a cloud which ouer-spreadeth a tree, from whence distilleth so much moisture, as sufficeth both for men and cattell. This cloud ariseth an hower or two before the sunne, and is dissolved two howers after sunne rising. The water falleth into a ponde made at the foote of the tree. The isle of Palma is little, but beautifull, and abundant in sugar, wine, flesh, and cheefe: wherefore such ships as go from Spaine to Terra firma, and Brasil, do there ordinarily provide themselves of fresh victuall. It is from Lisbon a thousand miles by sea, being much subiect to tempests, and especially those which come from the northwest.

Of these islands Lançarota, Hierro, and Gomera are in the hands of priuate men: the others belong to the crowne.

*Of the Isles of Madera and Puerto santo.*

Madera in Spanish  
signifieth  
wood or timber.

**M**adera is the greatest and most principal of all the isles in the Atlantick Ocean. It standeth in two and thirtie degrees and an halfe, fortie miles to the south west of Puerto santo. So it is called, because at the first discouerie thereof it was all ouergrown with mightie thick woods. Wherefore, to waste the said woods, and to make it fit to be manured, the first discouerers set them on fire, which continued burning (as some report) for the space of certaine yeeres together: whereupon it grew so exceedingly fertile, that of corne it yeeldeth sixtie folde for one: and for a certaine space the fiftie part of the sugars amounted yeerely to three score thousand Arrovas (one of which Arrovas containeth fiue and twentie pounds of sixteene ounces the pound) but now it cometh not to the one halfe of that reckoning. This isle containeth in compasse an hundred & sixtie miles. It is divided into foure regions or quarters, that is to say Comerico, Santa Cruz, Funcial, and Camara de los Lobos. It aboundeth with water: and besides diuiners & sundry fountaines, it hath eight small riuers which make it as fruitfull and pleasant as a garden. It yeeldeth euery thing in such perfection, that *Cadamoſta* (in regard of their excellency) affirmeth all commodities which are there gathered, to be gold. It produceth infinite store of fruits, excellent wines, and sugars which cannot be matched. Heere is likewise great abundance of cedars, whereof are made fine chestes and other works of account: for which purpose there are diuers sawing milles vpon the foresaid riuers. This isle is very scarce of oile and of corne. The head or principall citie hereof is Funcial, being the seat of an archbishop who hath 8000. ducates of reuenue. Here are two fortresses built which command the hauen.

Puerto santo,  
the principall  
gouerne whereof

Fortie miles to the northeast of Madera lieth the isle of Puerto santo, so called because it was discovered vpon the day of all saints, in the yeere 1428. It

It containeth in compasse fifteene miles, and aboundeth with oxen, wilde swine, and honies; and yeeldeth wheat sufficient for the vse of the inhabitants. Heere groweth a fruite in bignes and shape like vnto a cherry, but of a yellow colour. The tree that beareth this fruit being cut neere the roote with certaine strokes of an hatchet, putteth foorth the yeere following a kinde of gum which is called Sanguis Draconis.

The generation of one shee-cony bigge with yoong, brought hither out of Portugale at the first inhabiting of this isle, did in short time so exceedingly increase, that the inhabitants were quite out of hope euer to repaire the ruine and waste which they committed. At this present there is a small isle neere vnto Puerto santo which breedeth nothing but conies.

Vnto all these might be added such isles as lie neere the African coast within the streights of Gibraltar: the principall whereof (as namely Pennon or The little rocke ouer against Velles de Gumera, with the isle of Gerbi, &c.) because they are largely described by Iohn Leo, I hold it a matter meere-ly vaine and superfluous in this place to stande vpon them.

*An approbation of the historie ensuing, by me*

RICHARD HAKLVYT.



Being mooued to publish mine opinion as touching this present Historie of Iohn Leo; I do hold and affirme it to be the verie best, the most particular, and methodicall, that euer was written, or at least that hath come to light, concerning the countries, peoples, and affaires of Africa. For which cause, and knowing well the sufficiency of the translator, my selfe was the first and onely man that perswaded him to take it in hand. Wherein how diligently and faithfully he hath done his part, and how he hath enlarged and graced this Geographicall historie out of others, the best ancient and moderne writers, by adding a description of all those African maine lands and isles, and other matters verie notable, which Iohn Leo himselfe hath omitted: I referre to the consideration of all iudiciall and indifferent Readers.

*Richard Hakluyt.*



Nto this approbation of master *Richard Hakluyt*, I holde it not altogether amisse to adioine the testimonies of certaine moderne writers, the most approoued and famous for their skill in Geographie and historie, which they haue also purposely set downe in commendation of this author of ours *John Leo*.

First therefore master *John Baptista Ramusius*, Secretarie to the State of Venice, and a man of singular iudgement and diligence in these matters, in his epistle Dedicatorie before the third edition of his first volume of voia- ges, speaking of the manifold difficulties which he vnderwent to bring the important discourses therein, to light, writteth vnto learned *Fracastorius* in manner following.

*Ultra che gli essemplari che mi son venute alle mani, &c.*

**M**Oreouer (saith he) those copies which haue come to my hands, haue beene extremely fowle and vncorrect; a matter sufficient to discourage the minde of any man, though neuer so forward and resolute, were it not sustained by considering what vnspeakable delight these discourses will breed vnto all those that are studious in Geography; and most especially this of *Africa* written by *John Leo*. Concerning which part of the world, euen till these our daies, we haue had no knowledge in a manner out of any other authour, or at leastwise neuer any information so large, and of so vndoubted truth. But what do I heere speake of the delight which those that are learned and studious shall reape heereby? Asthough it were not a matter which will affoord also very much satisfaction vnto the greatest Lords and Princes? Whom it concerneth more then any other to know the secrets and particularities of this African part of the world, together with the situations of all the regions, prouinces, and cities thereof, and the dependences, which the princes and people haue one towards another. For albeit they may haue some aduertisements & instructions from others that haue personally trauailed these countries, & may think their writings & discourses to be very large; yet am I well assured, that hauing once read this booke of *John Leo*; and thoroughly considered the matters therein contained and declared, they will esteeme the relations

ons

ons of all others, in comparison of this, to be but brieft, vnperfect, and of little moment: so great will be the fruit which to their exceeding contentment, all readers shall reape heereby, &c. Thus farre *Ramusius*.

*Abraham Ortelius before his generall  
mappe of Africa hath these  
wordes.*

*Ex recentioribus, &c.*

**A**Mong the late writers (for your more perfect knowledge of *Africa*) you must read *Aloisius Cadamosta*, *Vasco da Gama*, and *Francis Aluarez*, who trauailed *Ethiopia*; *Sed omnium accuratissime &c.* but of all others you haue it most exactly described by *John Leo*.

*Also the same author before his map of  
Barbary and Biledulgerid.*

**B**Vt (saith he) concerning these regions and people, you shall finde a most exquisite description in the Historie of *John Leo*; &c.

*The opinion of I O H N B O D I N in the fourth  
chapter of his method of reading Hi-  
stories concerning this  
our author.*

*Ita quoque Leo Afer, genere Maurus, &c.*

**S**O likewise *Leo Afer* by descent a More, borne in Spaine, in religion a Mahumetan, and afterward a Christian, hauing by continuall iournies trauelled almost ouer all *Africa*; as al-

fo

so ouer Asia minor, and a good part of Europe, was taken by certaine pirates, and presented vnto pope *Leo* the tenth: vnder whom he translated into Italian all those things which with incredible studie and diligence he had written in the Arabick toong, concerning Africa, the manners, lawes, and customes of the African people, and the situation and true description of the whole countrey. Their militarie discipline he lightly passeth ouer: and briefly mentioneth the conflicts and victories of famous warriours, without any orations or ornaments of speech, rather like a Geographer then a Chronicler: and with a perpetuall delight of new and strange things, he doth (as it were) perforce detain his Reader, &c. And a little after he addeth: *Profecto vnus est ex omnibus*, &c. Certes of all others this is the onely man, by whom Africa, which for a thousand yeeres before had lien buried in the barbarous and grosse ignorance of our people, is now plainly discovered and laide open to the view of all beholders.

*Antonius Possevinus de historicis  
sect. 7. cap. 2.*

*Sed & perdigna est lectu, &c.*

**A**lso the Historie of *Leo Afer* the Geographer is most worthy to be read, because it containeth an exact description of all the regions and people of Africa; and it hath bene published in Italian and French.



# IOHN LEO HIS FIRST BOOKE OF the description of Africa, and of the memorable things contained therein.

*Why this part of the worlde was  
named Africa.*



**A**FRICA is called in the Arabian toong *Iphrichia*, of the word *Farica*, which signifieth in the said language, to diuide: but why it should be so called, there are two opinions; the first is this: namely, because this part of the worlde is diuided from Europa by the Mediterran sea, and from Asia \*by the riuier of Nilus. Others are of opinion, that this name *Africa* was deriued from one *Iffricus* the king of Arabia Felix, who is saide to haue bene the first that euer inhabited these partes. This *Iffricus* waging warre against the king of Assyria, and being at length by him driuen out of his kingdome, passed with his whole armie ouer Nilus, and so conducting his troupes westward, made no delay till he was come vnto the region lying about Carthage. Hence it is that the Arabians do imagine the countrie about Carthage onely, and the regions lying westward thereof, to comprehend all Africa.

\* Others diuide  
it from Asia by  
the red sea.

*The borders of Africa.*



**A**FRICA (if we may giue credite vnto the writers of that nation, being men of learning, and most skillfull Cosmographers) beginneth southward at certaine riuers issuing forth of a lake in the desert of Gaoga. Eastward it bordereth vpon the riuier Nilus. It extendeth northward to that part of Egypt; where Nilus at seuen mouthes dischargeth his streames into the Mediterran sea: from whence it stretcheth westward as farre as the streites of Gibraltar, and is bounded on that part with the vtmost sea-towne of all Libya, called \*Nun. Likewise the south part thereof abutteth vpon the Ocean sea, which compasseth Africa almost as farre as the deserts of Gaoga.

\* Ngy.

## The diuision of Africa.



VR authors affirme, that Africa is diuided into fower partes, that is to say, Barbaria, Numidia, Libya, and the lande of Negros. Barbaria taketh beginning from the hill called Meies, which is the extreme part of all the mountaines of Atlas, being distant from Alexandria almost three hundred miles. It is bounded on the North side with the Mediterranean sea, stretching thence to mount-Meies aforesaid, and from mount-Meies extending it selfe to the streites of Gibraltar. Westward it is limited with the said streites, from whence winding it selfe out of the Mediterranean sea into the maine Ocean, it is inclosed with the most westerly point of Atlas: namely, at that Westerne cape which is next vnto the towne called Messa. And southward it is bounded with that side of Atlas which lieth towards the Mediterran sea. This is the most noble and worthie region of all Africa, the inhabitants whereof are of a browne or tawnie colour, being a ciuill people, and prescribe wholsome lawes and constitutions vnto themselves.

The second part of Africa is called of the Latines *Numidia*, but of the Arabians *Biledulgerid*: this region bringeth forth dates in great abundance. It beginneth eastward at the citie of Eloacat, which is an hundred miles distant from Egypt, & extendeth west as far as the towne of \*Num, standing vpon the Ocean sea. Northward it is inclosed with the south side of Atlas. And the south part thereof bordereth vpon the sandie deserts of Libya. All the Arabians doe vsually call it The land of dates: because this onely region of Africa beareth dates.

The third part called of the Latines *Libya*, and of the Arabians *Sarya* (which word signifieth a desert) beginneth eastward at that part of Nilus which is next vnto the citie of Eloacat, and from thence runneth westward as far as the Ocean sea. Northwarde it is bounded with Numidia, southward it abutteth vpon the land of Negros, eastward it taketh beginning at the kingdome of Gaoga, and stretcheth westwarde euen to the land of Gualata, which bordereth vpon the Ocean sea.

The fourth part of Africa which is called the land of Negros, beginneth eastward at the kingdome of Gaoga, from whence it extendeth west as far as Gualata. The north part thereof is inclosed with the desert of Libya, and the south part, which is vnknownen vnto vs, with the Ocean sea: howbeit the merchants which daily come from thence to the kingdome of Tombuto, haue sufficiently described the situation of that countrie vnto vs. This lande of Negros hath a mightie riuer, which taking his name of the region, is called Niger: this riuer taketh his originall from the east out of a certaine desert called by the foresaide Negros *Sen*. Others will haue this riuer to spring out of a certaine lake, and so to run westward

The riuer of  
Niger.

westward till it exonerateth it selfe into the Ocean sea. Our Cosinographers affirme, that the said riuer of Niger is deriued out of Nilus, which they imagine for some certaine space to be swallowed vp of the earth, and yet at last to burst forth into such a lake as is before mentioned. Some others are of opinion, that this riuer beginneth westward to spring out of a certaine mountaine, and so running east, to make at length a huge lake: which verily is not like to be true; for they vsually saile westward from Tombuto to the kingdome of Ginea, yea and to the land of Melli also; both which in respect of Tombuto are situate to the west: neither hath the said land of Negros any kingdomes comparable, for beautifull and pleasant soile, vnto those which adioine vnto the bankes of Niger. And here it is to be noted, that (according to the opinion of our Cosinographers) \* that land of Negros by which Nilus is said to run (namely, that part of the world which stretcheth eastward euen to the Indian sea, some northerly parcell whereof abutteth vpon the red sea, to wit, the countrie which lieth without the gulse of Arabia) is not to be called any member or portion of Africa; and that for many reasons, which are to be found in the proceffe of this historie set downe more at large: The said countrie is called by the Latines *Aethiopia*. From thence come certaine religious Friers seared or branded on the face with an hot iron, who are to be seene almost ouer all Europe, and specially at Rome. These people haue an Emperour, which they call *Prete Gianni*, the greater part of that land being inhabited with Christians. Howbeit, there is also a certaine Mahumetan among them, which is said to possesse a great dominion.

\* Aethiopia.

## A diuision of the fower forenamed partes of Africa.



Barbarie is distinguished into fower kingdomes: the first whereof is the kingdome of Maroco; which is likewise diuided into seuen regions or prouinces; namely, Hea, Sus, Guzula, the territorie of Maroco, Duccala, Hazcora, & Tedles. The second kingdome of Barbarie called Fez, comprehendeth in like sort seuen regions within the bounds thereof; to wit, Temesne, the territorie of Fez, Azgara, \* Elabat, Errif, Garet, and \* Elcauz. The third kingdome is called \* Telenfin, and hath three regions vnder it, namely, the mountaines, Tenez, and Algezer. The fourth kingdome of Barbarie is named Tunis; vnder which are comprized fower regions, that is to say, Bugia, Constantina, Tripolis in Barbarie, and Ez-zaba, which is a good part of Numidia. Bugia hath alwaies beene troubled with continuall warres; because sometimes it was subiect vnto the king of Tunis, and sometimes againe vnto the king of Tremizen. Certaine it is that euen vntill these our daies, this Bugia was a kingdome of it selfe, and so continued, till the principall citie of that region was at the

\* Habat.  
\* Chauz.  
\* Tremizen.

commandement of *Ferdinando* the king of Castile, taken by one *Peter* of Nauarre.

*The diuision of Numidia.*



His is the basest part of all Africa; neither will our Cosmographers vouchsafe it the name of a kingdome, by reason that the inhabitants thereof are so far distant asunder; which you may easily coniecture by that which followeth. Tessel a cite of Numidia containeth about fower hundred families, and is in regard of the Libyan desert, seuered from all places of habitation almost three hundred miles; wherefore this second part is thought by diuers not to be woorthie the name of a kingdome. Howbeit we will make some relation of the habitable partes of Numidia; some whereof may not vnfitly bee compared with other regions of Africa, as for example, that of Segelmess, which territorie of Numidia lieth ouer against Barbarie; likewise Zeb, which is situate against Bugia, and the signiorie of Biledulgerid, which extendeth vnto the kingdome of Tunis. Reseruing therefore many particulars for the second part of this historie, we wil make our entrie and beginning at those places, which lie vpon the west of Numidia: the names whereof be these; Tessel, Gualden, Ifren, Hacca, Dare, Tebelbelt, Todga, Fercalle, Segelmess, Benigumi, Fighig, Tegua, Tfabit, Tegoratin, Mesab, Tegort, and Guarghela. The region of Zeb containeth fower townes, to wit, Pescara, Elborgh, Nesta, Taolac, and Deusin: so many cities likewise hath the territorie of Biledulgerid; namely, Teozar, Caphesa, Nesreoa, Elchamid, and Chalbiss: and from hence eastward are found the isles of Gerbe, Garion, Messellata, Mestrata, Teoirraga, Gademis, Fizza, Augela, Birdeoa, and Eloacat. These are the names of the most famous places of all Numidia, being bounded (as is said before) westward vpon the Ocean sea, and eastward with the riuer of Nilus.

*A description of the Libyan deserts, which lie betweene Numidia and the land of Negros.*



These deserts haue not as yet any certaine name amongst vs, albeit they be diuided into fower partes, and receiue all their denomination from the inhabitants which dwell vpon them, that is to say, from the Numidians, who are in like sort themselves diuided into fower partes also, to wit, the people or tribes called Zaneaga, Ganziga, Terga, Leuta, and Berdeoa. There bee likewise certaine places, which take some proper and particular name from the goodnes and badnes of the soile; as namely the desert of Azaohad, so called for the drought and vnfruitfulness of that place: likewise Hair, albeit a desert, yet so called for the goodnes and temperature of the aire.

*A diuision of the land of Negros into seuerall kingdomes.*



Oreouer, the land of Negros is diuided into many kingdomes: whereof albeit a great part be vnknown vnto vs, and remooued farre out of our trade; we will notwithstanding make relation of those places, where we ourselues haue abroad, and which by long experience are growne very familiar vnto vs: as likewise of some other places, from whence merchants vsed to trauell vnto the same cities wherein my selfe was then resident; from whom I learned right well the state of their countries. I \* my selfe saw fiftene kingdomes of the Negros: <sup>John L. ... nelled ouer ... kingdomes of the land of Negros.</sup> howbeit there are many more, which although I saw not with mine owne eyes, yet are they by the Negros sufficiently known and frequented. Their names therefore (beginning from the west, and so proceeding Eastward and Southward) are these following: Gualata, Ghinea, Melli, Tombuto, Gago, Guber, Agadez, Cano, Cafena, Zegzeg, Zanfara, Guangara, Burno, Gaoga, Nube. These fiftene kingdomes are for the most part situate vpon the riuer Niger, through the which merchants vsually trauell from Gualata to the cite of \* Alcair in Egypt. The journey indeede is very long, but yet secure and voide of danger. All the said kingdomes adioine one vpon another; ten whereof are separated either by the riuer Niger, or by some sandie desert: and in times past each one of the fiftene had a seueral king, but now \* at this present, they are all in a \* <sup>About the yeere 1526.</sup> manner subiect vnto three kings onely: namely, to the king of Tombuto who is Lord of the greatest part; to the king of Borno, who gouerneth the least part, and the residue is in subiection vnto the king of Gaoga: howbeit he that possesseth the kingdome of Ducala hath a very small traine attending vpon him. Likewise these kingdomes haue many other kingdomes bordering vpon the South frontiers of them: to wit, Bito, Temiam, Dauma, Medra, and Gorhan; the gouernors and inhabitants whereof are most rich and industrious people, great louers of iustice and equitie, albeit some lead a brutish kinde of life.

*Of the habitations of Africa, and of the signification of this word Barbar.*



Vt Cosmographers and historiographers affirme, that in times past Africa was altogether disinhabited, except that part which is now called the land of Negros: and most certaine it is, that Barbarie and Numidia were for many ages destitute of inhabitants. The tawny people of the said region were called by the name of *Barbar*, being deriued of the verbe *Barbara*, which in their toong signifieth to murmur: because the African



toong foundeth in the eares of the Arabians, no otherwise then the voice of beasts, which utter their sounds without any accents. Others will haue *Barbar* to be one word twife repeated, forsomuch as *Bar* in the Arabian toong signifieth a desert. For (say they) when king *Iphricus* being by the Assyrians or Aethiopians driuen out of his owne kingdome, trauelled towards Aegypt, and seeing himsele so oppressed with his enimies, that he knew not what should become of him and his followers, he asked his people how or which way it was possible to escape, who answered him *Bar-Bar*, that is, to the desert, to the desert: giuing him to vnderstand by this speech, that he could haue no safer refuge, then to crosse ouer Nilus, and to flee vnto the desert of Africa. And this reason seemeth to agree with them, which affirme the Africans to be descended from the people of Arabia foelix.

*The originall of the people of Africa.*

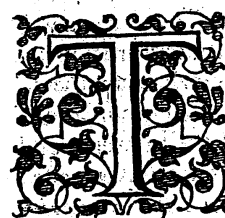


Bout the originall of the Africans, our historiographers doe much disagree. For some will haue them to be deriued from the inhabitants of Palestina; because (as they say) being expelled out of their owne countrie by the Assyrians, they came at length into Africa, & seeing the fruitfulness of the soile, chose it to be their place of habitation. Others are of opinion, that they tooke their originall from the Sabeans a people of Arabia foelix, and that, before such time as they were put to flight by the Assyrians or Aethiopians, as hath beene afore said. Some others report, that the Africans descended from certaine people of \* Asia, who being chased thence by reason of warres which were waged against them, fled into Greece, which at the same time had no inhabitants at all. Howbeit the enimie still pursuing them, they were forced to crosse the sea of Moera, and being arriued in Africa, to settle themselues there: but their enimies abroad still in Greece. All which opinions and reportes are to be vnderstood onely of the originall of the tawnie people, that is to say, of the Numidians and Barbarians. For all the Negros or blacke Moores take their descent from *Chus*, the sonne of *Cham*, who was the sonne of *Noë*. But whatsoeuer difference there be betwene the Negros and the tawnie Moores, certaine it is that they had all one beginning. For the Negros are descended of the Philistims, and the Philistims of *Mesiraim* the \* sonne of *Chus*: but the tawnie Moores fetch their petigree from the Sabeans, and it is euident that *Saba* was begotten of \* *Rama*, which was the eldest sonne of *Chus*. Diuers other opinions there be as touching this matter: which because they seeme not so necessarie, wee haue purposely omitted.

\* *Fortè Asia minor.*

\* Genesis the 10. v. the 6. *Mesiraim* is accounted the brother of *Chus*. \* Gen. 10. 7.

*A diuision of the tawnie Moores into sundrie tribes or nations.*



THE tawnie Moores are diuided into fise feuerall people or tribes: to wit, the tribes called Zanhagi, Musmudi, Zeneti, Hacari, and Gumeri. The tribe of Musmudi inhabite the western part of mount Atlas, from the prouince of Hea to the riuer of \* Seruan. Likewise they dwell vpon the south part of the said mountaine, and vpon all the inward plaines of that region. These Musmudæ haue fower prouinces vnder them: namely, Hea, Sus, Guzula, and the territorie of Marocco. The tribe of Gumeri possesse certaine mountaines of Barbarie, dwelling on the sides of those mountaines which lie ouer against the Mediterran sea: as likewise they are Lords of all the riuer called in their language *Rif*. This riuer hath his fountaine neere vnto the streites of Gibraltar, and thence runneth eastwards to the kingdome of Tremizen, called by the Latines *Cæsaria*. *Tremizen called by the ancient Cosmographers Cæsaria or Mauritania Cæsariensis.*

These two tribes or people haue feuerall habitations by themselues: the other three are dispersed confusiuely ouer all Africa: howbeit they are, like strangers, discerned one from another by certaine properties or tokens, maintaining continuall warre among themselues, especially they of Numidia. These (I say) are those very people (as some report) who had no other places then tents and wide fields to repose themselues in: and it is reported, that in times past they had great conflicts together, and that the vanquished were sent to inhabit townes and cities, but the conquerors held the champions and fieldes vnto themselues, and there seded their aboad. Neither is it altogether vnlikely; because the inhabitants of cities haue all one and the same language with the countrie people. For the Zeneti, whether they dwell in the citie or in the countrie, speake all one kinde of language: which is likewise to be vnderstood of the rest. The tribes of Zeneti, Hacari, and Sanhagi, inhabit the countrie of Temesne: sometimes they liue peaceably, and sometimes againe, calling to minde their ancient quarrels, they breake forth into cruell warres and man-slaughters. Some of these people beare rule ouer all Africa, as namely the Zeneti, who in times past vanquished the familie called *Idris*; from which some affirme the true and naturall Dukes of Fez, and the founders of the same citie to deriue their petigree: their progenie likewise was called *Mecnasa*. There came afterward out of Numidia, another familie of the Zeneti called *Magraoa*: this *Magraoa* chased the familie of *Mecnasa* with all their Dukes and chieftaines out of their dominions. Not long after, the said tribe of *Magraoa* was expelled in like sort by certaine others of the race of the Sanhagij, called by the name of *Luntuna*, which came

came also out of the desert of Numidia.

By this familie was the countrie of Temesna in proceffe of time vnterly spoiled and wasted, and all the inhabitants thereof slaine, except those which were of their owne tribe and kindred of Luntuna, vnto whom was allotted the region of Ducala to inhabit, and by them was built the citie commonly called Maroco. It fell out afterwards by the inconstancie of fortune, that one *Elmahdi* the principall Mahumietan preacher among them, conspiring with the Hargij (these Hargij were of the familie of Musmuda) expelled the whole race of the Luntuna, and vsurped that kingdome vnto himselfe. After this mans decease, succeeded in his place one of his disciples called *Habdul Mumien a Baniguerraghel* of the kindred of the Sanhagij. The kingdome remained vnto this family about an 120. yeeres, whereunto all Africa in a manner was subiect: At length being depofed by the Banimarini, a generation of the Zeneti, the said familie was put to flight: which Banimarini are said to haue reigned afterward for the space of 170. yeeres. The Banimarini which descended of the Sanhagij and of Magroa, waged continuall warre against *Banizeyan* the king of Telenfin: likewise the progenie of Hafasa, and of Musmuda are at variance and diffension with the king of Tunis. So that you see what stirres and tumults haue at all times bene occasioned in those regions by the foresaid fiue families.

Certaine it is, that neither the Gumeri, nor the Haoari haue at this present any iurisdiction at all; albeit heretofore (as we reade in their chronicles) they had some certaine dominion, before such time as they were infected with the Mahumietan lawe. Out of all which it is euident, that in times past all the foresaid people had their habitations and tents in the plaine fields; leuery one of which fauoured their owne faction, and exercised all labours necessarie for mans life, as common among them. The gouernours of the countrie attended their droues and flockes; and the citzens applied themselves vnto some manuall art, or to husbandrie. The said people are diuided into fiue hundred seuerall families, as appeareth by the genealogies of the Africans, author whereof is one *Ibnu Rachu*, whom I haue oftentimes read and perused. Some writers are of opinion, that the king of Tombuto, the king of Melli, and the king of Agadez fetch their originall from the people of Zanaga, to wit, from them which inhabite the desert.

#### The agreement or varietie of the African language.

**T**He foresaid fiue families or people, being diuided into hundreds of progenies, and hauing innumerable habitations, doe notwithstanding vse all one kinde of language, called by them *Aquel Amarig*, that is, the noble toong: the Arabians which inhabite Africa, call it a barbarous toong; and this is the true

Who were the  
founders of  
Maroco.

*Aquel Amarig*

true and naturall language of the Africans. Howbeit it is altogether different from other languages, although it hath diuers words common with the Arabian toong; whereupon some would inferre, that the Africans (as is aboue said) came by lineall descent from the Sabeans, a people of Arabia foelix. Others say, that these words were euen then inuented when the Arabians came first into Africa, and began to take possession thereof: but these authors were so rude and grosse-witted, that they left no writings behinde them, which might be alleaged either for, or against. Moreouer they haue among them another diuersitie, not onely of pronuntiation, but of significant words also: as namely, they which dwell neere vnto the Arabians; and exercise much traffique with them, doe for the greater part vse their language. Yea, all the Gumeri in a manner, and most of the Haoari speake Arabian, though corruptly; which (I suppose) came first hereupon to passe, for that the said people haue had long acquaintance and conuersation with the Arabians. The Negros haue diuers languages among themselves, among which they call one *Sungai*, and the same is current in many regions; as namely, in Gualata, Tombuto, Ghinea, Melli, and Gago. Another language there is among the Negros, which they call *Gubers*; & this is rife among the people of Guber, of Cano, of Cafenaz, of Perzegreg, & of Guangra. Likewise the kingdom of Borno hath a peculiar kinde of speech, altogether like vnto that, which is vsed in Gaoga. And the kingdome of Nube hath a language of great affinitie with the Chaldean, Arabian, & Egyptian toongs. But all the seattowns of Africa frō the Mediterran sea to the mountains of Atlas, speake broken Arabian. Except the kingdome and towne of Maroco, & the inland Numidians bordering vpon Maroco, Fez, & Tremizen; all which, vse the Barbarian toong. Howbeit they which dwell ouer against Tunis & Tripoli, speake indeede the Arabian language; albeit most corruptly.

#### Of the Arabians inhabiting the citie of Africa.



F that armie which was sent by Califa \* *Otmen* the third, in \* *Hutmen*. the fower hundred yeere of the Hegeira, there came into Africa fower score thousand gentlemen and others, who hauing subdued sundrie prouinces, at length arriued in Africa: and there the Generall of the whole armie called \* *Hucha Hibnu* \* *Hucha*. *Nasch* remained. This man built that great citie which is called of vs \* *Alcair*. For he stood in feare of the people of Tunis, least they should \* *Cairaan*. betray him, misdoubting also that they would procure aide out of Sicily, and so giue him the encounter. Wherefore with all his treasure which he had got, he travelled to the desert & firme ground, distant from \* *Car* \* *Tunis*. thage about one hundred and twentie miles, and there is he said to haue built the citie of \* *Alcair*. The remnant of his soldiers he commanded \* *Cairaan*. to keepe those places, which were most secure and fit for their defence, and

and willed them to build where no rocke nor fortification was. Which being done, the Arabians began to inhabit Africa, and to disperse themselves among the Africans, who, because they had bene for certaine yeeres subiect vnto the Romans or Italians, vsed to speake their language: and hence it is, that the naturall and mother-toong of the Arabians, which hath great affinitie with the African toong, grew by little and little to be corrupted: and so they report that these two nations at length conioined themselves in one. Howbeit the Arabians vsually doe blaze their petigree in daily and triuall songs; which custome as yet is common both to \* vs, and to the people of Barbarie also. For no man there is, be he neuer so base, which will not to his owne name, adde the name of his nation; as for example, Arabian, Barbarian, or such like.

\* The Moores  
of Granada.

*Of the Arabians which dwell in tents.*

**T**HE Mahumetan priestes alwaies forbad the Arabians to passe ouer Nilus with their armies and tents. Howbeit in the fower hundred yeere of the Hegeira we reade, that they were permitted so to doe by a certaine factious and schismaticall \* Califa: because one of his nobles had rebelled against him, vsurping the citie of Cairaoan, and the greatest part of Barbarie. After the death of which rebell, that kingdome remained for some yeeres vnto his posteritie and familie; whose iurisdiction (as the African chronicles report) grew so large and strong in the time of *Elcain* (the Mahumetan Califa and patriark of Arabia) that he sent vnto them one *Gehoar*, whom of a slaue he had made his counsellour, with an huge armie. This *Gehoar* conducting his armie westward, recovered all Numidia and Barbarie. Infomuch that he pierced vnto the region of Sus, and there claimed most ample tribute: all which being done, he returned backe vnto his Calipha, and most faithfully surrendred vnto him whatsoever he had gained from the enemy. The Calipha seeing his prosperous successe, began to aspire vnto greater exploits. And *Gehoar* most firmly promised, that as he had recovered that western dominion vnto his Lord, so would he likewise by force of warre most certainly restore vnto him the countries of the East; to wit, Egypt, Syria, and all Arabia; and protested moreouer that with the greatest hazard of his life, he would be auenged of all the iniuries offered by the familie of *Labbus* vnto his Lords predecessors, and would reuest him in the royall seate of his most famous grandfathers, great-grandfathers, and progenitors. The Calipha liking well his audacious promise, caused an armie of fower-score thousand soldiers, with an infinite summe of money and other things necessarie for the warres, to be deliuered vnto him. And so this valiant and stout chieftaine being provided for warfare, conducted his troupes through the deserts of Aegypt & Barbarie; & hauing first put to flight the vice-Califa of Aegypt who fled vnto *Eluir* the

*Gehoar a slaue  
by condition,  
conquered all  
Barbarie, Numidia,  
Egypt,  
and Syria.*

Califa

Califa of Bagdet in short time he subdued very easily all the prouinces of Aegypt and Syria. Howbeit he could not as yet hold himselfe secure; fearing least the Califa of Bagdet would assaile him with an armie out of Asia, and least the garrisons which he had left to keepe Barbarie, should be constrained to forsake those conquered prouinces. Wherefore hee built a citie, and caused it to be walled round about. In which citie he left one of his most trustie captaines, with a great part of the armie: and this citie he called by the name of Alchair, which afterward by others was named Cairo. This Alchair is saide daily so to haue increased, that no citie of the world for buildings and inhabitants was any way comparable thereunto. Now when *Gehoar* perceiued that the Calipha of Bagdet made no preparation for warre, he forthwith wrote vnto his Lord, that all the conquered cities yeelded due honour vnto him, and that all things were in quiet and tranquillitie: and therefore, that himselfe (if he thought good) should come ouer into Aegypt, and thereby with his onely presence should preuaile more to recouer the remnant of his dominions, then with neuer so huge an armie: for he was in good hope that the Calipha of Bagdet hearing of his expedition, would leaue his kingdome and prelacie, and would betake himselfe to flight. This notable and joyfull message no sooner came to the eares of Califa *Elcain*; but he being by his good fortune much more encouraged then before, and not forethinking himselfe what mischief might ensue, leuiued a great armie, appointing for vice-roy of all Barbarie one of the familie of Sanagia aforesaid, finding him afterward not to be his trustie friend. Moreouer Califa *Elcain* arriuing at Alchair, and being most honorably entertained by his seruant *Gehoar*, began to thinke vpon great affaires, and hauing gathered an huge armie, resolved to wage battell against the Califa of Bagdet. In the meane season he that was appointed vice-roy of Barbarie compacting with the Calipha of Bagdet, yeelded himselfe and all Barbarie into his hands. Which the Califa most kindly accepted, and ordained him king ouer all Africa. But Califa *Elcain* hearing this newes at Alchair was woonderfully afflicted in minde; partly because he saw himselfe repelled from his owne kingdome, and partly for that he had spent all his money which hee brought with him: infomuch that he knew not what in the world to doe, determining some seuer punishment for *Gehoar*, by whose counsell he lefth his kingdome of Arabia. Howbeit there was one of his secret counsellors a very learned and wittie man, who seeing his Lord so sad and pensieue, and being desirous by some good aduise to preuent the danger imminent, comforted him in this wise: Your highnes knoweth (most inuincible Califa) that fortune is most variable, and that the courage of your soldiers is no whit daunted by reason of these mishaps. For mine owne part, as I haue heretofore shewed my selfe to be your trustie seruant, so will I at this time giue you such profitable counsell, whereby you may within short space recouer all those dominions which haue

*Gehoar the  
first founder  
of Cairo.*

beene

beene so treacherously taken from you, and may without al peradventure most easily attaine vnto your owne harts desire. And this you may doe without maintaining any armie at all; yea, I assure you, if you please to take mine aduise, that I will forthwith procure you such an armie, as shall giue you great store of money, and yet notwithstanding shall doe you good seruice also. The Califa being somewhat emboldened by these speeches, asked his counsellour how this might possibly be brought to effect: My Lord (saith his counsellor) certaine it is, that the Arabians are now grown so populous and to so great a number, that all Arabia cannot containe them, scarcely wil the yeerely increafe of the ground suffice to feede their droues, and you see with what great famine they are afflicted, and how they are destitute not onely of habitations, but euen of victuals and sustenance. Wherefore if you had heeretofore giuen them leaue, they would long ere this haue inuaded Africa. And if you will now licence them so to doe, doubt you not, but that you shall receiue of them an huge masse of golde. This counsell could not altogether satisfie the Califa his minde: for he knew right well that the Arabians would so waste all Africa, as it should neither bee profitable for himselfe, nor for his enemies. Notwithstanding, seeing that his kingdome was altogether endangered, hee thought it better to accept those summes of money which his counsellour promised, and so to be reuenged of his enemy, then to lose both his kingdome and gold all at once. Wherefore hee permitted all Arabians, which would pay him ducats apeece, freely to enter Africa; conditionally that they would shewe themselves most deadly enemies vnto the treacherous king of Barbarie. Which libertie being granted vnto them, it is reported that ten tribes or families of Arabians, being halfe the people of Arabia deserta, came immediately into Africa; vnto whom certaine inhabitants of Arabia foelix ioyned themselves, insomuch that there were found amongst them about fiftie thousand persons able to beare armes: their women, children, and cattell were almost innumerable: the storie whereof *Ibnu Rachu*, the most diligent chronicler of African affaires (whom we haue before mentioned) setteth downe at large. These Arabians hauing trauesed the desert betwene Aegypt and Barbarie, first laid siege vnto Tripolis a citie of Barbarie, which being overcome, they slew a great part of the citizens, the residue escaping by flight. Next of all they encountred the towne of Capes, which was by them taken and vanquished. At length they besieged Cairaoan also; howbeit the citizens being sufficiently provided of victuals, are said to haue indured the siege for eight monethes: which being expired, they were constrained to yeeld: at what time there was nothing in Cairaoan but wofull slaughters, hideous outcries, and present death. This land the Arabians diuided among themselves, and began to people and inhabite the same; requiring in the meane space large tributes of the townes and prouinces subiect vnto them. And so they possessed all Africa,

Ten tribes of  
Arabians  
inuade  
Africa.

*Ibnu Rachu* a  
famous histo-  
riographer.

Africa, vntill such time as one *Ioseph* the sonne of *Ieffin* attained to the kingdom of Marocco. This *Ioseph* was the first king of Marocco, who endeouored by all meanes to aduance the friends and kined of the late deceased king of Africa vnto the kingdome; neither did he cease vntill he had expelled all the Arabians out of Cairaoan. Howbeit the Arabians possessed the regions thereabout, giuing themselves wholly to spoiles and robberies: and the friends of the said deceased king could beare rule but in certaine places only. Afterward succeeded in the kingdome of Marocco one *Mansor*, who was the fourth king and prelate of that Mahumetan sect which was called *Muachedim*. This man, albeit his grand-fathers & great grand-fathers had alwaies fauoured the posteritie and friends of the foresaid deceased African king, and had restored them to their ancient dignitie; deuised altogether how to oppose himselfe against them, and to vsurpe all their authoritie. Wherefore making a fained league with them, we reade, that he prouoked the Arabians against them, and so very easily overcame them. Afterward *Mansor* brought the greatest part of the Arabians into the westerne dominions of Africa; vnto the better sort of whom he gaue the habitation of Duccala & Azgara, and vnto the baser remnant he bequeathed the possession of Numidia. But in proceffe of time he commanded the Numidian slaues to be set at libertie, and so in despight of the Arabians, he caused them to inhabite that part of Numidia which he had allotted vnto them. But as for the Arabians of Azgara and of certaine other places in Barbarie, he brought them all vnder his subiection. For the Arabians out of deserts are like fishes without water: they had indeede often attempted to get into the deserts; but the mountaines of Atlas, which were then possessed by the Barbarians, hindred their passage. Neither had they libertie to passe ouer the plaines, for the residue of the Barbarians were there planted. Wherefore their pride being abated, they applied themselves vnto husbandrie, hauing no where to repose themselves, but onely in villages, cottages, and tents. And their miserie was so much the greater, in that they were constrained yeerely to disburse vnto the king of Marocco most ample tribute. Those which inhabited Duccala, because they were an huge multitude, easily freed themselves from all tribute, and imposition. A great part of the Arabians remained still at Tunis, for that *Mansor* had refused to carie them along with him: who, after the death of the said *Mansor*, grew to be Lords of Tunis, and so continued, till they resigned their gouernment vnto the people called Abu-Haf; vpon condition that they should pay them halfe the reuenues thereof: and this condition hath remained firme euen vntill our daies. Howbeit, because the Arabians are increased to such innumerable swarmes, that the whole reuenues are not sufficient for them, the king of Tunis most iustly alloweth some of them in their duties, to the end they may make secure passage for merchants, which indeede they performe without molestation or hurt of any. But the residue which are depriued of their pay, betake themselves wholly to robberies, thefts, slaughters, and such other monstrous outrages. For these, lurking



alwaies in the woods, no sooner see any merchant approching, but suddenly they breake forth, depriving him of his goodes and life also: insomuch that now merchants dare not passe that way but with a garrison of safe-conduct. And so they passe sometimes to their great inconuenience. For they are notwithstanding constrained to giue vnto the foresaid Arabians, which are in pay with the king of Tunis, great summes of money: and are likewise oftentimes so in danger of robbers, that they lose both their goods & liues.

*A diuision of the Arabians which inhabite Africa, and are called by the name of Barbarians into diuers progenies or kinreds.*

**T**HE Arabians which inhabite Africa are diuided into three partes: one part whereof are called Cachin, the second Hilell, and the third Machill. The Cachin are diuided into three nations or tribes; to wit, the tribes of Etheg, Sumait, and Sahid. Moreouer Etheg is diuided into three families; that is to say, the familie of Delleg, Elmuntefig, and Subair: and these are disperfed into many regions. Hilel are deriued into fower generations; to wit, the people of Benihemir, of Rich, of Sufien, and of Chufain. The familie of Benihemir is diuided into the linages of Huroam, Hucben, Habrum and Mussim. The tribe of Rich are distributed into the kinreds called Deuvad, Suaid, Asgeg, Elcherith, Enedri, and Garfam; which kinreds possesse many dominions. Machil haue three tribes vnder them: to wit, Mastar, Hutmen, and Hassan. Mastar are diuided into Ruchen, and Selim; Hutmen into Elhafi and Chiman; and Hassan into Deuiheffen, Deuimanfor, and Deuihubaidulla. Deuiheffen is distinguished into the kinreds called Dulein, Berbun, Vodein, Rac-heffen, and lastly Deuihubaidulla, into Garag, Hedeg, Teleb, and Geoan. All these doe in a manner possesse innumerable regions; insomuch that to reckon them vp at large, were a matter not onely difficult, but almost impossible.

*Of the habitations and number of the foresaid Arabians.*

**T**HE most noble and famous Arabians were they of the familie of Etheg, vnto whome *Almanfor* gaue the regions of Duccala and of Tedles to inhabit. These Arabians euen till our times haue beene put to great distresse and hazard, partly by the Portugall king, and partly by the king of Fez. They haue at all oportunities, if need should require, a hundred thousand soldiers fit to beare armes, a great part whereof are horsemen. The Arabians called Sumait enioy that part of the Libyan desert which lieth ouer against the desert of Tripoly. These make often inuasions into Barbarie,

barie, for they haue no places allotted them therein, but they and their camels doe perpetually remaine in the deserts. They are able to leuie fower-score thousand soldiers, the greatest part being footmen. Likewise the tribe of Sahid doe inhabite the desert of Libya: and these haue had alwaies great league and familiaritie with the king of Guargala. They haue such abundance of cattell, that they doe plentifully supply all the cities of that region with flesh, and that especially in sommer time, for all the winter they stirre not out of the deserts. Their number is increased to about a hundred and fiftie thousand, hauing not many horsemen among them. The tribe of Delleg possesse diuers habitations, howbeit \* Casaria containeth the greatest part of them. Some also inhabit vpon the frontiers of the kingdome of Bugia; who are said to receiue a yeerely stipend from their next neighbours. But the least part of them dwell vpon the field-countrie of Acdes, vpon the borders of Mauritania, and vpon some part of mount Atlas, being subiect vnto the king of Fez. The people of Elmuntefig are seated in the prouince of Azgar, and are called by the later writers Elcaluth. These also pay certaine yeerely tribute vnto the King of Fez, beeing able to furnish about eight thousand horsemen to the warres. The kindred of Sobair doe inhabit not farre from the kingdome of Gezeir, being many of them vnder the pay of the king of Tremizen, and are said to enioy a great part of Numidia. They haue, more or lesse, three thousand most warlike horsemen. They possesse likewise great abundance of camels; for which cause they abide all winter in the deserts. The remnant of them occupieth the plaine which lieth betweene Sala and Mecnes. These haue huge droues of cattell, and exercise themselves in husbandrie, being constrained to pay some yeerely tribute vnto the king of Fez. They haue horsemen, who, as a man may say, are naturally framed to the warres, about fower thousand in number.

*Of the people of Hillel, and of their habitations.*


**H**illel, which are also called Benihamir, dwell vpon the frontiers of the kingdome of Tremizen and Oran. These range vp and downe the desert of Tegorarin, being in pay vnder the king of Tremizen, and of great riches and power; insomuch that they haue at all times in a readines for the warres six thousand horsemen. The tribe of Hurua possesse onely the borders of Mustuganim. These are sauage people, giuing themselves wholly to spoiles and robberies, and alienating their mindes from the warres. They neuer come forth of the deserts; for the people of Barbarie will neither allow them any places of habitation, nor yet any stipend at all: horsemen they haue to the number of two thousand. The kindred of Hucban are next neighbours vnto the region of Melian, who receiue certaine pay from the king of Tunis. They are rude and wilde people, and in very deepe estranged from al humanitie: they haue (as it is reported) about fiftene hundred horsemen.



men. The tribe of Habru inhabit the region lying between Oran and Mustanganim: these exercise husbandrie, paying yeerely tribute vnto the king of Tremizen, and being scarce able to make one hundred horsemen.

The people called Mussim possesse those deserts of Masila which extend vnto the kingdome of Bugia. These likewise are giuen onely to theft and robberie; they take tribute both of their owne people, and of other regions adioyning vnto them. The tribe of Riech inhabite those deserts of Libya which border vpon Constantina. These haue most ample dominions in Numidia, being now diuided into sixe parts. This right famous and warlike nation receiue stipende from the king of Tunis, hauing five thousand horsemen at command. The people of Suaid enioy that desert, which is extended vnto the signorie of Tenez. These haue very large possessions, receiuing stipend from the king of Tremizen, being men of notable dexteritie, as well in the warres as in all other conuersation of life. The kindred of Azgeg dwell not all together in one place: for part of them inhabite the region of Garet among the people called Hemram: and the residue possesse that part of Duccala which lieth neere vnto Azaphi. The tribe of Elcherit dwell vpon that portion of Helin which is situate in the plaine of Sahidim, hauing the people of Heah tributarie vnto them, and being a very vnciuill and barbarous people. The people called Enedri are seated in the plaine of Heah: but the whole region of Heah maintaineth almost fower thousand horsemen; which notwithstanding are unfit for the warres. The people of Garfa haue sundrie mansions; neither haue they any king or gouernour. They are disperfed among other generations, and especially among the kindreds of Manebbi and Hemram. These conuay dates from Segelmessa to the kingdome of Fez, and carrie backe againe from thence such things as are necessarie for Segelmess.


*Of the tribe of Machil.*

 HE people called Ruche, who are thought to be descended from Mastar, doe possesse that desert, which lieth next vnto Dedes and Farcala. They haue very small dominions, for which cause they are accounted no whit rich; howbeit they are most valiant soldiers, and exceeding swift of foote; inso-much that they esteeme it a great disgrace, if one of their footemen be vanquished by two horsemen. And you shall finde scarce any one man among them, which will not outgoe a very swift horse; be the iourney neuer so long. They haue about five hundred horsemen; but most warlike footemen, to the number of eight thousand. Selim inhabite vpon the riuer of Dara; from whence they range vp and downe the deserts. They are endowd with great riches, carrying euery yeere merchandize vnto the kingdome of Tombuto, and are thought to be in high fauour with the king himselfe. A large iurisdiction they haue in Darha and great plentie of camels: and for

*Traffique to  
Tombuto.*

for all oportunities of warre they haue euer in a readines three thousande horsemen. The tribe of Elhasis dwelleth vpon the sea-coast neere vnto Messa. They doe arme about five hundred horsemen, and are a nation altogether rude and vnacquainted in the warres. Some part of them inhabiteth Azgara. Those which dwell about Messa are free from the yoke of superiority; but the others which remaine in Azgar are subiect to the king of Fez. The kindred of Chinan are disperfed among them which before were called Elcaluth, and these also are subiect vnto the king of Fez. Very warlike people they are; and are able to set forth two thousand horsemen. The people of Deuimansor are diuided into the kindreds of Duleim, Burbun, Vode, Deuimansor, and Deuihubaidulla. Duleim are conuersant in the deserts of Libya with the African people called Zanhaga. They haue neither dominion nor yet any stipend; wherefore they are very poore and giuen to robberie: they trauell vnto Dara, and exchange cattell for dates with the inhabitants there. All brauerie & comelines of apparell they vterly neglect; and their number of fighting men is ten thousand, fower thousand being horsemen and the residue footmen. The people called Burbun possesse, that part of the Libyan desert, which adioyneth vnto Sus. They are a huge multitude, neither haue they any riches beside camels. Vnto them is subiect the citie of Tesser, which scarce sufficeth them for the maintenance of their horses, being but a few. The people of Vode enioyeth that desert, which is situate betweene Guaden and Gualata. They beare rule ouer the Guadenites, and of the Duke of Gualata they receiue yeerely tribute, and their number is growen almost infinite. For by report they are of abilitie to bring into the field almost threescore thousand most skilful soldiers; notwithstanding they haue great want of horses. The tribe of Racmen occupie that desert which is next vnto Hacha. They haue very large possessions, and doe in the spring-time vsually trauell vnto Tesser: for then alwaies they haue somewhat to doe with the inhabitants there. Their people fit for armes are to the number of twelue thousand; albeit they haue very few horsemen. The nation of Hamrum inhabite the deserts of Tagauost, exacting some tribute of the inhabitants there; and with daily incursions likewise molesting the people of Nuni. Their number of soldiers is almost eight thousand.

*The people descended of Deuimansor.*

 HE generation of Dehemrum, which are saide to deriue their petigree from Deuimansor, inhabite the desert ouer against Segelmess, who continually wander by the Libyan deserts as farre as Ighid. They haue tributarie vnto them the people of Segelmess, of Todgatan, of Tebelbelt, and of Dara. Their soile yeeldeth such abundance of dates, that the yeerely increase thereof is sufficient to maintaine them, although they had nothing else to liue on. They are of great fame in other nations, being able to furnish for the warres about three thousand

sand horsemen. There dwell likewise among these certaine other Arabians of more base condition, called in their language *Garfa Esgeh*; which notwithstanding haue great abundance of horses and of all other cattell. A certaine part also of the people Hemrun obtaineth many and large possessions among the Numidians, from whence they haue a notable yeerely reuenue brought them in: this part of Hemrun maketh often excursions towards the deserts of Fighig. In summer they disperse themselves all ouer the prouince of Garet, possessing the east part of Mauritania. They are noble and honest persons, and endued with all kinde of humanitie and ciuilitie; insomuch that all the kings of Fez in a manner do vsually chuse them wiues out of the same tribe; needes therefore must there be great friendship and familiaritie among them. The people of Menebbe doe almost inhabite the very same desert, hauing two prouinces of Numidia vnder them; to wit, Matgara, and Retebbe. These also are a most valiant nation, being in pay vnder the prouince of Segelmess, and being able to make about two thousand horsemen. The kindred of Husein, which are thought to be descended of Deuimanfor, are seated vpon the mountaines of Atlas. They haue in the said mountaines a large iurisdiction, namely diuers castles euery where, and many most rich and flourishing cities, all which, they thinke, were giuen them in olde time by the vice-royes of the Marini: for so soone as they had wooon that kingdome, the kindred of Husein afforded them great aide and seruice. Their dominion is now subiect vnto the kings of Fez and of Segelmess. They haue a capitaine, which for the most part resideth at the citie commonly called Garfaluin. Likewise they are alwaies, in a manner, trauesing of that desert which in their language is called *Eddara*. They are taken to be a most rich and honest people, being of abilitie to furnish for the warres about fixe thousande horsemen. Among these you shall oftentimes finde many Arabians of another sort, whom they vse onely to be their seruants. The tribe of Abulhusein doe inhabite part of the foresaid desert of Eddara, howbeit a very smal part: the greatest number of whom are brought vnto such extreme miserie, that they haue not in those their wilde tents sufficient sustenance to liue vpon. True it is, that they haue built them certaine habitations vpon the Libyan deserts; but yet they are cruelly pinched with famine and with extreme penurie of all things: and (that there might be no end of their miserie) they are constrained to pay yeerely tribute vnto their kindred and parents.

*The offspring of Deuihubaidulla.*



NE generation of the people of Deuihubaidulla are those which are named Gharrag: these enioy the deserts of Benigomi and Fighig, hauing very large possessions in Numidia. They are stipendaries vnto the king of Tremizen; who diligently endeouoreth to bring them to peace and tranquillitie of life; for they are

are wholly giuen to theft and robbrie. In sommer time they vsually repaire vnto Tremizen, where they are thought for that season of the yeere to settle their aboad: their horsemen are to the number of fower thousand, all which are most noble warriours. The kindred of Hedeg possesse a certaine desert neere vnto Tremizen, called in their owne language Hangad. These haue no stipend from any prince, nor yet any iurisdiction at all, rapine and stealth is onely delightfull vnto them, they prouide onely for their familie and themselves, and are able to set forth about fise hundred horsemen. The tribe of Theleb inhabite the plaine of \* Algezer: these haue often vagaries <sup>\* Alger.</sup> ouer the deserts vnto the prouince of Tedgear. Vnto them were subiect in times past the most famous cities of Algezer and Tedelles: howbeit in these our daies they were recouered againe from them by *Barbarossa* the Turke; which losse could not but greatly grieue and molest their king. It is reported moreover, that at the same time, the principal of the said people of Theleb were cut off. For strength and cunning in chiuallrie they were inferiour to no other nation; their horsemen were about three thousand. The tribe of Gehoan inhabite not all in one place: for part of them you may finde among the people of Guarag, and the residue amongst the people of Hedeg, and they are vnto them no otherwise then their seruants, which condition they notwithstanding most patiently and willingly submit themselves vnto. And here one thing is to be noted by the way; to wit, that the two forenamed people called \* Schachin and Hiel <sup>\* The Arabians called Schachin and Hiel descended from Ismael the base sonne of Abraham.</sup> are originally Arabians of Arabia deserta, and thinke themselves to be descended from *Ismael* the sonne of *Abraham*. And those which wee called Machil, came first forth of *Ismael* the base sonne of *Abraham*. <sup>The Arabians called Machil descended of Saba.</sup> And those which wee called Machil, came first forth of *Ismael* the base sonne of *Abraham*. Before whom the Mahometans preferre the former, which of *Ismael* are called Ismaelites. And because there hath alwaies beene great controuersie among them, which part should be of greater nobilitie, they haue written on both sides many dialogues and epigrams, whereby each man is woont to blaze the renownme, the vertuous manners, and laudable customes of his owne nation. The ancient Arabians, which were before the times of the Ismaelites, were called by the African historiographers Arabi-Araba, as if a man should say, Arabians of Arabia. But those which came of *Ismael*, they call Arabi Mus-Araba, as if they should say, Arabians ingrafted into the land of Arabia, or Arabians accidentally, because they were not originally bred & borne in Arabia. And the which afterward came into Africa, they name in their language Mustehgeme, that is, barbarous Arabians; and that because they ioyned themselves vnto strangers, insomuch that not only their speech, but their manners also are most corrupt and barbarous. These are (friendly reader) the particulars, which for these ten yeeres my memorie could referue, as touching the originals and diuersities of the Africans and Arabians; in all which time I remember not, that euer I read or saw any historie of that nation. He that will know more, let him haue recourse vnto *Hibnu Rachu* the historiographer beforenamed.

*The manners and customes of the African people, which inhabit the deserts of Libya.*

The people of  
Numidia.



There be five kindes of people before rehearsed, to wit, the people of Zenega, of Ganfiga, of Terga, of Leuta, and of Bardeoa, are called of the Latins *Numidae*: and they live all after one manner, that is to say, without all lawe and ciuilitie. Their garment is a narrow and base peece of cloth, wherewith scarce halfe their bodie is couered. Some of them wrap their heads in a kinde of blacke cloth, as it were with a scarfe, such as the Turks vse, which is commonly called a Turbant. Such as will be discerned from the common sort, for gentlemen, were a iacket made of blew cotton with wide sleeues. And cotton-cloth is brought vnto them by certaine merchants from the land of Negros. They haue no beastes fit to ride vpon except their camels; vnto whom nature, betweene the bunch standing vpon the hinder part of their backs and their neckes, hath allotted a place, which may fitly serue to ride vpon, in stead of a saddle. Their manner of riding is most ridiculous. For sometimes they lay their legs acrosse vpon the camels neck; and sometimes againe (hauing no knowledge nor regard of stirrops) they rest their feete vpon a rope, which is cast ouer his shoulders. In stead of spurres they vse a truncheon of a cubites length, hauing at the one end thereof a goad, wherewith they pricke onely the shoulders of their camels. Those camels which they vse to ride vpon haue a hole bored through the gristles of their nose, in the which a ring of leather is fastened; whereby as with a bit, they are more easily curbed and mastered; after which manner I haue seene buffles used in Italie. For beds, they lie vpon mats made of sedge and bulrushes. Their tents are couered for the most part with course chamlet, or with a harsh kinde of wooll which commonly groweth vpon the boughes of their date-trees. As for their manner of liuing, it would seeme to any man incredible what hunger and scarcitie this nation will indure. Bread they haue none at all; neither vse they any seething or roasting; their foode is camels milke onely, and they desire no other dainties. For their breakefast they drinke off a great cup of camels milke: for supper they haue certaine dried flesh steeped in butter and milke, wherof each man taking his share, eateth it out of his fist. And that this their meate may not stay long vndigested in their stomackes, they sup off the foresaid broth wherein their flesh was steeped: for which purpose they vse the palmes of their hands as, a most fit instrument framed by nature to the same end. After that, each one drinks his cup of milke, & so their supper hath an ende. These Numidians, while they haue any store of milke, regard water nothing at all, which for the most part happeneth in the spring of the yeere, all which time you shall finde some among them that will neither wash their hands nor their faces. Which seemeth not altogether to be vnlkely; for (as we said before) while their milke lasteth, they frequent not those

Wooll growing  
vpon the Palme  
tree.

those places where water is common: yea, and their camels, so long as they may feede vpon grasse, will drinke no water at all. They spende their whole daies in hunting and theeuing; for all their indeuour and exercise is to drine away the camels of their enemies; neither will they remaine about three daies in one place, by reason that they haue not pasture any longer for the sustenance of their camels. And albeit (as is aforesaid) they haue no ciuilitie at all, nor any lawes prescribed vnto them; yet haue they a certaine gouernour, or prince placed ouer them, vnto whom they render obedience and due honour, as vnto their king. They are not onely ignorant of all good learning and liberall sciences; but are likewise altogether careles and destitute of vertue: insomuch that you shall finde scarce one amongst them all which is a man of iudgement or counsell. And if any iniuriéd partie will goe to the lawe with his aduersarie, he must ride continually five or sixe daies before he can come to the speech of any iudge. This nation hath all learning and good disciplines in such contempt, that they will not once vouchsafe to goe out of their deserts for the studie and attaining thereof: neither, if any learned man shall chance to come among them, can they loue his companie and conuersation, in regarde of their most rude and detestable behauiour. Howbeit, if they can finde any iudge, which can frame himselfe to liue and continue among them, to him they giue most large yeerely allowance. Some allow their iudge a thousand ducates yeerely, some more, and some lesse, according as themselves thinke good. They that will seeme to be accounted of the better sort, couer their heads (as I said before) with a peece of blacke cloth, part whereof, like a vizard or maske, reacheth downe ouer their faces, couering all their countenance except their eies; and this is their daily kinde of attire. And so often as they put meate into their mouthes they remooue the said maske, which being done, they foorthwith couer their mouths againe; alleging this fond reason: for (say they) as it is vnseemely for a man, after he hath receiued meate into his stomack, to vomite it out of his mouth againe and to cast it vpon the earth; euen so it is an vndecent part to eate meate with a mans mouth vncouered. The women of this nation be grosse, corpulent, and of a swart complexion. They are fattest vpon their brest and paps, but slender about the girdle-stead. Very ciuill they are, after their manner, both in speech and gestures: sometimes they will accept of a kisse; but whoso tempteth them farther, putteth his owne life in hazard. For by reason of ielousie you may see them daily one to be the death and destruction of another, and that in such sauage and brutish manner, that in this case they will shew no compassion at all. And they seeme to be more wise in this behalfe then diuers of our people, for they will by no meanes match themselves vnto an harlot. The liberalitie of this people hath at all times beene exceeding great. And when any trauellers may passe through their drie and desert territories, they will neuer repaire vnto their tents, neither will they themselves trauell vpon the common high way. And if any carouan or multitude of merchants will passe those deserts, they are bound

bound to pay certaine custome vnto the prince of the said people, namely, for euery camels load a peece of cloth woorth a ducate. Vpon a time I remember that traueilling in the companie of certaine merchants ouer the desert called by them Araoan, it was our chaunce there to meete with the prince of Zanaga; who, after he had receiued his due custome, inuited the said companie of merchants, for their recreation, to goe and abide with him in his tents fower or fīue daies. Howbeit, because his tents were too farre out of our way, and for that we should haue wandered farther then we thought good, esteeming it more conuenient for vs to hold on our direct course, we refused his gentle offer, and for his courtesie gaue him great thanks. But not being satisfied therewith, he commanded that our camels should proceede on forward, but the merchants he carried along with him, and gaue them very sumptuous entertainment at his place of aboad. Where wee were no sooner arriued, but this good prince caused camels of all kindes and ostriches, which he had hunted and taken by the way, to be killed for his household prouision. Howbeit we requested him not to make such daily slaughters of his camels; affirming moreouer, that we neuer vsed to eate the flesh of a gelt camell, but when all other victuals failed vs. Whereunto hee answered, that he should deale vnciuilly, if he welcommed so woorthie and so seldome-seene guests with the killing of small cattell onely. Wherefore he wished vs to fall to such prouision as was set before vs. Here might you haue seene great plentie of roasted and sodden flesh: their roasted ostriches were brought to the table in wicker platters, being seasoned with sundrie kindes of herbes and spices. Their bread made of Mill and panicke was of a most fauorie and pleasant taste: and alwaies at the end of dinner or supper we had plentie of dates and great store of milke serued in. Yea, this bountifull and noble prince, that he might sufficiently shew how welcome we were vnto him, would together with his nobilitie alwaies beare vs companie: howbeit we euer dined and supped apart by our selues. Moreouer he caused certaine religious and most learned men to come vnto our banquet; who, all the time we remained with the said prince, vsed not to eate any bread at all, but fed onely vpon flesh and milke. Whereat we being somewhat amazed, the good prince gently told vs, that they all were borne in such places whereas no kinde of graine would grow: howbeit that himselfe, for the entertainment of strangers, had great plentie of corne laid vp in store. Wherefore he bad vs to be of good cheere, saying that he would eate onely of such things as his owne natie soile afforded: affirming moreouer, that bread was yet in vse among them at their feast of passeouer, and at other feasts also, whereupon they vsed to offer sacrifice. And thus we remained with him for the space of two daies; all which time, what woonderfull and magnificent cheere we had made vs, would seeme incredible to report. But the third day, being desirous to take our leaue, the prince accompanied vs to that place where we ouertooke our camels and companie sent before. And this I dare most deeply take mine oath on, that we spent the saide prince ten times

camels and  
Ostriches vsed  
or victuals.

more,

more, then our custome which he receiued came to. Wee thought it not amisse here to set downe this historie, to declare in some sort the courtesie and liberalitie of the said nation. Neither could the prince aforesaid vnderstand our language nor we his; but all our speech to and fro was made by an interpreter. And this which we haue here recorded as touching this nation, is likewise to be vnderstood of the other fower nations aboue mentioned, which are disperfed ouer the residue of the Numidian deserts.

*The manners and customes of the Arabians which  
inhabite Africa.*

THE Arabians, as they haue sundrie mansions and places of aboad, so doe they liue after diuers and sundry maner. Those which inhabite betweene Numidia and Libya leade a most miserable and distressed life; differing much in this regard from those Africans, whom wee affirmed to dwell in Libya. Howbeit they are farre more valiant then the said Africans; and vse commonly to exchange camels in the lande of Negros: they haue likewise great store of horses, which in Europe they call horses of Barbarie. They take woonderfull delight in hunting and pursuing of deere, of wilde asses, of ostriches, and such like. Neither is it here to be omitted, that the greater part of Arabians which inhabite Numidia, are very wittie and conceited in penning of verses; wherein each man will decipher his loue, his hunting, his combates, and other his woorthie actes: and this is done for the most part in ryme, after the Italians manner. And albe it they are most liberally minded, yet dare they not by bountifull giuing make any shew of wealth; for they are daily oppressed with manifold inconueniences. They are apparelled after the Numidians fashion, sauing that their women differ somewhat from the women of Numidia. Those deserts which they doe now enioy were wont to be possessed by Africans: but the Arabians with their armie inuading that part of Africa, draue out the naturall Numidians, and reserved the deserts adioining vpon The land of dates, vnto themselves: but the Numidians began to inhabite those deserts which border vpon the land of Negros. The Arabians which dwell betweene mount Atlas and the Meditteran sea are far wealthier then these which we now speake of, both for coslines of apparell, for good horse-meate, and for the statelines and beautie of their tents. Their horses also are of better shape and more corpulent, but not so swift as the horses of the Numidian desert. They exercise husbandrie and haue great increase of corne. Their droues and flockes of cattell be innumerable, insomuch that they cannot inhabite one by another for want of pasture. They are somewhat more vile and barbarous then those which inhabite the deserts, and yet they are not altogether destitute of liberalitie: part of them, which dwell in the territorie of Fez are subiect vnto the king of Fez. Those which remaine in Marocco and Duccala haue continued this long time free from all exaction and tribute: but so soone as the

Where the Bar-  
barie horses  
are bred.

Arabian poems  
and verses.

king



*The Arabians  
offer themselves  
slaves to any  
that would re-  
leeue their ex-  
treme hunger.*

king of Portugall began to beare rule ouer Azafi and Azamor, there began also among them strife and ciuill warre. Wherefore being assailed by the king of Portugall on the one side, and by the king of Fez on the other, and being oppressed also with the extreme famine and scarcitie of that yere, they were brought vnto such miserie, that they freely offered themselves as slaves vnto the Portugals, submitting themselves to any man, that was willing to releue their intolerable hunger: and by this meanes scarce one of them was left in all Duccala. Moreouer those which possesse the deserts bordering vpon the kingdomes of Tremizen and Tunis may all of them, in regard of the rest, be called noblemen and gentlemen. For their gouernours receiuing euery yere great reuenues from the king of Tunis, diuide the same afterward among their people, to the end they may auoid all discord: and by this meanes all dissension is eschewed, and peace is kept firme and inuiolable among them. They haue notable dexteritie and cunning, both in making of tents, and in bringing vp and keeping of horses. In summer time they vsually come neere vnto Tunis, to the end that each man may provide himselfe of bread, armour, and other necessities: all which they carrie with them into the deserts, remaining there the whole winter. In the spring of the yere they applie themselves to hunting, inasmuch that no beast can escape their pursuit. My selfe, I remember, was once at their tents, to my no little danger and inconuenience; where I sawe greater quantitie of cloth, brasse, yron, and copper, then a man shall oftentimes finde in the most rich ware-houses of some cities. Howbeit no trust is to be giuen vnto them; for if occasion serue, they will play the theues most flyly and cunningly; notwithstanding they seeme to carrie some shewe of ciuilitie. They take great delight in poetrie, and will pen most excellent verses, their language being very pure and elegant. If any woorthie poet be found among them, he is accepted by their gouernours with great honour and liberalitie; neither would any man easily belceue what wit and decencie is in their verses. Their women (according to the guise of that countrie) goe very gorgeously attired: they weare linnen gownes died black, with exceeding wide sleeues, ouer which sometimes they cast a mantle of the same colour or of blew, the corners of which mantle are very artificially fastened about their shoulders with a fine siluer clasp. Likewise they haue rings hanging at their eares, which for the most part are made of siluer: they weare many rings also vpon their fingers. Moreouer they vsually weare about their thighes and ankles certaine scarfes and rings, after the fashion of the Africans. They couer their faces with certaine masks hauing onely two holes for their eyes to peepe out at. If any man chance to meete with them, they presently hide their faces, passing by him with silence, except it be some of their allies or kinsfolks; for vnto them they alwaies discouer their faces, neither is there any vse of the said maske so long as they be in presence. These Arabians when they trauell any iourney (as they oftentimes doe) they set their women vpon certaine saddles made handsomely of wicker for the same purpose, and

fastened

fastened to their camels backs, neither be they any thing too wide, but fit onely for a woman to sit in. When they goe to the warres each man carries his wife with him, to the end that she may cheere vp her good man, and giue him encouragement. Their damfels which are vnmarrried doe vsually paint their faces, breests, armes, hands, and fingers with a kinde of counterfeite colour: which is accounted a most decent custome among them. But this fashion was first brought in by those Arabians, which before we called Africans, what time they began first of all to inhabite that region; for before then, they neuer vsed any false or glozing colours. The women of Barbarie vse not this fond kind of painting, but contenting themselves only with their naturall hiew, they regarde not such fained ornaments: howbeit sometimes they will temper a certaine colour with hens dung and saffron, wherewithall they paint a little round spot on the bals of their cheeks, about the breadth of a French crowne. Likewise betweene their cie-browes they make a triangle, and paint vpon their chinnes a patch like vnto an oliue leafe. Some of them also doe paint their cie-browes: and this custome is very highly esteemed of by the Arabian poets and by the gentlemen of that countrie. Howbeit they will not vse these fantastick ornaments aboue two or three daies together: all which time they will not be seene to any of their friends, except it be to their husbands and children: for these paintings seeme to bee great allurements vnto lust, whereby the said women thinke themselves more trim and beautifull.

*How the Arabians in the deserts betweene Barbarie and  
Egypt doe lead their lines.*

THE life of these men is full of miserie and calamitie: for the places where they inhabite are barren and vnpleasant. They haue some store of camels and other cattell: howbeit their fodder is so scarce, that they cannot well sustaine them. Neither shall you finde ouer all the whole region any place fit to beare corne. And if in that desert there be any villages at all, which vse to husband and manure their ground; yet reape they small commoditie thereby, except it be for plentifull increafe of dates. Their camels and other of their cattell they exchange for dates and corne; and so the poore husbandmen of the foresaide villages haue some small recompence for their labours: notwithstanding, how can all this satisfie the hunger of such a multitude? For you shall dayly see in Sicilia great numbers of their sonnes layde to pawne. Because when they haue not wherewithall to pay for the corne which they there buy, they are constrained to leaue their sonnes behinde them, as pledges of future payment. But the Sicilians, if their money be not paid them at the time appointed, will challenge the Arabians sonnes to be their slaves. Which day being once past, if any father will redeeme his childe, he must disburse thrise or fower times so much as the due debt amounteth vnto: for which cause they are the most notable

C 1

theeues

*The Arabians  
of Barca lay  
their sonnes to  
pawne vnto the  
Sicilians for  
corne.*



theccus in the whole world. If any stranger fall into their hands, deprivi-  
 him of all that he hath, they presently carrie him to Sicilie, and there either  
 sell or exchange him for come. And I thinke, that no merchants durst at  
 any time within these hundred yeeres arrive for traffiques sake vpon any  
 part of their coast. For when they ate to passe by with merchandize, or  
 about any other weightie affaires, they eschew that region five hundred  
 miles at the least. Once I remember, that I my selfe, for my better securi-  
 tie, and to avoide the danger of those mischievous people, went in com-  
 panie with certaine merchants, who in three ships sayled along their coast.  
 We were no sooner espied of them; but forthwith they came running to  
 the shore, making signes that they would traffique with vs to our great ad-  
 vantage. Howbeit because we durst not repose any trust in them, none of  
 our companie would depart the ship, before they had deliuered certaine  
 pledges vnto vs. Which being done, we bought certaine Eunuchs or gel-  
 ded men, and good store of butter of them. And so immediately weighing  
 our ankens we betooke vs to flight, fearing least we should haue beene met  
 withall by the Sicilian and Rhodian Pirates, and beene spoiled not onely  
 of our goods, but of our liberties also. To be short, the saide Arabians are  
 verie rude, forlorne, beggerly, leane, and hunger-starued people, hauing  
 God (no doubt) alwayes displeased against them, by whose vengeance they  
 daily sustaine such grievous calamities.

*Of the people called Soara, namely, which possesse droues and flockes of cattell,  
 and being Africans by birth, do notwithstanding imitate the  
 manners of the Arabians.*



**Y**Ov shall finde many among the Africans which liue alto-  
 gether a shepherds or drouers life, inhabiting vpon the be-  
 ginning of mount Atlas, and being dispersed here and there  
 ouer the same mountaine. They are constrained alwaies  
 to pay tribute either to the King of the same region where  
 they dwell, or else to the Arabians, except those onely which inhabite Te-  
 mesna, who are free from all forren superioritie, and are of great power.  
 They speake the same kinde of language that other Africanes doe, except  
 some fewe of them which conuerse with the inhabitants of the citie called  
 Vibis (which is neere vnto Tunis) who speake the Arabian toong. Moreo-  
 uer there is a certaine people inhabiting that region which diuideth Nu-  
 midia from Tunis. These oftentimes wage warre against the King of Tunis  
 himselfe, which they put in practise not many yeeres since, when as the said  
 King his sonne marching towards them from Constantina with an armie,  
 for the demanding of such tribute as was due vnto him, fought a verie vn-  
 fortunate battell. For no sooner were they aduertised of the Kings sonne  
 his approach, but forthwith they went to meete him with two thousande  
 horsemen, and at length vanquished and slew him at vnawares, carrying  
 home

*The overthrow  
 and death of the  
 King of Tunis  
 his sonne.*

home with them all the furniture, bagg and baggage, which he had brought  
 forth. And this was done in the yeere of Mahumets Heggira 215. From  
 that time their fame hath beene spread abroad in all places. Yea, many of  
 the king of Tunis his subjects reuolted from their King vnto them; inso-  
 much that the Prince of this people is growen so puissant, that scarcely is  
 his equall to be found in all Africa.

*Of the faith and religion of the ancient Africans*

*or Moares.*



**T**H ancient Africans were much addicted to idolatrie,  
 euen as certain of the Persians are at this day, some of whom  
 worship the sunne, and others the fire, for their gods. For  
 the saide Africans had in times past magnificent and most  
 stately temples built and dedicated, as well to the honour of  
 the sunne as of the fire. In these temples day and night they kept fire kind-  
 led, giuing diligent heed that it might not at any time be extinguished, euen  
 as we read of the Romane Vestall virgines: All which you may read more  
 fully and at large in the Persian and African Chronicles. Those Africans  
 which inhabited Libya and Numidia, would each of them worship some  
 certaine planet, vnto whom likewise they offered sacrifices and prayers.  
 Some others of the land of Negros worship *Guighimo*, that is to say, *The  
 Lord of Heauen*. And this found point of religion was not deliuered vnto  
 them by any Prophet or teacher, but was inspired, as it were, from God him-  
 selfe. After that they embraced the Iewish law, wherein they are said to haue  
 continued many yeeres. Afterward they professed the Christian religion,  
 and continued Christians, vntill such time as the *Mahumetan* superstition  
 preuailed; which came to passe in the yeere of the Heggira 208. About  
 which time certaine of *Mahomets* disciples so bewitched them with elo-  
 quent and deceiueable speeches, that they allured their weake minds to con-  
 sent vnto their opinions; inso much that all the kingdomes of the Negros  
 adioyning vnto Libya receiued the *Mahumetan* lawe. Neither is there any  
 region in all the Negros land, which hath in it at this day any Christians at  
 all. At the same time such as were found to be Iewes, Christians, or of the  
 African religion, were slaine euerie man of them. Howbeit those which  
 dwell neere vnto the Ocean sea, are all of them verie grosse idolaters. Be-  
 tweene whom and the Portugals there hath beene from time to time and  
 euen at this present is, great traffique and familiaritie. The inhabitants  
 of Barbarie continued for many yeeres idolaters; but before the comming  
 of *Mahomet* about 250 yeeres, they are saide to haue embraced the Chri-  
 stian faith: which some thinke came to passe vpon this occasion; namely,  
 because that of part Barbarie which containeth the kingdome of Tripolis  
 and Tunis, was in times past gouerned by *Apulian* & *Sicilian* Captaines, and  
 the countries of *\*Casaria* and of *\*Mauritania* are supposed to haue beene

*\*Trenizen.  
 \*Masore and  
 Fez.*

subject vnto the Gothes. At what time also many Christians fleeing from the furie and madness of the Gothes left their native soyle of Italy, and at length arrived in Africa neere vnto Tunis: where hauing staid, their abode for some certaine space, they began at length to haue the dominion ouer all that region. Howbeit the Christians which inhabited Barbarie, not respecting the rites and ceremonies of the Church of Rome, followed the Arrians religion and forme of liuing: and one of the African Christians was that most godly and learned father Saint *Augustine*. When the Arabians therefore came to conquer that part of Africa they found Christians to be Lords ouer the regions adiacent; of whom, after sundry hot conflicts, the saide Arabians got the victorie. Whereupon the Arrians being deprived of all their dominions and goods went part of them into Italy and part into Spaine. And so about two hundred yeeres after the death of *Mahomet*, almost all Barbarie was infected with his law. Howbeit afterward, civile dissensions arising among them, neglecting the law of *Mahomet*, they flue all the priests and gouernours of that region. Which tumult when it came to the eares of the Mahumetan Caliphas, they sent an huge armie against the saide rebels of Barbarie, to wit, those which were reuolted from the Calipha of Bagdet, and severely punished their misdemeanor. And euen at the same time was layd the most pernicious foundation of the Mahumetan law, notwithstanding there haue remained many heresies among them euen vntill this verie day. As touching the patrons of the Mahumetan law, and likewise concerning the difference in religion betweene the Mahumetans of Africa, and them of Asia, we will (by Gods grace) write more in another feuerall volume; and in the meane season, let these particulars which we haue noted suffice the Reader.

A booke written by John Leo concerning the Mahumetan religion.

### Of the letters and characters of the Africans.

The Africans used in times past none other kind of letters but the Roman letters.

\* Perhaps the meanest the histories of Sallust, Titus Livius, and others:

These writers which record the histories of the Arabians doings are all romely of opinion, that the Africans were wont to vse onely the Latine letters. And they doe most constantly affirme, that the Arabians, when they first invaded Africa and especially Barbarie (which was the principall seate of the Africans) founde no letters nor characters there, beside the Latine. Neitherindeed doe they denie that the Africans haue a peculiar kinde of language, but this they firmly avouch, that they haue the very same letters which the Helians or Florentines a people of Italie haue. The Arabians haue no historie\* of African matters, which was not first written in Latine. They haue certaine ancient authors, who writ partly in the times of the Arrians and partly before their times, the names of all which are cleane forgotten. Howbeit it is very likely that those Latine authors haue written many volumes: for when their interpreters laboured to perswade something vnto vs, I remember they would say, it is contained in the seuenieth booke. Neither did they in translating of the said

said volumes altogether follow the authors order; but taking the historie of some one prince; they would conioine his time and actions with the historie of the Persian, Assyrian, and Chaldean kings, or of the Israelites, which concerned the same times. But when as those which rebelled against the Calipha of Bagdet (as is aforesaid) got the vpper hand in Africa, they burnt all the Africans bookes. For they were of opinion, that the Africans, so long as they had any knowledge of naturall philosophie or of other good artes and sciences, would euery day more and more arrogantly contemne the lawe of Mahumer. Contrariwise, some historiographers there are which affirme, that the Africans had a kinde of letters peculiar vnto themselves; which notwithstanding, from the time wherein the Italians began first to inhabite Barbarie, and wherein the Christians fleeing out of Italie from the Gothes, began to subdue those prouinces of Africa, were vtterly abolished and taken away. For it is likely that a people vanquished shoulde follow the customes and the letters also of their conquerors. And did not the same thing happen to the Persians, while the Arabians empire stood? For certaine it is, that the Persians at the same time lost those letters which were peculiar vnto their nation; and that all their bookes, by the commandement of the Mahumetan prelates, were burnt, least their knowledge in naturall philosophie, or their idolatrous religion might mooue them to contemne the precepts of Mahumer. The like also (as we shewed before) befell the Barbarians when as the Italians and the Gothes vsurped their dominions in Barbarie; which may here (I hope) suffice the gentle reader. Howbeit this is out of doubt, that all the sea-cities and inland-cities of Barbarie doe vse Latine letters onely, whensoever they will commit any epigraphes or any other verses or prose vnto posteritie. The consideration of all which former particulars hath made me to be of opinion, that the Africans in times past had their owne proper and peculiar letters, wherein they described their doings and exploits. For it is likely that the Romans, when they first subdued those prouinces (as conquerours vsually doe) vtterly spoiled and tooke away all their letters and memorie, and established their owne letters in the stead thereof; to the end that the fame and honour of the Roman people might there onely be continued. And who knoweth not that the very same attempt was practised by the Goths vpon the stately buildings of the Romans, and by the Arabians against the monuments of the Persians. The very same thing likewise we daily see put in practise by the Turks, who when they haue gotten any citie or towne from the Christians, doe presently cast forth of the temples all the images and memorials of their saints. And to omit all the aforesaid, may we not in our time see the like daily practised in Rome; where sumptuous and stately buildings left vnperfect by reason of the vntimely death of one Pope, are for some noueltie vtterly ruined and destroyed by his next successour? Or else, doth not the new Pope cause his predeceffours armes to be razed, and his owne in stead thereof to be set vp? Or at the least, if he will not seeme so arrogant, letting his prede-

The Mahumetan Califas caused all the bookes of the Persians to be burned.

cessours monuments stand still, doth he not erect others for himselfe farre more sumptuous and stately. No maruell therefore, though so long succession of times and so many alterations haue quite bereaued the Africans of their letters. Concerning those nine hundred yeeres wherein the Africans vsed the letters of the Arabians; *Iohn Ruchib*, a most diligent writer of Africa, doth in his Chronicle most largely dispute; whether the Africans euer had any peculiar kinde of writing or no. And at last he concludeth the affirmative part; that they had: for (saith he) whoeuer denieth this, may as well denie, that they had a language peculiar vnto themselves. For it cannot be that any people should haue a proper kinde of speech, and yet should vse letters borrowed from other nations, and being altogether vnsit for their mother-language.

*Of the situation of Africa.*



So there are fower partes in Africa, so the situation thereof is not in all places alike. That part which lieth towards the Mediterranean sea, that is to say, from the streites of Gibraltar to the frontiers of Aegypt, is here and there full of mountaines: Southward it is extended about a hundred miles, albeit in some places it be larger and in some other narrower. From the saide mountaines vnto mount Atlas there is a very spacious plaine & many little hillocks. Fountaines there are in this region great store, which meeting together at one head doe send forth most beautifull riuers and cristall streames. Betweene the foresaid mountaines and the plaine countrie is situate the mountaine of Atlas; which beginning westward vpon the Ocean sea, stretcheth it selfe towards the east as farre as the borders of Aegypt.ouer against Atlas lieth that region of Numidia which beareth dates, being euer where almost sandie ground. Betweene Numidia and the land of Negros is the sandie desert of Libya situate, which containeth many mountaines also; howbeit merchants trauell not that way, when as they may goe other waies with more ease and lesse danger. Beyond the Libyan desert beginneth the land of Negros, all places whereof are barren and sandie except those which adioine vpon the riuer of Niger, or through the which any riuer or streame runneth.

*Of the vnpleasant and snowie places in Africa.*



Li the region of Barbarie, and the mountaines contained therein, are subiect more to cold then to heat. For seldome commeth any gale of winde which bringeth not some snow therewith. In al the said mountaines there grow abundance of fruits, but not so great plentie of corne. The inhabitants of these mountaines liue for the greatest part of the yeere vpon barlie bread. The

The springs & riuers issuing forth of the said mountaines, representing the qualitie and taste of their natie soile, are somewhat muddie and impure, especially vpon the confines of Mauritania. These mountaines likewise are replenished with woods and loftie trees, and are greatly stored with beastes of all kindes. But the little hils and vallies lying betweene the foresaid mountaines and mount Atlas are far more commodious, and abounding with corne. For they are moistened with riuers springing out of Atlas, and from thence holding on their course to the Mediterran sea. And albeit woods are somewhat more scarce vpon these plaines, yet are they much more fruitfull, then be the plaine countries situate betweene Atlas and the Ocean sea, as namely the regions of Maroco, of Duccala, of Tedles, of Temesna, of Azgara, and the countrie lying towards the straites of Gibraltar. The mountaines of Atlas are exceeding colde and barren, and bring forth but small store of corne; beeing woody on all sides, and engendring almost all the riuers of Africa. The fountaines of Atlas are euen in the midst of summer extremely cold; so that if a man dippeth his hand therein for any long space, he is in great danger of loosing the same. Howbeit the said mountaines are not so cold in all places: for some partes thereof are of such milde temperature, that they may be right commodiously inhabited: yea and sundry places thereof are well stored with inhabitants; as in the second part of this present discourse we will declare more at large. Those places which are destitute of inhabitants be either extremely cold, as namely the same which lie ouer against Mauritania: or very rough and vnpleasant, to wit, those which are directly opposite to the region of Temesna. Where notwithstanding in summer time they may feede their great and small cattell, but not in winter by any meanes. For then the North winde so furiously rageth, bringing with it such abundance of snowe; that all the cattell which till then remaine vpon the saide mountaines, and a great part of the people also are forced to lose their liues in regard thereof: wherefore whoeuer hath any occasion to trauell that way in winter time, chuseth rather to take his iourney betweene Mauritania and Numidia. Those merchants which bring dates out of Numidia for the vse and seruice of other nations, set forth vsually vpon their iourney about the ende of October; and yet they are oftentimes so oppressed and overtaken with a sudden fall of snowe, that scarcely one man among them all escapeth the danger of the tempest. For when it beginneth to snow ouer night, before the next morning not onely carts and men, but euen the verie trees are so drowned & overwhelmed therein, that it is not possible to finde any mention of them. Howbeit the dead carcases are then founde when the sunne hath melted the snow. I my selfe also, by the goodnes of almighty God, twice escaped the most dreadfull danger of the foresaid snow; whereof, if it may not be tedious to the reader, I will heere in few wordes make relation. Vpon a certaine day of the foresaid moneth of October, traelling with a great companie of Merchants towards Atlas, we were there about the sunne going downe weather-beaten with a most cold and snowie kinde

*The mountaines of Atlas exceeding cold.*

*Most wonderful and terrible fall of snowes.*

*The extreme danger of snow, which John Leo himselfe escaped*

kinde of hayle. Here we found eleuen or twelue horsemen (Arabians to our thinking) who perswading vs to leaue our carts and to goe with them, promised vs a good and secure place to lodge in. For mine owne part, that I might not seeme altogether vnciuill, I thought it not meete to refuse their good offer; albeit I stood in doubt least they went about to practise some mischief. Wherefore I bethought my selfe to hide vp a certaine summe of gold which I had as then about me. But all being ready to ride, I had no leisure to hide away my coine from them; whereupon I fained that I would goe ease my selfe. And so departing a while their companie, and getting me vnder a certaine tree, whereof I tooke diligent notice, I buried my money betweene certaine stones and the roote of the said tree. And then we rode on quietly till about midnight. What time one of them thinking that he had staid long ynough for his pray, began to vtter that in words which secretly he had conceiued in his minde. For he asked whether I had any money about me or no? To whom I answered, that I had left my money behind with one of them which attended the cartes, and that I had then none at all about me. Howbeit they being no whit satisfied with this answer, commanded me, for all the cold weather, to strip my selfe out of mine apparell. At length when they could find no money at all, they said in iesting & scoffing wise, that they did this for no other purpose, but onely to see how strong and hardie I was, and how I could endure the cold and tempestuous season. Well, on we rode, seeking our way as well as we could that darke and dismall night; and anone we heard the bleating of sheepe, coniecturing thereby, that we were not farre distant from some habitation of people. Wherefore out of hand we directed our course thitherwards: being constrained to leade our horses through thicke woods and ouer steepe and craggie rocks, to the great hazard and perill of our liues. And at length after many labours, wee found shepherds in a certaine caue: who, hauing with much paines brought their cattell in there, had kindled a lustie fire for themselves, which they were constrained, by reason of the extreme cold, daily to sit by. Who vnderstanding our companie to be Arabians, feared at the first that we would do them some mischief: but afterward being perswaded that we were driuen thither by extremitie of cold, and being more sectre of vs, they gaue vs most friendly entertainment. For they set bread, flesh, and cheesc before vs, wherewith hauing ended our suppers, we laid vs along each man to sleepe before the fire. All of vs were as yet exceeding cold, but especially my selfe, who before with great horroure and trembling was stripped starke naked. And so we continued with the said shepherds for the space of two daies: all which time we could not set forth, by reason of continuall snowe. But the thirde day, so soone as they saw it leaue snowing, with great labour they began to remooue that snowe which lay before the doore of their caue. Which done, they brought vs to our horses, which we found well provided of hay in another caue. Being all mounted, the shepherds accompanied vs some part of our way, shewing vs where the snowe was of least depth, and yet euen there it

touched our horse bellies. This day was so cleere, that the sunne tooke away all the cold of the two daies going before. At length entring into a certaine village neere vnto Fez, we vnderstood, that our cartes which passed by, were ouerwhelmed with the snowe. Then the Arabians seeing no hope of recompence for all the paines they had taken (for they had defended our carts from theeues) carried a certaine few of our companie with them as their captiue, (who had lost a great quantitie of dates, by reason of the snowe aforesaid) to the end that he might remaine as their prisoner, till he had satisfied for all the residue. From my selfe they tooke my horse, and committed mee vnto the wide world: and to fortune. From whence, riding vpon a mule, within three daies I arriued at Fez, where I heard dolefull newes of our merchants and wares, that they were cast away in the snowe. Yea, they thought that I had beene destroyed with the rest; but it seemed that God would haue it otherwise. Now, hauing finished the historie of mine owne misfortunes, let vs returne vnto that discourse where we left. Beyond Atlas there are certaine hot & dry places moistened with very few riuers, but those which flow out of Atlas it selfe: some of which riuers running into the Libyan deserts are dried vp with the sands, but others do ingender lakes. Neither shal you finde in these countries any places apt to bring forth corne, notwithstanding they haue dates in abundance. There are also certaine other trees bearing fruit, but in so small quantitie, that no increase nor gaine is to be reaped by them. You may see likewise in those partes of Numidia which border vpon Libya certaine barren hills destitute of trees, vpon the lower parts whereof growe nothing but vnprofitable thornes and shrubs. Amongst these mountaines you shall finde no riuers nor springs, nor yet any waters at all, except it be in certaine pits and wels almost vnknown vnto the inhabitants of that region. Moreouer in fixe or seuen daies iourney they haue not one drop of water, but such as is brought vnto them by certaine merchants vpon camels backs. And that especially in those places which lye vpon the maine road from Fez to Tombuto, or from Treminzen to \*Agad. That iourney likewise is verie dangerous which is of late found out by the merchants of our daies from Fez to Alcair ouer the deserts of Libya, were it not for an huge lake in the way, vpon the bankes whereof the Sinites and the Goranites doe inhabit. But in the way which leadeth from Fez to Tombuto are certaine pits enuironed either with the hides or bones of camels. Neither doe the merchants in sommer time passe that way without great danger of their liues: for oftentimes it falleth out, when the south winde bloweth, that all those pits are stopped vp with sande. And so the merchants, when they can finde neither those pits, nor any mention thereof, must needes perishe for extreame thirst: whose carcases are afterward found lying scattered here and there, and scorched with the heat of the sunne. One remedie they haue in this case, which is verie strange: for when they are so grievously oppressed with thirst, they kill forthwith some one of their camels, out of whose bowels they wring and expresse some quantitie of water, which water they drinke

*A strange remedie vsed by the African merchants to quench their thirst.*



A merchant  
constrained by  
extreme thirst,  
gave ten thou-  
sand ducats  
for a cup of  
water.

The fruit called  
Goron.  
Cocos, Cucum-  
bers, Onions.

they drinke and carrie about with them, till they haue either found some pit of water, or till they pine away for thirst. In the desert which they cal Azaoad there are as yet extant two monuments built of marble, vpon which marble is an Epitaphe engrauen, signifying that one of the said monuments represented a most rich merchant; and the other a carrier or transporter of wares. Which wealthie merchant bought of the carrier a cup of water for tenne thousand ducats, and yet this pretious water could suffice neither of them; for both were consumed with thirst. This desert likewise containeth sundry kinds of beasts, which in the fourth part of this discourse concerning Libya, and in our treatise of the beasts of Africa, we will discourse of more at large. I was determined to haue written more concerning those things which happened vnto my self & the rest of my company traueilling through the Libyan deserts vnto Gualata. For sometime being sore a thirst, we could not find one drop of water, partly because our guide strayed out of the direct course, and partly because our enemies had cut off the springs and chanelles of the foresaid pits and wells. Inasmuch that the small quantitie of water which we found, was sparingly to be kept; for that which would scarce suffice vs for five daies, we were constrained to keepe for ten. But if I should commit to writing all things woorthy of memorie, a whole yeare were not sufficient for me. The lande of Negros is extreme hot, hauing some store of moy-  
sture also, by reason of the riuier of Niger running through the midst thereof. All places adioining vpon Niger doe mightily abound both with cattle & corne. No trees I saw there but only certain great ones, bearing a kind of bitter fruit like vnto a chestnut, which in their language is called Goron. Likewise in the same regions grow Cocos, cucumbers, onions, and such kinde of herbes and fruits in great abundance. There are no mountaines at all either in Libya or in the land of Negros: howbeit diuers fennes and lakes there are; which (as men report) the inundation of Niger hath left behinde it. Neither are the woods of the said regions altogether destitute of Elephants and other strange beastes; whereof we will make relation in their due place.

*What naturall impressions and motions the aire of Africa is subject vnto;  
and what effects ensue thereupon.*



Throughout the greatest part of Barbarie stormie and cold weather begin commonly about the midst of October. But in December and Ianuarie the cold groweth somewhat more sharpe in all places: howbeit this happeneth in the morning onely, but so gently and remissely, that no man careth greatly to warme himselfe by the fire. Februarie somewhat mitigateth the cold of winter, but that so inconstantly, that the weather changeth sometime fue and sometime fixe times in one day. In March the north and west windes vsually blowe, which cause the trees to be adorned with blossoms. In Aprill all fruits attaine to their

their proper forme and shape, inasmuch that cherries are commonly ripe about the end of Aprill and the beginning of May. In the midst of May they gather their figs: and in mid-Iune their grapes are ripe in many places. Likewise their peares, their sweete quinces and their damascens attaine vnto sufficient ripenes in the moneths of Iune and Iulie. Their figs of Autumne may be gathered in August; howbeit they neuer haue so great plentie of figs and peaches, as in September. By the midst of August they vsually begin to drie their grapes in the sun, whereof they make reifins. Which if they cannot finish in September, by reason of vnseasonable weather, of their grapes as then vngathered they vse to make wine and must, especially in the prouince of Rifa, as we will in due place signifie more at large. In the midst of October they take in their hodie, and gather their pomegranates and quinces. In Nouember they gather their oliues, not climbing vp with ladders nor plucking them with their hands, according to the custome of Europe; for the trees of Mauritania and Casarea are so tall, that no ladder is long ynough to reach vnto the fruit. And therefore their oliues being full ripe, they clime the trees, beating them off the boughes with certaine long poles, albeit they know this kinde of beating to be most hurtfull vnto the saide trees. Sometimes they haue great plentie of oliues in Africa, and sometimes as great scarcitie. Certaine great oliue-trees there are, the oliues whereof are eaten ripe by the inhabitants, because they are not so fit for oile. No yeere falles out to be so vnseasonable, but that they haue three monethes in the spring alwaies temperate. They begin their spring vpon the fifteenth day of Februarie, accounting the eighteenth of May for the ende thereof: all which time they haue most pleasant weather. But if from the five and twentieth of Aprill, to the fifth of May they haue no raine fall, they take it as a signe of ill lucke. And the raine-water which falleth all the time aforesaid they call Naifan, that is, water blessed of God. Some store it vp in vessels, most religiously keeping it, as an holy thing. Their summer lasteth till the sixteenth of August; all which time they haue most hot and cleere weather. Except perhaps some showers of raine fall in Iuly and August, which doe so infect the aire, that great plague and most pestilent feuers ensue thereupon; with which plague whosoeuer is infected, most hardly escapeth death. Their Autumne they reckon from the 17. of August to the 16. of Nouember; hauing commonly in the moneths of August and September not such extreme heate as before. Howbeit all the time betweene the 15. of August and the 15. of September is called by them the furnace of the whole yeere, for that it bringeth figs, quinces, and such kinde of fruits to their full maturitie. From the 15. of Nouember they begin their winter-season, continuing the same till the 14. day of Februarie. So soone as winter commeth, they begin to till their ground which lieth in the plaines: but vpon the mountaines they goe to plough in October. The Africans are most certainly perswaded that euery yeere containeth fortie extreme hot daies, beginning vpon the 12. of Iune; and againe so many daies extreme colde, beginning from the

The oliues of  
Africa.

Raine signify-  
ing plentie or  
scarcitie.



12. of December. Their *Aequinoctia* are vpon the 16. of March, and the 16. of September. For their *Solstitia* they account the 16. of Iune and the 16. of December. These rules they doe most strictly obserue, as well in husbandrie and nauigation, as in searching out the houses and true places of the planets: and these instructions, with other such like they teach their yoong children first of all. Many countrie-people and husbandmen there be in Africa, who knowing (as they say) neuer a letter of the booke, will notwithstanding most learnedly dispute of Astrologie, & alleage most profound reasons & arguments for themselves. But whatsoever skill they haue in the art of Astrologie, they first learned the same of the Latines: yea they giue those very names vnto their moneths which the Latines do. Moreouer they haue extant among them a certaine great booke diuided into three volumes, which they call The treasure or storehouse of husbandrie. This booke was then translated out of Latine into their tooong, when *Mansor* was Lord of Granada. In the said Treasure are all things contained which may seeme in any wise to concerne husbandrie; as namely, the changes and varietie of times, the manner of sowing, with a number of such like particulars, which (I thinke) at this day the Latine tooong it selfe, whereout these things were first translated, doth not containe. Whatsoeuer either the Africans or the Mahumetans haue, which seemeth to appertaine in any wise to their law or religion, they make their computation thereof altogether according to the course of the moone. Their yeere is diuided into 354. daies: for vnto fixe moneths they allot 30. daies, and vnto the other fixe but 29; all which being added into one summe doe produce the number aforesaid: wherefore their yeere differeth eleuen daies from the yeere of the Latines. They haue at diuers times festiuall daies, and fasts. About the ende of Autumne, for all winter, and a great part of the spring they are troubled with boisterous windes, with haile, with terrible thunder and lightening: yea then it snoweth much in some places of Barbarie. The easterne, southerne, and southeasterne windes blowing in May and Iune, doe very much hurt there: for they spoile the corne, and hinder the fruit from comming to ripenes. Their corne likewise is greatly appaired by snow, especially such as falleth in the day-time, when it be- ginneth to flower. Vpon the mountaines of Atlas they diuide the yeere into two parts onely: for their winter continueth from October to Aprill; and from Aprill to October they account it summer: neither is there any day throughout the whole yeere, wherein the tops of those mountaines are not couered with snowe. In Numidia the yeere runneth away very swiftly: for they reape their corne in May, and in October they gather their dates: but from the midst of September they haue winter till the beginning of Ianuarie. But if September falleth out to be rainie, they are like to lose most part of their dates. All the fields of Numidia requite watering from the riuers; but if the mountaines of Atlas haue no raine fall vpon them, the Numidian riuers waxe drie, and so the fields are destitute of watering. October being destitute of raine, the husbandman hath no hope to cast his seede into the ground;

The peasants and  
vnclearned peo-  
ple of Africa  
cunning in  
Astrologie.

The yeere of the  
Arabians and  
Africans.

The yeere diui-  
ded into two  
seasons onely,  
vpon the moun-  
taines of Atlas.

ground; and he despaireth likewise, if it raine not in Aprill. But their dates prosper more without raine, whereof the Numidians haue greater plentie then of corne. For albeit they haue some store of corne, yet can it scarcely suffice them for halfe the yeere. Howbeit, if they haue good increase of dates, they cannot want abundance of corne, which is sold vnto them by the Arabians for dates. If in the Libyan deserts there fall out change of weather about the midst of October; & if it continue raining there all December, Ianuarie, and some part of Februarie, it is wonderful what abundance of grasse and milke it bringeth forth. Then may you finde diuers lakes in all places and many fennes throughout Libya; wherefore this is the meetest time for the Barbarie-merchants to trauell to the land of Negros. Here all kinde of fruits grow sooner ripe, if they haue moderate showers about the ende of Iuly. Moreouer the land of Negros receiueth by raine neither any benefite, nor yet any dammage at all. For the riuier Niger together with the water which falleth from certaine mountaines doth so moisten their grounds, that no places can be deuised to be more fruitfull: for that which Nilus is to Aegypt, the same is Niger to the land of Negros: for it increaseth like Nilus from the fifteenth of Iune the space of fortie daies after, and for so many againe it decreaseth. And so at the increase of Niger, when all places are ouerflown with water, a man may in a barke passe ouer all the land of Negros, albeit not without great perill of drowning; as in the fift part of this treatise we will declare more at large.

The increase of  
the riuers of  
Niger & Nilus

#### Of the length and shortnes of the Africans lines.



Al the people of Barbarie by vs before mentioned liue vnto 65. or 70. yeeres of age, and fewe or none exceed that number. Howbeit in the foresaide mountaines I sawe some which had liued an hundred yeeres, and others which affirmed themselves to be older; whose age was most healthfull and lustie. Yea some you shall finde here of fower score yeeres of age, who are sufficiently strong and able to exercise husbandrie, to dresse vines, and to serue in the warres; insomuch that yoong men are oftentimes inferiour vnto them. In Numidia, that is to say, in the land of dates, they liue a long time: howbeit they lose their teeth very soone, and their eies waxe wonderfully dimme. Which infirmities are likely to be incident vnto them, first because they continually feede vpon dates, the sweetnes and naturall qualitie whereof doth by little and little pull out their teeth: and secondly the dust and sand, which is tossed vp and downe the aire with easterne windes entring into their eies, doth at last miserably weaken and spoile their eie-sight. The inhabitants of Libya are of a shorter life; but those which are most strong and healthfull among them liue oftentimes till they come to threescore yeeres; albeit they are slender and leane of bodie. The Negros commonly

live the shortest time of al the rest: howbeit they are alwaies strong & lustie, hauing their teeth sound euen till their dying day: yet is there no nation vnder heauen more prone to venerie; vnto which vice also the Libyans and Numidians are to too much addicted. To be short, the Barbarians are the weakest people of them all.

*What kindes of diseases the Africans are subiect vnto.*

**T**HE children, and sometimes the ancient women of this region are subiect vnto baldnes or vnnaturall shedding of haire; which disease they can hardly be cured of. They are likewise oftentimes troubled with the head-ache, which vsually afflicteth them without any ague ioined therewith. Many of them are tormented with the tooth-ache, which (as some thinke) they are the more subiect vnto, because immediately after hot potage they drinke cold water. They are oftentimes vexed with extreme paine of the stomacke, which ignorantly they call, the paine of the hart. They are likewise daily molested with inwarde gripings and infirmities ouer their whole body, which is thought to proceede of continuall drinking of water. Yea they are much subiect vnto bone-aches and goutes; by reason that they sit commonly vpon the bare ground, and neuer weare any shooes vpon their feete. Their chiefe gentlemen and noblemen prouoe gowtie oftentimes with immoderate drinking of wine and eating of daintie meats. Some with eating of oliues, nuts, and such course fare, are for the most part infected with the scuruies. Those which are of a sanguine complexion are greatly troubled with the cough, because that in the spring-season they sit too much vpon the ground. And vpon fridaies I had no small sport and recreation to goe and see them. For vpon this day the people flocke to church in great numbers to heare their Mahumetan sermons. Now if any one in the sermon-time falles a neezing, all the whole multitude will neeze with him for companie, and so they make such a noise, that they neuer leaue, till the sermon be quite done; so that a man shall reape but little knowledge by any of their sermons. If any of Barbarie be infected with the disease commonly called the French poxe; they die thereof for the most part; and are seldome cured. This disease beginneth with a kinde of anguish and swelling, and at length breaketh out into sores. Ouer the mountaines of Atlas, and throughout all Numidia and Libya they scarcely know this disease. Insomuch that oftentimes the parties infected trauell forthwith into Numidia or the land of Negros, in which places the aire is so temperate, that onely by remaining there they recouer their perfect health, and retorne home sound into their owne countrie: which I sawe many doe with mine owne eyes; who without the helpe of any phisitian or medicine, except the foresaide wholesome aire, were restored to their former health. Not so much as the name of this maladie was euer known vnto the Africans, before *Ferdinand* the king of Castile

*The French disease.*

Castile expelled all Iewes out of Spaine; after the returne of which Iewes into Africa, certaine vnhappy and lewd people lay with their wiues; and so at length the disease spread from one to another, ouer the whole region: insomuch that scarce any one familie was free from the same. Howbeit, this they were most certainly perswaded of, that the same disease came first from Spaine; wherefore they (for want of a better name) do call it, The Spanish poxe. Notwithstanding at Tunis and ouer all Italie it is called the French disease. It is so called likewise in Aegypt and Syria: for there it is vsed as a common prouerbe of cursing; The French poxe take you. Amongst the Barbarians the disease called in Latine *Hernia* is not so common; but in Aegypt the people are much troubled therewith. For some of the Aegyptians haue their cods oftentimes so swollen, as it is incredible to report. Which infirmity is thought to be so common among them, because they eat so much gumme, and salt cheese. Some of their children are subiect vnto the falling sicknes; but when they growe to any stature, they are free from that disease. This falling sicknes likewise possesseth the women of Barbarie, and of the land of Negros; who, to excuse it, say that they are taken with a spirite. In Barbarie the plague is rife euery tenth, fifteenth, or twentieth yeere, whereby great numbers of people are consumed; for they haue no cure for the same, but onely to rub the plague-sore with certaine ointments made of Armenian earth. In Numidia they are infected with the plague scarce once in an hundred yeeres. And in the land of Negros they know not the name of this disease: because they neuer were subiect thereunto.

*When and by what meanes the French poxe was brought into Africa.*

*Hernia or the disease called burking or the rupture.*

*Earth of Armenia.*

*The commendable actions and vertues of the Africans.*



Those Arabians which inhabite in Barbarie or vpon the coast of the Mediterran sea, are greatly addicted vnto the studie of good artes and sciences: and those things which concerne their law and religion are esteemed by them in the first place. Moreouer they haue beene heretofore most studious of the Mathematiques, of Philosophie, and of Astrologie: but these artes (as it is aforesaid) were fower hundred yeeres agoe, vtterly destroyed and taken away by the chiefe professours of their lawe. The inhabitants of cities doe most religiously obserue and reuerence those things which appertaine vnto their religion: yea they honour those doctours and priests, of whom they learne their law, as if they were petie-gods. Their Churches they frequent verie diligently, to the ende they may repeat certaine prescript and formal prayers; most superstitiously perswading themselves that the same day wherein they make their praier, it is not lawfull for them to wash certaine of their members, when as at other times they wil wash their whole bodies. Whereof we will (by Gods helpe) discourse more at large in the second Booke of this present treatise, when we shall fall into the mentioning of *Mahumet*

*The Moores  
are a people of  
great fidelitie.*

and of his religion. Moreover those which inhabite Barbarie are of great cunning & dexteritie for building & for mathematicall inuentions, which a man may easily coniecture by their artificiall workes. Most honest people they are, and destitute of all fraud and guile; not onely imbracing all simplicitie and truth, but also practising the same throughout the whole course of their liues: albeit certaine Latine authors, which haue written of the same regions, are farre otherwise of opinion. Likewise they are most strong and valiant people, especially those which dwell vpon the mountaines. They keepe their couenant most faithfully; insomuch that they had rather die then breake promise. No nation in the world is so subiect vnto ielousie; for they will rather leese their liues, then put vp any disgrace in the behalfe of their women. So desirous they are of riches and honour, that therein no other people can goe beyonde them. They trauell in a manner ouer the whole world to exercise traffique. For they are continually to bee seene in AEgypt, in AEthiopia, in Arabia, Persia, India, and Turkie: and whither soeuer they goe, they are most honorably esteemed of: for none of them will professe any arte, vnlesse hee hath attained vnto great exactnes and perfection therein. They haue alwaies beene much delighted with all kinde of ciuilitie and modest behauiour: and it is accounted heinous among them for any man to vtter in companie, any bawdie or vnseemely worde. They haue alwaies in minde this sentence of a graue author; Giue place to thy superiour. If any youth in presence of his father, his vnle, or any other of his kinred, doth sing or talke ought of loue matters, he is deemed to bee woorthie of grievous punishment. Whatsoeuer lad or youth there lighteth by chaunce into any company which discourseth of loue, no sooner heareth nor vnderstandeth what their talke tendeth vnto, but immediately he withdraweth himselfe from among them. These are the things which we thought most woorthie of relation as concerning the ciuilitie, humanitie, and vpright dealing of the Barbarians: let vs now proceede vnto the residue. Those Arabians which dwell in tents, that is to say, which bring vp cattell, are of a more liberall and ciuill disposition: to wit, they are in their kinde as deuout, valiant, patient, courteous, hospitall, and as honest in life and conuersation as any other people. They be most faithfull obseruers of their word and promise: insomuch that the people, which before we said to dwell in the mountaines, are greatly stirred vp with emulation of their vertues. Howbeit the said mountaineers, both for learning, for vertue, and for religion, are thought much inferiour to the Numidians, albeit they haue little or no knowledge at all in naturall philosophie. They are reported likewise to be most skilfull warriors, to be valiant, and exceeding louers and practisers of all humanitie. Also, the Moores and Arabians inhabiting Libya are somewhat ciuill of behauiour, being plaine dealers, void of dissimulation, fauourable to strangers, and louers of simplicitie. Those which we before named white, or tawney Moores, are most stedfast in friendship: as likewise they

they indifferently and fauourably esteeme of other nations: and wholly in deuour themselves in this one thing, namely, that they may leade a most pleasant and iocund life. Moreover they maintaine most learned professours of liberall artes, and such men as are most deuout in their religion. Neither is there any people in all Africa that lead a more happie and honorable life.

*What vices the foresaid Africans are subiect vnto.*



Euere was there any people or nation so perfectly endued with vertue, but that they had their contrarie faults and blemishes: now therefore let vs consider, whether the vices of the Africas do surpasse their vertues & good parts. Those which we named the inhabitants of the cities of Barbarie are somewhat needie and couetous, being also very proud and high-minded, and woonderfully addicted vnto wrath; insomuch that (according to the proverbe) they will deeply engrave in marble any iniurie be it neuer so small, & will in no wise blot it out of their remembrance. So rustically they are & void of good manners, that scarcely can any stranger obtaine their familiaritie and friendship. Their wits are but meane; and they are so credulous, that they will beleue matters impossible, which are told them. So ignorant are they of naturall philosophie, that they imagine all the effects and operations of nature to be extraordinarie and diuine. They obserue no certaine order of liuing nor of lawes. Abounding exceedingly with choler, they speake alwaies with an angrie and lowd voice. Neither shall you walke in the day-time in any of their streetes, but you shall see commonly two or three of them together by the eares. By nature they are a vile and base people, being no better accounted of by their gouernours then if they were dogs. They haue neither iudges nor lawyers, by whose wisdom and counsell they ought to be directed. They are vterly vnskillfull in trades of merchandize, being destitute of bankers and money-changers: wherefore a merchant can doe nothing among them in his absence, but is himselfe constrained to goe in person, whither soeuer his wares are carried. No people vnder heauen are more addicted vnto couetise then this nation: neither is there (I thinke) to be found among them one of an hundred, who for courtesie, humanitie, or deuotions sake, will vouchsafe any entertainment vpon a stranger. Mindfull they haue alwaies beene of iniuries, but most forgetfull of benefites. Their mindes are perpetually possessed with vexation and strife, so that they will seldome or neuer shew themselves tractable to any man; the cause whereof is supposed to be; for that they are so greedily addicted vnto their filthy lucre, that they neuer could attaine vnto any kinde of ciuilitie or good behauiour. The shepherds of that region liue a miserable, toilsome, wretched and beggerly life: they are a rude people, and (as a man may say) borne and bred to theft, deceit, and brutish manners. Their yoong men may goe a wooing

to diuers maides, till such time as they haue sped of a wife. Yea, the father of the maide most friendly welcommeth her suiter; so that I thinke scarce any noble or gentleman among them can chuse a virgine for his spouse: albeit, so soone as any woman is married, she is quite forsaken of all her suiters; who then seeke out other new paramours for their liking. Concerning their religion, the greater part of these people are neither Mahumetans, Iewes, nor Christians; and hardly shall you finde so much as a sparke of pietie in any of them. They haue no churches at all, nor any kinde of prayers, but being vtterly estranged from all godly deuotion, they leade a sauage and beastly life: and if any man chanceth to be of a better disposition (because they haue no law-giuers nor teachers among them) he is constrained to follow the example of other mens liues & maners. All the Numidians being most ignorant of naturall, domesticall, & commonwealth-matters, are principally addicted vnto treason, trecherie, murder, theft, and robberie. This nation, because it is most slauish, will right gladly accept of any seruice among the Barbarians, be it neuer so vile or contemptible. For some will take vpon them to be dung-farmers, others to be scullians, some others to bee ostlers, and such like seruile occupations. Likewise the inhabitants of Libya liue a brutish kinde of life; who neglecting all kinds of good artes and sciences, doe wholly apply their mindes vnto theft and violence. Neuer as yet had they any religion, any lawes, or any good forme of liuing; but alwaies had, and euer will haue a most miserable and distressed life. There cannot any trechery or villanie be inuented so damnable, which for luces sake they dare not attempt. They spend all their daies either in most lewd practises, or in hunting, or else in warfare; neither weare they any shooes nor garments. The Negros likewise leade a beastly kinde of life, being vtterly destitute of the vse of reason, of dexteritie of wit, and of all artes. Yea they so behaue themselues, as if they had continually liued in a forrest among wilde beasts. They haue great swarmes of harlots among them; whereupon a man may easily coniecture their manner of liuing; except their conuersation perhaps be somewhat more tolerable, who dwell in the principall townes and cities: for it is like that they are somewhat more addicted to civill life.

Neither am I ignorant, how much mine owne credit is impeached, when I my selfe write so homely of Africa, vnto which countrie I haue beene debted both for my birth, and also for the best part of my education: Howbeit in this regarde I seeke not to excuse my selfe, but onely to appeale vnto the dutie of an historiographer, who is to set downe the plaine truth in all places, and is blame-worthy for flattering or fauouring of any person. And this is the cause that hath moued me to describe all things so plainly without glossing or dissimulation: wherefore here I am to request the gentle Reader friendly to accept of this my most true discourse, (albeit not adorned with fine words, and artificiall eloquence) as of certaine vnkowne strange matters. Wherein how indifferent and sincere I haue shewed my selfe, it may in few words appeere by that which followeth. It is reported of a lewd countri-

*The author of  
this worke his  
Apologie for  
the former  
relation.*

man of ours, that being convicted of some heinous crime, he was adiudged to be seuerely beaten for it. Howbeit the day following, when the executioner came to doe his busines, the malefactor remembred that certaine yeeres before, he had some acquaintance and familiaritie with him: which made him to presume, that he should finde more fauour at his hands, then a meere stranger. But he was sowlly decciued; for the executioner vsed him no better, then if he had neuer knowne him. Wherefore this caitife at the first exclaiming vpon his executioner, oh (saith he) my good friend, what maketh you so sterne, as not to acknowledge our olde acquaintance? Hereupon the executioner beating him more cruelly then before: friend (quoth he) in such busines as this I vse to be mindfull of my dutie, and to shew no fauour at all: and so continually laying on, he ceased not, till the iudiciall sentence was fulfilled. It was (doubtlesse) a great argument of impartiall dealing, when as respect of former friendship could take no place.

Wherefore I thought good to record all the particulars aforesaid; least that describing vices onely I should seeme to flatter them, with whom I am now presently conuersant; or extolling onely the vertues of the Africans, I might hereafter be saide to sue for their fauour (which I haue of purpose eschewed) to the end that I might haue more free access vnto them. Moreover, may it please you for this purpose to heare another resemblance or similitude. There was vpon a time a most wily bird, so indued by nature, that she could liue as well with the fishes of the sea, as with the fowles of the aire; wherefore she was rightly called Amphibia. This bird being summoned before the king of birds to pay her yeerely tribute, determined foorthwith to change her element, and to delude the king; and so flying out of the aire, she drencht herselfe in the Ocean sea. Which strange accident the fishes woondring at, came flocking about Amphibia, saluting her, and asking her the cause of her comming. Good fishes (quoth the bird) know you not, that all things are turned so vpside downe, that we wot not how to liue securely in the aire? Our tyrannicall king (what furie haunts him, I know not) commanded me to be cruellly put to death; whereas no silly bird respected euer his commoditie as hee did. Which most vniust edict I no sooner heard of, but presently (good fishes) I came to you for refuge. Wherefore vouchsafe me (I beseech you) some odde corner or other to hide my head in; and then I may iustly say, that I haue found more friendship among strangers, then euer I did in mine owne native countrie. With this speech the fishes were so perswaded, that Amphibia staid a whole yeere among them, not paying one penie or halfe penie. At the yeeres ende the king of fishes began to demand his tribute, insomuch that at last the bird was fessed to pay. Great reason it is (saith the bird) that each man should haue his due, and for my part I am contented to doe the dutie of a loyall subiect. These words were no sooner spoken, but she suddenly spred her wings, and vp she mounted into the aire. And so this bird, to auoide yeerely exactions and tributes, woulde effsoones change her element. Out of this fable I will inferre no other moral,



rall, but that all men doe most affect that place, where they finde least damage and inconuenience. For mine owne part, when I heare the Africans euill spoken of, I wil affirme my selfe to be one of Granada: and when I perceiue the nation of Granada to be discommended, then will I professe my selfe to be an African. But herein the Africans shall be the more beholding vnto me; for that I will onely record their principall and notorious vices, omitting their smaller and more tolerable faults.

# IOHN LEO HIS SECOND BOOKE OF the Historie of Africa, and of the memorable things contained therein.



HAuing in my first booke made mention of the cities, bounds, diuisions, and some other notable and memorable things contained in Africa; we will in this second part more fully, particularly, largely, and distinctly describe sundrie prouinces, townes, mountaines, situations of places, lawes, rites, and customes of people. In so much that we will leaue nothing vntouched, which may any way serue to the illustrating and perfecting of this our present discourse. Beginning therefore at the west part of Africa, we will in this our geographicall historie proceede eastward, till we come to the borders of Aegypt. And all this our narration following we will diuide into seuen bookes; whereunto (God willing) we purpose to annexe the eighth, which shall intreat of riuers, of liuing creatures, of trees, of plants, of fruits, of shrubs, and of such other most delightfull matters.

## Of the region of Hea lying vpon the west part of Africa.



HEa being one of the prouinces of Maroco is bounded westward and northwarde with the maine Ocean, southwarde with the mountaines of Atlas, and eastward with the riuier which they call Esfualo. This riuier springeth out of the foresaide mountaine, discharging it selfe at length into the riuier of Tensift, and diuiding Hea from the prouince next adiacent.

of

## Of the situation and description of Hea.



HIS region of Hea is an vnecuen and rough soile, full of rockie mountaines, shadie woods, and chrystall streames in all places; being woonderfully rich, and wel stored with inhabitants. They haue in the said region great abundance of goates and asses, but not such plentie of sheepe, oxen, and horses. All kinde of fruites are very scarce among them, not, that the ground is vn capable of fruit, but because the people are so rude and ignorant in this behalfe, that very few of them are skilfull in planting, graffing, or pruning of trees. Whereof I was easily perswaded: for I remember that I founde among some gardiners of Hea great abundance of fruites. Of graine they haue not much plentie, except it be of barlie, mill, and panick. They haue great abundance of honie, which they vse in stead of ordinarie foode, but the waxe they cast away, little regarding it, because they know not the value thereof. Likewise there are found in this region certaine thornie trees bearing a grosse kinde of fruit, not vnlike vnto those oliues which are brought vnto vs from Spaine: the said fruit they call in their language *Arga*. Of this fruit they make a kinde of oile, being of a fullsome and strong sauour, which they vse notwithstanding for sauce and for lampes. *The fruit calle Arg.*

## The manner of liuing, and the foode of the people of Hea.

THESE people for the most part eateth barlie-bread vnleuened, which is like rather vnto a cake, then to a loafe: this bread is baked in a kinde of earthen baking-pan, somewhat like vnto that wherewith in Italie they vse to couer iuncats and daintie dishes: neither shall you finde many in Hea which eat ouen-bread. They vse also a certaine vnfaouric and base kinde of meate, which in their language is called *Elhasid*, and is made in manner following: they cast barlie-meale into boiling water, continually tempering and stirring the same about with a stick, till they perceiue it be sufficiently sodden. Then setting this pap or hastie-pudding vpon the table, and powring in some of their countrie-oile, all the whole familie stand round about the platter, and eat the said pap not with spoones, but with their hands and fingers. Howbeit in the spring and summer season they temper the said meale with milke, and cast in butter in stead of oile: and this kinde of meate is not vsuall among them, but onely at supper. For in winter time they breake their fast with bread and honie; and in summer with milke, butter, and bread. Moreouer sometimes they vse to eat sodden flesh, wherunto some adde onions, other beanes, and some other, a kinde of seasoning or sauce called by them *Cuscusu*. With them tables and table-cloathes are quite out of vse, in stead whereof they spread a certaine round mat vpon the ground, which serueth among this rude people both for table, cloth, and all.

The



## The apparell and customes of the foresaid people of Hea.



THE greatest part of them are clad in a kinde of cloath-garment made of wooll after the manner of a couerlet, called in their language, *Elchise*, and nor vnlike vnto those couerlets or blankets which the Italians lay vpon their beds. In these kinde of mantles they wrap themselves; and then are they girt with a woollen girdle, not about their waste, but about their hippes. They haue also a certaine piece of cloath of ten handfuls in length and two in bredth, wherewith they vse to adorne their heads: these kinde of ornaments or head-tites they dye with the iuice of walnut-tree-rootes, being so put vpon their heads, that their crownes are alwaies bare. None of them weare any cap, except it be an olde man, or a man of learning; albeit learned men are verie rare among them: which caps of theirs are double and round, not much vnlike to the caps of certaine Phisitians in Italy. You shall feldome finde any linnen shirts, or smockes among this people; and that (as I suppose) either because their soile will yeeld no flaxe nor heimp, or else for that they haue none skilfull in the arte of weaving. Their seats whereon they sit, are nought else but certaine mats made of hayre and rushes. For beds they vse a certaine kinde of hairie flockbed or mattresse; some of which beds are ten elles in length, some more, and some lesse, yea some you shall finde of twenty elles long, but none longer: one part of these mattresses they lye vpon instead of a couch, and with the residue they couer their bodies as it were with blankets and couerlets. In the Spring-time alwaies they lay the hairie side next vnto their bodies, because it is somewhat warmer; but in Sommer-time not regarding that side, they turne the smooth side vpwarde, and thereon they rest themselves. Likewise of such base and harsh stuffe they make their cushions: being much like vnto the stuffe which is brought hither out of Albania and Turkie, to serue for horse-cloathes. The women of Hea goe commonly with their faces vncouered, vsing for their huswifery turned vessels and cups of wood: their platters, dishes, and other their kitchen-vessels be for the most part of earth. You may easily discerne which of them is married, and who is not: for an vnmarried man must alwaies keepe his beard shauen, which, after hee be once married, hee suffereth to grow at length. The saide region bringeth forth no great plentie of horses, but those that it doth bring forth, are so nimble and full of mettall, that they will climbe like cats ouer the steepe and craggie mountaines. These horses are alwaies vnshod: and the people of this region vse to till their ground with no other cattell, but onely with horses and asses. You shall here finde great store of deere, of wilde goats, and of hares: Howbeit the people are no whit delighted in hunting. Which is the cause (as I thinke) why the said beafts do so multiply. And it is somewhat strange, that so many riuers running through the countrey, they should haue such scarcitie of wa-

ter-

ter-mills: but the reason is, because euery household almost haue a wooden mill of their owne, wherewith their women usually grinde with their hands. No good learning nor liberall artes are heere to be found; except it bee a little skill in the lawes, which some few chalenge vnto themselves; otherwise you shall finde not so much as any shadow of vertue among them. They haue neither Phisitian nor Surgeon of any learning or account. But if a disease or infirmittie befall any of them, they presently leare or cauterize the sickle part with red hot yrons, euen as the Italians vse their horses. Howbeit some chirurgians there are among them, whose duty and occupation consisteth onely in circumcising of their male children. They make no sope in all the countrey, but instead thereof they vse to wash with lee made of ashes. They are at continuall warre, but it is ciuill and among themselves, insomuch that they haue no leisure to fight against other nations. Whosoever will trauell into a forren countrey must take either a harlot, or a wife, or a religious man of the contrarie part, to beare him companie. They haue no regard at all of iustice, especially in those mountaines which are destitute of gouernours or princes: yea euen the principall men of this verie region of Hea, which dwell within townes and cities, dare scarce prescribe any law or good order vnto the people, so great is their insolencie in all places. The cities of Hea are few in number, but they haue great store of villages, townes, and most strong castles: whereof (God willing) we will hereafter speake more at large.

## Of Tednest one of the cities of Hea.



THE ancient citie of Tednest was built by the Africans vpon a most beautiful and large plaine, which they inuironed with a lustie wall built of bricke and lime. Likewise a certaine riuier running forth of the citie serueth to fill vp the wall ditch. In this citie are certaine merchants that sell cloath, wherein the people of the same place are clad. Here is likewise vntred a kinde of cloth which is brought thither out of Portugall: howbeit they will admit no artificers, but taylors, botchers, carpenters, and a few gold-smithes which are Iewes. In this citie there are no innes, stoues, nor wine-taverns: so that whatsoeuer merchant goes thither, must seeke out some of his acquaintance to remaine withall: but if he hath no friends nor acquaintance in the town, then the principall inhabitants there cast lots who should entertaine the strange merchant: insomuch that no stranger, be he neuer so meane, shall want friendly entertainment, but is alwaies sumptuously and honourably accepted of. But whosoever is receiued as a guest, must at his departure bestow some gift vpon his host in token of thankfulness, to the ende he may be more welcome at his next returne. Howbeit if the saide stranger bee no merchant, he may chuse what great mans house he will to lodge in, being bound at his departure to no recompence nor gift. To be short, if any beg-

Their manner  
of entertaining  
strangers at  
Tednest.

ger

ger or poore pilgrim passe the same way; he hath some sustenance provided for him in a certaine hospitall, which was founded onely for the reliefe of poore people, and is maintained at the common charge of the citie. In the middest of the citie stands an auncient temple; being most sumptuously built and of an huge bignesse, which was thought to be founded at the verie same time whenas the King of Maroco bare rule in those places. This temple hath a great cester standing in the midst thereof, and it hath many priests and such kinde of people which giue attendance thereunto, and store it with things necessarie. In this citie likewise are diuers other temples, which, albeit they are but little, yet be they most cleanly and decently kept. There are in this citie about an hundred families of Iewes, who pay no yeerely tribute at all, but only bestow each of them some gratuitie vpon this or that nobleman, whom they thinke to fauour them most, to the ende they may enioy their fauour still: and the greatest part of the said citie is inhabited with Iewes. These Iewes haue certaine minting-houses wherein they stampe siluer coine, of which 170. Aspers (as they call them) doe weigh one ounce, beeing like vnto the common coine of Hungarie, sauing that this Asper is square, and the Hungarian coine is round. The inhabitants of Tednest are free from all tributes & yeerely taxations: howbeit if any summe of money be wanting for the erection of a publique building, or for any other common vse, the people is forthwith assembled, and each man must giue according to his abilitie. This citie was left desolate in the yeere 918. of the Hegeira. At what time all the citizens thereof fled vnto the mountaines, and from thence to Maroco. The reason they say was, because the inhabitants were informed that their next neighbours the Arabians ioyned in league with the Portugall Captaines (who as then held the towne of Azaphi) and promised to deliuer Tednest into the hands of the Christians, which thing so danted the citizens, that they presently sought to saue themselves by flight. My selfe (I remember) sawe this citie vterly ruined and defaced, the walles thereof beeing laide euen with the ground, the houses beeing destitute of inhabitants, and nothing at that time to be there seene, but onely the nests of rauens and of other birds. All this I saw in the 920. yeere of the Hegeira.

*Tednest left  
desolate.*

*Of Teculeth a towne of Hea.*



Vpon the foote of an hill eightene miles Eastwarde from Tednest stands a towne called by the Africans Teculeth, and containing about one thousand housholdes. Hard by this towne runneth a certaine riuer, on both sides whereof are most pleasant gardens, and all kindes of trees. Within the walles of the saide towne are many pits or wels, whereout they draw most cleere and pleasant water. Here also is to be seene a most stately and beautifull temple; as likewise fower hospitals and a monasterie of religious persons.

sons. The inhabitants of this towne are farre wealthier then they of Tednest; for they haue a most famous port vpon the Ocean sea, commonly called by merchants, Goz. They haue likewise great abundance of corne and pulse, which grow in the fruitfull fields adiacent. These also of Teculeth send waxe into Portugall to be solde: and they are verie curious in their apparell and about the furniture of their horses. When I my selfe was at Teculeth, I found there a certaine nobleman, who was the president or chiefe of their senate: this noblemans duety was both to procure tribute which was yeerely to be payed vnto the Arabians, and also to make attonement and reconciliation betweene them, when they were at odds. This man had gathered great riches vnto himselfe, which he imployed rather to purchase friends, then to fill his coffers: most liberall he was vnto the poore, most bountifull and fauourable vnto all his citizens; infomuch that all men did reuerence and honour vnto him, as vnto their father and best protectour. Of whose curtesie I my selfe also made triall: and being not meanely but verie sumptuously entertained by him, I remained with him for a certaine time, and read in his house diuers histories of African matters. This good man together with his sonne was slaine in a skirmish against the Portugals: which was done, according to our computation, in the yeere of the Hegeira 923. that is to say, in the yeere of our Lord 1514. After which misfortune we heard, that the citie was razed, that the people were part of them put to flight, part lead captiue, and the residue slaine by the enemy: all which particulars we haue declared more at large in that Booke, which is now lately printed and published concerning African affaires.

*Teculeth destroyed by the  
Portugals.  
1514.*

*Of Hadecchis a towne of Hea.*



THE citie of Hadecchis being situate vpon a plaine, standeth eight miles Southward of Teculeth: it containeth seauen hundred families: and the wals, churches, and houses throughout this whole citie are all built of free stone. Through the midst of the towne runneth a large and faire streame, hauing many vines & galleries on both sides thereof. There be many Iewes artificers in this citie. The citizens here go somewhat decently apparellled: their horses are good: most of them exercise merchandize: also they stampe a kinde of coine; and they haue certaine yeerely faires or martes, whereunto the nations adioining do vsually resort. Here is to be sold great store of cattell, of butter, oyle, yron, and cloath, and their said mart lasteth fifteene dayes. Their women are very beautifull, white of colour, fat, comely, and trim. But the men beare a most sauage minde, being so extremely possessed with ielousie, that whomsoever they finde but talking with their wiues, they presently goe about to murder them. They haue no iudges nor learned men among them, nor any which can assigne vnto the citizens any functions and magistracies according to their worthines; so that hee rules like a king that excelleth the residue in wealth.

wealth. For matters of religion, they haue certaine Mahumetan priests to administer them. Who neither pay tribute nor yeerely custome, etea as they whom we last before mentioned. Heere I was entertained by a certaine curteous and liberall minded priest, who was exceedingly delighted with Arabian Poetrie. Wherefore being so louingly entertained, I read vnto him a certaine briefe treatise as touching the same argument: which he accepted so kindly at my hands, that he would not suffer mee to depart without great and bountifull rewards. From hence I travelled vnto Maroco. And afterward I heard that this towne also, in the yeere of the Hegeira 922. was sacked by the Portugals, and that the inhabitants were all fled into the next mountaines, and the verie same yeere I returned home to visit my native countrey, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1513.

Hadechis sacked by the Portugals. 1513.

*Of Ileusugaghen a towne of Hea.*

**T**His towne is situate vpon the top of a certaine high mountaine which is distant eight miles to the South of Hadechis: it consisteth of about two hundred families: and by the foote of the hill runneth a small riuer. Heere are no gardens at all, nor yet any trees which beare fruit: the reason whereof is (as I suppose) because the inhabitants are such slothfull and grosse people, that they regard nothing but their barley and their oyle. They are at continuall warre with their next neighbours, which is performed with such monstrous bloodshed and manslaughter, that they deserue rather the name of beasts then of men. They haue neither iudges, priests, nor lawyers, to prescribe any forme of liuing among them, or to gouerne their common-wealth: wherefore iustice and honestie is quite banished out of their habitations. Those mountaines are altogether destitute of fruits: howbeit they abound greatly with honie, which serueth the inhabitants both for food, and for merchandize to sell in the neighbour-countries. And because they know not what seruice to put their waxe vnto, they cast it forth, together with the other excrements of honie. The saide towne of Ileusugaghen hath a verie small and narrow chappell, which will scarce containe a hundred persons, whither notwithstanding the people doe so slowly resort, that they need not to haue any greater; so much do they neglect religion and pietie. Whensoever they goe abroad, they carrie a dagger or a iauelin about with them: and you shall often heare of the slaughter of some one or other of their citizens. No people vnder heauen can be more wicked, trecherous, or lewdly addicted, then this people is.

I remember that I my selfe went once thither with a Seriffo or Mahumetan priest, (who made challenge vnto the gouernment of Hea) to the ende that we might arbitrate certaine strifes and contentions: for it were incredible to report, what cruell warres, partly for murders, and partly for robberies, were practised among them. But because the Seriffo had brought no lawyers with him, nor any iudges to decide controuerfies, he would needes, that I should

should take that office vpon me. Immediately the townsmen come flocking about vs: one complains that his neighbour hath slaine eight of his kinned and family; his neighbour on the contrarie alleageth, that the former had slaine ten of his familie; wherefore, according to the auncient custome, he demaundeth to haue a summe of money giuen him. For (saith he) there is some recompence due vnto me, sithens ten of my people haue beene slaine, and but eight of this my neighbours. Whereunto the other replied that the saide ten persons were iustly slaine, because they went about by violence to dispossesse him of a certaine piece of ground which his father had left him by inheritance; but, that his eight were murdered onely for vniust reuenge, against all equitie and lawe. With these and such like friuolous allegations we spent that whole day, neither could we decide any one controuerfise. About midnight we sawe a great throng of people meet in the market-place, who made there such a bloodie and horrible conflict, that the sight thereof would haue affrighted any man, were he neuer so hard harted. Wherefore the saide Seriffo fearing least those lewd varlets would make some trecherous conspiracie against him, and thinking it better to deparr thence immediately, then to expect the conclusion of that fraye, wee tooke our journey from that place to a towne called Aghilinghighil.

*Of the towne of Teijcut in Hea.*



**M**Oreouer, the tower of Teijcut standing vpon a plaine ten miles Westward of Ileusugaghen, containeth about three hundred housholdes. The houses and wall of this towne are built of bricke. The townesmen exercise husbandrie; for their ground is most fertile for barley; albeit it will scarcely yeeld any other graine. They haue pleafant and large gardens, stored with vines, fig-trees, and peach-trees: also they haue great abundance of goates. About this towne are many lyons, whereby the townesmen are not a little endamaged: for they pray continually vpon their goats and vpon other of their cattell. Certaine of vs vpon time comming into these parts for want of a lodging were constrained to repayre vnto a little cottage which we escried, being so olde, that it was in danger of falling: hauing provided our horses of prouender, we stopped vp all the doores and passages of the said cottage with thornes and wood, as circumspectly as possibly we could: these things happened in the moneth of Aprill, at what time they haue extreme heat in the same countrey. Wherefore we our selues got vp to the top of the house, to the end that in our sleep we might be neere vnto the open ayer. About midnight we espied two monstrous lyons, who were drawen thither by the sent of our horses, and endeouored to breake downe that fence of thornes which we had made. Whereupon the horses being put in feare, kept such a neighing, and such a stirre, that we misdoubted least the rotten cottage would haue fallen, and least our selues should haue become a pray vnto the lyons. But so soone as we perceived

*Teijent de-  
stroyed by the  
Portugals.*

ceiued the day begin to breake, we forthwith saddled our horses, and hyed vs vnto that place, where we knew the Prince and his armie lay. Not long after followed the destruction of this towne. For the greater part of the townesmen being slaine, the rest were taken by the Portugals, and were carried as captiues into Portugall. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 920, and in the yeere of our Lord 1513.

*Of Tefegdelt a towne of Hea.*

*The curtesie of  
the citizens  
of Tefegdelt  
towards stran-  
gers.*

**T**He towne of Tefegdelt being situate vpon the top of a certaine high mountaine, and naturally enuironed with an high rocke in steade of a wall, containeth more then eight hundred families. It is distant from Teijent southward about twelue miles, and it hath a riuer running by it, the name whereof I haue forgotten. About this towne of Tefegdelt are most pleasant gardens and orchards, replenished with all kinde of trees, and especially with walnut-trees. The inhabitants are wealthie, hauing great abundance of horses, neither are they constrained to pay any tribute vnto the Arabians. There are continuall warres betweene the Arabians and them, and that with great bloudshed and manslaughter on both parts. The villages lying neere vnto Tefegdelt do vsually carry all their graine thither, least they shoulde be depriued thereof by the enimie, who maketh daily inrodes and inuasions vpon them. The inhabitants of the foresaid towne are much addicted vnto curtesie and ciuilitie; and for liberalitie and bountie vnto strangers, they will suffer themselves to be inferiour to none other. At euery gate of Tefegdelt stande certaine watchmen or warders, which do most louingly receiue all incommers, enquiring of them, whether they haue any friends and acquaintaine in the towne, or no? If they haue none, then are they conducted to one of the best Innes of the towne, and hauing had entertainment there, according to their degree and place, they are friendly dismissed: and whatsoeuer his expences come to, the stranger paies nought at all, but his charges are defraied out of the common purse. This people of Tefegdelt are subiect also vnto ieaousie; howbeit they are most faithfull keepers of their promise. In the very midst of the towne standes a most beautifull and stately temple, whereunto belong a certaine number of Mahumetan priests. And to the ende that iustice may be most duly administered among them, they haue a very learned iudge, who decideth all matters in the common wealth, except criminall causes onely. Their fieldes where they vse to sowe their come, are, for the greater part vpon the mountaines. Vnto this verie towne I trauelled with the foresaide Serisso in the yeere of the Hegeira 919. that is to say, in the yeere of our Lord 1510.

*A description of the citie of Tagtefs.*



**T**HE most ancient citie of Tagtefs is built rounde, and standeth vpon the toppe of an hill: on the sides whereof are certaine winding steps hewen out of the hard rocke. It is about foureteene miles distant from Tefegdelt. By the foote of the saide hill runnes a riuer, whereout the women of Tagtefs draw their water, neither haue the citizens any other drinke: and although this riuer be almost fixe miles from Tagtefs, yet a man would thinke, looking downe from the citie vpon it, that it were but halfe a mile distant. The way leading vnto the said riuer being cut out of the rocke, in forme of a payre of stayres, is verie narrow. The citizens of Tagtefs are addicted vnto theft and robbetrie, and are at continuall warre with their neighbours. They haue no corne-fields, nor any cattell, but onely vpon the said mountaine: they haue great store of bores; but such scarcitie of horses, that there is not one almost to bee found in the whole citie. The way through their region is so difficult, that they will suffer none to passe by without a publique testimoniall. While I <sup>was</sup> in that countrey, there came such a swarme of Locusts, that they deuoured the greatest part of their cornes which were as then ripe: insomuch that all the vpper part of the ground was couered with Locusts. Which was in the yeere of the Hegeira 919. that is, in the yeere of our Lord 1510.

*The towne of Eirdeuet.*



**F**ifteene miles Southward from Tagtefs stands another towne called Eirdeuet, being built vpon a plaine, and yet vpon the higher ground thereof. It containeth to the number of seuen hundred families; and hath in the midst thereof most cleere and coole fountaines. This towne is enuironed on all sides with rockes and mightie woods. In the said towne are Iewes of all occupations: and some there are which affirme, that the first inhabitants of this towne came by naturall descent from King *Dauid*: but so soone as the Mahumetan religion had infected that place, their owne lawe and religion ceased. Heere are great store of most cunning lawyers, which are perfectly well scene in the lawes and constitutions of that nation: for I remember that I my selfe sawe a very aged man, who could most readily repeate a whole volume written in their language, called by them *Elmudeuana*, that is to say, the body of the whole lawe. The said volume is diuided into three tomes, wherein all difficult questions are dissolued: together with certaine counsels or commentaries of a famous author, which they call *Melic*. They haue a kinde of tribunall or iudgement-hall, wherein all contentions happening betweene the citizens of this place, and their neighbour-cities, are presently decided and set through. Neither doe the



said lawyers deale onely in common-wealth matters, but also in cases pertaining to religion: albeit in criminall cases the people doe not so greatly credit them, for indeede their learning litle serueth them for that purpose. Being amongst them, it was my hap to sojourne in the house of a certaine lawyer, who was a man of great learning. This lawyer, to the end he might giue me more solemne entertainmēt, would needs inuite diuers learned men of his owne profession to beare vs companie at supper. After supper, we had many questions propounded: and amongst the residue this was one; namely, Whether any man might iustly sell that person for a bondslawe, who is nourished by any commoditie of the people. There was in companie at the same time a certaine aged Sire, hauing a graue beard and a reuerend countenance, vnto whom each one of them ascribed much honour; him they called in their owne language *Hegazzare*. Which name, when I had heard thrice or fower times repeated, I demanded of some that were in presence, what was the true signification thereof. They told me that it signified a butcher: for (say they) as a butcher knoweth right well the true anatomy of euery part of a beast; euen so can this aged Sire most learnedly dissolue all difficult questions & doubts of lawe. This people leadeth a most miserable and distressed life: their foode is barlie bread, oile arganicke, and goates-flesh. They know no vse of any other graine but barlie. Their women are very beautifull and of a louely hue: their men be strong and lustie, hauing haire growing vpon their brestes, and being very liberall and exceeding iealous.

*Of Culeihat Elmuridin, that is to say, The rocke of  
disciples; a castle of Hea.*

**T**His Culeihat Elmuridin is a castle built vpon the top of a certaine high mountaine, hauing round about it diuers other mountaines of a like heighth, which are enuironed with craggie rocks and huge woods. There is no passage vnto this castle, but onely a certaine narrow path vpon one side of the mountaine. By the one side thereof stands a rocke, and vpon the other side the mountaine of Tefegdelt is within halfe a mile; and it is distant from Eitdeuet almost eightene miles. This castle was built euen in our time by a certaine apostata or renouncer of the Mahumetan religion, called by them *Homar Segef*; who being first a Mahumetan preacher vnto the people, propounded vnto a great number of disciples and sectaries, whom he had drawn to be of his opinion, certaine new points of religion. This fellow seeing that he preuailed so with his disciples, that they esteemed him for some petie-god, became of a false preacher a most cruell tyrant, and his gouernment lasted for twelue yeeres. He was the chiefe cause of the destruction and ruine of the whole prouince. At length he was slaine by his owne wife, because he had vnlawfully lien with her daughter which she had by her former husband. And then was his peruerse and lewd dealing laide open vnto all men; for he is reported to haue beene vtterly ignorant of the

*A pestiferous  
Mahumetan  
preacher.*

lawes, and of all good knowledge. Wherefore not long after his decease all the inhabitants of the region gathering their forces together, slew euerie one of his disciples and false sectaries. Howbeit the nephew of the said apostata was left aliuie; who afterward in the same castle endured a whole yeeres siege of his aduersaries, and repelled them, insomuch that they were constrained to depart. Yea euen vntill this day he molesteth the people of Hea, and those which inhabite neere vnto him, with continuall warre, liuing vpon robbetrie and spoile; for which purpose he hath certaine horsemen, which are appointed to watch and to pursue traouellers, sometimes taking cattel, and sometimes men captiues. He hath likewise certaine gunners, who, although traouellers be a good distance off (for the common high way standeth almost a mile from the castle) will put them in great feare. Howbeit all people doe so deadly hate him, that they will not suffer him to till one foote of ground, or to beare any dominion without the said mountaine. This man hath caused his grandfather's body to be honorably buried in his castle, suffering him to be adored of his people, as if he were a god. Passing by that way vpon a certain time, I escaped their very bullets narrowly. The life, religion & manners of the foresaid *Homar Segef* I perfectly learned by a disciple of his, hauing at large declared the same in a certaine brieft treatise, which I haue written concerning the Mahumetan religion.

*A treatise  
written by Iohn  
Leo concerning  
the Mahumetan  
religion.*

*Of Igilingil a towne of Hea.*

**M**oreouer the Africans in olde time built a certaine towne vpon an hill, called by the inhabitants Igilingil; being distant from Eitdeuet about six miles southward, and containing almost fower hundred families. In this towne are sundry artificers, employing themselves onely about things necessarie, to the end they may make their best gaine & aduantage thereby. Their ground is most fertile for barlie; as likewise they haue great abundance of honie and of oile Arganicke. The passage or way vnto this citie is very narrow, lying onely vpon one side of the hill. And it is so hard and difficult, that horses cannot without great labour and perill goe vpon it. The inhabitants are most valiant people and wel exercised in armes, maintaining continuall warre against the Arabians, and that for the most part with very prosperous successe; by reason of the naturall and strong situation of the towne. A more liberall people then this, you shall hardly find. They generally exercise themselves in making of earthen pots and vessels, which (I thinke) none of their neighbours thereabout can doe.

*Of*



*Of Tefethne a port and most famous mart-  
towne of Hea.*



Here vnto the Ocean sea standeth a citie, most strong both for situation and building, commonly called Tefethne, being westward of Ingilingigil about fortie miles. They say that this towne was built by certaine Africans, and that it containeth more then sixe hundred households. Here ships of meane burthen may safely harbour themselues; and hither the Portugall merchants resort to buy goats-skins and waxe. Come-fields they haue none, but onely certaine hills, which yeeld great increase of barlie. Neere vnto this towne runs a certaine riuer, whereinto the ships put themselues in tempestuous weather. The towne-wall is built of white hewen stone and of bricke. They gather their yeerely customes and subsidies; all the whole summe whereof is equally distributed among such citizens as are meete for the warres. In this towne are great plentie of Mahometan priests and of iudges; howbeit, for the inquirie of murder and such like crimes these iudges haue no authoritie. For if any kinsman of the slaine or wounded partie meeteth with him that did the fact, he is presently without any iudgement to haue *Legem talionis*, that is, like for like, inflicted vpon him: but if he escape that, he is banished seuen yeeres out of the citie: at the end of which seuen yeeres the malefactor hauing paide a certaine summe of money to the friends of the wounded or slaine partie, is afterward receiued into fauour, and accounted among the number of citizens. All the inhabitants of Tefethne are of a most white colour, being so addicted vnto friendship and hospitalitie, that they fauour strangers more then their owne citizens. They haue a most stately and rich hospitall; howbeit those which are there placed may for the most part remaine in citizens houses. My selfe being in companie with the Seriffo or Mahometan prelate, continued for the space of three daies among this people; which three daies seemed three yeeres vnto me, both for the incredible number of fleas, and also for the most lothsome and intolerable stench of pisse, and of goates dung. For each citizen hath a flooke of goates, which they driue in the day-time to pasture, and at night they house them at home in their owne habitations, yea euen before their chamber-doores.

*A punishment  
of murder.*

*Of the people called Ideuacal who inhabite the beginning  
of mount Atlas.*



Hauing hitherto made report of al the cities of Hea, which are worthie of memorie, I thought good in this place (to the end that nothing should be wanting in this our discourse, which might delight the reader) to describe the inhabited mountaines also. Wherefore the greatest part of the people of Hea

Headwellet vpon mountaines, some whereof being called Ideuacal (for so are they named) inhabite vpon that part of Atlas, which stretcheth it selfe from the Ocean sea eastward, as farre as Ingilingigil; and this ridge of mountaines diuideth Hea from Sus. The bredth of this mountaine is three daies journey. For Tefethne, whereat this mountaine beginneth from the north, is distant from the towne of Messa, where it endeth southward, as farre as I could conueniently ride in three daies. Whosoeuer knoweth this region as well as my selfe, can sufficiently beare me witnes, howe it is replenished with inhabitants and countrey-villages. Their ordinary food is barley, goates-flesh, and hony. Shirts they weare none at all, nor yet any other garments which are sown together; for there is no man among them which knoweth how to vse the needle: but such apparell as they haue, hangeth by a knot vpon their shoulders. Their women weare siluer rings vpon their eares, some three, and some more. They haue siluer buttons of so great a scantling, that each one weigheth an ounce, wherewith they fasten their apparell vpon their shoulders, to the end it may not fall off. The nobler and richer sort of people among them weare siluer rings vpon their fingers and legs, but such as are poore weare ringes ouely of iron or of copper. There are likewise certaine horses in this region, being so small of stature and so swift, as it is woonderfull. Heere may you finde great plentie of wilde goats, hares, and deere, and yet none of the people are delighted in hunting. Many fountaines are heere to be founde, and great abundance of trees, but especially of walnut-trees. The greater part of this people liueth after the Arabians manner, often changing their places of habitation. A kinde of daggers they vse which are broad and crooked like a wood-knife; and their swords are as thicke as sithes, wherewith they mowe haie. When they go to the warres they carrie three or fower hunting toiles with them. In al the said mountaine are neither iudges, priestes, nor temples to be founde. So ignorant they are of learning, that not one among them either loueth or embraceth the same. They are all most lewd and wicked people, and applie their mindes vnto all kinde of villanie. It was tolde the Seriffo in my presence, that the foresaide mountaine was able to afford twentie thousand soldiers for a neede.

*Of the mountaine called Demensera.*

This mountaine also is a part of Atlas, beginning from the mountaine last before mentioned, and extending it selfe eastward for the space of about fiftie miles, as farre as the mountaine of Niff in the territorie of Marocco. And it diuideth a good part of Hea from the region of Sus before named. It aboundeth with inhabitants, which are of a most barbarous and sauage disposition. Horses they haue great plenty: they go to warre oftentimes with the Arabians which border vpon them: neither will they permit any of the saide Arabians to come within their dominions. There are

Plentie of yron.

no townes nor castles vpon all this mountaine: howbeit they haue certaine villages and cottages, wherein the better sort do hide their heads. Great store of noble men or gouernors they haue in all places, vnto whom the residue are very obedient. Their grounde yeeldeth barley and mill in abundance. They haue euery where many fountaines, which being disperfed ouer the whole prouince, do at length issue into that riuer, which is called in their language Siffaia. Their apparell is somewhat decent: also they possesse great quantitie of iron, which is from thence transported into other places; and these people are well giuen to thrift and good husbandry. Great numbers of Iewes remaine in this region, which liue as stipendarie soldiers vnder diuers princes, &c are continually in armes; and they are reputed and called by other Iewes in Africa Carraum, that is to say, heretiques. They haue store of boxe, of mastick, and of high walnut trees. Vnto their Argans (for so they call a kinde of oliues which they haue) they put nuts; out of which two simples they expresse very bitter oile, vsing it for a sauce to some of their meates, and powring it into their lampes. I heard diuers of their principall men auouch, that they were able to bring into the field siue and twentie thousand most expert soldiers. In my returne from Sus they did me exceeding honour; in regard of certaine letters, which I deliuered vnto them from my Lord the Seriffo: and to manifest their good will towards the said Seriffo, they dismissed me with most ample gifts and gratuities. This was done in the 920. yeere of the Hegeira, that is to say, in the yeere of our Lord, 1520.

*Of the mountaine of Iron, commonly called Gebelhadib.*

**T**His mountaine is not to be accounted any part of Atlas: for it beginneth northward from the Ocean; and southward it extendeth to the riuer of Tensift; and diuideth Hea from Duccala and Maroco. The inhabitants are called Rebraga. Vpon this hill are waste deserts, cleere fountaines, and abundance of hony, and of oyle Arganick, but of corne and pulse great scarcitie, vnlesse they make prouision thereof out of Duccala. Few rich men are heere to be founde, but they are all most deuout and religious after their manner. Vpon the toppe of this mountaine are many Hermites, which liue onely vpon the fruits of certaine trees, and drinke water. They are a most faithfull and peaceable nation. Whosoever among them is apprehended for theft or any other crime, is forthwith banished the countrey for certaine yeeres. So great is their simplicitie, that whatsoever they see the Hermites do, they esteeme it as a miracle. They are much oppressed with the often inuasions of their neighbours the Arabians; wherefore this quiet nation chooseth rather to pay yeerely tribute, then to maintaine warre. Against the faide Arabians Mahumer the King of Fez directed his troupes: insomuch that they were constrained to leaue their owne countrey and to flee into the mountaines. But the people of the mountaines being aided

aided with Mahumer his forces, vanquished the Arabians; so that three thousand of them were slaine, and fower-score of their horses were brought vnto K. Mahumer. After which prosperous battaile, the said mountainers remained free from all tribute. I my selfe, while these things were a dooing, serued the king. It was in the yeere of the Hegeira 921. that is to say, in the yeere of our Lord 1512. When this people vndertake any warre, they bring commonly into the fiede an armie of twelue thousand men.

*Of the region of Sus.*



**N**ow comes the region of Sus to be considered of, being situate beyond Atlas, ouer against the territorie of Hea, that is to say, in the extreme part of Africa. Westward it beginneth from the Ocean sea, and southward from the sandie deserts: on the north it is bounded with the utmost towne of Hea; and on the east with that mightie riuer whereof the whole region is named. Wherefore beginning from the west, wee will describe all those cities and places which shall seeme to be woorthy of memorie.

*Of the towne of Messa.*

**T**hree small townes were built by the ancient Africans vpon the sea shoare (each being a mile distant from other) in that very place where Atlas takes his beginning: all which three are called by one onely name, to wit, Messa, and are enuironed with a wall builde of white stones. Through these three runneth a certaine great riuer called Sus in their language: this riuer in sommer is so destitute of water, that a man may easilie without perill passe ouer it on foote; but it is not so in the winter time. They haue then certaine small barkes, which are not meete to faile vpon this riuer. The place where the foresaide three townes are situate, aboundeth greatly with palme trees, neither haue they in a manner any other wealth; and yet their dates are but of small woorth, because they will not last aboue one yeere. All the inhabitants exercise husbandry, especially in the moneths of September and April; what time their riuer encreaseth. And in May their corne groweth to ripenes. But if in the two foresaide moneths the riuer encreaseth not according to the woonted manner, their haruest is then nothing woorth. Cattell are very scarce among them. Not farre from the sea side they haue a temple, which they greatly esteeme and honour. Out of which Historiographers say, that the same prophet, of whom their great Mahumer foretold, shoulde proceed. Yea, some there are which sticke not to affirme, that the prophet *Iudas* was cast forth by the whale vpon the shoare of Messa, when as he was sent to preach vnto the Niniuites. The rafters and beames of the faide temple are of whales bone. And it is a vsuall thing amongst them, to see whales of an huge and monstrous bignes cast vp dead vpon

*Dates which will last but one yeere.*

*Great store of whales.*

vpon their shore, which by reason of their hugenes and strange deformitie, may terrifie and astonish the beholders. The common people imagine, that, by reason of a certaine secret power and vertue infused from heauen by God vpon the saide temple, each whale which would swim past it can by no meanes escape death. Which opinion had almost perswaded me; especially when at my being there, I my selfe sawe a mightie whale cast vp: vlesse a certaine Iewe had tolde me, that it was no such strange matter: for (quoth he) there lie certaine rockes two miles into the sea on either side; and as the sea mooues, so the whales mooue also; and if they chauce to light vpon a rock, they are easily wounded to death, and so are cast vpon the next shore. This reason more preuailed with me then the opinion of the people. My selfe (I remember) being in this region at the same time when my Lord the Serisso bare rule ouer it, was inuited by a certaine gentleman, and was by him conducted into a garden: where he shewed me a whales rib of so great a size, that lying vpon the ground with the conuexe or bowing side vwarde in manner of an arche, it resembled a gate, the hollow or inwarde part whereof aloft we could not touch with our heads, as we rode vpon our camels backs: this rib (he said) had lien there aboue an hundred yeeres, and was kept as a miracle. Here may you finde vpon the sea-shore great store of amber, which the Portugal, & Fessan merchäts fetch from thence for a very meane price: for they scarcely pay a duckat for a whole ounce of most choise and excellent amber. Amber (as some thinke) is made of whales dung, and (as others suppose) of their Sperma or seede, which being consolidate and hardened by the sea, is cast vpon the next shore.

A whales rib  
of incredible  
greatnes.

Amber.

*Of Teijent an ancient towne of Su.*



Teijent being (as the report goeth) built by the ancient Africans in a most pleasant place, is diuided into three partes, whereof each one is almost a mile distant from another, and they all make a triangle or three-square. This Teijent containeth fower thousand families, and standeth not farre from the riuer of Sus. The soile adiacent is most fruitfull for graine, for barlie, and for all kinde of pulse. They haue here likewise a good quantitie of sugar growing; howbeit, because they know not how to presse, boyle, and trim it, they cannot haue it but blacke and vsauourie: wherefore so much as they can spare, they sell vnto the merchants of Maroco, of Fez, and of the land of Negros. Of dates likewise they haue plentie; neither vse they any money besides the gold which is digged out of their owne natie soile. The women weare vpon their heads a peece of cloth woorth a duckat. Siluer they haue none, but such as their women adorne themselues with. The least iron-coine vsed amongst them, weigheth almost an ounce. No fruites take plentiffully vpon their soile, but onely figs, grapes, peaches, and dates. Neither oile nor oliues are here to be found, except such as are brought from

certaine

Store of sugar.

certaine mountaines of Maroco. A measure of oile is sold at Sus for fifteene duckats; which measure containeth an hundred and fiftie pounds Italian waight. Their peeces of golde (because they haue no certaine nor proportionable money) doe weigh; seuen of them & one third part, one ounce. Their ounce is all one with the Italian ounce: but their pound containeth eighteene ounces, and is called in their language *Rethl*; and an hundred *Rethl* make one such measure of oile as is aforesaid. For carrying of merchandize from place to place, their custome is to pay for a camels load, that is, for 700. pounds of Italia waight; 3. peeces of gold; especially in the spring time: for in former they pay sometimes 18. sometimes 6. peeces of gold, as the time requireth. Here is that excellent leather dressed, which is called leathen of Maroco; twelve hides whereof are here sold for fixe duckats; and at Fez for eight. That part of this region which lieth toward Atlas hath many villages, townes, and hamlets: but the south part thereof is utterly destitute of inhabitants, and subject to the Arabians which border vpon it. In the midst of this cite standeth a faire and stately temple, which they call The greatest, and the chiefeest, through the very midst whereof they haue caused a part of the foresaid riuer to runne. The inhabitants are sterne and vnciuill, being so continually exercised in warres, that they haue not one day of quiet. Each part of the cite hath a seuerall captaine and gouernour, who all of them together doe rule the common wealth: but their authoritie continueth neuer aboue three moneths, which being expired, three other are chosen in their rounne. Their apparell is somewhat like vnto that of the people of Hea: sauing that some of them make their shirtes, and other of their garments of a certaine kinde of white stuffe. A Canna (which is a measure proper to this region, containing two elles) of course cloth is solde for halfe a peece of gold: but fower and twentie elles of Portugall or Neatherlandish cloth, if it be any thing fine, is vsually sold there for fower peeces of their gold. Likewise in this towne are many iudges and priests, which are conuerfant onely in matters of religion: but in ciuill matters, he that hath most friends, obtaineth greatest fauour. Whensoever any one is slaine, all the friends of the slaine partie doe soorthwith conspire to kill the murderer. Which if they cannot bring to passe, then is the malefactor by open proclamation banished out of the cite for seuen yeeres, vlesse he will in despite of all men continually defend himselfe by maine force. They which returne from exile before the time prefixed, are punished in such manner as we will hereafter declare in place conuenient. But he that returnes after the seuen yeeres are once expired, maketh a feast vnto the Burghmasters, and so is restored againe to his former libertie. In this cite dwell many Iewes, and many notable artificers, who are not compelled to pay any yeerely tribute or taxation at all: except it be some small gratiue vnto the principall citizens.

Corduan leather of Maroco.

Good sale for cloth.

of

## Of Tarodant a towne of Sus.



THE towne of Tarodant built by the ancient Africans, containeth about three thousand households. It is distant from Atlas Southward about fower miles, and five and thirtie miles Eastward of Teijeut. For the fruitfulness of the soyle and manners of the people, it is all one with Teijeut; saving that the towne is somewhat lesser, and the people somewhat more civill. For when the family of *Marin* gouerned at Fez, part of them also inhabited Sus, and in those daies Sus was the seat of the King of Fez his Vice-roy. There is to be seene even at this present a certaine rocke lying vpon the ground, which was there placed by the foresaid king. But the said family of *Marin* decaying, the inhabitants recovered their former estate. Their garments are made partly of linnen, and partly of woollen; and they haue manie artificers of all sorts. All authoritie is committed vnto their noble or principall men; who gouerne fower by fower, sixe moneths onely. They are wholly giuent to peace: neither doe I read, that euer they endamaged any of their neighbours. Betwene this towne and Atlas are many villages and hamlets: but to the south of this towne lye the Arabians desert. The towne men pay large yeerely tribute, to the ende that merchants may haue safe and secure passage to and fro. This towne in our time waged warre against the Arabians: which, that they might the more prosperously bring to passe, they yielded themselves vnto my Lord the Scriffo; in the yeere of the Hegeira 920 which was in the yeere of our Lord 1511.

## Of the castle of Gartuessem.

Gartuessem  
surprised by  
the Portugals.

THE castle of Gartuessem is built vpon the top of Atlas in a most impregnable place, ouer against that part of the Ocean whereinto the riuer of Sus dischargeth his streames: the soyle is most profitable and fruitfull. This place about twentie yeeres fithens the Portugals surprised; which caused the inhabitants of Hea and Sus soorthwith to arme themselves, to the end they might recouer the castle by maine force, which was by force taken from them. Wherefore leuying a mightie army as wel of home-bornes, as of strangers; they chose for their Captaine a certaine Mahumetan Scriffo, being a man descended of the family of *Mahumer*; and so besieged the castle. But they had unhappie successe in this their enterprise; for they which came to the siege, seeing that they could nor preuaile, and that so many of their companie were slaine, left the castle, and returned home. Except some few which remained with the Scriffo, to the end they might maintaine warre against the Christians, euen till the last hower. The inhabitants of Sus not being desirous to liue in warfare, allowed the Scriffo money for the maintenance of five hundred horses. VWho hauing with his

his money hyred a great number of souldiers, and growing famous ouer all the region, at last vsurped the gouernment thereof. This I know for a certaintie, that the Scriffo, when I came from his court, had about three thousand horsemen; and such numbers of footemen and summes of money, as were almost innumerable.

## Of Tedsi a towne of Sus.

TEdsi being a very great towne, and built many yeeres agoe in a most pleasant and fertile place by the Africans, containeth moe then fower thousand families: it is distant from Tarodant Eastward thirtie miles, from the Ocean sea sixtie miles, and from Atlas twentie. Heere groweth great abundance of corne, of sugar, and of wilde woad. You shall finde in this citie many merchants, which come out of the lande of Negros for traffiques sake. The citizens are great louers of peace & of all ciuilitie: and they haue a flourishing common-wealth. The whole citie is gouerned by sixe Magistrates, which are chosen by lots: howbeit their gouernment lasteth for sixteene moneths onely. The riuer of Sus is distant three miles from hence. Here dwell many Iewes, which are most cunning goldsmiths, carpenters, and such like artificers. They haue a verie stately temple and many priests and doctors of the lawe, which are maintained at the publike charge. Euery munday great numbers of Arabians both of the plaines and of the mountaines come hither to market. In the yeere of the Hegeira 920, this citie of their owne accord yielded themselves into the hands of the Scriffo: and here the common counsell of the whole region was established.

Store of sugar  
and of woad.

## Of the citie of Tagauost.



IN all Sus there is no citie comparable vnto that which is commonly called Tagauost: for it containeth about eight thousand householdes: the wall thereof is builde of rough stones. From the Ocean it is distant about threescore miles, and about fiftie miles southward of Atlas: and the report is, that the Africans builde this citie. About ten miles from this place lieth the riuer of Sus: there are great store of artificers and of shops: and the people of Tagauost are diuided into three parts. They haue continuall ciuill wars among themselves, and one part haue the Arabians alwaies on their side; who for better pay will take parte sometime with one side, and sometime with the contrarie. Of corne and cattell heere is great abundance; but their wooll is exceeding course. In this citie are made certaine kindes of apparell, which are vsually carried for merchandize once a yeere to Tombuto, to Gualata, and to other places in the lande of Negros. Their market is twise euery weeke: their attire is somewhat decent and comely; their women are beautifull: but their men are of a tawnie and swart colour, by reason they are descended



descended of blacke fathers and white mothers. In this citie such carrie the greatest authoritie and credit, as are accounted the richest and the mightiest. I my selfe remained heere thirteene daies with the Scriffo his principall chancellour, who went thither of purpose to buie certaine haues for his Lord, in the yeere of the Hegeira 919. which was in the yeere of our Lord, 1510.

*Of the mountaine of Hanchisa.*

**T**His mountaine beginneth westward from Atlas, and from thence stretcheth almost fortie miles eastward. At the foot of this mountaine standeth Messa, with the residue of the region of Sus. The inhabitants of this mountaine are such valiant footmen, that one of them will encounter two horsemen. The soile will yeeld no corne at all but barley; howbeit hony there is in great abundance. With snowe they are almost at all times troubled: but how patiently and strongly they can endure the colde, a man may easily gesse, for that the whole yeere throughout they weare one single garment onely. This people my Lord the Scriffo attempted often to bring vnder his subiection: howbeit he hath not as yet preuailed against them.

*Of the mountaine of Salem.*

**T**His mountaine beginneth westward from the mountaine aforesaid; on the east it abutteth vpon the region of Guzula, and southward vpon the plaines of Sus. The inhabitants are valiant, hauing great store of horses. They are at continuall warre among themselves, for certaine siluer mines: so that those which haue the better hande digge as much siluer as they can, and distribute to euery man his portion, vntill such time as they be restrained from digging by others.

*The situation and estate of the region of Maroco.*

**T**His region beginneth westward from the mountaine of Nefisa, stretching eastward to the mountaine of Hadimeci, and northward euen to that place where the most famous riuers of Tensift and Asfinuall meete together, that is to say, vpon the east border of Hea. This region is in a manner three square, being a most pleasant countrey, and abounding with many droues and flockes of cattell: it is greene euery where, and most fertile of all things, which serue for foode, or which delight the senses of smelling or seeing. It is altogether a plaine countrey, not much vnlike to Lombardie. The mountaines in this region are most colde and barren, insomuch that they will bring forth nought but barley. Wherefore (according to our former order) beginning at the west part of this region, we will proceed in our description eastward.

of

*Of Elgihumuba a towne of Maroco.*



**V**Pon that plaine which is about feuen miles distant from Atlas, and not farre from the riuer of Sesseua, standeth a towne called by the inhabitants Elgihumuba, which was built, as they suppose, by the Africans. A while after it was brought vnder the subiection of certaine Arabians, about that verie time when the family of Muachidin aforesaid began to reuolt from the kingdome. And at this day the ruines and reliques of this towne can scarce be seene. The Arabians which now dwel thereabout do sow so much ground onely, as to supply their owne necessities; and the residue they let lye vntilled and fruitles. Howbeit when the countrey thereabout was in flourishing estate, the inhabitants payed yeerely vnto the Prince for tribute 100000. ducates: and then this towne contained aboue sixe thousand families. Trauelling that way I was most friendly entertained by a certaine Arabian, and had good experience of the peoples liberality: sauing that I heard of some, that they were most trecherous and deceitfull.

*Of the castle of Imegiagen.*

**T**He castle of Imegiagen is built vpon the top of a certaine hil of Atlas, being so fortified by naturall situation, that it neither hath nor needeth any wall. It standeth southward of Elgihumuba (as I take it) 25. miles. This castle was in times past vnder the iurisdiction of the noble men of that region, vntill such time as it was taken by one *Homar Essuef* an apostata from the Mahumetan religion, as we will afterward declare. The said *Homar* The crueltie of Homar Essuef. vsed such monstrous tyrannie in that place, that neither children, nor women big with childe could escape his crueltie; insomuch that he caused the vnborne infants to bee ripped out of their mothers wombes, and to be murdered. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 900, and so that place remained destitute of inhabitants. In the yeere 920. of the Hegeira the said region began to be inhabited anew: howbeit now there can but one side of the mountaine onely be tilled, for the plaine vnderneath is so dangerous, both by reason of the daily incursions of the Arabians, and also of the Portugals, that no man dare trauell that way.

*Of the towne of Teneffa.*

**V**Pon a certaine hill of Atlas named Ghedmin standeth a towne, which was built (as some report) by the ancient Africans, and called by the name of Teneffa, being a most strong and defensible place, and being distant about eight miles eastward from the riuer of Asfinuall. At the foot of the said hill lieth a most excellent plaine, which, were it not for the lewd thee-

uifh Arabians, would yeeld an incomparable crop. And becaufe the inhabitants of Teneffa are deprived of this notable commoditie, they till onely that ground which is vpon the fide of the mountaine, and which lieth betwene the towne and the riuer. Neither doe they enioy that graine; for they yeerely pay vnto the Arabians for tribute the third part of their corne.

*Of the new towne of Delgumuha.*

Vpon the top of a certaine high mountaine was built in our time a most large and impregnable forte, being enuironed on all fides with diuers other mountaines, and called by the inhabitants New Delgumuha. Beneath the faid mountaine springeth Afifinuall, which word fignifieth in the African toong, the riuer of rumor, becaufe that breaking forth by the fide of the hill with a monftrous noife, it maketh a most deepe gulfe, much like vnto that, which the Italians call *Inferno di Tivoli*. The faid forte containeth almost a thousand families. It was sometime gouerned by a certaine tyrant, which came thither out of the king of Maroco his court. Here may you finde great store of foldiers both horsemen and foote men. They gather yeerely tribute of the people bordering vpon Atlas, to the summe of a thousand crownes. They haue alwaies had great league and familiaritie with the Arabians, each of whom haue accustomed to salute and gratifie the other with mutuall gifts: for which cause they haue oftentimes much prouoked the kings of Maroco againft them. They haue alwaies bene great louers of ciuilitie, and haue worne neat and decent apparell; neither shall you find any corner in the whole towne which is not well peopled. In this towne are plentie of artificers, for it is but fiftie miles from the citie of Maroco. Vpon the faid mountaine there are great store of gardens and orchards; which yeeld the inhabitants abundance of fruit yeerely. They reape likewise barlie, hempe, and cotton; and their goates are almost innumerable. Likewise they haue many priests and iudges; but as touching their mindes, they are ignorant, froward, and exceedingly addicted to ieloufie. In this towne I aboad certaine daies with a kinsman of mine, who while he dwelt at Fez being impouerished with extreme studie of Alchimie, was constrained to flee vnto this towne, where in proceffe of time he became Secretarie vnto the gouernour.

*Of the citie of Imizmizi.*

Vpon a certaine part of Atlas standeth a citie called Imizmizi. Westward it is distant from new Delgumuha about fourteene miles: and this citie the Arabians are reported to haue built. Neere vnto this citie lieth the common high way to Guzula ouer the mountaines of Atlas, being commonly called Burtis, that is, A way strowed with feathers: becaufe snow falles often thereupon, which a man would thinke rather to be feathers then snow. Not far from this towne likewise there is a very faire and large plaine, which

which extendeth for the space of thirtie miles, euen to the territorie of Maroco. This most fertile plaine yeeldeth such excellent corne, as (to my remembrance) I neuer saw the like. Sauing that the Arabians and foldiers of Maroco doe so much molest the faid plaine countrie, that the greater part thereof is destitute of inhabitants: yea, I haue heard of many citizens that haue forsaken the citie it selfe; thinking it better to depart, then to be daily oppressed with so many inconueniences. They haue very little money, but the scarcitie thereof is recompenced by their abundance of good ground, and their plentie of corne. In the time of my aboad with them I went vnto a certaine Hermite, which they called \**Sidi Canon*: which famous and woorthie man gaue me such friendly entertainment, as I cannot easily expresse.

\* *Sidi* fignifieth a Saint in the Arabian toong.

*Of the three townes of Tumelgast.*

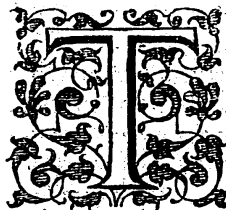
These three townes called by the name of Tumelgast are situate vpon a plaine, about thirtie miles from Maroco, and fourteene miles northward of Atlas, being replenished with palme-trees, vines, and all other trees that beare fruit. Their fields are very large and fertill, were they not continually wasted by the lewd Arabians. So few are the inhabitants of these three townes, that I thinke there are not in all about fiftene families, all which are ioined in affinitie and kinred vnto the foresaid hermite: for which cause they are permitted to till some part of that plaine, without paying of any tribute vnto the Arabians. Saue onely, that they entertaine the Arabians when they trauell that way. Their lowly and base habitations a man would take rather to be hogs-cotes, then dwelling places for men: hence it is, that they are so continually vexed with fleas, gnats, and other such vermine. Their water is exceeding salt. This prouince also I perused in the companie of my deere friend *Sidi Têbie*, who went thither to gather vp the tribute of the countrie on the behalfe of the king of Portugall. This *Sidi* was appointed gouernour ouer all that circuit which is called by them Azafi.

*Of the towne of Tefrast.*

This towne is situate vpon the banke of the riuer Afifelmel. It standeth westward of Maroco fourteen miles, & about twetic miles from Atlas. Round about this towne they haue diuers gardens & enclosures abounding with dates and corne; and the chiefe part of the inhabitants earne their liuing with gardening. Howbeit sometimes the increase of their riuer is so great, that it drowneth all their gardens and corne-fields. And they are by so much the more miserable, in regard that the Arabians all summer-time doe possesse the whole region, deuouring all things which the poore husbandmen by their great care and industrie had provided. With these people I made no longer tarrying but onely till I could haue well baited my horse: howbeit in that short time I hardly escaped with life and goods, from certain Arabian theecues.

A most exact description of the great and famous citie  
of Maroco.

The first found-  
er of Maroco.



Maroco is  
times past coun-  
tained above  
100000 families.

Mansor the  
king of Maro-  
cco.

His noble citie of Maroco in Africa is accounted to be one of the greatest cities in the whole world. It is built vpon a most large field, being about fourteene miles distant from Atlas. One *Ioseph* the sonne of *Tesfin*, and king of the tribe or people called *Luntina*, is reported to haue bene the founder of this citie, at that very time when he conducted his troups into the region of Maroco, and settled himselfe not farre from the common high way, which stretcheth from Agmet ouer the mountaines of Atlas, to those deserts where the foresaid tribe or people doe vsually inhabite. Here may you behold most stately and woonderfull workmanship: for all their buildings are so cunningly and artificially contriued, that a man cannot easily describe the same. This huge and mighty citie, at such time as it was gouerned by *Hali* the sonne of king *Ioseph*, contained moe then 100000 families. It had fower and twenty gates belonging thereto, and a wall of great strength and thicknes, which was built of white stone and lime. From this citie the riuer of *Tensift* lieth about fixe miles distant. Here may you behold great abundance of temples, of colleges, of bath-stoues, and of innes, all framed after the fashion and custome of that region. Some were built by the king of the tribe of *Luntina*, and others by *Elmuachidin* his successor: but the most curious and magnificent temple of all, is that in the midst of the citie which was built by *Hali* the first king of Maroco, and the son of *Ioseph* afore-  
said, being commonly called the temple of *Hali ben Ioseph*. Howbeit one *Abdul-Mumen* which succeeded him, to the ende he might vtterly abolish the name of *Hali*, and might make himselfe onely famous with posteritie, caused this stately temple of Maroco to be razed, and to be reedified somewhat more sumptuously then before. Howbeit he lost not onely his expences, but failed of his purpose also: for the common people euen till this day doe call the said Temple by the first and auncientest name. Likewise in this citie not farre from a certaine rocke was built a Temple by him that was the seconde vsurper ouer the kingdome of Maroco: after whose death his nephew *Mansor* enlarged the saide Temple fiftie cubites on all sides, and adorned the same with manie pillars, which he commanded to be brought out of Spaine for that purpose. Vnder this temple he made a cesterne or vault as bigge as the temple it selfe: the rooffe of the saide temple he couered with lead: and at euery corner he made leaden pipes to conueigh raine water into the cesterne vnderneath the temple. The turret or steeple is built of most hard and well framed stone, like vnto *Vespasian* his Amphitheatrum at Rome, containing in compasse moe then an hundredth elles, and in height exceeding the steeple of Bononia. The

staires

staires of the said turret or steeple are each of them nine handfuls in bredth, the vtmost side of the wall is ten, and \* the thicknes of the turret is fise. The saide turret hath seauen lofts, vnto which the staires ascending are very lightsome: for there are great store of windowes, which to the ende they may giue more light, are made broader within then without. Vpon the top of this turret is built a certaine spire or pinnacle rising sharpe in forme of a sugar-loafe, and containing fise and twentie elles in compasse, but in height being not much more then two speares length: the saide spire hath three lofts one aboue another, vnto euery of which they ascend with wooden ladders. Likewise on the top of this spire standeth a golden halfe moone, vpon a barre of iron, with three spheares of golde vnder it; which golden spheares are so fastened vnto the saide iron barre, that the greatest is lowest, and the least highest. It woulde make a man giddie to looke downe from the top of the turret; for men walking on the ground, be they neuer so tall, seeme no bigger then a childe of one yeere old. From hence likewise may you plainly eie the promontorie of *Azaphi*, which notwithstanding is an hundredth and thirtie miles distant. But mountaines (you will say) by reason of their huge bignes may easily be seene a farre off: howbeit from this turret a man may in cleere weather most easily see fiftie miles into the plaine countries. The inner part of the saide temple is not very beautifull. But the rooffe is most cunningly and artificially vaulted, the timbers being framed and set together with singular workmanship, so that I haue not seene many fairer temples in all Italy. And albeit you shall hardly finde any temple in the whole worlde greater then this, yet is it very meanly frequented; for the people do neuer assemble there but onely vpon fridaies. Yea a great part of this citie, especially about the foresaid temple lieth so desolate and void of inhabitants, that a man cannot without great difficultie passe, by reason of the ruines of many houses lying in the way. Vnder the porch of this temple it is reported that in old time there were almost an hundredth shops of sale-bookes, and as many on the other side ouer against them: but at this time I thinke there is not one booke-seller in all the whole citie to be founde. And scarcely is the third part of this citie inhabited. Within the wals of Maroco are vines, palme-trees, great gardens, and most fruitefull corne-fields: for without their wals they can till no ground, by reason of the Arabians often inrodes. Know yee this for a certaintie, that the saide citie is growen to vtimately decay and old age: for scarcely fise hundredth & sixe yeeres are past, since the first building thereof, forasmuch as the foundations thereof were laide in the time of *Ioseph* the sonne of *Tesfin*, that is to say, in the 424. yeere of the Hegeira. Which decay I can impute to none other cause, but to the iniurie of continuall warres, and to the often alterations of magistrates and of the common wealth. After king *Ioseph* succeeded his sonne *Hali*, and the sonne of *Hali* was ordained gouernour after his fathers decease. In whose time sprung vp a factious crew, by the meanes of a certaine Mahumetan preacher named *Elmaheli*, being a man both borne & brought

Great store of  
bookes in olde  
time to be sold  
in Maroco.

vp

vp in the mountaines. The faide *Elmaheli* hauing leuied a great army, waged warre against *Abraham* his foueraigne Lord. Whereupon king *Abraham* conducting another armie against him, had marueilous ill successe: and after the battaile ended, his passage into the citie of Maroco was so stopped and restrained, that he was forced with a fewe soldiers, which remained yet aliue, to flee eastward to the mountains of Atlas. But *Elmaheli* not being satisfied with expelling his true foueraigne out of his owne kingdome, commaunded one of his captaines called *Abdul Mumen*, with the one halfe of his armie to pursue the distressed king, while himselfe with the other halfe laide siege to Maroco: The king with his followers came at length vnto Oran, hoping there to haue renued his forces. But *Abdul Mumen* and his great armie pursued the faide king so narrowly, that the citizens of Oran told him in plaine termes, that they would not hazard themselves for him. Wherefore this vnhappy king beeing vtterly driuen to dispayre, set his Queene on horsebacke behinde him, and so in the night time road forth of the citie. But perceiuing that he was descried and knowen by his eni-

The miserable death of Abraham king of Maroco and of his Queene.

mies, he fled forthwith vnto a certaine rocke standing vpon the sea-shore: where, setting spurs to his horse-side, he cast himselfe, his most deere spouse, and his horse downe headlong, and was within a while after found slaine among the rockes and stones, by certaine which dwell neere vnto the place. Wherefore *Abdul Mumen* hauing gotten the victorie, returned in triumphant manner toward Maroco, where the foresaide *Elmaheli* was deceased before his coming, in whose place *Abdul* was chosen King and Mahumetan prelate ouer the fortie disciples, and tooke tenne persons to be of his priuie counsell, which was a new inuention in the law of Mahumet. This *Abdul Mumen* hauing besieged the citie of Maroco for the space of an whole yeere; at last ouercame it: and killing *Isaac* the onely sonne of King *Abraham* with his owne hand, he commaunded all the soldiers, and a good part of the citizens to be slaine. This mans posteritie reigned from the fve hundred sixteenth, to the fixe hundred sixtie eight yeere of the Hegeira, and at length they were dispossessed of the kingdome by a certaine king of the Tribe called *Marin*. Now, attend (I beseech you) and marke, what changes and alterations of estates befell afterwards. The family of *Marin* after the said kings de cease bare rule till the yeere of the Hegeira 785. At length the kingdome of Maroco decreasing dayly more and more, was gouerned by kings which came out of the next mountaine. Howbeit, neuer had Maroco any gouernours which did so tyrannize ouer it, as they of the family called *Marin*. The principall court of this family was holden for the most part at Fez; but ouer Maroco were appointed Vice-royes and deputies: insomuch that Fez was continually the head and Metropolitan citie of all Mauritania, and of all the Western dominion: euen as (God willing) we will declare more at large in our brieft treatise concerning the law and religion of Mahumet. But now hauing made a sufficient digression, let vs resume the matter subiect where we left. In the said citie of Maroco is

a most impregnable castle, which, if you consider the bignes, the walles, the towers, and the gates built all of perfect marble, you may well thinke to be a citie rather then a castle. Within this castle there is a stately temple, hauing a most losie and high steeple, on the top whereof standeth an halfe moone; and vnder the halfe moone are three golden spheares one bigger then another, which all of them together weigh 130000. ducates. Some kings there were, who being allured with the value, went about to take downe the faide golden spheares: but they had alwaies some great misfortune or other, which hindered their attempt: insomuch that the common people thinke it verie dangerous, if a man doth but offer to touch the said spheares with his hand. Some affirme that they are there placed by so forcible an influence of the planets, that they cannot be remoued from thence by any cunning or deuice. Some others report that a certaine spirite is adiuured by Arte-magique, to defend those spheares from al assaults and iniuries whatsoever. In our time the king of Maroco neglecting the vulgar opinion, would haue taken down the said spheares, to vse them for treasure against the Portugals, who as then prepared themselves to battell against him. Howbeit his counsellours would not suffer him so to doe, for that they esteemed them as the principall monuments of all Maroco. I remember that I read in a certaine historiographer, that the wife of King *Manfor*, to the ende she might be famous in time to come, caused those three spheares to be made of the princely and pretious iewels which her husband *Manfor* bestowed vpon her, and to be placed vpon the temple which he built. Likewise the said castle containeth a most noble college, which hath thirtie hals belonging thereunto. In the midst whereof is one hall of a maruellous greatnes, wherein publicke lectures were most solemnely read, while the studie of learning flourished among them. Such as were admitted into this college had their victuals and apparell freely giuen them. Of their professours some were yeerely allowed an hundred, and some two hundred ducates, according to the qualitie of their profession: neither would they admit any to heare them read, but such as perfectly vnderstood what belonged to those Arts which they professed. The walles of this beautifull hall are most stately adorned with painting and carving; especially of that hall where lectures were wont publicly to be read. All their porches and vaulted roofes are made of painted and glittering stones, called in their language *Escolleins*, such as are yet vsed in Spaine. In the midst of the said building is a most pleasant and cleare fountaine, the wall whereof is of white and polished marble; albeit low-built, as in Africa for the most part such wals are. I haue heard that in old time here was great abundance of students; but at my beeing there I found but fve in all: and they haue now a most sencelesse professour, and one that is quite void of all humanitie.

Three golden spheares.

A great college.

In the time of mine abode at Maroco I grew into familiar acquaintance with a certaine Iewe, who albeit his skill in the law was but meane, was notwithstanding exceeding rich and well known in histories. This Iewe in regard



gard of many singular duties which he performed to his prince, found the kings bountie and liberalitie extended vnto him. All others which beare any publike office are (in mine opinion) men of no high reach. Moreouer the foresaide castell (as I remember) hath twelue courts most curiously and artificially built by one *Manfor*. In the first lodged about fise hundreth Christians, which carried crosse-bowes before the king whither soeuer he went. Not farre from thence is the lodging of the Lord Chancellour and of the kings priuie counsell, which house is called by them, The house of affaires. The third is called The court of victorie; wherein all the armour and munition of the cite is laide vp. The fourth belongeth to the great Master of the kings horse. Vpon this court three stables adioine, each one of which stables will containe two hundreth horses. Likewise there are two other ostleries, wherof one is for mules, and the other for an hundreth of the kings horses onely. Next vnto the stables were two barnes or garners adioining, in two severall places, in the lower of which barnes was laide straw, and barley in the other. There is also another most large place to laye vp corne in, euerie rounge whereof will containe moe then three hundreth bushels. The couer of the saide rounge hath a certaine hole whereunto they ascend by staires made of stone. Whither the beasts laden with corne being come, they powre the saide corne into the hole. And so when they would take any corne from thence, they do but open certaine holes below, suffering so much corne to come forth as may serue their turnes, and that without any labour at all. There is likewise a certaine other hall, where the kings sonne, and the sonnes of noble men are instructed in learning. Then may you behold a certaine fower-square building, containing diuers galleries with faire glasse windowes, in which galleries are many histories most curiously painted: heere likewise the glittering and gilt armour is to be seene. Next vnto this building is another, wherein certaine of the kings guard are lodged: then followes that wherein state-matters are discussed: whereunto adioineth also another, which is appointed for ambassadours to conferre with the kings priuie counsell in. Likewise the kings concubines and other ladies of honour haue a most conuenient place assigned them: next vnto which standeth the lodging of the kings sonnes. Not farre from the castell wall, on that side which is next vnto the fields, may you behold a most pleasant and large garden, containing almost all kinde of trees that can be named. Moreouer, there is a sumptuous and stately porch built of most excellent square marble: in the midst whereof standeth a pillar with a lion very artificially made of marble, out of the mouth of which lion issueth most cleere and christall water, falling into a cesterne within the porch: at each corner of the saide porch standeth the image of a leopard framed of white marble, which is naturally adorned with certaine blacke spots: this kinde of particoloured marble is no where to be founde but onely in a certaine place of Atlas, which is about an hundreth & fiftie miles distant from Maroco. Not farre from the garden stands a certaine woode or parke wal-

Excellent spotted marble.

led round about. And here I thinke no kinde of wilde beasts are wanting: for heere you may behold elephants, lions, stagges, roes, and such like: howbeit the lions are separated in a certaine place from other beasts, which place euen to this day is called The lions den. VV herefore such monuments of antiquity as are yet extant in Maroco, albeit they are but few, do notwithstanding sufficiently argue, what a noble citie it was in the time of *Manfor*. At this present the courts and lodgings before described lie vterly voide and desolate: except perhaps some of the kings ostlerie which tend his mules and horses do lie in that court, which we saide euen now was to lodge archers and crossebowe-men: all the residue are left for the fowles of the aire to nestle in. That garden which you might haue named a paradise in olde time, is now become a place where the filth and dung of the whole citie is cast forth. Where the faire and stately librarie was of old, at this present there is nothing else to be founde, but hens, dooues, and other such like foules, which builde their nests there. Certaine it is, that the foresaid *Manfor*, whom we haue so often mentioned, was a most puissant and mightie prince: for it is well knownen that his dominion stretched from the towne of Messa to the kingdome of Tripolis in Barbary, which is the most excellent region of Africa, and so large, that a man can hardly trauell the length thereof in fourescore & ten daies, or the bredth in fiftene. This *Manfor* likewise was in times past Lord of all the kingdome of Granada in Spaine. Yea, his dominion in Spaine extended from Tariffa to Aragon, & ouer a great part of Castilia and of Portugall. Neither did this *Jacob* surnamed *Manfor* only possesse the foresaid dominiōs, but also his grandfather *Abdul Mumen*, his father *Ioseph*, & his sonne *Mahumet Enasir*, who being vanquished in the kingdome of Valencia, lost 60000. soldiers horsemen & footemen: howbeit himselfe escaped & returned to Maroco. The Christians being encouraged with this victorie, refrained not from warre, till, within 30. yeeres space, they had won all the townes following, to wit, Valencia, Denia, Alcauro, Murcia, Cartagena, Cordoua, Siuillia, Jaen, and Vbeda. After which unhappie warre succeeded the decay of Maroco. The said Mahumet deceasing, left behinde him ten sonnes of a full and perfect age, who contended much about the kingdome. Hereupon it came to passe, while the brethren were at discord, and assailed each other with mutuall warres, that the people of Fez called *Marini*, and the inhabitants of other regions adiacent began to vsurpe the gouernment. The people called *Habdulvad* enioyed Tremizen, expelling the king of Tunis, and ordaining some other, whom they pleased, in his stead. Now haue you heard the end of *Manfor* his progenie and successors. The kingdome therefore was translated vnto one *Jacob* the sonne of *Habdulach*, who was the first king of the familie called *Marin*. And at length the famous citie of Maroco it selfe, by reason of the Arabians continuall outrages, fell into most extreme calamitie: so great is the inconstancie of all earthly things. That which we haue here reported as touching Maroco, partly we saw with our owne eyes, partly we read in the historie of one *Ibnu Ibnu Abdul*.

This king called Manfor was he unto whom Rafis that famous physician dedicated his Booke.

The huge dominions of king Manfor.

The Christians happy success against the Moores.

*Abdul Malich.* *Abdul Malich*, a most exact chronicler of the affaires of Marocco, and partly we borrowed out of that treatise, which our selues haue written concerning the law of Mahumet.

*Of the towne of Agmet.*

**T**HE towne of Agmet built of old by the Africans vpon the top of a certaine hill which beginneth almost from Atlas, is distant from Marocco about fower and twentie miles. In times past, when *Muachidin* was prince thereof, it contained more then fixe thousand families: at what time the people were very ciuill, and had such plentie and magnificence of all things, that many would not sticke to compare this towne with the citie of Marocco. It had on all sides most pleasant gardens, and great store of vines, whereof some grew vpon the mountaine it selfe, and others on the valley. By the foote of this hill runneth a faire riuer, which springing forth of Atlas, falleth at length into Tensift. The field which lieth neere vnto this riuer is said to be so fruitfull, that it yeeldeth euery yeere fiftie fold encrease. The water of this riuer looketh alwaies white; albeit if a man stedfastly behold the said riuer, it may seeme vnto him in colour to resemble the soile of Narnia, or the riuer Niger of Vmbria in Italie. And some there are which affirme, that the very same riuer runneth vnder ground to Marocco, and not to breake forth of the earth, till it come to a certaine place very neere vnto the said citie. Many princes in times past, being desirous to know the hidden and intricate passages of the said riuer, sent certaine persons into the hollow caue, who the better to discern the same, carried candles and torches with them. But hauing proceeded a litle way vnder ground, there met them such a flaw of winde, that blew out their lights, and perforce draue them backe to the great hazard of their liues, so that they said they neuer felt the like. They affirme likewise, that the riuer being full of rocks, which the water driueth to and fro, and by reason of the manifold chanelles and streames, their passage was altogether hindered. Wherefore that secret remaineth vnknewne euen till this day, neither is there any man so hardie as to attempt the same enterprise againe. I remember that I read in some histories, that king *Ieseph* which built Marocco, being forewarned by the coniecture of a certaine astrologer, that the whole region should perpetually be vexed with waire, provided by arte magique, that the passage of this riuer should alwaies be vnknewne: least, if any enimie should afterward practise mischief, he might cut off the course thereof from the saide citie. Neere vnto this riuer lies the common high way, which crosseth ouer mount Atlas to Guzula a region of Marocco. Howbeit the citie of Agmet, which I haue now described vnto you, hath at this day no other inhabitants but woolues, foxes, deere, and such other wilde beasts. Except onely at my being there I found a certaine Hermite, who was attended vpon by an hundred persons of his owne sect: all of them were well-horsed, and did their best endeouour to become gouernours

*A riuer running vnder the ground to Marocco.*

*The desolation of Agmet.*

nours and commanders, but their forces were insufficient. With this Hermite I staid (as I remember) for the space of tenne daies, and founde one amongst his followers, with whom I had old acquaintance, and familiaritie: for we were certaine yeeres fellow-students together at Fez, where being of one standing and seniority, we heard that booke of the Mahumetan religion expounded, which is commonly called the epistle of *Nensesi*.

*John Leo student at Fez.*

*Of the towne of Hannimeï.*

**V**Pon that side of Atlas which lieth towards the plaine countrey, standeth a certain towne called by the inhabitants Hannimeï, being about 40. miles eastward of Marocco: by which towne, on the same side of Atlas, lieth the direct way to Fez. From the said towne the riuer of Agmet is almost fiftene miles distant: and the field lying betwene the saide riuer and towne is a most fruitfull soile, like vnto the field adjoining vpon the citie of Agmet before mentioned. All the region betwene Marocco and the foresaid riuer is in subiection vnto the gouernour of Marocco, but from the riuer vnto Hannimeï the townes-men of Hannimeï beare rule. This towne had a famous yong captaine, who maintained continuall warre against the gouernour of Marocco, and somtimes against the Arabians also. He had likewise a most ample dominion vpon the mountaines of Atlas: by naturall disposition he was right liberal & valiant, and hauing scarce attained to sixteene yeeres of age, he slue his owne vnkle, and vsurped his gouernment. Whereof so soone as the Arabians had intelligence, joining three hundred Christian horsemen, which came out of Portugale, vnto their great forces, they marched on the sodaine euen to the very gates of the towne. And the foresaide captaine with his armie containing scarce an hundred horsemen, with a very fewe footemen met the Arabians, and gaue them such a valiant onset, that the greater part of them was slaine, and the Christians were so discomfited, that (as I suppose) not one of them returned home into Portugale: which (they say) came to passe, both by reason that the Christians were ignorant of the place, and vnskilfull of the Africans manner of warfare. These things were done in the 920. yeere of the Hegeira, and in the yeere of our Lorde 1511. Afterward being wearied by the king of Fez his warres (which king demanded tribute of the townes-men of Hannimeï) he was slaine with a buller: whereupon the towne remained tributarie to the king of Fez. Yea, the deceased captaines wife deliuered as prisoners certaine burgeses of the towne vnto the king himselfe. And the king so soone as he had placed a lieutenant ouer Hannimeï, departed from the same towne in the 921. yeere of the Hegeira, and in the yeere of our Lord 1512.

*The captaine of Hannimeï.*

## Of the mountaine of Niffa.



Having before described all the cities and townes of Maroco, it now remaineth that we briefly declare the situation and qualitie of the mountaines there. Wherefore we will begin with the mountaine of Niffa, from whence the region of Maroco it selfe beginneth westward, and is thereby diuided from the prouince of Hea. The said mountaine hath great store of inhabitants: and albeit the tops thereof are continually couered with snowe, yet doth it yeerely affoorde marueilous increase and abundance of barley. The rude people there are so destitute of all humanitie and ciuill behauiour, that they do admire not onely all strangers, but also do euen gaze and woonder at their apparell. I my selfe remained two daies among them, in which space all the people of the towne came flocking about me, greatly woondring at the white garment which I wore (being such as the learned men of our countrey are vsually clad in) so that euery one being desirous to handle and view this garment of mine, in two daies it was turned from white to blacke, and became all greasie and filthie. Here one of the townes-men being allured with the strangenes and noueltie of my sworde, which I bought at Fez for halfe a ducate, would neuer leaue intreating of me, till I had exchanged it with him for an horse, which cost (as himselfe affirmed) about ten ducates. The reason of which fonde and childish behauiour I thinke to be, because they neuer trauaile vnto Fez nor to any other cities. And were they neuer so desirous to trauaile, yet dare they not aduenture vpon the common high waies, in regard of the great number of robbers and theecues. Of honie, goates, and oile Arganick they haue woonderfull store: for in this mountaine beginneth the saide oile to be put in vse.

## Of the mountaine called Semede.



At the bounds of Niffa a certaine other mountaine called by the inhabitants. Semede taketh his originall: and these two mountaines are separated by the riuer of Sefsaua. Semede extendeth eastward almost 20 miles, the inhabitants whereof are most base & witlesse people. Great store of springs & fountaines are here to be found; the snowe is perpetuall; all good lawes, ciuilitie, and honestie are quite banished from hence, except perhaps the people be mooued thereunto by the aduise of some stranger, whom they finde to be of a modest and sober disposition. Here being entertained by a certaine religious man of the same place (who was had in great reputation by the people) I was constrained to eate of such grosse meats as the saide people are accustomed vnto, to wit, of barlie meale mingled with water, and of goates-flesh, which was extremely tough and hard by reason of the stale-  
nes

nes and long continuance. After supper we had no other bed but the bare ground to lie vpon. The next morning being ready to take horse, and desirous to depart, fiftie of the people came about me, laying open each man their causes and suites vnto me, as our people vse to doe before a iudge. Vnto whom I answered, that I had neuer in all my life either knowen or heard of the manners and customes of that region. Foorthwith comes one of the chiefe men amongst them, affirming that it was their custome neuer to dismiss any stranger, till he had both heard and throughly decided all the quarrells and controuersies of the inhabitants. Which words he had no sooner vttered, but immediately my horse was taken from me. Wherefore I was constrained for nine daies, and so many nights, longer to abide the penurie and miserie of that region. Moreouer my trouble was the greater, for that, in such abundance of suites and affaires, there was not one man present, which could set downe so much as a word in writing: wherefore I my selfe was faine to play both the iudge and the notarie. Vpon the eight day they all of them promised to bestowe some great rewarde vpon me. Wherefore the night following seemed vnto me a yeere long: for I was in good hope the next morrow to haue receiued a masse of golde from my clients. So soone as the next day began to dawne, they placed me in a certaine church-porch: whither, after an vsuall and short praier ended, each man full reuerently presented his gift vnto me. Here some offered me a cocke, others brought me nuts and onions, and some others bestowed a handfull of garlick vpon me. The principall and head-men amongst them presented me with a goat; and so by reason that there was no money in all the said mountaine, they proffered me not one farthing for my paines: wherefore all the said gifts I bequeathed vnto mine oste for his woorthie entertaining of me. And this was all the notable reward which I reaped in regarde of so great and intolerable paines. All things being thus dispatched, they sent fiftie horsemen to accompanie and guard me from theecues in that dangerous way.

## Of the mountaine called Sefsaua.

This mountaine of Seufaua taketh his beginning where Semede endeth, out of which springeth a certaine riuer, hauing one name with the said mountaine from whence it proceedeth. Neuer were the tops of this mountaine seene destitute of snowe. The inhabitants leade a brutish and sauage life, waging continuall warre with their next neighbours: for which purpose they vse neither swords, iauelins, nor any other warlike instruments, but onely certaine slings, out of which they discharge stones after a strange and woonderfull manner. Their victuals consist of barlie, honie, and goates-flesh. In the same mountaine great multitudes of Iewes exercising handy-craftes, doe inhabite: likewise they make sope, yron-hookes, and horse-shoes. Diuers masons are here to be found also. They build their walles of no other matter but onely of rough stone and lime, and the roofes

John Leo constrained to play the iudge.

of their houses they use to cover with thatch: neither haue they any other kind of lime or bricks. They haue among them also abundance of learned men & of skilful lawyers, whose counsell they use at all times. Among whom I found some, who had heretofore bene my fellow-students at Fez, and for our old acquaintance sake, gaue me most courteous entertainment: and, to the end I might escape the danger of theues, they conducted me a good part of my way.

*Of the mountaine called Sefina.*



Pon this most lofry and cold mountaine there is nothing almost to be found, but continuall snowe and woods. The inhabitants weare white caps: and the region in all places is full of springs and fountaines. Out of the said mountaine springeth a riuer, which in the discourse before-going we called Afifinall. All ouer this mountaine are most deepe and hollow caues, wherein euerie yeere, for the three cold moneths of Nouember, Ianuarie, and Februarie they vsually winter their cattell, laying vp so much fodder, namely hay, and the leaues of certaine trees, as they thinke will suffice them. Most of their victuals are brought vnto them from the next mountaines, because their owne soyle yeeldeth no come at all: onely in the spring time and in sommer, they haue good plentie of new cheese and butter. Their old age they beare most lustily and stoutly, sometime at ninetie, and sometime at an hundred yeeres. They giue attendance to their cattell all their life long, neither doe they at any time, or feldome, see any strangers. They weare no shooes at all, but certaine sandals only, to defend the soles of their feete: and their legs they wrap in a certaine piece of cloath or list instead of an hose, to keepe themselves from the iniurie of the snow.

*Of the mountaine called Temnella.*



His high and cold mountaine hath verie many inhabitants: vpon the top whereof standeth a towne which is called by the name of the mountaine it selfe. In this towne are great store of dwellers, and a most stately and beautifull temple. It hath likewise a most pleasant and cleere riuer. This towne is adorned with the monuments of \**Elmahdi* (who was in times past a most learned Mahumetan priest) and of *Abdul Mumen* his disciple. And albeit the inhabitants are accounted heretiques by all other Mahumetans, yet is there no kinde of learning which they will not arrogate vnto themselves: because perhaps they are well read in the workes of *Elmahdi*, who was notwithstanding the ringleader of all the said heretiques: so that if any stranger come among them, they presently challenge him to dispute in matters of learning. In their apparell they goe verie ragged and beggerly, by reason that they haue

\* Or Elmaheli.

no

no taylors in the whole towne. Their common-wealth is gouerned after a wilde and sauage manner, albeit they haue a certaine priest, which vseth all the policie and meanes he can to bring it into good order. Their victuals are barley-bread and oyle of oliues: likewise they haue great store of nuts, and of pine-trees.

*Of the mountaine called Gedmeua.*



Gedmeua beginneth at the West frontier of the foresaide mountaine of Semede, and stretcheth Eastward almost fife and twentie miles, extending vnto the border of Mizmizi. All the inhabitants are rude, miserable, and hunger-starued people, being subiect to the Arabians, for that they border vpon those fields which adioine vpon the mountaine of Temnella. This hill of Gedmeua aboundeth with oliues, barley, wood, and fountaines.

*Of the mountaine called Hanteta.*



Nuer did I see (to my remembrance) an higher mountaine, then that which the Africans call Hanteta. Westward it beginneth from Gedmeua, and stretcheth fife and fortie miles Eastward, to the mountaine of Adimmei beforenamed. The inhabitants are valiant and rich, hauing great store of horses. Heere likewise standeth a most strong and impregnable castle subiect vnto a certaine nobleman, which is reported to be of alliance vnto the prince of Maroco: howbeit they are at continuall warre for certaine landes situate within their dominions. Many Iewes exercising diuers handie-crafts doe here inhabite, and do yeerely pay vnto the gouernour of this mountaine great summes of money. As concerning religion, they follow them especially which are called Carrain. The top of this mountaine is continually couered with snow. When I first beheld this mountaine, I thought it had bin clouds; so great is the height thereof. The sides of this mountaine being altogether destitute of herbes and trees, are in many places stored with excellent white marble, which the people might dig, and make a good commodity thereof, were they not so sluggish and so ignorant in hewing and polishing of the same. In this place are many pillars and arches which were most artificially and sumptuously built by those mightie princes whom we haue often before made mention of: which pillers they would haue used for the building of water-conduits, had they not bene hindred by the violence of warres. To be brieft, in the said mountaine I saw many notable things, whereof I will here make no discourse at all, partly because they are out of my remembrance, and partly for auoiding tediousnes to the reader, because I haue determined to passe ouer these small matters, and to proccede vnto greater.

of



Of the mountaine called *Adimnei*.

**R**om Hanteta beginneth another huge and high mountaine called by the inhabitants *Adimnei*, extending eastward to the riuer of *Tesut*. Vpon this mountaine standeth that citie, the prince whereof (as we said before) was slaine in battell against the king of *Fez*. This mountaine is well stored with inhabitants and aboundeth with woods which bring forth acornes, oliues, and quinces. The people heere inhabiting are most valiant, possessing beasts and cattell of all sorts, their ayre being verie temperate, and their soile exceeding fruitfull. Springs they haue great plentie, and also two riuers issuing forth of the said mountaine, whereof in due place we will discourse more at large. Wherefore hauing described all the cities and mountaines of *Maroco* bordering southward vpon *Atlas*, let vs now passe ouer the said mountaine of *Atlas*, and take a view of the region beyond it commonly called *Guzzula*.

Of the region of *Guzzula*.

**T**his region is exceeding populous: westward it abutteth vpon *Ilda* a mountaine of *Sus*; northward it ioineth vnto *Atlas*, and eastward it stretcheth vnto the region of *Hea*. It is inhabited with sauage and fierce people, beeing most needie of money, and yet abounding greatly in cattell. Great store of copper and yron is here: digged out of mines, and here are brasen vessels made, which are carried into other countries to be solde: and these vessels they exchange for linnen and woollen cloth, for horses, and for other wares necessarie for the said region. In all this whole region there is neither towne nor castle enuironed with walles. Great villages they haue, which containe, many of them, more then a thousand families a peece. They haue neither king nor gouernour to prescribe any lawes vnto them: but euerie one is his owne captaine and commander; whereupon they are at continuall warres among themselves, neither haue they any truce at all, but three daies onely euery weeke; during which time euery man may safely and freely bargain with his enemye, and may trauell whither he listeth. But these daies of truce being past, the wretched people of this region do continually commit most horrible slaughters. The foresaide daies of truce a certaine Hermite appointed vnto them, whom they honoured and reuerenced like a god. This Hermite with one eie I my selfe saw, and found him to be a trustie; sincere, courteous, and most liberall person. The common attire of the people of *Guzzula* is a woollen iacket streight to their bodies & without sleeves. They weare crooked, broad, and two-edged daggers: and their swords are like vnto the swords of *Hea*. Once euery yeere they haue a faire of two moneths long:

all

all which time (though the number of merchants be neuer so great) they giue free entertainment vnto all such as either bring wares with them, or come thither to fetch away their wares. When the time of their faire approacheth, they forthwith make truce, and each faction appointeth a captaine ouer an hundred soldiers, to the end they may keepe themselves in safetie, and may defend their said faire from the inuasion and iniurie of all lewd persons. If any offence be committed, the captaines immediately giue sentence vpon the guiltie person: and whosoeuer bee convicted of theft, is forthwith slaine like a brute beast, and his theeuers carcase is throwne out to be deuoured of dogs, wilde beastes, and rauinous fowles. The said faire is kept in a certaine plaine or valley betweene two hills. All the wares are contained in tents and in certaine cottages made of boughes, so that each particular kind of merchandize hath a seuerall place to lie in by it selfe. They which sell droues of cattell are remooued farre from the tents. And euery tent hath a cottage made of boughes belonging thereunto, for their principal and head men to repose themselves in. And in the said cottages or bowers are merchant strangers (as we noted before) freely entertained and boured. Also they haue certaine Caters & purueiers among them, which make prouision of victuals, and take vpon them the friendly and well entertaining of strangers. And albeit an huge deale of money is spent for this behalfe, yet make they a good gaine thereof: for thither doe resort all the merchants of that region for traffiques sake, yea and a great number out of the land of *Negros*, who bring with them marvellous plentie of all kindes of wares. And although they are men of a dull and grosse capacitie, yet are they very industrious in gouerning and maintaining the said faire: the beginning whereof is vpon the birth-day of that great deceiuer *Mahumet*, that is, vpon the twelfth day of their moneth called *Rabih*, which is the third *Haraba* of the yeere, according to their account. I my selfe was present at this faire in the companie of my Lord the *Seriffo* for the space of fifteene daies, in the yeere of the *Hegeira* 920. which was in the yeere of our Lord 1511.

A briefe description of the region of *Duccala*.

**T**his region beginneth westward from the riuer of *Tensift*; northward it is bounded with the Ocean sea; the south part thereof lieth vpon the riuer of *Habid*; and the east part abutteth vpon the riuer *Ommirabih*. It is three daies iourney long, and about two daies iourney broad. Very populous it is; the inhabitants being a rude people, and most ignorant of all ciuilitie and humanitie. Walled cities it hath but a few, of all which we will in their due places particularly discourse, neither wil we (by Gods helpe) omit any thing which may seeme worthe of memorie.

of

Free entertainment for merchants.

Yron and copper mines.

Continuall warres in *Guzzula*.

## Of the towne of Azaphi.



T was built by the Africans, and standeth vpon the shore of the Ocean sea, containing fower thousand families: inhabitants there are great store, being for the most part very vnciuill and barbarous. In times past there dwelt many Iewes in this towne, which exercised diuers handy-crafts. Their soile is exceeding fertill; but so grosse is their owne vnskilfulnes and negligence, that they know neither how to till their ground, to sow their corne, or to plant vineyards: except perhaps some few of them (who would seeme to be more prouident then the residue) sow a quantitie of pot-herbes in their smal gardens. After the kings of Maroco gaue ouer the gouernment of the saide region, the citie of Azafi was vsurped by certaine which were said to fetch their originall from Farchon. Howbeit in our daies the said citie was gouerned by a certaine prince called Hebdurrahman: this man for a greedy and ambitious desire of raigning murdered his owne vncl: after whose death he gouerned the towne for certaine yeeres. He had a daughter of most excellent beauty, who falling in loue with a certaine courtier (whose name was *Hali*, being sonne vnto one *Goesimen*) by the helpe of her mother and her wayting maide enioyed oftentimes the companie of her paramour. Which when her father had intelligence of, hee rebuked his wife, threatening death vnto her, if shee reformed not the manners of her daughter: howbeit afterwarde hee dissembled his furie. But the mother thoroughly knowing her husbandes intent, tolde her daughters paramour that the prince was not to bee trusted, and therefore aduised him to take heede vnto himselfe. Whereupon *Hali* fearing least some mischiefe might light vpon him, began to determine with himselfe the princes death, and for his associate in this conspiracie he tooke a trusty friend of his who had been most familiar with him from his childhoode, and was captaine ouer a certaine band of footemen. Wherefore both of them being alike mischieuouously bent against their prince, expected nothing else but a fit place and oportunitie to put their bloudie determination in practise. Contrariwise the king seeking by all meanes an occasion to effect his purpose, sent word vnto *Hali* vpon a certaine festiuall day, that after their Mahumetan deuotions were finished he shoulde come and walke with him; appointing a place, where he had laide a troupe of men in ambush to kill *Hali* at his comming: which being done, he went to church. *Hali* suspecting no harme at all, told his associate, that now was the time wherein they might bring their purpose to effect. And this intent of theirs they forthwith declared vnto ten other of their adherents: and to the end that the whole matter might go securely and certainly forward, they presently assembled a great multitude of footemen (which they fained that they would sende the next day vnto Azamor) that, if they were constrained to flie, they might haue aide and succour

The occasion of  
the prince of  
Azaphi his  
death.

cour in a readines. All their complices being armed, they came to church at the very same time when as the king with all his traine was entring thereinto, and had placed himselfe next vnto the Mahumetan preacher. The church was full of auditors, and the king had his guard attending vpon him, who bicause they knew the two foresaid yoong gentlemen to be very familiar with the king, suspected none euill, but suffered them to draw neere vnto his person. Wherefore one of the saide yoong courtiers, as though he would haue done obeizance vnto the king, came before him, but *Hali* got in at his backe and stabd him through with a dagger: and at the verie same instant the other thrust him in with his sworde, and so this unhappie king, imbrued in his owne bloud, gaue vp the ghost. The kings garde went about to apprehend the authors of this fact; but being ouermatched by the contrarie part, and suspecting, least the people were authors of this conspiracie, they sought to saue themselves by flight. And after them followed all the rest of the assemblie, till the authors of the saide murder were left alone. They also immediately came foorth, and perswaded the people with many words, that they had slaine the king for none other cause, but onely in regard that he had attempted the vtter ouerthrow both of themselves and of the whole people. The citizens beeing to too credulous, aduanced the two foresaid conspiratours to the gouernment of the kingdome: howbeit they agreed not long thereabout, but the common-wealth was diuerly tossed hither and thither, sometime inclining to one, & sometime to another. Wherefore the Portugall merchants which vsually frequented that citie in great numbers, wrote vnto their king to sende forthwith an armie of foldiers thither: for they were in good hope, that he shoulde most easily and with small disaduantage winne the saide citie. Howbeit the king being nothing moued with this message of theirs, would not send any forces at all, till he was more certainly informed by his said merchants touching the death of the king of Azaphi, & the dissension betweene the two new gouernours. As also, that they had made such a compact with a certaine captaine of the contrary faction, that it was the easiest matter in the world for him to cōquer the towne. For they had built them a verie strong castell vpon the sea-shore, wherein their merchandize might safely be bestowed. For the Portugals had perswaded the townes-men, that during the great tumult about the kings death, they were all of them in danger to lose both their liues and goods. Wherefore into this castell, among their vessels of oile and other wares, they cunningly conueied gunnes and all other kind of warlike instruments: but the townes-men being ignorant heereof, exacted nothing of the Portugals saue onely custome due for their wares. Now after the Portugales had sufficiently provided themselves of all kinde of armour and warlike munitions, they sought by all meanes an occasion to fight with the citizens. At length it came to passe that a certaine Portugals seruant buying meat in the citie, did so prouoke a butcher, that after much quarrelling they fell to blowes, whereupon the seruant feeling himselfe hurt, thrust the butcher with

The prince of  
Azaphi slaine, as  
he was hearing  
of a Mahumetan  
sermon.

with his sworde, and laide him along vpon the colde earth, and then fledde speedily to the castell, wherein he knewe the merchants to be. The people immediately rose vp in armes, and ranne all of them with one consent vnto the castell, to the end they might vtterly destroy it, & cut the throats of all them which were therein. But the guns and crosse-bowes which were there in a readines made such hauock among the townes-men, that it cannot be, but they were greatly daunted. At this first encounter there were an hundreth and fiftie citizens slaine outright; howbeit the residue woulde not therefore giue ouer, but gaue the castle daily assaults. At length the king of Portugall sent aide vnto his subiects, to wit fise thousand footemen, two hundreth horsemen, with a great number of gunnes. Which forces when the citizens sawe to approach, they presently betooke themselves to their feete, and fled vnto the mountaine of Benimegher: neither durst any man staie in the towne, but onely he that was the author of building the castle. And so it came to passe that the Portugall forces woon the towne without any perill or labour. Soone after the generall of the whole armie sent the builder of the castle vnto the king of Portugall. But the king sent him with a certaine number of attendants backe againe to Azafi, and appointed him gouernour of all the region adiacent. For the Portugall king was not acquainted with their customes, nether did he sufficiently know how they gouerned their common-wealth. Soone after ensued the miserable desolation and ruine, not onely of the citie but of the whole region thereabouts. In this discourse we haue beene somewhat tedious, to the end we might shew of how great euill a woman may be the instrument, and what intollerable mischiefs are bred by dissension. These things were a dooing (as I remember) when my selfe was but ten yeeres olde: and being towerteene yeeres of age, I had some conference with the Portugall captaine aforesaide. This captaine with an armie of fise hundreth Portugals, and more then twelue thousand Arabian horsemen giuing battaile to the king of Maroco, conquered all the foresaid prouince on the behalfe of his master the Portugall king, in the yeere of the Hegeira 920. as in our brieft treatise concerning the Mahumetan religion we will declare more at large.

*Azafi woon by the Portugals.*

*John Leo ten yeeres old at the winning of Azafi.*

#### *Of Contra a towne in Duccala.*

**T**His towne is situate from Azafi about 20. miles, & is said to haue bin built by the Gothes at the verie same time when they possessed the whole region of Duccala: but now it is vtterly layde waste: howbeit the field belonging thereto is in subiection vnto certaine Arabians which dwell in the said prouince of Duccala.

*of*

#### *Of Tit a citie in Duccala.*



His ancient citie of Tit built of olde by the Africans vpon the Ocean sea-shoare, is about twentie miles distant from Azamur. It hath most large and fruitfull fields belonging vnto it. The inhabitants are men of a grosse conceit, who regard neither husbandrie nor ciuilitie. Their apparell indeed is somewhat decent, by reason that they continually haue so great traffique with the Portugals. At the same time when Azamur was subdued, this citie also yeelded it selfe vnto the kings captaine, and for certaine yeeres paid tribute vnto the king. In our time the king of Fez attempted to set Duccala at libertie: howbeit not speeding of his purpose, he caused a certaine Christian (which was his owne treasurer) and a Lewee, to be hanged. And that companie which remained with him, he brought vnto Fez, giuing them a certaine portion of ground to dwell vpon, which was destitute of inhabitants, being distant about twelue miles from Fez.

*The citie of Tit tributarie vnto the King of Portugall.*

#### *Of the famous citie of Elmedina in Duccala.*



Elmedina being in a manner the chiefe citie of the whole region, is (according to the manner there) enuironed with wals of no great force. The inhabitants are homely as well in witte and behauiour, as in apparell: wearing such cloth as is wouen in their owne countrie. Their women weare certaine siluer ornaments: the men are valiant, and haue great store of horses. They were all of them banished by the king of Fez out of his dominions, for that he suspected them to be friends to the Portugals. For he had heard that a certaine gouernour of that region had counselled his subiects to pay tribute vnto the Portugall king. This gouernour I sawe barefoote led some miserable captiue, that I could scarce refraine from teares; because he did not ought vpon trecherie, but being constrained. For, good man, he thought it much better to pay a little tribute vnto the Portugals, then sodainly to lose both his life and his goods. For the restoring of whom vnto his former libertie, diuers noblemen greatly laboured: and so at length for a great summe of money he was releafed. But afterward the citie remained voide of inhabitants, about the yeere of the Hegeira 921.

*Elmedina left desolate*

#### *Of the towne of Duccala called Centum putei.*

**T**His towne is built vpon a rocke of excellent marble: in the suburbs whereof are certaine caues, wherein the inhabitants vse to lay vp their corne: which is there so woonderfully preserved, that it will continue an hundreth yeeres without any ill fauour or corruption. Of the number of

*Corne preserved 100. yeeres.*

H I

which

which caues resembling pits or wels, the towne it selfe is called Centum purei. The inhabitants are of small reckoning or account, hauing no artificers dwelling among them but certaine Iewes. When the king of Fez had forced the inhabitants of Elmadin to come into his dominions, he attempted also to bring thither the inhabitants of this towne: but they refusing to go into a strange place, chose rather to inhabite neere vnto the towne of Azafi, then to forsake their owne native soile. Which when the king vnderstoode, he presently caused the towne to be sacked; wherein nothing was found but corne, hony, and other things of small value.

*Of the towne of Subeit in the same region.*

**S**ubeit is a small towne built vpon the south side of the riuer of Ommirabih. It is distant from Elmadin about fortie miles, and is said to be subiect vnto certaine Arabians dwelling in Duccala. Honie and corne they haue great abundance: but such is their vnskilfulnes and ignorance, that they haue neither gardens nor vineyardes. At the same time when Bulahuan was woon, the king of Fez brought all the people of Subeit into his dominion, and allotted vnto them a certaine peece of grounde neere vnto Fez which was neuer before inhabited: so that Subeit remaineth waste and void of inhabitants euen vntill this day.

*Of the towne of Temeracost.*

**A**lso in Duccala neere vnto the riuer Ommirabih standeth a certaine small towne, which was built by the founder of Maroco, from whom the name thereof is thought to be deriued. Inhabitants it hath great store, and containeth more then fower hundreth families. It was subiect in times past vnto the people of Azamur; but Azamur being spoiled by the Portugales, this towne also came to nought, and the people heerof went to Elmadin.

*Of the towne called Terga.*

**T**his towne being distant about thirtie miles from Azamur, is situate neere vnto the riuer Ommirabih: it is well peopled, and containeth about three hundreth families. In times past it was subiect vnto the inhabitants of Duccala; but after the sacking of Azafi, *Hali* which fought against the Portugals, for certaine daies lay with his armie in this towne. But afterward being repelled thence by the king of Fez, the towne became so waste and desolate, that from thencefoorth it was an habitation for owles & bats.

*Of the towne of Bulahuan.*

**T**his towne likewise standeth vpon the banke of Ommirabih, & containeth about fiue hundreth families: in times past it had most noble and woorthie

woorthie inhabitants, especially in that streete which lieth next vnto the riuer, vpon the high way to Maroco. In this towne was a famous hospitall built, which had manie roomes and mansions: wherein all strangers trauielling that way, were sumptuously and freely entertained at the common charge of the towne. The inhabitants are most rich both in cattell & corne. Euery citizzen almost hath an 100. yoke of oxen, and some of them yeerly reape two thousand, some three thousand measures of corne: so that the Arabians do carrie graine from thence sufficient to serue them all the yeere following. In the 919. yeere of the Hegeira, the king of Fez sent his brother to gouerne and defende the region of Duccala, who comming vnto this towne, was informed that the captaine of Azemur approached thither with a great armie, of purpose to destroy the towne and to lead the people captiue. Whereupon the king of Fez his brother sent immediately vnto the saide towne two captaines with two thousand horsemen, and eight hundreth archers. But the very same time when they entred the towne, they met there the Portugall soldiers accompanied with two thousand Arabians: by whom, being fewer in number, they were so miserablie slaine, that scarcely twelue archers of all the eight hundreth could escape with the horsemen vnto the next mountaines. Howbeit afterward the Arabians renewed the skirmish, & 150. of the Portugall horsemen being slaine, they put the enimie to flight. Whereupon the king of Fez his brother passed on to Duccala, requiring tribute of the people, and promising that as long as he liued he would stand betweene them and their enemies. Afterward being vanquished, he returned home to Fez vnto the king his brother. But the inhabitants seeing that the kings brother had receiued tribute of them and had stood them in no stead, they presently forsooke the towne, and fled vnto the mountaine of Tedles: for they feared least the Portugals armie would come vpon them, and exacting a greater summe, would lead them presently captiue which could not disburse it. At all these accidents I my selfe was present, and saw the foresaid slaughter of the archers: for I stood about a mile distant from them, and was mounted vpon a swift courser. At the same time I was trauielling to Maroco, being sent by the king of Fez, to declare vnto the king of Maroco, and vnto the Seriffo, that the king of Fez his brother was presently to depart vnto Duccala: for which cause they were requested to provide soldiers for the better resistance of the Portugals armie.

*Of the citie of Azamur.*



Zamur, a towne of Duccala, was built by the Africans vpon that part of the Ocea sea shore where the riuer of \*Ommirabih disemboqueth, being distant from Elmadina southward about thirtie miles. Very large it is, and well inhabited, and containeth to the number of fiue thousand families. Here



doe the Portugall merchants continually reside. The inhabitants are very ciuill, and decently apparelled. And albeit they are diuided into two parts, yet haue they continuall peace among themselves. Pulse and corne they haue great plentie; though their gardens and orchards bring forth nought else but figs. They haue such plentie of fishes, that they receiue yeerely for them sometime fixe thousand, and sometime seuen thousand duckats. And their time of fishing dureth from October to the end of Aprill. They vse to drie fishes in a certaine pan with oile, whereby they gather an incredible quantitie of trane: neither vse they any other oile to put into their lampes. Once a yeere the Portugals make a voyage hither, and doe carrie away so great abundance of fish, that they onely doe disburse the summe of duckats aforesaid. Hence it is, that the king of Portugal, being allured for gaine, hath often sent most warlike fleetes to surprise this towne: the first whereof, in regarde of the Generals indiscretion, was the greatest part dispersed and sunke vpon the sea. Afterward the king sent another nauie of two hundred saile well furnished, at the very sight whereof the citizens were so discomfited, that they all betooke themselves to flight; and the throng was so great at their entrance of the gates, that more then fower score citizens were slaine therein. Yea a certaine prince which came to aide them, was, for his safetie constrained to let himselfe downe by a rope on the farther side of the citie. The inhabitants were presently dispersed hither and thither; some fleeing on horse-backe, and others on foote. Neither could you (I know) haue refrained from teares, had you seene the weake women, the silly old men, and the tender children run away bare-footed and forlorne. But before the Christians gaue any assault, the Iewes (which shortly after compounded with the king of Portugall, to yeeld the citie to him, on condition that they shoulde sustaine no iniurie) with a generall consent, opened the gates vnto them: and so the Christians obtained the citie, and the people went to dwell part of them to Sala, and part to Fez. Neither doe I thinke that God for any other cause brought this calamitie vpon them, but onely for the horrible vice of Sodomie, whereunto the greatest part of the citizens were so notoriously addicted, that they could scarce see any young stripling; who escaped their lust.

*Of the towne called Meramei.*

**T**His towne was built by the Gothes vpon a plaine, almost fourteene miles distant from Azafi, and it containeth to the number of fower hundred families: the soile thereabout aboundeth greatly with oliues and corne. It was gouerned in times past by the prince of Azafi; but afterward being surprised by the Portugals, and the inhabitants being all put to flight, it remained well nigh one whole yeere destitute of people. Howbeit soone after making a league with the Portugals, each man retired vnto his owne home. And now I thinke it not amisse to report as concerning the mountaines of Duccala those things which may seeme woorthie of memorie.

of

*Of the mountaine called Benimegher.*

**B**enimegher is distant from Azafi about twelue miles, containing diuers artizans of all sortes, euery one of which hath an house at Azafi. This mountaine is so exceeding fruitful for oile and corne, that a man would scarce beleue it. It was once in subiection vnto the prince of Azafi, but the inhabitants of Azafi being put to flight, as hath bene aforesaid, had no other place for their refuge, but onely this mountaine of Benimegher. Afterward they paid tribute for certaine yeeres vnto the Portugals; but when the king of Fez came thither with his army, he caried with him part of them vnto Fez, and the residue returned to Azafi: for they were determined rather to indure any iniurie, then to submit themselves to the Christians gouernment.

*Of the greene mountaine.*

**T**His mountaine is of an exceeding height, beginning eastward from the riuer of Ommirabil, and extending westward to the hils called in their language Hasara, and it diuideth Duccala from some part of Tedles. Likewise this mountaine is very rough and full of woods, affoording great store of acornes and pine-apples, and a certaine kinde of red fruit which the Italians commonly call Africano. Many Hermites also doe inhabite vpon this mountaine, liuing with no other kind of victuals, but such as the woods yeeld vnto them. For they are aboute fife and twenty miles distant from all townes and cities. Here are great store of fountaines and of altars built after the Mahumetan fashion, and many auncient houses also erected by the Africans. At the foot of this mountaine there is a notable lake, very like vnto the lake of Bolsena in the Roman territorie. In which lake are found infinite numbers of fishes, as namely eeles, pickrels, and of diuers other sorts, which, to my remembrance, I neuer saw in Italie: but there is no man that goeth about to take any fish in this lake, no maruell therefore though the number be so great. Vpon a certaine time when Mahumet the king of Fez trauelled that way towards the kingdome of Maroco, he encamped his armie eight daies vpon the side of this lake. Some of his companie he licenced to fish the same, amongst whom I saw certaine that tooke off their shirts and coats, sowing vp their sleeues and collars, and putting certaine hoops within them to keepe them from closing together, and so vsed them in steed of nets, wherewith notwithstanding they caught many thousand fishes: but others which had nets indeed, got more then they. And all by reason that the fishes (as we will now declare) were perforce driuen into the nets. For king Mahumet being there accompanied with fourteene thousand Arabian horsemen, which brought a great many more camels with them; and hauing fife thousand horsemen vnder the conduct of his brother, with an huge armie of fooremen, caused them all at once to enter the lake, insomuch that there

*The fruit called by the Italians Frutto Africano.*

*Great plentie of fish.*

was scarce water ynough to satisfie the camels thirst: wherefore it was no maruell though the fishes came so fast into the nets. Vpon the banks of this lake are many trees bearing leaues like vnto pine-leaues, among the boughes whereof, such abundance of turtles doe nestle, that the inhabitants reape woonderfull commoditie by them. Mahumet hauing refreshed himselfe eight daies by the foresaid lake, was then desirous to view The greene mountaine afore said: my selfe with a great number of courtiers and learned men attending vpon him. So often as he saw any altar, he would command his armie there to make a stand, and lowly kneeling on his knees, would say these words following: Thou knowest (oh Lord my God) that I came hither for  
 " none other cause, but to release the people of Duccala from the Arabians  
 " and cruell Christians: which attempt of mine if thou thinkest to be vniust,  
 " let me onely feele the punishment of this offence: for these my followers  
 " are guiltlesse. And thus we ranged vp and downe the greene hill one whole day: but at night we returned vnto our tents. The next day it was king Mahumets pleasure to goe on hunting and hauking, whereupon his hounds and haukes (which he had in great abundance) were brought forth: howbeit that sport yeelded nought but wilde geese, duckes, turtle-doues, and other fowles. But the day following the king called for his hounds, faulcons, and eagles: their game were hares, deere, porcupikes, roe-deere, woolues, quailles and starlings: and by reason that none had hunted or hawked there an hundred yeeres before, they had very good pastime. And after we had here staid certaine daies, the king with his armie marching vnto the said Elmadin a towne of Duccala, willed all his learned men and priestes which hee had brought with him, to returne vnto Fez. But my selfe (as ambassadour) and a certaine number of soldiers he sent vnto Maroco: this was done in the 922. yeere of the Hegira, and in the yeere of our Lord 1512.

*John Leo sent  
ambassadour  
from the King  
of Fez vnto  
Maroco.*

*A description of the region of Hascora.*

**T**His region is bounded northward with certaine mountaines which adioine vpon Duccala; westward with a riuer running by the foote of mount Hadimmei, which we called before Tensitt; and eastward by the riuer Quadelhabid, that is, the riuer of seruants, which riuer diuideth Hascora from Tedles. And so likewise the hills of Duccala doe separate Hascora from the Ocean sea. The inhabitants of this region are far more ciuill, then the people of Duccala. This prouince yeeldeth great abundance of oyle, of Marockin skinnies, and of goates, of whose haire they make cloath and sadles. And hither do all the bordering regions bring their goat-skins, whereof the foresaid Marockin or Cordouan leather is made. This people hath great traffique with the Portugals, with whom they exchange the foresaid leather and sadles, for cloath. Their coine is all one with the coine of Duccala. Also the Arabians vsually buy oyle and other necessaries out of

of this region. Now let vs in order describe all the townes and cities of the faide region.

*Of Elmadin a towne in Hascora.*



His towne of Hascora being called by the inhabitants Elmadin, is built vpon the side of mount Atlas, and containeth more then two thousand families. It standeth almost fourescore and ten miles eastward of Maroco, and about 60. miles from Duccala. Heere may you finde many leather-dressers, and all other kinde of artizans, with a great multitude of Iewish merchants. This towne is enuironed with a certaine wood, which is full of oliue, and walnut-trees. The inhabitants are continually, in a manner, oppressed with warres among themselves, and against a certaine little towne beeing fower miles distant from thence. Neither dare any come vpon the plaine lying betweene these two townes, (saue women onely and slaues) except he be well and strongly guarded. So that euery man is faine to maintaine an harquebusier or archer for his defence, whom he monethly alloweth ten or twelue pieces of gold, which are woorth sixeteene ducates Italian. Likewise in Elmadin there are certaine men of great and profound learning, which are appointed to be iudges and notaries. Whatsoeuer tribute or custome strangers doe pay, is deliuered vnto certaine treasurers and customers of the towne; which employ it afterward for the publike benefite. They are likewise constrained to pay certaine tribute vnto the Arabians, for sundrie possessions which they enioy in the foresaide valley; but that money gaineth them at the Arabians hand ten times so much, or more. In my returne from Maroco I thought good to trauell by this towne, where I was right sumptuously entertained by one of Granada my countrey-man, who was exceeding rich, hauing serued as an archer in this region for fiftene yeeres. And albeit the towne of Elmadin had a stately hospitall, wherein all merchants traueiling that way, were entertained at the common charge; yet my countrey-man would not suffer vs there to lodge, but for three daies together most courteously welcommed my selfe, nine courtiers, and all the seruants and retinue which we brought with vs: vnto which companie of ours the townesmen presented, some of them calues, some lambes, and some other brought hens. Seeing vpon a time so many goates in the towne, I merily demanded of my countrey-man, why he gaue vs no kids-flesh to eate: hee answered that that was accounted among them of all others the most base and homely meate. Their faire and beautifull women are so fonde of strangers that if secret occasion be offered they will not refuse their dishonest companie.



Nere vnto the foresaide towne standeth another commonly called Alemdin, being situate fower miles to the west thereof in a valley, amidst fower most high hills, whereupon the place is exceeding cold. The inhabitants are merchants, artizans, and gentlemen, & families it containeth to the number of one thousand. This towne hath been at continuall war with the towne last before mentioned: but in our time both of them were by the meanes of a certaine merchant brought in subiection vnto the King of Fez, as we will now declare. There was a merchant of Fez which had a paramour in this towne, whom he determined forthwith to marrie; but when the marriage day was come, this merchant was beguiled of his loue by the gouernour of the towne himselfe, which disappointment grieved him full sore, albeit he dissembled the matter as well as he could. Returning home to the King of Fez, the said merchant presented vnto him most rich and costly gifts, making humble suite vnto his maiestie that hee would allow him an hundred principall archers, three hundred horsemen, and fower hundred footemen; saying, that himselfe would maintaine them all at his owne costs and charges, and would winne the said towne of Alemdin for the Kings behalfe, and would assure the King seuen thousand ducates for yeerely tribute. This offer pleased the King right well, and that he might declare his princely liberalitie, he would not suffer the merchant to giue wages vnto any, but onely to the archers. And so with all expedition he commanded his gouernour of Tedles to provide the saide merchant so many horsemen and so many footmen, and two captaines ouer the armie. At length comming before Alemdin they besiged it fixe daies: which being expired, the townesmen told their gouernour in plaine termes, that they would not for his cause incur the king of Fez his displeasure, nor suffer any inconuenience. Whereupon he putting himselfe in a beggars weede, attempted to escape away: but being known and apprehended, he was brought before the merchant, who committed him to prison. And so the townesmen presently opening their gates receiued the merchant with all his troupes, & yeelded themselves to him & to the king of Fez. The parents of the foresaid maid protested vnto the merchant, that the gouernour by maine force had deprived them of his paramour. Howbeit she herselfe was big with childe by the gouernour; but after the merchant knew that she was deliuered of her childe, he bore her affection againe, and at length married her. And the wretched gouernour was the same day by the iudges pronounced guiltie of fornication, and was stoned to death. Well, the merchant remained gouernour and Lord of both townes, establishing most firme peace between them, & duely paying vnto the king of Fez all the yeerly tribute which he had promised. I my selfe afterward comming to the foresaide towne grew familiarly acquainted with this

By what means  
the townes of  
Alemdin and  
Alemdin be-  
came subiect  
vnto the King  
of Fez.

this famous merchant. The same yeere departing from Fez I tooke my journey towards Constantinople.

## Of Tagodast a towne in Hascora.

THIS towne is built vpon the top of a certaine high mountaine, hauing fower other high mountaines round about it. Betweene which fower mountaines and the said towne are diuers most large and beautifull gardens replenished with all kinde of fruits: quinces here are of an incredible bigness. Their vines dispersing themselves vpon the boughes of trees doe make most pleasant bowers and walkes: the grapes whereof being ted, are for their bigness, called in the language of that people, hennes eggs. They haue here great abundance of oile and most excellent honie: some of their honie being white, and some yellow. This towne hath many fountaines about it, which ioyning into one streame, do serue for many water-mills thereabouts. Here are likewise great store of artizans, who exercise themselves onely about things necessarie. The inhabitants are somewhat ciuill, their women are most beautifull, being most gorgeously decked with siluer iewels. Their oile they carrie vnto the next cities southward of them on this side Atlas: but they send their leather vnto Fez and Mecnasa. Their plaine is almost fixe miles long: the soile being most fruitfull for corne: in regard whereof the townes-men pay certaine yeerely tribute vnto the Arabians. This towne hath iudges, priestes, and a great number of gentlemen. Vpon a time as I travelled this way, it was my hap to meete with a certaine ancient gouernour of the same place, who was growne blinde with extreme age. This aged fire (as by some I vnderstood) was in his youth a most valiant and stout person, insomuch that after many other noble exploits, he slew with his owne hand fower captaines which were most deadly enemies vnto the people of Tagodast. And afterward he handled the matter so wisely, that he ioyned those in perfect league which before time had waged continual warre. Here no commonwealth-matter is concluded by the magistrates of the towne without his speciall aduise and authoritie. By this worthie Senatour my selfe with fower-score horsemen were honorably entertained, and had dainty meates euery day set before vs, of game which was newly hunted. He recounted most familiarly vnto vs all his labours which he had bestowed in concluding of the foresaid league: neither had this good man any so entire and hidden secrets, which he reuealed not vnto vs, as to his louing friends. At my departure I offered him money for my selfe and my companie: but he, like a liberall man, would by no meanes accept of it; saying, that albeit he ought the king of Fez much dutie and good will, yet did he not bestowe that liberalitie for his sake: but that whatsoeuer wealth he enioied, his parents bequeathed vnto him vpon this condition, that he should shew himselfe kinde and bountifull vnto all his kinred, acquaintance, and strangers travelling that way: and although he were free from that condition, yet his loue towards God, and

Grapes of mar-  
nellows bigness.  
White honie.

the liberalitie which God had planted in him, could require no lesse at his hands. Yea, he said, that by Gods good blessing and providence he had reaped the same yeere seven thousand bushels of corne: insomuch, that himselfe and all his neighbours were provided for in abundance. Moreover, that he possessed of sheepe and goates moe then an hundred thousand, the wooll whereof only, and some small portion of butter, he reserued to himselfe, but as for the cheese and milke, he gaue it all frankly vnto his shepherds. In this towne there is none that selleth either cheese, butter, milk, or any other such commoditie, though each one hath great abundance of cattell. Howbeit their hides, oile, and wooll they vtter in the prouinces thereabout. The reuerend fire added this moreouer: If it shall please (saith he) the king of Fez to returne home from Duccala through this my region, I will come forth to meete him, and will submit my selfe wholly vnto him, as vnto my most liege and soueraigne prince. Thus my selfe a meere stranger being so honorably dismissed by this woorthie Senatour, could not sufficiently commend his courtesie and bounteous dealing towards strangers.

*Of the citie of Elgiumuha.*

**N**Eere vnto the foresaid towne, within fise miles, standeth Elgiumuha. It was in our time built vpon the top of an high mountaine, and containeth to the number of fise hundred families, besides so many families comprised in the villages of that mountaine. Here are innumerable springs and fountaines, and most pleasant and fruitfull gardens in all places. Here are likewise walnut-trees huge and tall. The little hills enuironing this mountaine doe yeeld barlie and oliues in great abundance. In the said towne are great numbers of artizans, as smithes, leather-dressers, and such like. And because they haue here notable yron-mines, they make plentie of horse-shooes. And whatsoeuer commoditie proceedeth of their labour, they carrie it to forren regions where they thinke it is wanting: from whence they bring home slaues, woad, and the skins of certaine beastes, whereof they make most defensieue and warlike shields: these shields they transport vnto Fez, exchanging them there for weapons, cloth, and other such things as they stand in neede of. This towne standeth so neere vnto the high way, that the boyes wil stand gazing and woondering at merchants as they come by, especially if they weare any strange attire. The residue of inhabitants vpon this mountaine are all commanded and gouerned by them of the towne. They say that the people of Tagodast afore said were the first founders of this towne: for so vpon a time it befell, that whereas the principall men of Tagodast grew to dissension among themselues, the common sort fauouring neither faction, built Elgiumuha, and left Tagodast to be inhabited by their gouernours: hence it is, that euen at this day they are here onely ignoble and base people, whereas there they are all gentlemen.

of

*Of Bzo a towne in Hascora.*

**T**HE ancient towne of Bzo is built vpon an high hill about twenty miles westward from the towne last mentioned. Within three miles of Bzo runneth the foresaid riuer of Guadelhabid. The townsmen are honest people, exercising merchandize, and going decently apparelled: To them which inhabite the deserts they carie cloth, oile, and leather. Their mountaines abound with oliues, corne, and all kinde of fruits: and of their grapes they make euery yeere most excellent and sweete raisins. Figs they haue great plentie: and their walnut-trees are so high, that a puttocke may securely builde his nest vpon the tops: for it is impossible for any man to climbe vp. On each side of the way which leadeth from hence to the riuer Guadelhabid there are most pleasant and beautifull gardens. My selfe (I remember) was here present when their oranges, figs, and other fruits were growen to ripenes; and was entertained by a certaine priest, who dwelt not farre from a stately Mahumetan temple, standing by that riuer which runneth through the market-place of the towne.

*Of the mountaine called Tenneues.*

**T**HIS mountaine is situate ouer against Hascora vpon that part of Atlas which trendeth southward. It hath many most valiant and warlike inhabitants both horsemen and footemen; and a great number of horses of small stature. It yeeldeth abundance of woad & barlie: but other graine they haue none at all, so that they haue no other but barlie bread to eate. At all times of the yeere you shal here see plenty of snow. Here are likewise sundry noblemē & gentlemen, all which are subiect vnto one prince. To this prince they pay great yeerely tribute for the maintenance of his soldiers, for he waggeth continuall war with the inhabitants of mount Tensita. The said prince hath welnigh 1000. most valiant horsemen alwaies in a readines: & so many likewise do the noblemen of this mountaine continually keepe at their owne costs and charges. Moreover the prince hath an hundred soldiers part of them bowmen, and part harquebusiers, to guard and attend vpon his person in all places. Comming my selfe to see this mountaine, it was my chaunce to finde out the saide prince, who was desirous exceedingly to be praised of all men: but for liberalitie, curtesie, and ciuilitie, his like I thinke was not to be founde. Vnto the Arabian toong (albeit he were ignorant thereof) he bore a marueilous affection: and was greatly delighted to heare any man expound a sentēce or verse, which was penned to his owne commendation. At the very same time when mine vnclē was sent ambassadour from the king of Fez to the king of Tombuto, I my selfe also trauailed in his company: we were no sooner entred the region of Dara (which is an hundred miles distant from the saide princes dominions) but he hearing of my vnclē's fame (who was an excellent Oratour, and a most wittie Poet) sent

letters

*The vnclē of  
Iohn Leo sent  
ambassadour  
to the king of  
Tombuto.*



letters vnto the prince of Dara, requesting him that he would perfwade mine vncle to trauaile vnto Tombuto by mount Tenuues: for he had a great desire to see him, & to speake with him. Howbeit my vncle answered, that it befeemed not a kings ambassadour to visite any princes farre out of his way, and so to deferre his masters waightie affaires. But, to the end that he might in some sort satisfie the saide prince, he promised to sende me his nephew vnto him, which might in his name salute him and do him due honour. Afterward he deliuered me certaine costlie gifts to present the prince withall: as namely a curious paire of stirrups double gilt and finely wrought after the Morisco fashion, which cost (as I remember) siue and twentie ducates; and a rich paire of spurs of fiftene ducates price. Moreover he sent two bands of silke artificially entwined with gold, one whereof wastawnie, and the other blew. He sent also a most excellent booke, containing the liues of certaine famous and deuout men of Africa, together with certaine verses in the commendation of the prince himselve. Thus being furnished with the things aforesaid, I set forth on my iourney, taking two horsemen to accompanie me vnto the foresaid mountaine: and so as I road, I inuented verses in the princes praise. At our first arriual there, the prince with a great traine of his nobilitie was ridden forth on hunting. Who being enformed of my coming, caused me forthwith to be sent for, and after salutations had, he asked me how my vncle did: I answered that he was in good health, and at his highnes disposition. Then he commanded me to be carried vnto a stately lodging, where, after my tedious iourney, I might repose my selfe, till he were returned from hunting. And so within night returning from his game, he sent for me immediately to come into his chamber of prefence: where, hauing first performed due obeisance vnto him, I presented him with mine vncles gifts: which (as I suppose) were most acceptabable vnto him. At length I gaue him the verses which mine vncle had indited: which he presently commanded one of his secretaries to read. And as he was expounding each sentence and worde vnto the prince, it was a woonder to see, what exceeding alacritie and ioy appeered in his countenance. The verses being read, he sate downe to supper, willing me not onely to be his guest, but also to sit next vnto his person. His table was furnished with mutton, veale roasted and sodden, and with bread baked like a cake. Diuers other dishes likewise were serued in, but I remember not all the particulars. Supper being ended, I greeted the prince in this wise: Your highnes (my lord) hath receiued all those gifts, which your humble seruant mine vncle (in token of his loiall disposition, and that he might be had of your highnes in remembrance) hath sent you: Now I being both his sisters sonne and his scholler, haue nought else but a fewe wordes to present your princelines withall: may it please you therefore to accept of such homely stuffe as my witte could sodainly affoord in the time of my iourney. These words ended, I began to read my verses vnto him: and being as then but sixteene yeeres of age, the prince gaue right ioyfull and diligent eare vnto me; and

The excellent  
wisdom & toward-  
lineesse of Iohn  
Leo at 16. yeeres  
of age.

and whatsoeuer he vnderstood not sufficiently, he would cause it to be interpreted. Now being wearie with his hunting, and perceiuing the night to be farre spent, he wished all of vs to goe to bed. Early the next morning I was sent for, to a stately breakefast, after the conclusion whereof, he caused an hundreth ducates to be deliuered me for a present vnto my vncle, together with three slaues, which should attend vpon him in his iourney. But on me he bestowed fiftie ducates and a good horse; and to each of my two seruants he gaue ten ducates: giuing mine vncle to vnderstande, that his meane gift which he bestowed, was sent not in regard of his woorthy presents, but for a recompence of his excellent verses. For as touching mine vncles gifts, he saide he would deferre the requitall thereof till his returne from Tombuto, what time he would more fully manifest his good will towards him. Then commanding one of his secretaries to direct vs on our way, & most courteously bidding vs farewell, he told vs that the same day he was going to make an assault vpon his enemies. And so departing from him, I returned to mine vncle. Thus much I thought good to set downe, for to shewe, that euen Africa is not vterly destitute of courteous and bountifull persons.

*Of the mountaine called Tensita.*

**T**ensita is a part of Atlas, beginning westward from the mountaine last before mentioned, eastward extending to mount Dedes, and southward bordering vpon the desert of Dara. This mountaine is well stored with inhabitants, hauing moe then fiftie castles about it, the wals whereof are built of lime and rough stone: and by reason of the southerly situation it is euer almost destitute of raine. All the said castles stand not far from the riuer of Dara, some being three, and some fower miles distant there from. The greatest prince in all this region hath vnder his command well nigh fiftene hundreth horsemen, and about so many footemen as the prince of Tenuues before named. And albeit these two princes are most neerely conioined in bloud, yet can neither of them refraine from most cruel wars against the other. It is a woonder to see, what plentie of dates this mountaine affoordeth: the inhabitants giue themselues partly to husbandry, and partly to traffike. Barly they haue in great abundance: but of other graine and of flesh their scarcitie is incredible: for that region hath no flocks nor droues at all. The prince of this mountaine commonly receiueh for yeerly tribute, twentie thousand peeces of golde: euery of which peeces containeth not so much by one third part, as an Italian ducate. There hath alwaies beene so great amitie betweene the king of Fez and this prince, that either often sendeth rich gifts vnto other. My selfe (I remember) once saw a most magnificent gift presented to the saide king in the name of this prince, to wit, fiftie men slaues, and fiftie women slaues brought out of the land of Negros, tenne eunuches, twelue camels, one Giraffe, sixteene ciuet-cats, one pound of ciuet, a pound of amber, and almost sixe hundreth skins

*A most stately  
and rich pre-  
sent.*

of a certaine beast called by them Elamr, whereof they make shieldes, euery skin being woorth at Fez, eight ducates; twentie of the men slaues cost twentie ducates a peece, and so did fifteene of the women slaues; euery eunuch was valued at fortie, euery camell at fiftie, and euery ciuet-cat at two hundred ducates: and a pound of ciuet and amber is folde at Fez for threescore ducates. Besides these were sent diuers other particulars, which for breuities sake I omit. I my selfe was in preface when these gifts were offred to the king: the princes ambassadour was a Negro borne, being grosse and of a lowe stature, and for his speech and behauiour most barbarous: this fellow deliuered a letter vnto the king, which was most absurdly and rudely penned: but the Oration which he made in the behalfe of his prince was well woofe; so that at the pronouncing thereof the king and all that were in presence could hardly refrain from laughter, but were faine to hold their hands and garments before their faces, least they should haue seemed too vnciuile. Howbeit his oration being ended, the king caused him to be most honorable entertained by the priest of the chiefe temple; with whom himselfe and all his company hauing remained foureteene daies, were at length by the kings liberalitie frankly and freely disimissed.

*Of the mountaine called Gogideme.*



Here vnto the foresaid mountaine standeth another called Gogideme. This mountaine is inhabited only vpon the north part therof; but the south side is vtterly destitute of inhabitants: the reason whereof they affirme to be, because that when <sup>\* Abraham</sup> king of Maroco was vanquished and expelled out of his kingdome by his disciple *Elmaheli*, he fled vnto this mountaine. The inhabitants moued with the kings distresse endeuoured (though to small purpose) all that they could, to succour him: whereof his disciple *Elmaheli* was no sooner enformed, but comming with an huge armie and with great furie vpon them, he destroyed all their mansions and villages, and the inhabitants he partly put to flight, and partly to the sword. And those which now remaine there are most base, beggerly and slauish people: Howbeit they sell some quantitie of oyle and barley: neither indeed will their soyle affoorde any other commodities. They haue plentie of goates and mules; but their mules and horses are but of meane stature. The situation and qualitie of this mountaine will not suffer the inhabitants to be liberall.

*Of the two mountaines called Teseuon.*



Teseuon consisteth of two mountaines standing together, beginning westward from Gogideme, & ending at the mountaine of Tagodast. The inhabitants are oppressed with extreme pouerty: for their ground will yeelde nothing but barley and mill. Forth of

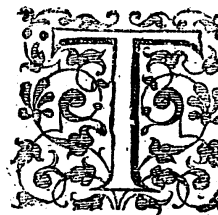
\* Read of this Abraham before in the description of the citie of Maroco.

of this mountaine springeth a certaine riuer, which runneth through most pleasant fields. But because the mountainer neuer descend into the same fields, hence it is that the Arabians onely enioy that riuer. To haue said thus much of these may suffice: now let vs come vnto the description of Tedles.

*A description of the region of Tedles.*

THE small region of Tedles beginneth westward at the riuer of Guadelhabid, and stretcheth to that part of the great riuer Ommirabih where Guadelhabid taketh his beginning; southward it bordereth vpon Atlas, and northward it extendeth vnto that place where Guadelhabid falleth into Ommirabih. This region is in a manner three square: for the said two riuers springing out of Atlas run northward, till approaching by little and little, they meet all in one.

*Of Tefza the principall towne in Tedles*



Tefza the chiefe towne of all Tedles, was built by the Africans vpon the side of mount Atlas, some fiew miles from the plaine. The towne wals are built of most excellent marble, which is called in their language Tefza, and hereupon the towne was so called likewise. Heere doe reside most rich merchants of all sorts: of Lewes here are two hundred families, who exercise merchandise and diuers other trades. And here you shall finde many outlandish merchants which buy from hence certaine blacke mantles with hoods, commonly called *Ilbernus*: of these there are great numbers both in Italy and Spaine. Neither are there in Fez any kinde of wares, which are not heere to be bought: if any merchant will exchange his wares for other, hee may the sooner be dispatched: for the townesmen are furnished with diuers kindes of merchandise, as namely with slaues, horses, woad, leather, and such like: whereas if the forreiners were desirous to sell their wares for ready money, they should neuer attaine to the value of them. They haue golden coine without any image or superscription: their apparell is decent: and their women are beautifull and of good behauiour. In this towne are diuers Mahumetan temples, and many priests and iudges. Their commonwealth was wont alwaies to be most prosperous and well-gouerned; but degenerating from better to woofe, they were afterward so turmoyled with dissensions and wars, that certaine being expelled hence, came vnto the king of Fez, humbly beseeching him that by force he would restore them to their natiue cuntry, conditionally that all matters wel succeeding on their side, they should deliuer the towne vnto the king. This condition was accepted, and the king hauing a thousand braue horsemen readie to doe the feat, ioynd fiew hundred horse, and two hundred gunners on horsebacke vnto them.

them. Moreouer he wrote vnto certaine Arabians (which are commonly called *Zuair*, and haue almost fower thousand horsemen at commaund) that, if need so required, they would come in, and ayde his troupes. Ouer the saide armie the king appointed as capitaine one *Ezzeranghi*, a most valiant and redoubted warriour. Who hauing pitched his tents neere vnto the towne, began presently to giue the townesmen an assault. But when he had done his best, the warlike citizens easily gaue him the repulse. Moreouer the Arabians called *Benigeber* were comming with fife thousand horsemen to succour the towne. Which so soone as Capitaine *Ezzeranghi* was aduertised of, he raised his siege, and went suddenly to meete with the foresaid Arabians; whom after he had discomfited in three daies, he then safely returned to lay new siege. The citizens seeing themselves cut off from all hope of the Arabians ayde, began seriously to treat of peace with the enemy; which the easlier to obtaine, they promised to defray all the kings charges layde out in this expedition, and to pay him for yearly tribute more then ten thousand ducates: howbeit with this prouiso, that they for whose cause the king had sent the said armie, if they entred the towne, should be secluded from all Magistracie and gouernment. But they hearing of these conditions, spake vnto the Capitaine in manner following: Sir, if it shall please you to restore vs vnto our former dignitie and state, we will procure you aboute an hundred thousand ducates. Neither is there cause why any man should feare any iniurie or violence; for we protest vnto you that no man shall be a farthing endamaged by vs: onely we will exact at our aduersaries handes the reuenues of our possessions which they haue these three yecres vniustly detained from vs. The summe whereof will amount vnto thirtie thousand ducates, all which we are most willing to bestow vpon you, in regard of those labours which you haue vndergone for our sakes. Moreouer the reuenues of the whole region shall bee yours, which will come to twentie thousand ducates. And the Iewes tribute shall yeeld you ten thousand more. Vpon these speeches the Capitaine returned answer vnto the citizens, that his master the king of Fez had most faithfully promised those which moued him vnto this warre, that he would neuer forsake them till they had attained their harts desire: for which cause he was more willing to haue them gouerne, then the townesmen which were now in possession, and that for many reasons: wherefore (saith he) if you be determined to yeelde vnto the king, assure your selues, that no inconuenience shall light vpon you: but if you will to the ende remaine peruerse and obstinate, be yee assured also, that the king will deale most extremely with you. This message was no sooner knowen vnto the people, but forthwith they began to be distracted into diuers factions: some there were which stood for the king, and others chose rather manfully to fight it out, then that the king should be admitted: insomuch that the whole citie resounded with brawlings, quarels, and contentions. This tumult came at length by spies vnto the Capitaines eare, who presently caused halfe his forces to take armes; and by their

meanes

meanes in three howers space he wan the citie with little slaughter on his part. For those townesmen that fauoured the king, did what they could on the inside, to set open the gates, and so did the assailants on the outside, neither did any resist their attempts, by reason of the foresaid ciuill dissensions. Whereupon Capitaine *Ezzeranghi* entring the citie, caused the kings colours to be aduanced in the market-place, and vpon the wals, charging his horsemen to range about the citie, that no citizens might escape by flight; and last of all made a proclamation vnto all his souldiers, that they should not vpon paine of death offer any iniurie vnto the townesmen. Then he caused all the chieftaines of the contrarie faction to be brought prisoners vnto him: to whom he threatened captiuitie and thraldome, till they should disburse so much as the king had spent in that expedition: the totall summe was twelue thousand ducates, which the wiues and kinsfolkes of the captiues presently payde. Neither could they yet obtaine their libertie: for the exiles, for whose cause the king had sent that armie, demaunded restitution of all their goods, which the other had for certaine yeeres detained from them. The captiues therfore were committed that night, & the next morning lawyers & attornies came to plead on both sides before a iudge & the capitaine. Howbeit after a great deale of tedious fending and proouing, hauing concluded nothing at all, the capitaine was so weary, that he left them, and went to supper. Afterward he caused the captiues to be brought forth, wishing them to pay the sums demaunded; for (saith he) If you come before the king of Fez he wil make you to disburse more then twise the value. At which words being terrified, they wrote vnto their wiues, if they woulde euer see them aliue, to procure them money by some meanes. Eight daies after, the women brought as many golde rings, bracelets, and other such iewels, as were valued at eight and twenty thousand ducates: for they had rather bestowe these for the ransome of their husbandes, then to reueale their great wealth; bringing forth all their costly ornaments, as if their money had bene quite exhaust. When therefore the king and the exiles were fully satisfied, insomuch that nothing seemed nowe to let the said captiues from libertie, the capitaine spake vnto them in this wise: Sirs, I haue signified (though vnwillingly) vnto my master the king all matters which haue here passed betweene vs: for I dare by no meanes release you, till the kings letters authorize me so to do: Howbeit, I wish you to be of good cheere; for sithens you haue honestly restored to euery man his owne, there is no doubt but your selues shall shortly be set at libertie. The same night the capitaine called a friend of his, whose counsell he founde oftentimes to take good effect, and asked him by what meanes he might without suspicion of guile or trechery, wring any more sums of money from them. Whereunto his friend replied: make them beleue (quoth he) that you are willed by the kings letters to put them all to death: howbeit, that you will not, for pitties sake, deale so extremely with innocent persons: but that you will send them to Fez to receiue punishment or pardon at the kings pleasure. Heereupon

A notable and  
effectuall  
practise to wring  
more money  
out of the  
townesmens  
purses.

the kings letters were counterfeited, which the day following the captaine with a lamentable voice published vnto his two & forty prisoners. My friends (quoth he) so it is, that the king hauing receiued some sinister and wrong information, that you should go about to make a conspiracie: most firmly enioineth me by these his letters, to put each one of you to death: which, though it be ful sore against my wil, yet needs I must obey my prince, if I will not wittingly runne vpon mine owne destruction. And then shedding some fained teares: sithens (quoth he) we can vpon the sodaine deuise no better course, I thinke it most conuenient to send you with a troupe of horsemen vnto the king, whose wrath (perhaps) you may by some meanes pacifie. Whereupon the captiues growing farre more penfue then before, recommended themselues vnto God, and to the captaines clemencie, requesting his good will with many teares. And forthwith there comes one in among them, who aduised them to make vp some round summe of money, & therewithall to trie if they could appease the king: and seemed likewise to intreat the captaine, that he would by his letters stande their friend to the king. Heereunto the captiues agreeing with one voice, promised that they would giue the king a great summe of golde, and would most liberally reward the captaine. The captaine, as though forsooth this condition much disliked him, asked at length how much golde they ment to send the king: one saide that he would disburse a thousand ducates, another, that he would giue fife hundred, and the third, eight hundred. But the captaine making shew, that this was too little, saide that he was loth to make signification of so small a summe vnto the king: howbeit, better it were for you (quoth the captaine) to goe your selues vnto the king, with whom perhaps you shall make a more reasonable end then you are aware of. But they fearing hard measure, if they should be caried vnto the king, were far more importunate with the captaine then before, that he would (to his power) be good vnto them. Wherefore the captaine (as though at length he had been moued with their vehement petitions) spake vnto them in this wise: heere are of you (my masters) two and fortie noble & rich persons; if you wil promise two thousand ducates a man, I will signifie on your behalfe so much vnto the king, and so I hope to perswade him: but if this condition will not please him, then must I needs send you to make answer for your selues. This condition they al of them yeelded vnto; howbeit with this prouizo; that euery man should giue proportionable to his wealth, and that they might haue for the paiement fiftene daies of farther respite. The twelfth day following the captaine fained, that he had receiued letters from his king, signifying that the king, for his sake, would shewe the captiues more fauour. The fifteenth day he had paid vnto him eightie foure thousand ducates: neither could he sufficiently woonder, how in so small a towne, among two and fortie inhabitants onely, such huge sums of money could so readily be found. Then wrote he vnto his king how all matters had passed, demanding what should be done with the gold. And so the king forthwith sent two of his secretaries with an hundred horse-

men

men to fetch home the saide golde vnto Fez. The captiues being restored to their libertie, presented the saide captaine with horses, slaues, ciuet, and such like gifts, to the value of two thousand ducates: giuing him exceeding thanks for their libertie; and requesting him to take their presents in good woorth: for, had not their treasure beene quite consumed, they saide, they would haue bestowed farre greater vpon him. Wherefore, from thence forward, that region was subiect vnto the king of Fez, and to the foresaide captaine *Ezzeranghi*, till he was trecherously slaine by certaine Arabians. Moreouer the king receiueth from that citie, euen at this present twentie thousand ducats for yeerely tribute, I haue in this narration beene indeede somewhat more large then neede required; howbeit perhaps I did it, because I my selfe was present in al the expedition, and was an earnest mediatur for the citizens release: neither saw I euer (to my remembrance) a greater masse of golde, then was by subtiltie drawne from them. Yea the king himselte neuer had so much golde in his coffers at one time: for albeit he receiueth yeerely thirtie thousand ducates, yet neuer could he store himselte with so much at once, nor his father before him. These things were done in the yeere of the Hegeira 915. and in the yeere of our Lord 1506. And here I would haue the reader to consider, what mans industrie and wit may doe in getting of money. The King maruelled much at this summe of gold; but afterward he had greater cause to woonder at the wealth of a certaine Iewe, who payed more out of his owne purse, then all the forenamed captiues. And his riches were the cause, why the King of Fez exacted fiftie thousand ducates from the Iewes, for that they were said to fauour his enemies. I my selfe bare him companie, that went in the Kings name to receiue the sayd summe of the Iewes.

*Of Efza a towne of Tedles.*

His towne standeth two miles from Tefza, and containeth almost sixe hundred families, being built vpon a little hill at the foote of mount Atlas. In this towne are many Moores and Iewes which make \*Bernussi. The naturall inhabitants <sup>\* Or Ilberius, being a kinde of garment.</sup> are either artificers or husbandmen, being in subiection to the gouernours of Tefza. Their women are excellent spinsters, wherby they are saide to gaine more then the men of the towne. Betweene this towne and Tefza runneth a certaine riuer called by the inhabitants Derne, which springing forth of Atlas, runneth through the plaines of that region, till at length it falleth into Ommirabih. On both sides of this riuer are most beautifull and large gardens replenished with all kindes of fruits. The townesmen here are most liberall and curteous people, and will permit merchants trauelling that way freely to come into their gardens, and to take thence as much fruit as they will. No people are slower then they for paying of debts: for albeit the merchants lay downe readie money to receiue

Bernussi



Bernussi within three moneths, yet are they sometime faine to stay a whole yeere. My selfe was in this towne when the kings armie lay in Tedles, and then they yelded themselves to the king. The second time that the kings generall of his armie came vnto them, they presented him with fifteen horses, and as many slaues. Afterward they gaue him fifteene kine, in token that they were the kings loyall subiects.

*Of Cithiteb.*

**T**His towne was built by the Africans vpon an high hill, almost tenne miles westward of Ezza. Well peopled it is with rich and noble inhabitants: and because Bernussi be here made, it is alwaies frequented with store of merchants. The top of the said high mountaine is continually couered with snow. The fields adioyning to the towne are full of vineyards and gardens, which bring forth fruits in such abundance, that they are nought woorth to be sold in the markets. Their women are beautifull, fat, and comely, being adorned with much siluer: their eies and haire are of a browne colour. The inhabitants are so stout and sullen, that when the other cities of Tedles yelded to the king, they alone stood out: yea they assembled vnder a certaine captaine an armie of a thousand horsemen, wherewith they so vexed the kings forces, that he was often in danger to haue lost al that which he had got. Afterward the king sent his brother with a new supply of men to aide his lieutenant; but he also had hard successe. At length hauing maintained warre for three whole yeeres, the king commanded a Jew to poyson their captaine. And so at last the king wan this citie also, in the yeere of the Hegeira 921.

*Of the towne of Eirhiad.*

**T**His towne being built by the Africans vpon a certaine hillocke of Atlas, containeth to the number of three hundred families. It is walled onely towards the mountaine; for that side which respecteth the plaine, is so fortified naturally with rocks, that it seemeth not to need any wall. From Cithiteb it is about twelue miles distant. The temple of this towne is little, but most beautifull, round about which runneth a mote, in manner of a riuer. The inhabitants are wealthie and noble: they haue great store of merchants, as well townesmen as forreiners. The Jewes here inhabiting are partly artificers and partly merchants. About this towne are abundance of springs, which breaking through the rocks of the mountaine, doe fall into a certaine riuer vnder the towne. On both sides of this riuer are diuers gardens wonderfully replenished with grapes, figs, and walnuts. Likewise the sides of the mountaine it selfe abound greatly with oliues. Their women are no lesse beautifull then ciuil, being adorned with much siluer, and wearing fine rings vpon their fingers and armes. Their vallie is fruitfull for all kinde of graine, but

but their hill is meete onely for barly, and for goates-pasture. In my time one *Raoman Benguibazzan* vsurped this towne, and enioied it to his dying day. My selfe was once entertained by a priest of this place, in the yeere of the Hegeira 921.

*Of Seggheme a mountaine of Tedles.*

**A**lbeit this mountaine standeth much southerly, yet is it to be accounted one of the mountaines of Tedles. Westward it beginneth from the mountaine of Tesauon, extending it selfe eastward to mount Magran, from whence the famous riuer of Ommirabih is said to take his beginning. The south part bordreth vpon mount Dedes. The inhabitants are said originally to bee descended from the people of Zanaga: they are personable, cheerefull, valiant, and warlike people. Their weapons are darts, Turkish swords, and daggers. They sling stones likewise with great dexteritie and force. They are at continuall war with the inhabitants of Tedles, inso much that no merchants can passe that way without publike safe-conduct, and without great expense of mony. Their houses are so homely built, that sometime three or fower roomes are contained in one. Of goates they haue great abundance, as likewise of mules scarcely so big as asses, which range so farre into the Forrest to seeke their foode, that they are often deuoured of lions. They would neuer submit themselves to any prince; for their mountaine is so rough and steepe, that it seemeth almost impregnable. In my time the same captaine which had woon the townes of Tedles went about to assaile them in like manner. Which when the mountainers vnderstood, assembling a great armie, they shrowded themselves in a certaine part of the mountaine, neere which they knew their enemies would passe. And so soone as they saw all the enemies horsemen ascended vp the hill, suddenly rushing forth, they gaue them the onset. The skirmish was not so long as bloodie: for the captaines armie being too weake for the mountainers, could neither march on, nor retire: wherefore they were constrained to fight it out by hand-blowes: many of them with their horses being throwen headlong downe the rocks, were miserably crushed in peeces: the residue were either taken or slaine, so that I thinke scarce one man of them escaped. But of all others the captiues were most miserable: for the mountainers themselves would not slay them, but deliuered them ouer to their wiues to be tormented, who, as if they had beene she-tigres or lionesses, put them to a most horrible and vile death. From thenceforth they had no traffique nor familiaritie with the people of Tedles, neither seemed they greatly to stand in need of their friendship (for they haue great store of barlie, of cattell, and of sweet fountaines) vnlesse it bee for that they are excluded from all trade of merchandize.

These people  
live like the  
Tartars.

Somewhat beyond the foresaid mountaine of Seggheme standeth mount Magran. Southward it bordereth vpon the region of Farcala, neere vnto the Lybian desert: westward it beginneth at Seggheme, and extendeth eastward to the foote of mount Dedes. It is continually couered with snow. The inhabitants haue such abundance of small and great cattell that they cannot long remaine in one place together. They build their houses of the barke of certaine trees, the rooffe whereof dependeth on slender sparres, fashioned like vnto the hoops enuironing the lids of such chests or trunks, as the women of Italie, when they trauell, carrie vpon their mules. So likewise these people transport their whole houses vp and downe by the strength of mules, till they haue found a fit place of aboad; where, so soone as they arriue, they plant their said houses, remaining there with their whole families, so long as they haue grasse sufficient to feede their cattell. Howbeit all the spring time they settle themselues in one place, making certaine low stables or cottages, & couering the with the boughs of trees, which serue for their cattell to lie in a nights: and to the end that the cold may not pinch them ouermuch, they kindle certaine huge fires neere vnto their said stables, wherupon sometimes the winde so violently driueth the fire; that vnles the cattell escape by flight, they are in great danger to be consumed: and as their houses are destitute of walles, so are their stables. They are continually molested and haunted with lions and woolues. In their apparell and customes they wholly agree with the foresaid people of Seggheme, sauing that these haue houses of bark and wood, and the other of stone. I my selfe, in the 917. yeere of the Hegeira, was in this mountaine, as I trauelled from Dara to Fez.

*A description of mount Dedes.*

His high and cold mountaine greatly aboundeth with fountaines and woods. Westward it beginneth at mount Magran, extending thence almost as far as the mountaine of Adefan; and southward it bordereth vpon the plaines of Todga. The length thereof is almost fower score miles. Vpon the very top of this mountaine there was a citie built in ancient time, whereof a few ruinous monuments are to be seene at this present; namely certaine walles of white stone, wherein are diuers letters and wordes grauen, which the inhabitants themselues doe not vnderstand. Many are of opinion, that this citie was built long agoe by the Romans: howbeit I my selfe could neuer finde so much affirmed by any African writer, nor yet the citie it selfe mentioned. Sauing that *Seriffo Essacalli* in a certaine storie of his maketh mention of Tedfi, which he saith is neere vnto Segelmesse and Dara: but he declareth not whether it bee built vpon mount Dedes or no. Howbeit for mine owne part I thinke it to be the very same:  
for

for there is no other citie in the whole region. The inhabitants of Dedes are in very deepe most base people; of whom the greater part dwell in caues vnder the ground: their foode is barley and Elhafid, that is to say, barley meale sodden with water, and salt, which we mentioned before in our description of Hea: For heere is nothing but barley to be had. Goates and asses they haue in great abundance. The caues wherein their cattell lodge are exceedingly full of \*Nitire: so that I verily thinke if this mountaine were neere vnto Italy, the saide Nitire woulde yeerely be woorth fife and twentie thousand ducates. But such is their negligence and vnskilfulnes, that they are vterly ignorant to what purposes Nitire serueth. Their garments are so rude, that they scarce couer halfe their nakednes. Their houses are very loathsome, being annoied with the stinking smell of their goates. In all this mountaine you shall finde neither castle nor walled towne: when they builde an house, they pile one stone vpon another without any mortar at all, the rooffe whereof they make of certaine rubbish, like as they doe in some places of Sifa and Fabbriano: the residue (as we haue saide) do inhabite in caues, neither sawe I euer, to my remembrance, greater swarms of fleas then among these people. Moreouer they are trecherous and strong theeues, so giuen to stealing and quarrelling, that for one vnkinde worde they wil not onely contend, but seeke also the destruction one of another. They haue neither iudge, priest, nor any honest gouernour among them. No merchants resort vnto them: for being giuen to continuall idlenes, and not exercising any trades or handicrafts, they haue nothing meet for merchants to buy. If any merchant bring any wares into their region, vnlesse he be safe conducted by their capitaine, he is in danger to be robbed of altogether. And if the wares serue not for their owne necessarie vses, they will exact one fourth part of them for custome. Their women are most forlorne and sluttish, going more beggerly apparelled then the men. So continual and slauish are the toiles of these women, that for miserie, the life of asses is not comparable to theirs. And, to be briefe, neuer was I so wearie of any place in all Africa, as I was of this: howbeit in the yeere of the Hegeira 918. being commanded by one, to whom I was in dutie bound, to trauell vnto Segelmesse, I could not choofe but come this way.

# IOHN LEO HIS THIRD BOOKE OF

the Historie of Africa, and

of the memorable things

contained therein.

*A most exact description of the kingdome of Fez.*



\*Habat.  
\*Chan7 or  
Chin7.

THE kingdome of Fez beginneth westward at the famous riuer Ommirabih, and extendeth eastward to the riuer Muluia; northward it is enclosed partly with the Ocean, and partly with the Meditteran sea. The said kingdome of Fez is diuided into seuen prouinces; to wit, Temesna, the territorie of Fez, Azgar, \*Elhabet, Errif, Garet, and \*Elchaut: euery of which prouinces had in olde time a feuerall gouernour: neither indeed hath the citie of Fez alwaies beene the kings royall seate; but being built by a certaine Mahumetan apostata, was gouerned by his posteritie almost an hundred and fiftie yeeres. After which time the familie of Marin got the ypper hand, who here settling their aboad, were the first that euer called Fez by the name of a kingdome: the reasons why they did so, we will declare more at large in our small treatise concerning the Mahumetan religion. But now let vs as briefly as we may, describe the foresaid seuen prouinces.

*Of Temesna one of the prouinces of Fez.*



Eastward it beginneth at the riuer Ommirabih, and stretcheth to the riuer Buragrag eastward; the south frontire thereof bordereth vpon Atlas, and the north vpon the Ocean sea. It is all ouer a plaine countrie, containing in length from west to east almost fower score miles, and in breadth from Atlas to the Ocean sea about threescore. This prouince hath euer almost beene the principall of the seuen before named: for it contained to the number of fortie great townes, besides three hundred castles, all which were inhabited by Barbarian Africans. In the 323. yeere of the Hegeira this prouince was by a certaine heretike against the Mahumetan religion called *Chemim* the sonne of *Mennal* freed from paying of tribute. This bad fellow perswaded the people of Fez to yeeld no tribute nor honour vnto their prince, and himselfe he professed to be a prophet: but a while after he dealt not onely in matters of religion,

A dangerous  
seducer.

religion, but in commonwealth-affaires also. At length waging war against the king of Fez (who was himselfe then warring with the people of Zenete) it so befell, that a league was concluded betweene them, conditionally that *Chemim* shoulde enioy Temesne, and that the king should containe himselfe within his signiorie of Fez; so that from thencefoorth neither should molest other. The said *Chemim* gouerned the prouince of Temesne about foue and thirtie yeeres: and his successours enioyed it almost an hundred yeeres after his decease. But king *Joseph* hauing built Maroco, went about to bring this prouince vnder his subiection. Whereupon he sent sundry Mahumetan doctors, and priestes to reclaime the gouernour thereof from his heresie, and to perswade him, if it were possible, to yeelde vnto the king by faire means. Whereof the inhabitants being aduertised, they consulted with a certaine kinsman of the foresaid gouernour, in the citie called *Ansa*, to murder the king of Maroco his ambassadours: and so they did. Soone after leuying an armie of fiftie thousand men, he marched towards Maroco, intending to expell thence the familie of Luntuna, and *Joseph* their king. King *Joseph* hearing of this newes, was driuen into woonderfull perplexitie of minde. Wherefore preparing an huge and mighty armie, he staied not the coming of his enemies: but on the sudden within three daies, hauing conducted his forces ouer the riuer of Ommirabih, he entred Temesne, when as the foresaid fiftie thousand men were so dismayed at the kings armie, that they all passed the riuer Buragrag, and so fled into Fez. But the king so dispeopled and wasted Temesne, that without all remorse he put both man, woman, and childe to the sword. This armie remained in the region eight daies, in which space they so razed and demolished all the towns and cities thereof, that there scarce remaine any fragments of them at this time. But the king of Fez on the other side hearing that the people of Temesne were come into his dominions, made a truce with the tribe of Zenete, and bent his great armie against the said Temesnites. And at length hauing found them halfe famished neere vnto the riuer of Buragrag, he so stopped their passage on all sides, that they were constrained to run vp the craggie mountaines and thickets. At last being enuironed with the kings forces, some of them were drowned in the riuer, others were throwne downe headlong from the rocks, and the residue were miserably slaine by their enemies. And for the space of ten moneths there was such hauock made among the Temesnites, that a sillie remnant of them was left aliue. But king *Joseph* prince of the Luntunes returned forthwith to Maroco for the repairing of his forces, to the end he might bid the king of Fez a battell. Howbeit Temesne being bereft of her people, was left to be inhabited of wilde beastes. Neither had that prouince any new colonie, or supply of inhabitants, till that about 150. yeeres after, king *Manfor* returning from Tunis, brought thence certaine Arabians with him, vnto whom he gaue the possession of Temesne. And these Arabians enioyed the said prouince for fiftie yeeres, till such time as king *Manfor* himselfe was expelled out of his kingdome:

K I

and

The horrible  
desolation of  
Temesne.

and then were they also expelled by the Luntunes, and were brought vnto extreme miserie. Afterward the kings of the familie of Marin bestowed the said prouince vpon the people of Zenete and Haoara. Hence it came to passe that the said people of Zenete and Haoara were alwayes great friends vnto the Marin familie, and were thought to haue defended them from the furie of the king of Maroco. From which time they haue peaceably enioyed Maroco, & now they are growne in lesse then an hundred yeeres so mighty, that they stand not in feare of the king of Fez. For they are able to bring threescore thousand horsemen to the field, and haue two hundred castles at their command. My selfe had great familiaritie and acquaintance with them, and therefore I will not sticke to record all memorable things which I sawe among them.

*Of Ansa a towne in Temesna.*

**T**His famous towne was built by the Romans vpon the Ocean sea shore, northward of Atlas sixtie, eastward of Azamur sixtie, and westward of Rebat fortie miles. The citizens thereof were most ciuill and wealthie people: the fields thereto adioyning are exceeding fruitfull for all kinde of graine: neither doe I thinke, that any towne in all Africa is for pleasant situation comparable thereto. The plaine round about it (except it be to the sea northward) is almost fower score miles ouer. In olde time it was fraught with stately temples, rich ware-houses and shops, and beautifull palaces: which the monuments as yet remaining doe sufficiently testifie. They had also most large and faire gardens, out of which they gather great abundance of fruit, especially of melons, and pome-citrons euen at this day: all which are perfectly ripe by mid-Aprill. So that the inhabitants vsually carrie their fruits vnto Fez, by reason that the fruits of Fez are not so soone ripe. Their attire is trim and decent, and they haue alwaies had great traffique with the Portugals and the English. Likewise they haue many learned men among them. Howbeit two reasons are alleaged of the destruction of this towne: first, because they were too desirous of libertie; and secondly, for that they maintained certaine gallies or foistes, wherewith they daily molested the Island of Cadiz and the Portugals. Wherefore at length the king of Portugall sent a strong nauie of fiftie sailes against them, the consideration whereof strooke such terrour into the inhabitants, that taking such goods as they could carrie, some fled to Rebat, and others to Sela, and so their towne was left naked to the spoile of the enemy. But the Generall of the kings fleet not knowing that they were fled, put all his forces into battell-array. Howbeit after a while being aduertised how the matter stood, he conducted his soldiers into the citie, which in one daies space they so defaced, burning the houses, and laying the walles euen with the ground, that vntill this day it hath remained voide of inhabitants. My selfe being in this place, I could scarce refraine from teares, when I seriously beheld the miserable ruine of

English traffique.

Ansa destroyed by the Portugals.

so many faire buildings and temples, whereof some monuments are as yet extant. The gardens, albeit they bring forth some fruit, yet are they more like vnto woods then gardens. And now by reason of the king of Fez his weaknes and default, this place is fallen into so great desolation, as I verily despaire, that euer it will be inhabited againe.

*Of the citie of Mansora.*

**T**His towne was built by *Mansor* the king and Mahumetan patriarke of Maroco vpon a most pleasant field, being two miles distant from the Ocean sea, siue and twenty miles from Rebat, and siue and twenty from Ansa: it contained in times past almost fower hundred families. By this towne runneth a certaine riuer called by the inhabitants Guir, on both sides whereof in times past were most beautifull gardens, but now there are no fruits at all to be found. For vpon the surprize of Ansa the inhabitants of this towne fled vnto Rebat, fearing least they also should haue bene assailed by the Portugals. Howbeit the wall of this towne remained all whole, sauing that the Arabians of Temesne brake it downe in certaine places. This towne also I could not but with great sorrow behold; for easie it were to repaire it, and to furnish it with new inhabitants, if but a few houses were saued from ruine: but such is the malice of the Arabians thereabout, that they will suffer no people to reedifie the same.

*Of the towne of Nuchaila.*

**T**His little towne called by the inhabitants Nuchaila, is built almost in the midst of Temesne. It was well peopled in times past, and then (so long as the foresaid *Chemim* and his successours bare rule) there were fayres yeerely holden, whereunto all the inhabitants of Temesne vsually resorted. The townesmen were exceeding wealthie; for the plaines stretched almost fortie miles right forth from each side of their towne. I red (as I remember) in a certaine storie, that they had in times past such abundance of corne, as they would giue a camels burthen thereof for a paire of shooes. Howbeit when king *Ioseph* of Maroco destroyed all the region of Temesne, this towne was laid waste, together with all the townes and cities of the same prouince: howbeit at this day certaine fragments thereof are to be seene, namely some partes of the towne-wall, and one high steeple. Here also in the large and pleasant gardens you may see many vines and trees planted, which are so olde and sear, that they yeeld no fruit at all. The husbandmen thereabout hauing finished their daies worke, doe lay vp their rakes and other such countrey tooles in the said steeple: supposing that by vertue of a certaine holy man which lieth there buried, no man dare remooue them out of their place. I haue often seene this towne, as I trauelled betweene Rebat and Maroco.



## Of the towne of Adendum.

**T**His towne was situate among certaine hils almost fiftene miles from mount Atlas, and fiue and twenty miles from the towne last named. The soile neere vnto it is exceeding fruitfull for corne. Not farre from the walles thereof springeth a certaine riuer; about which place are great store of palme-trees, being but low and fruitles. The said riuer runneth through certaine vallies and rocks, where iron-mines are said to haue bene of olde, which may seeme probable, for the earth resembleth iron in colour, and the water in taste. Here is nothing now to be seene but a few reliques and ruines of houses and pillars ouerturned: for this towne was destroied at the same time, when the whole region (as is before declared) was laid waste.

## Of the towne of Tegeget.

**T**His towne was built by the Africans vpon the banke of Ommirabih neere vnto the high way leading from Tedles to Fez. It had in times past ciuill and wealthe inhabitants, for it stood not far from the way which passeth ouer Atlas into the deserts: hither were all the neighbour-people woont to resort for to buy corne. And albeit this towne was razed with all the residue in the prouince, yet is it after long time replanted with inhabitants. Hither doe all the Arabians of Temefne bring their corne, deliuering it vnto the townesmen, to be kept. Here are no shops nor artificers at all, but certaine smithes onely, which make tooles of husbandrie and horseshoes. The townesmen are streightly inioyned by the Arabians their gouernours courteously to entertaine all strangers traelling that way. Merchants pay custome there for each packe of cloth to the value of a riall: but for their horses and camels they giue no custome at all. Often traelling the same way, the towne did not greatly please me, albeit the grounds about it doe plentifully abound with cattell and corne.

## Of the towne called Hain Eleballu.

**T**His small towne standeth on a certaine plaine not farre from Manfora. About this towne grow abundance of wilde cherrie-trees, and of other thornie trees, bearing a round fruit not much vnlike to a cherrie, sauing that it is yellow: it is somewhat bigger then an oliue, and the vtter part thereof is nothing pleasant in taste. The fennes and marishes on all sides of the towne are full of snailes and toades: which toades (as the inhabitants told me) are no whit venomous. There is not any African historiographer which maketh description or mention of this towne; because perhaps they thought it not woorthie the name of a towne, or for that it was long since destroied. Neither was it (as I coniecture) built by the Africans, but either by the Romans or some other forren people.

## A description of Rebat.

**T**His great and famous towne was built not many yeeres agoe by *Manfor* the king and Mahumetan patriarke of Maroco, vpon the Ocean sea shore. By the east part thereof runneth the riuer Buragrag before named, and there dischargeth it selfe into the maine sea. The rocke whereon this towne is founded, standeth neere the mouth of the said riuer, hauing the riuer on the one side thereof, and the sea on the other. In building it much resembleth Maroco, which *Manfor* willed to be a paterne thereof: sauing that it is a great deale lesse then Maroco. Some say that the reason why it was built in this place was, for that king *Manfor* possessing the kingdome of Granada and a great part of Spaine besides, and considering that Maroco was so far distant, that if any warres should happen, he could not in due time send new forces against the Christians, determined to built some towne vpon the sea shore, where he and his armie might remaine all summer time. Some perswaded him to lie with his armie at Ceuta a towne vpon the streites of Gibraltar: but *Manfor* seeing that by reason of the barrennes of the soile he could not maintaine an armie royall for three or fower monethes in the towne of Ceuta, he caused this towne of Rebat in short space to be erected, and to be exceedingly beautified with temples, colleges, pallaces, shops, stoues, hospitals, and other such buildings. Moreouer on the south side without the walles he caused a certaine high tower like the tower of Maroco to be built, sauing that the winding staires were somewhat larger, inso-much that three horses a-breast might well ascend vp: from the top whereof they might espie ships an huge way into the sea. So exceeding is the height thereof, that I thinke there is no where the like building to be found. And to the end that greater store of artificers and merchants might hither from all places make resort, he appointed, that euery man according to his trade and occupation should be allowed a yeerely stipend: whereupon it came to passe that within few monethes, this towne was better stored with all kinde of artificers and merchants, then any towne in all Africa besides, and that because they reaped a double gaine. Here vsed *Manfor* with his troupes to remaine from the beginning of April, till the moneth of September. And whereas there was no water about the towne meete to be drunke (for the sea runneth ten miles vp into the riuer, and the wels likewise yeeld salt-water) *Manfor* caused fresh water to be conueied to the towne by certaine pipes and chanelles, from a fountaine twelue miles distant. And the conducts hee made arch-wise, like vnto the conducts of Italie in many places and specially at Rome. So soone as the said water-conduct was deriued vnto the towne, he caused it to be diuided and sent into sundry places, as namely some pipes thereof to the temples, some to the colleges, others to the kings pallace, and the rest into the common cisternes, throughout all the citie. Howbeit after king *Manfors* death this towne grew into such decay, that scarce the tenth

Why king  
Manfor built  
the towne of  
Rebat vpon the  
sea shore.

part thereof now remaineth. The said notable water-conduct was vterly for-  
done in the warre betwene the Marin-familie and the successors of *Man-  
sor*, and the famous towne it selfe decayeth every day more then other: so  
that at this present a man shall hardly finde throughout the whole towne  
fewer hundred houses inhabited; the residue are changed into fields and  
vineyards. About the foresaid rocke are two or three streetes with a few  
shops in them, which notwithstanding are in continuall danger, for they  
daily feare least the Portugals should surprize them; because the Portugall  
king often determined their overthrow, thinking if he might but win *Rebat*,  
that the kingdome of Fez were easie to be conquered. Howbeit the king of  
Fez hath alwaies endeouored to defend the same, and strongly to fortifie it  
against the enemy. But comparing their former felicitie with the present  
alteration whereinto they are fallen, I cannot but greatly lament their mis-  
erable case.

*Of the towne of Sella.*

**T**His towne was built by the Romans vpon the riuer of *Buragrag*, two  
miles from the Ocean sea, and a mile from *Rebat*: from whence, if a  
man will goe to the sea, he must take *Rebat* in his way. This towne also was  
destroyed when (as is aforesaid) king *Ioseph* spoyled all *Temesne*. Howbeit  
afterward king *Manfor* caused it to be walled round about, and built therein  
a faire hospitall and a stately pallace, into which his soldiers might at their  
pleasure retire themselves. Here likewise he erected a most beautifull tem-  
ple, wherein he caused a goodly hall or chappell to be set vp, which was curi-  
ously carued, and had many faire windowes about it: and in this hall (when  
he perceived death to seaze vpon him) he commanded his subiects to burie  
his corpes. Which being done, they laid one marble-stone ouer his head  
and another ouer his feete, whereon sundry epitaphes were engrauen. After  
him likewise all the honourable personages of his familie and blood, chose  
to be interred in the same hall. And so did the kings of the Marin-familie, so  
long as their commonwealth prospered. My selfe on a time entering the  
same hall, beheld there thirtie monuments of noble and great personages,  
and diligently wrote out all their epitaphes: this I did in the yeere of the  
*Hegeira* 915.

*Of the towne called Mader Auam.*

**T**His towne was built in my time by a certaine treasurer of the *Mah-  
metan* prelate *Abdalmumen*, vpon the banke of *Buragrag*. Some say it  
was built onely for yron-mines. From mount *Atlas* it is ten miles distant,  
and betwene it and *Atlas* are certaine shadie woods, full of terrible lions  
and leopards. So long as the founders posteritie gouerned this towne, it was  
well stored with people, with faire buildings, temples, innes, and hospitals:  
but, the Marin-familie preuailing daily more and more, it was at length by  
them

Where king  
Manfor was  
buried.

Iron-mines.  
Lions, and  
leopards.

them vterly destroyed. Part of the inhabitants were slaine, and part taken  
prisoners, and the residue by flight escaped to *Sella*. The king of *Maroco*  
sent forces to succour the towne, but the citizens being vanquished before  
their comming, were constrained to forsake the same, and to yeeld it vnto  
the Marin-foldiers. Howbeit the king of *Maroco* his captaine comming  
vpon the Marin-captaine with round forces, draue him and his forth of the  
towne, and tooke possession thereof himselfe. At length the king of the said  
Marin-familie marching with an armie against *Maroco*, tooke his iourney  
by this towne: whereat the gouernour being dismaied left the said towne,  
and before the kings approach betooke himselfe to flight. But the king put-  
ting all the inhabitants to the sword, left the towne it selfe so defaced and  
desolate, that by report it hath lien dispeopled euer since. The towne-walles  
and certaine steeples are as yet to be scene. My selfe sawe this towne, when  
the king of Fez hauing concluded a league with his cozen, tooke his iour-  
ney to *Thagia*, for to visite the sepulchre of one accounted in his life time  
an holy man, called \* *Seudi Buhafa*: which was in the yeere of the *Hegeira* \* or *Sidi*.  
920. Anno Dom. 1511.

*Of Thagia a towne in Temesne.*

**T**His little towne was in ancient time built by the Africans among cer-  
taine hills of mount *Atlas*. The aire is extreme cold, and the soile drie  
and barren. It is enuironed with huge woods, which are full of lions and  
other cruell beasts. Their scarcitie of corne is sufficiently counteruailed with  
abundance of hony and goates. Ciuitie they haue none at all; and their  
houses are most rudely built; for they haue no vse of lime. In this towne is  
visited the sepulchre of one accounted for a most holy man, who is reported  
in the time of *Abdalmumen*, to haue wrought many miracles against the  
furie of lions: whereupon he was reputed by many as a great prophet. I re-  
member that I read in a certaine writer of that nation commonly called *Et-  
dedle*, a whole catalogue of the said holy mans miracles: which whether he  
wrought by arte-magique, or by some woonderfull secret of nature, it is al-  
together vncertaine. Howbeit his great fame and honorable reputation is  
the cause why this towne is so well fraught with inhabitants. The people of  
Fez hauing solemnized their passeouer, doe yeerely frequent this towne to  
visite the said sepulchre, and that in such huge numbers, that you woulde  
esteem them to be an whole armie; for euery principall man carries his  
tent and other necessities with him: and so you shall see sometime an hun-  
dred tents, and sometimes more in that company. Fiftene daies they are  
in performing of that pilgrimage; for *Thagia* standeth from Fez almost  
an hundred and twenty miles. My selfe being a childe, went thither on pilgri-  
mage oftentimes with my father; as likewise being growne vp to mans  
estate, I repaired thither as often, making supplication to be deliuered from  
the danger of lions.

## Of the towne of Zarfa.

**H**is towne the Africans built vpon a certaine large and beautiful plaine, wated with pleasant riuers, and christall-fountains. About the ancient bounds of this citie you may behold many shrubs, together with fig-trees and cherrie-trees, which beare such cherries, as at Rome are called Marene. Here are likewise certaine thornie trees, the fruit whereof is by the Arabians called Rabich. Somewhat lesser it is then a cherie, resembling in taste the fruit called Ziziphum, or Iujuba. Here also may you finde great store of wilde palme-trees, from which they gather a kinde of fruit like vnto Spanish oliues, sauing that the stone or nut is greater, and not so pleasant in taste: before they be ripe they taste somewhat like vnto Seruice-apples. This towne was destroyed when king *Ioseph* afore said spoiled Temefne. Now the Arabians of Temefne sow their come where the towne stood, with great increase and gaine.

## Of the territorie of Fez.

\* Orgeon.

**E**stward it beginneth at the riuer of Buragrag, and stretcheth eastward to the riuer called Inauen: which two riuers are almost a hundred miles distant asunder. Northward it bordereth vpon the riuer \* Subu, and southward vpon the foote of Atlas. The soile both for abundance of corne, fruits, and cattell seemeth to be inferiour to none other. Within this prouince you shall see many exceeding great villages, which may for their bignes, not vnjustly be called townes. The plaines of this region haue bene so wasted with former warres, that very few inhabitants dwell vpon them, except certaine poore silly Arabians, some of whom haue ground of their owne, and some possesse ground in common, either with the citizens of Fez, or with the king, or else with some courtier. But the fields of Sala and Mecnase are tilled by other Arabians of better account, and are for the most part subiect to the king of Fez. And now those things which are woorthly of memorie in this region let vs here make report of.

## Of the citie or towne of Sella.

**T**his most ancient citie was built by the Romans, and sacked by the Gothes. And afterward when the Mahumetans armie were entred into the same region, the Gothes gaue it to *Tarick* one of their captaines. But euer since the time that Fez was built, Sella hath bene subiect vnto the gouernours thereof. It is most pleasantly situate vpon the Ocean sea-shore, within halfe a mile of Rebat; both which townes the riuer Buragrag separateth insunder. The buildings of this towne carrie a shew of antiquitie on them,

them, being artificially carued and stately supported with marble pillars. Their temples are most beautifull, and their shops are built vnder large porches. And at the end of euery row of shops is an arch, which (as they say) is to diuide one occupation from another. And (to say all in a word) here is nothing wanting, which may be required either in a most honourable citie, or in a flourishing commonwealth. Moreouer hither resort all kinde of merchants both Christians and others. Here the Genowaies, Venetians, <sup>English traf-</sup> English, and lowe Dutch vsed to traffique. In the 670. yeere of the Hegeira, <sup>figue.</sup> this towne was surprized by a certaine Castilian captaine, the inhabitants being put to flight, and the Christians enioying the citie. And when they had kept it ten daies, being on the sudden assailed by *Iacob* the first king of the Marin-familie (who could not, they thought, surcease his warre against Tremizen) they were put to the woorst, the greater part being slaine, and the residue put to flight. From thencefoorth that prince fauoured of all his subiects, enioyed the kingdome, after whom lineally succeeded those of his owne race and blood. And albeit this towne was in so few daies recouered from the enemy; yet a worlde it was to see, what a woonderfull alteration both of the houses and of the state of gouernment happened. Many houses of this towne are left desolate, especially neere the towne-walles: which, albeit they are most stately and curiously built, yet no man there is that will inhabit them. The grounds adioynning vpon this towne are sandie: neither are they fit for corne, but for cotton-wooll in diuers places very profitable. The inhabitants, diuers of them, doe weaue most excellent cotton. Here likewise are made very fine combes, which are sold in all the kingdome of Fez, for the region thereabout yeeldeth great plenty of box, and of other wood fit for the same purpose. Their gouernment is very orderly and discrete euen vntill this day: for they haue most learned iudges, vmpires, and deciders of doubtfull cases in lawe. This towne is frequented by many rich merchants of Genoa, whom the king hath alwaies had in great regarde; because he gaineth much yeerely by their traffique. The said merchants haue their aboad and diet, partly here at Sella, and partly at Fez: from both which towns they mutually helpe the traffique one of another. These Genowaies I found in their affaires of merchandize to be exceeding liberall: for they will spend frankly to get a courtiers fauour, not so much for their owne priuate gaine, as to be esteemed bountifull by strangers. In my time there was an honorable gentlemā of Genoa in the king of Fez his court, called *Messer Thomas di Marino*, a man both learned & wise, & highly reputed of by the king. This man hauing continued almost thirtie yeeres in the Fessan court, hee there deceased, and requesting on his death-bed to haue his corpes interred at Genoa, the king commanded the same to be transported thither. After his decease he left many sonnes in the Fessan kings court, who all of them prooued rich, and were greatly fauoured by the king.

of

## Of the towne called Fanzara.

**T**His towne being not very large, was built by a certaine king of the familie called Muachidin, on a beautiful plaine almost ten miles from Sella. The soile thereabouts yeeldeth corne in great plenty. Without the towne-walles are very many cleere fountaines and wels, which *Albucethen* the king of Fez caused there to be digged. In the time of *Abusaid* the last king of the Marin-familie, his cozen called *Sahid* was taken by *Habdilla* the king of Granada; whereupon by letters he requested his cozen the king of Fez to send him a certaine summe of money required by the king of Granada for his ranfome. Which when the Fessan king refused to yeeld vnto, *Habdilla* restored his prisoner to libertie, and sent him towards Fez to destroy both the citie and the king. Afterward *Sahid*, with the helpe of certaine wilde Arabians besieged Fez for seuen yeeres together; in which space most of the townes, villages, and hamlets throughout the whole kingdome were destroyed. But at length such a pestilence inuaded *Sahid's* forces, that himselfe, with a great part of his armie, in the \* 918. yeere of the Hegeira, died thereof. Howbeit those desolate townes neuer receiued from thencefoorth any new inhabitants, especially Fanzara, which was giuen to certaine Arabian captaines, that came to assist *Sahid*.

The occasion  
of the bloody  
warre moued  
by *Sahid*.

The citie of Fez  
besieged for se-  
uen yeeres to-  
gether.

\* This number  
(as I take it)  
should rather  
be 819.

## Of the towne of Mahmora.

**T**His towne was built vpon the mouth of the great riuer Subu by a certaine king of the Muachidin-familie, being almost halfe a mile distant from the sea; and about twelue miles from Sella. The places neere vnto it are sandie and barren. It was built (they say) of purpose to keepe the enemies from entering the mouth of the said riuer. Not farre from this towne standeth a mighty wood; the trees whereof beare a kinde of nuts or acornes about the bignes of Damascen-plums, being sweeter in taste then chest-nuts. Of which nuts certaine Arabians, dwelling neere vnto the place, conuey great plenty vnto the citie of Fez, and reape much gaine thereby: howbeit in going to gather this fruit, vnles they take good heede vnto themselves, they are in great danger of the most cruell and deuouring lions in all Africa, which there oftentimes doe feaze vpon them. This towne a hundred and twenty yeeres agoe was razed in the foresaid warre of *Sahid* against the king of Fez, nothing but a few ruines thereof remaining; whereby it appeereth to haue beene of no great bignes. In the 921. yeere of the Hegeira the king of Portugal sent an armie to build a forte in the foresaid riuers mouth; which they accordingly attempted to doe. But hauing laide the foundations, and reared the walles a good height, the king of Fez his brother so defeated them of their purpose, that he slue of them in one night almost three thousand in maner following: on a certaine morning before sun-rise three thou-

Most cruell and  
deuouring lions.

The Portugals  
attempting to  
build a forte  
within the  
mouth of the  
riuer Subu, de-  
feated of their  
purpose, and  
slaine.

sand Portugals marching towards the king of Fez his campe, determined to bring thence all the ordinance and field-peeeces vnto their new-erected fort: howbeit most rashly and inconsiderately, themselves being but three thousand, and the kings armie containing fiftie thousand footemen, and fower thousand horsemen. And yet the Portugals hoped so slyly and closely to performe this attempt, that before the Moores were ready to pursue them, they should conuey all their ordinance vnto the forte which was two miles distant. The Moores which kept the ordinance being seuen thousand men, were all asleepe when the Portugals came: whereupon the Portugals had so good successe, that they had carried the ordinance almost a mile, before the enemy was aware thereof. But at last, some rumour or alarme being giuen in the Moores campe, they all betooke themselves to armes, and fiercely pursued the Portugals, who likewise arranged their whole companie into battell-array. And albeit the enemy enuironed them on all sides; yet they made such stout and valiant resistance, that they had all escaped to their forte in safetie, had not certaine villains in the king of Fez his armie cried out amaine in the Portugall toong: Hold your hands (fellow soldiers) and throw downe your weapons, for the kings brother will make a truce. VVhich the Portugals no sooner yeelded vnto, but the sauage and merciles Moores put them euery one to the sword, sauing three or fower onely, who were saued at the request of a captaine in the Moores campe. The Portugals Generall being sore dismaied with this slaughter (for thereby he had lost all his principal soldiers) craued aide of a certaine other captaine, which by chance arriued there with a mightie fleet, being accompanied with a great number of noblemen and gentlemen. Howbeit, he was so hindred by the Moores (who daily did him all the villanie they could, and sunke diuers of his ships) that he was not able to performe that which he desired. In the meane space newes was published among the Portugals, of the king of Spaines death; whereupon diuers ships were provided, and many Portugals were sent into Spaine. Likewise the captaine of the said new forte seeing himselfe destitute of all succour, leauing the forte, embarked himselfe in those ships, which then lay vpon the riuer. But the greatest part of the fleet were cast away at their setting forth, and the residue, to escape the Moores shot, ran themselves a-ground on the flats and shoulde of the riuer, and were there miserably slaine by the Moores. Many of their ships were here burnt, and their ordinance sunke in the sea. So many Christians were then slaine (some say to the number of ten thousand) that the sea-water in that place continued red with their blood for three daies after. Soone after the Moores tooke vp fower hundred great peeeces of brasse out of the sea. This huge calamitie befell the Portugals for two causes: first because they would with such a small number make so rash an assault vpon the Moores, whom they knew to be so strong: and secondly, whereas the Portugall-king might at his owne cost haue sent another fleet for a new supply, he would by no meanes ioine his owne people and Castilians together. For by reason of the diuersitie of

A lamentable  
slaughter.



counsell and of people, there is nothing more pernicious then for an armie to consist of two nations: yea the Moores certainly expect the vpper hand, when they are to fight with such an armie. I my selfe was present in the foresaid warre, and sawe each particular accident, a little before my voyage to Constantinople.

*Of the towne called Tefselfelt.*

**T**His towne is situate vpon a sandie plaine, fiftene miles eastward of Mahmora, and almost twelue miles from the Ocean sea. Not far from this towne runneth a certaine riuer, on both sides whereof are thicke woods haunted with more fierce and cruell lions, then the last before mentioned, which greatly endanger those trauellers that haue occasion to lodge thereabout. Withour this towne, vpon the high way to Fez, standeth an olde cottage with a placherd chamber therein: here the mulettiers and carriers are said to take vp their lodging; but the doore of the said cottage they stop as sure as they can with boughes and thornes. Some affirme, that this rotten cottage (while the towne was inhabited) was a most stately inne. But it was defaced in the foresaid war of *Sahid*.

*A description of Mecnase.*

**T**His towne was so called after the name of the Mecnasites who were the founders thereof. From Fez it is 36 miles, about fiftie from Sella, and from Atlas almost 15 miles distant. It is exceeding rich, and containeth families to the number of six thousand. The inhabitants hereof while they dwelt in the fields liued a most peaceable life: howbeit at length they fell to dissension among themselves, and the weaker part hauing all their cattell taken from them, and hauing nothing in the fields to maintaine their estate, agreed among themselves to build this citie of Mecnase in a most beautiful plaine. Neere vnto this towne runneth a little riuer: and within three miles thereof are most pleasant gardens replenished with all manner of fruits. Quinces there are of great bignes, and of a most fragrant smell; and pomegranates likewise, which being very great and most pleasant in taste, haue no stones within them, and yet they are sold exceeding cheape. Likewise here are plentie of damascens, of white plums, and of the fruite called Iujuba, which being dried in the sunne, they eate in the spring, and carrie a great number of them to Fez. They haue likewise great store of figs and grapes, which are not to be eaten but while they are greene & new: for their figs being dried become so brittle, that they waste all to powder, and their grapes when they are made raisins, prooue vnfauorice. Peaches and oranges they haue in so great quantitie, that they make no store of them: but their limons are waterish and vnpleasant. Oliues are sold among them for a duc-kat and a halfe the Cantharo, which measure containeth a hundred pounds Italian.

Italian. Moreouer their fields yeeld them great plentie of hempe and flaxe, which they sell at Fez and Sella. In this towne are most stately and beautifull temples, three colleges, and ten bath-stoues. Euery monday they haue a great market without the towne-walles, whereunto the bordering Arabians doe vsually resort. Here are oxen, sheepe, and other such beastes to be sold: butter and wooll are here plentifull and at an easie rate. In my time the king bestowed this towne vpon a certaine noble man of his, where as much fruits are reaped as in the third part of the whole kingdome of Fez. This towne hath beene so afflicted by warres, that the yeerely tribute thereof hath beene diminished sometime fortie thousand, and fiftie thousand duckats, and sometimes more: and I haue read, that it hath beene besieged for fixe or seuen yeeres together. In my time the gouernour thereof the king of Fez his cozen, relying vpon the fauour of the people, rebelled against his kinsman and foueraigne. Whereupon the Fessan king with a great armie besieged the towne two moneths together, and, because it would not yeeld, so wasted and destroied all the countrie thereabout, that the gouernour lost by that means five and twentie thousand duckats of yeerely reuenue. What then shall we thinke of the fixe and seuen yeeres siege before mentioned? At length those citizens which fauoured the king of Fez opened the gates, and stoutly resisting the contrarie faction, gaue the king and his soldiers entrance. Thus by their meanes the king wan the citie, carrying home to Fez the rebellious gouernour captiue, who within fewe daies escaped from him. This most strong and beautifull citie hath many faire streetes, whereinto by conductes from a fountaine three miles distant, is conueied most sweet and holefome water, which serueth all the whole citie. The mils are two miles distant from the towne. The inhabitants are most valiant, warlike, liberall, and ciuill people, but their wits are not so refined as others: some of them are merchants, some artificers, and the residue gentlemen. They count it vnseemely for any man to send an horse-lode of seede to his husbandman or farmer. They are at continuall iarre with the citizens of Fez; but whereupon this dissension of theirs should arise, I cannot well determine. Their gentlemens wiues neuer goe forth of the doores but onely in the night season, and then also they must be so veiled and muffled that no man may see them: so great is the ielousie of this people. This towne is so durty in the spring-time, that it would irke a man to walke the streetes.

*Of a towne called Gemsha Elchmen.*

**T**His ancient towne standeth on a plaine neere vnto certaine baths, being distant southward of Mecnase fiftene miles, westward of Fez thirtie, and from Atlas about ten miles. By this towne lieth the common high way from Fez to Tedle. The fieldes of this towne was possessed by certaine Arabians, and the towne it selfe vtterly destroied in the war of *Sahid*. Howbeit in certaine places the wallles are yet remaining, and diuers towers and temples standing without roofes.

Of the towne called *Cannis Metgara*.

**T**His towne was built by certaine Africans in the field of Zuaga almost fifteene miles westward from Fez. Without this towne for two miles together were most pleasant and fruitfull gardens: but by the cruell warre of *Sahid* all was laide waste; and the place it selfe remained void of inhabitants an hundred and twenty yeeres. Howbeit when part of the people of Granada came ouer into Africa, this region began to be inhabited anew. And whereas the Granatines are great merchants of silke, they caused, for the breeding of silkwormes, great store of white mulberrie trees to be brought hither. Here likewise they planted abundance of sugar-canes, which prosper not so well in this place as in the prouince of Andaluzia. In times past the inhabitants of this place were very ciuill people, but in our time they haue not bene so, by reason that all of them exercise husbandrie.

Of the towne of *Banibasil*.

**T**His towne was built by the Africans vpon a certaine small riuer iust in the mid way betweene Mecnase and Fez, being distant from Fez about eightene miles westward. Out of their fields many riuers take their originall, which fieldes are by the Arabians sown all ouer with barlie and hempe: neither indeed will the soile yeeld any other commoditie, both by reason of the barrennes, and also for that it is for the most part ouerflowed with water. Whatsoeuer commoditie ariseth out of this place redoundeth to the priestes of the principall Mahumetan temple in Fez, and it amounteth almost yeerely to twenty thousand duckats. Here also in times past were most large, pleasant, and fruitfull gardens, as appeereth by the monuments and reliques thereof; howbeit they were, like other places, laide waste by the war of *Sahid*. The towne it selfe remained destitute of inhabitants an hundred and ten yeeres; but as the king of Fez returned home from Ducala, he commanded part of his people to inhabite the same: albeit their inciuilitie made them loth so to doe.

## Of Fez, the principall citie of all Barbarie, and of the founders thereof.



Fez was built in the time of one *Aron* a Mahumetan patriarke, in the yeere of the Hegeira 185. and in the yeere of our Lord 786. by a certaine heretike against the religion of Mahumet. But why it should so be called some are of opinion, because when the first foundations thereof were digged, there was found some quantitie of golde, which mettall in the Arabian language is called Fez. Which etymologie seemeth to me not improbable, albeit

albeit some would haue it so called from a certaine riuer of that name. But howsoeuer it be, we leaue that to be discussed by others, affirming for an vndoubted truth, that the founder of this citie was one *Idris*, being the foresaid *Aron* his neere kinsman. This *Idris* ought rather to haue bene Mahumetan patriarke, because he was nephew vnto *Hali* the cozen-german of Mahumet, who married *Falerna* Mahumets owne daughter, so that *Idris* both by father and mother was of Mahumets linage: but *Aron* being nephew vnto one *Habbus* the vncl of Mahumet, was of kinred onely by the fathers side. Howbeit both of them were excluded from the said patriarkship for certaine causes mentioned in the African chronicles, although *Aron* vsurped the same by deceit. For *Arons* vncl being a most cunning and craftie man, and faining himselfe to beare greatest fauour vnto the familie of *Hali*, and to be most desirous, that the patriarkship should light thereon, sent his ambassadours almost throughout the whole world. Whereupon the dignitie was translated from *Ymeve* to *Habdulla Seffer* the first patriarke. Which, *Ymeve* being informed of, waged warre against the familie of *Hali*, and so preuailed, that some of them he chased into Asia, and some into India. Howbeit an ancient religious man of the same familie remained still aliue at Elmadina, who being very olde, no whit regarded the dignitie. But this ancient sire left behinde him two sonnes, who when they were come to mans estate, grew into so great fauour with the people of Elmadin, that they were chased thence by their enemies; the one being taken & hanged; and the other (whose name was *Idris*) escaping into Mauritania. This *Idris* dwelling vpon mount Zaron about thirtie miles from Fez, gouerned not onely the commonwealth, but matters of religion also: and all the region adiacent paid him tribute. At length *Idris* deceasing without lawfull issue, left one of his maides big with childe, which had bene turned from the Gothes religion to the Moores. Being deliuered of her sonne, they called him after his fathers name, *Idris*. This childe the inhabitants chusing for their prince, caused him to be most carefully brought vp: and as he grew in yeeres, to the end they might traine him vp in feates of chiuallrie, they appointed one *Rasid* a most valiant and skilfull captaine to instruct him. Insomuch, that while he was but fifteene yeeres of age, he grew famous for his valiant actes and stratagems, and began woonderfully to enlarge his dominions. Wherefore his troupes and familie increasing euery day more and more, he set his minde vpon building of a citie, and changing of his habitation. And so he sent for cunning builders into all nations, who hauing diligently perused all places in the region, at last made choise of that where the citie of Fez now standeth. For here they found great store of fountaines, and a faire riuer, which springing forth of a plaine not far of, runneth pleasantly almost eight miles amidst the little hils, till at length it casteth it selfe vpon another plaine. Southward of the place they found a wood, which they knew would be right commodious for the towne. Here therefore vpon the east banke of the said riuer, they built a towne containing three thousand families: neither omitted they

ought at al which might be required in a flourishing commonwealth. After the decesse of *Idris*, his sonne erected another towne directly ouer against the foresaid, on the other side of the riuer. But in proceſſe of time either towne ſo encreaſed, that there was but a ſmall diſtance betweene them: for the gouernours of each laboured might and maine to augment their owne iuriſdictions. An hundred and fowerſcore yeeres after, there fell out great diſſenſion and ciuill warre betweene theſe two cities, which by report continued an hundred yeeres together. At length *Joſeph* king of Maroco of the Luntune-familie, conducting an huge armie againſt both theſe princes, tooke them priſoners, carried them home vnto his dominions, and put them to a moſt cruell death. And he ſo vanquiſhed the citizens, that there were ſlaine of them thirtie thouſand. Then determined king *Joſeph* to reduce thoſe two townes into firme vnitie and concord: for which cauſe, making a bridge ouer the riuer, and beating downe the walles of either towne right againſt it, he vnited both into one, which afterward he diuided into twelue regions or wardes. Now let vs make report of all ſuch memorable things as are there to be ſcene \* at this day.

*A moſt exact deſcription of the citie of Fez.*



World it is to ſee, how large, how populous, how well-fortified and walled this citie is. The moſt part thereof ſtandeth vpon great and little hils: neither is there any plaine ground but onely in the miſt of the citie. The riuer entreth the towne in two places, for it is diuided into a double branch, one whereof runneth by new Fez, that is, by the ſouth ſide of the towne, and another commeth in at the weſt ſide. And ſo almoſt infinitely diſperſing it ſelfe into the citie, it is deriued by certaine conduits and chanelles vnto euery temple, college, inne, hoſpitall, and almoſt to euery priuate houſe. Vnto the temples are certaine ſquare conduits adioined, hauing celles and receptacles round about them; each one of which hath a cocke, whereby water is conueied through the wall into a trough of marble. From whence flowing into the ſinks and gutters, it carrieth away all the filth of the citie into the riuer. In the miſt of each ſquare conduit ſtandeth a lowe ceſterne, being three cubites in depth, fower in bredth, and twelue in length: and the water is conueied by certaine pipes into the foresaid ſquare conduits, which are almoſt an hundred and fiftie in number. The moſt part of the houſes are built of fine bricks and ſtones curiouſly painted. Likewiſe their bay-windows and portals are made of partie-coloured bricke, like vnto the ſtones of Majorica. The roofes of their houſes they adorne with golde, azure, and other excellent colours, which roofes are made of wood, and plaine on the top, to the end that in ſummer-time carpets may be ſpred vpon them, for here they uſe to lodge by reaſon of the exceeding heate of that countrie. Some houſes are of two and ſome of three ſtories high, whereunto they make

make fine ſtaires, by which they paſſe from one roome to another vnder the ſame rooſe: for the middle part of the houſe is alwaies open or vncouered, hauing ſome chambers built on the one ſide, and ſome on the other. The chamber-doores are very high and wide: which in rich mens houſes are framed of excellent and carued wood. Each chamber hath a preſſe curiouſly painted and varniſhed belonging thereunto, being as long as the chamber it ſelfe is broad: ſome will haue it very high, and others but ſixe handſuls in height, that they may ſet it on the teſter of a bed. All the portals of their houſes are ſupported with bricke-pillers finely plaſtered ouer, except ſome which ſtand vpon pillars of marble. The beames and tranſoms vpholding their chambers are moſt curiouſly painted and carued. To ſome houſes likewiſe belong certaine ſquare ceſternes, containing in bredth ſixe or ſeuene cubites, in length ten or twelue, and in height but ſixe or ſeuene handſuls, being all vncouered, and built of bricks trimly plaſtered ouer. Along the ſides of theſe ceſternes are certaine cocks, which conuey the water into marble-troughes, as I haue ſcene in many places of Europe. When the foresaid conduits are full of water, that which floweth ouer, runneth by certaine ſecret pipes and conueiances into the ceſternes: and that which ouerfloweth the ceſternes, is carried likewiſe by other paſſages into the common ſinks and gutters, and ſo into the riuer. The ſaid ceſternes are alwaies kept ſweete and cleane, neither are they couered but onely in ſummer-time, when men, women, and children bathe themſelues therein. Moreouer on the tops of their houſes they viſually build a turret with many pleaſant rooms therein, whither the women, for recreations ſake, when they are wearie of working, retire themſelues; from whence they may ſee well-nigh all the citie ouer. Of Mahumetan temples and oratories there are almoſt ſeuene hundred in this towne, fiftie whereof are moſt ſtately and ſumptuouſly built, hauing their conduits made of marble, and other excellent ſtones ynknowne to the Italians; and the chapters of their pillars be artificially adorned with painting and caruing. The tops of theſe temples, after the faſhion of Chriſtian churches in Europe, are made of ioiſes and planks: but the pauement is couered with mats which are ſo cunningly ſowed together, that a man cannot ſee the bredth of a finger vncouered. The walles likewiſe on the inner ſide are lined a mans height with ſuch mats. Moreouer, each temple hath a turret or ſteeple, from whence certaine are appointed with a lowd voice to call the people at their ſet-time of praier. Euery temple hath one onely prieſt to ſay ſeruice therein, who hath the beſtowing of all reuenues belonging to his owne temple, as occaſion requireth: for thereby are maintained lampes to burne in the night, and porters to keepe the doores are paid their wages out of it, and ſo likewiſe are they that call the people to ordinarie praiers in the night ſeaſon: for thoſe which crye from the ſaid towers in the day-time haue no wages, but are onely releaſed from all tributes and exactions. The chiefe Mahumetan temple in this towne is called *Caruuen*, being of ſo incredible a bignes, that the circuit thereof and of the buildings longing vnto it, is a

*The number and ſtatelines of the Mahumetan temples in Fez.*

*The principall temple of Fez, called Caruuen.*

good mile and a halfe about. This temple hath one and thirtie gates or portals of a woonderfull greatnes and height. The rooffe of this temple is in length 150. and in bredth about fowerfcore Florentine cubites. The turret or steeple, from whence they crie amaine to assemble the people together, is exceedingly high; the bredth whereof is supported with twentie, and the length with thirtie pillars. On the east, west, and north sides, it hath certaine walkes or galleries, fortie cubites in length, and thirtie in bredth. Vnder which galleries there is a cell or storehouse, wherein oile, candles, mats, and other such necessaries for the temple are laid vp. Euery night in this temple are burnt nine hundred lightes; for euery arch hath a feuerall lampe, especially those which extend through the mid-quire. Some arches there are that haue 120. candles apeece: there are likewise certaine brasfe-candlestickes so great and with so many sockets, as they will holde each one fiftene hundred candles: and these candlestickes are reported to haue beene made of bels, which the king of Fez in times past tooke from Christians. About the wals of the said temple are diuers pulpits, out of which those that are learned in the Mahumetan lawe instruct the people. Their winter-lectures begin presently after sun-rise, and continue the space of an hower. But their summer-lectures holde on from the sunne going downe, till an hower and a halfe within night. And here they teach as well morall philosophie as the law of Mahumet. The summer-lectures are performed by certaine priuate and obscure persons; but in winter such onely are admitted to read, as be reputed their greatest clerkes. All which readers and professours are yeerely allowed most liberall stipends. The priest of this great temple is inioined onely to read praiers, and faithfully to distribute almes among the poore. Euery festiuall day he bestoweth all such corne and money as he hath in his custodie, to all poore people, according to their neede. The treasurer or collector of the reuenues of this church hath euery day a duckat for his pay. Likewise he hath eight notaries or clerkes vnder him; euery one of which gaineth fixe duckats a moneth: and other fixe clerks who receiue the rent of houses, shops, and other such places as belong to the temple, hauing for their wages the twentieth part of all such rents and duties as they gather. Moreouer there belong to this temple twentie factors or bailies of husbandrie, that without the citie-walles haue an eie to the labourers, plowemen, vine-planters, and gardeners, and that prouide them things necessarie: their gaine is three duckats a moneth. Not far from the citie are about twentie lime-kils, and as many bricke-kils, seruing for the reparation of their temple, and of all houses thereto belonging. The reuenues of the said temple daily receiued; are two hundred duckats a day; the better halfe whereof is laid out vpon the particulars aforesaid. Also if there be any temples in the citie destitute of liuing, they must all be maintained at the charges of this great temple: and then that which remaineth after all expences, is bestowed for the behoofe of the commonwealth: for the people receiue no reuenues at all. In our time the king commanded the priest

The reuenues  
of the great  
temple; and  
how they are  
bestowed.

of

of the said temple to lend him an huge summe of money, which he neuer repaid againe. Moreouer in the citie of Fez are two most stately colleges, of which diuers roomes are adorned with curious painting; all their beames are carued, their walles consisting both of marble and freestone. Some colleges here are which containe an hundred studies, some more, and some fewer, all which were built by diuers kings of the Marin-familie. One there is among the rest most beautifull and admirable to behold, which was erected by a certaine king called *Habu Henon*. Here is to be seene an excellent fountaine of marble, the cesterne whereof containeth two pipes. Through this college runneth a little streame in a most cleere and pleasant chanell, the brims and edges whereof are workmanly framed of marble, and stones of Majorica. Likewise here are three cloysters to walke in, most curiously and artificially made, with certaine eight-square pillars of diuers colours to support them. And betweene pillar and pillar the arches are beautifully ouercast with golde, azure, and diuers other colours; and the rooffe is very artificially built of wood. The sides of these cloysters are so close, that they which are without cannot see such as walke within. The walles round about as high as a man can reach, are adorned with plaister-worke of Majorica. In many places you may finde certaine verses, which declare what yeere the college was built in, together with many epigrams in the founders commendation. The letters of which verses are very great and blacke, so that they may be read a far off. This college-gates are of brasfe most curiously carued, and so are the doores artificially made of wood. In the chappell of this college standeth a certaine pulpit mounted nine staires high, which staires are of iuorie and eben. Some affirme, that the king hauing built this college, was desirous to knowe how much money he had spent in building it; but after he had perused a lease or two of his account-booke, finding the summe of fortie thousand duckats, he rent it asunder, and threw it into the foresaid little riuer, adding this sentence out of a certaine Arabian writer: Each pretious and amiable thing, though it costeth deere, yet if it be beautifull, it cannot choose but be good cheape: neither is any thing of too high a price, which pleaseth a mans affection. Howbeit a certaine treasurer of the kings, making a particular account of all the said expences, found that this excellent building stood his master in 480000. duckats. The other colleges of Fez are somewhat like vnto this, hauing euery one readers and professors, some of which read in the forenoone, and some in the afternoone. In times past the students of these colleges had their apparell and victuals allowed them for seuen yeeres, but now they haue nothing gratis but their chamber. For the warre of *Sabid* destroyed many possessions, whereby learning was maintained; so that now the greatest college of al hath yeerely but two hundred, and the second but an hundred duckats for the maintenance of their professors. And this perhaps may be one reason, among many, why the gouernment not onely of Fez, but of all the cities in Africa, is so base. Now these colleges are furnished with no schollers but such as are strangers, and

liue

The suppression  
of learning and  
learned men, a  
principall cause  
of disorderly &  
base govern-  
ment.



liue of the citie-almes: and if any citizen dwell there, they are not about two or three at the most. The professor being ready for his lecture, some of his auditors readeth a text, whereupon the said professor dilateth, and explaineth obscure and difficult places. Sometimes also the schollers dispute before their professor.

*A description of the hospitals and bathes in the citie of Fez.*

**M**Any hospitals there are in Fez, no whit inferiour, either for building or beautie, vnto the foresaid colleges. For in them whatsoeuer strangers came to the citie were intertained at the common charge for three daies together. There are likewise as faire and as stately hospitals in the suburbs. In times past their wealth was marvellous great; but in the time of *Sahids* warre, the king standing in neede of a great summe of money, was counsell'd by some of his greedy courtiers to sell the liuings of the said hospitals. Which when the people would in no case yeeld vnto, the kings orator or speaker, perswaded them that all those liuings were giuen by his maiesties predecessours, and therefore (because when the warres were ended, they should soone recouer all againe) that it were far better for them by that meanes to pleasure their soueraigne, then to let his kingly estate fall into so great danger. Whereupon all the said liuings being sold, the king was preuented by vntimely and sudden death before he could bring his purpose to effect: and so these famous hospitals were depriued of all their maintenance. The poore indeede and impotent people of the city are at this day relieved; but no strangers are entertained, save only learned men or gentlemen. Howbeit there is another hospital for the releefe of sick & diseased strangers, who haue their diet onely allowed them, but no phisition or medicine: certaine women there are which attend vpon them, till they recouer their former health, or die. In this hospitall likewise there is a place for frantick or distraught persons, where they are bound in strong iron chaines; whereof the part next vnto their walks is strengthened with mighty beames of wood and iron. The gouernour of these distraught persons, when he bringeth them any sustenance, hath a whip of purpose to chastise those that offer to bite, strike, or play any mad part. Sometimes it falleth out that these franticke people will call vnto them such as passe by; declaring how vniuistly they are there detained, and how cruelly they are handled by the officers, when as notwithstanding they affirme themselves to bee restored vnto their right minde. And hauing thus perswaded the commers-by, approaching neerer and neerer vnto them, at length they take hold with one hand on their garments, and (like villans) with the other hand they shamefully defile their faces and apparell with dung. And though all of them haue their priuies and close stooles, yet would they be poysoned in their owne filth, if the seruants did not often wash their lodgings: so that their abominable and continuall

stinke

stinke is the cause why citizens neuer visite them. Likewise this hospitall hath many roomes for the purueiours, notaries, cookes, and other officers belonging to the sicke persons; who each of them haue some small yeerely stipend. Being a yoong man I my selfe was notarie heere for two yeeres, which office is woorth three duckats a moneth.

*John Leo in his youth a notarie of an hospitall for two yeeres together.*

In this citie are moe then an hundred bath-stoues very artificially and stately built: which though they be not of equall bignes, yet are they all of one fashion. Each stoue hath fower halles, without which are certaine galleries in an higher place, with fise or fixe staires to ascend vnto them: here men put off their apparell, and hence they goe naked into the bath. In the midst they alwaies keepe a cesterne full of water. First therefore they that meane to bathe themselves must passe through a cold hall, where they vse to temper hot water and cold together, then they goe into a roome somewhat hotter, where the seruants clense and wash them; and last of all they proceede into a third hot-house, where they sweate as much as they thinke good. Of the said water they giue vnto euery man two vessels onely: but he that will haue more and will be extraordinarily washed, must giue to the seruant one Liardo at the least, and to the master of the stoue but two farthings. The fire that heateth their water is made of nought else but beastes dung: for which purpose many boyes are set on worke to run vp and downe to stables, and thence to carrie all the dung, and to lay it on heapes without the towne-walles; which being parched in the sunne for two or three monethes together, they vse for fewell. Likewise the women haue their stoues apart from the men. And yet some hot-houses serue both for men and women, but at sundry times, namely for men from the third to the fourteenth hower of the day, and the residue for women. While women are bathing themselves, they hang out a rope at the first entrance of the house, which is a signe for men, that they may then proceed no farther. Neither may husbands here be permitted to speake with their owne wiues; so great a regarde they haue of their honestie. Here men and women both, after they haue done bathing, vse to banquet and make merrie with pleasant musicke and singing. Yoong striplings enter the bath starke naked without any shame, but men couer their priuities with a linnen cloth. The richer sort will not enter the common bath, but that which is adorned and finely set foorth, and which serueth for noblemen and gentlemen. When any one is to be bathed, they lay him along vpon the ground, anointing him with a certaine ointment, and with certaine instruments doing away his filth. The richer sort haue a carpet to lie on, their head lying on a wooden cushion couered with the same carpet. Likewise here are many barbers and chirurgions which attend to doe their office. The most part of these baths pertaine to the temples and colleges, yeelding vnto them a great summe of money for yeerely rent; for some giue an hundred, some an hundred and fiftie duckats a yeere. Neither must I here omit the festiuall day which the seruants and officers of the bathes yeerely celebrate. Who with trumpets and pipes calling their

friendes

friendes together, goe foorth of the towne, and there gather a wilde onion, putting it in a certaine brazen vessell, and couering the same with a linnen cloth wet in lee: afterward with a great noise of trumpets and pipes they solemnely bring the said onion vnto the hot-house doore, and there they hang it vp in the little brazen vessell or lauer, saying that this is a most happy boading or signe of good lucke vnto their stoue. Howbeit I suppose it to be some such sacrifice, as the ancient Moores were wont in times past, when they were destitute of lawes and ciuilitie, to offer, and that the same custome hath remained till this very day. The like is to be seen euen among Christians, who celebrate many feasts whereof they can yeeld no reason. Likewise euery African towne had their peculiar feast, which, when the Christians once enioied Africa, were vtterly abolished and done away.

*Of the Innes of Fez.*



**I**N this citie are almost two hundred innes, the greatest whereof are in the principall part of the citie neere vnto the chiefe temple. Euery of these innes are three stories high, and containe an hundred and twenty or moe chambers apeece. Likewise each one hath a fountaine together with sinks and water-pipes, which make auoidance of all the filth. Neuer, to my remembrance, did I see greater buildings, except it were the Spanish college at Bologna, or the pallace of the Cardinall *di San Giorgio* at Rome: of which innes all the chamber-doores haue walkes or galleries before them. And albeit the innes of this citie are very faire and large, yet they affoord most beggerly entertainment to strangers: for there are neither beds nor couches for a man to lie vpon, vnlesse it be a course blanket and a mat. And if you will haue any victuals, you must goe to the shambles your selfe, and buie such meate for your host to dresse, as your stomack stands-to. In these innes certaine poore widowes of Fez, which haue neither wealth nor friends to succour them, are relieved: sometimes one, and sometimes two of them together are allowed a chamber; for which courtesie they play both the chamberlaines and cookes of the inne. The inne-keepers of Fez being all of one familie called *Elcheua*, goe appparelled like women, and shauel their beards, and are so delighted to imitate women, that they will not only counterfeite their speech, but will sometimes also sit downe and spin. Each one of these hath his concubine, whom he accompanieth as if she were his owne lawfull wife; albeit the said concubines are not onely ill-fauoured in countenance, but notorious for their bad life and behauiour. They buie and sell wine so freely, that no man controules them for it. None resort hither but most lewd & wicked people, to the end they may more boldly commit villany. The inne-keepers haue a consul ouer them, and they pay tribute vnto the gouernour of the citie. And when the king hath occasion to send foorth an armie, then they, as being most meete for the purpose, are constrained largely to victuall the campe.

campe. Had not the streit law of historie enforced me to make relation of the foresaid particulars as they stand, I would much rather haue smothered such matters in silence, as tend so extremely to the disgrace of Fez; which being reformed, there is not any citie in al Africa, for the honestie and good demeanour of the citizens, comparable thereunto. For the very companie of these inne-keepers is so odious and detestable in the sight of all honest men, learned men, and merchants, that they will in no wise vouchsafe to speake vnto them. And they are firmly enioined not to enter into the temple, into the burse, nor into any bath. Neither yet are they permitted to resort vnto those innes which are next vnto the great temple, and wherein merchants are vsually entertained. All men in a manner are in viter detestation of these wretches: but because the kings armie hath some vse of them (as is aforesaid) they are borne withall, whether the citizens will or no.

*Of the mills of Fez.*

**I**N this citie are mills in fower hundred places at least. And euery of these places containeth fise or fixe mills; so that there are some thousands of mills in the whole citie. Euery mill standeth in a large roome \* vpon some strong pillar or post; whereunto many countrie-people vse to resort. Certaine merchants there are in Fez, which hiring mills and shops, buie corne and sell it ready ground vnto the citizens, whereby they reape exceeding gaine: for the greatest part of the citizens being poore, and not able to lay vp corne sufficient in store, are faine to buie meale of them. But the richer sort buie their owne corne, and send it to some common mill, where they pay a shilling for the grinding of each measure. All the saide mills pertaine either to the temples or colleges: for he must be very rich that hath a mill of his owne; for euery mill gaineth the owner two duckats.

\* Like vnto our horse-mills.

*A description of the occupations, the shops, and the market.*

**E**ACH trade or occupation hath a peculiar place allotted thereto, the principall whereof are next vnto the great temple: for there first you may beholde to the number of fowerscore notaries or scriueners shops, whereof some ioine vpon the temple, and the residue stand ouer against them: euery of which shops hath alwaies two notaries. Then westward there are about thirtie stationers or booke-sellers. The shoo-merchants which buie shooes and buskins of the shoomakers, and sell them againe to the citizens, inhabite on the south side of the temple: and next vnto them, such as make shooes for children onely, their shops being about fiftie. On the east side dwell those that sell vessels and other commodities made of brasse. Over against the great gate of the said temple stands the fruit-market, containing fiftie shops, where no kinde of fruit is wanting. Next vnto them stand the

waxe.

waxe-merchants, very ingenious and cunning workmen, and much to be admired. Here are merchants factors likewise, though they be but few. Then followes the herbe-market, wherein the pome-citrons, and diuers kinds of greene boughes and herbes doe represent the sweete and flourishing spring, and in this market are about twentie tauernes: for they which drinke wine, will shrowd themselves vnder the shade and pleasant boughes. Next vnto them stand the milke-sellers, who haue great store of such earthen vessels by them, as the Italians call *Vasi di Maiolica*: but their milke they cause to be brought thither in certaine vessels of wood bound with iron-hoops, being narrow-mouthed and broad at the bottome. From these milke-sellers some there are which daily buie great store of milke to make butter thereof: and the residue of their milke they sell either crudded or sometimes fower vnto the citizens: so that I thinke there passeth scarce one day ouer their heads, wherein they vtter not foue and twentie tunnes of milke. Next vnto these are such as sell cotton, and they haue about thirtie shops: then follow those that sell hempe, ropes, halters, and such other hempen commodities. Then come you to the girdlers, and such as make pantofles, and leather-bridles embrodered with silke: next, their shops adioine that make sword-scabberds and caparisons for horses. Immediately after dwell those that sell salt and lime. And vpon them border an hundred shops of potters, who frame all kinde of earthen vessels adorned with diuers colours. Then come you to the sadlers-shops: and next of all to the street of porters, who (as I suppose) are about three hundred: these porters haue a consul or gouernour, who euery weeke allotteth vnto part of them some set busines. The gaine which redoundeth thereof they put into a coffer, diuiding it at the weekes end among them, which haue wrought the same weeke. Strange it is to consider how exceedingly these porters loue one another; for when any of them deceaseth, the whole companie maintaineth his widow and fatherlesse children at their common charge, till either she die, or marrieth a new husband. The children they carefully bring vp, till they haue attained to some good arte or occupation. VWhosoeuer of them marrieth and hath children by his wife, inuiteth most part of his companie vnto a banquet: who being thus inuited, present each of them some gift or other vnto the good man, or his wife. No man can be admitted into their companie, vnlesse first he banqueteth the principall men thereof: otherwise he is to haue but halfe a share of the common gaine. Free they are from all tributes and exactions: yea their bread is baked of free cost. If any of them be taken in any hainous offence, he is not publikely but priuately punished. While they are at worke they all weare short garments of one colour: and at vacant times they are apparelled as themselves thinke good: but howsoeuer it be, they are most honest and faire-conditioned people. Next vnto the porters companie dwell the chiefe cookes and victuallers. Here also stands a certaine square house couered with reed, wherein pease and turnep-rootes are to be sold, which are so greatly esteemed of in Fez, that none may buie them of the countrie-people

The porters of  
Fez.

people at the first hand, but such as are appointed, who are bound to pay tole & tribute vnto the customers: & scarcely one day passeth, wherein mo then 500. sacks of pease and turneps are not sold. And albeit (as we haue said) they are so much esteemed of, yet are they sold at a most easie price: for a man may buie 30. or at least 20. pound weight for one \* Liardo. Greene beanes likewise in time of yeere are sold good cheape. Not far fro the place before mentioned are certaine shops, wherein lumps or steakes of flesh beaten in a mortar, & the fried with oile, & seasoned with much spice, are to be bought, euery one of the said lumps or steakes being about the bignes of a fig, & being made only of dried beefe. On the north side of the temple is a place whither all kinde of herbes are brought to make sallets withall: for which purpose there are 40. shops appointed. Next wherunto is The place of smoke, so called by reason of continuall smoke: here are certaine fritters or cakes fried in oile, like vnto such as are called at Rome *Pan Melato*. Of these fritters great store are daily vttered: for euery day they vse to breake their fasts therewith, & especially vpon festiual daies: vnto which fritters they adde for a conclusion either rostmeat or honic: sometimes they steepe them in an homely kinde of broth made of bruised meat, which being sodden, they bray the second time in a mortar, making pottage therof, & colouring it with a kinde of red earth. They roste their flesh not vpon a spit, but in an ouen: for making two ouens one ouer another for the same purpose, in the lower they kindle a fire, putting the flesh into the vpper ouen when it is wel het. You would not beleene how finely their meat is thus roasted, for it cannot be spoiled either by smoke, or too much heat: for they are all night roasting it by a gentle fire, and in the morning they set it to sale. The foresaid steakes & fritters they sell vnto the citizens in so great abundance, that they daily take for them mo the 200. duc-kats. For there are 15. shops which sell nothing else. Likewise here are sold certaine fishes & flesh fried, & a kind of excellent sauorie bread, tasting somewhat like a fritter: which being baked with butter, they neuer eat but with butter and honic. Here also are the feet of certaine beasts sodden; wherewith the husbandmen betimes in the morning breake their fast, and then hie them to their labour. Next vnto these are such as sell oile, salt, butter, cheese, oliues, pome-citrons & capers: their shops are full of fine earthen vessels, which are of much greater value then the things contained in them. Their butter and honic they sell by certaine criers, which are porters appointed for the same office. Neither doe they admit euery one to fill their vessels; but that worke is reserued for certaine porters appointed to doe it, which also fill the measures of oile when merchants buie the same. The said vessels are sufficient to containe an hundred and fiftie pounds of butter; for so much butter the countrie-people put into each vessell. Then follow the shambles, consisting of about fortie shops, wherein the butchers cut their flesh a peeces, and sell it by weight. They kill no beastes within the shambles, for there is a place allotted for this purpose neere vnto the riuer, where hauing once dressed their flesh, they send it to the shambles by certaine seruants appointed for

\* Ramusius in  
his Italian copie  
calles it Bai-  
oco.

M I

that

The gouernour  
of the shambles  
in Fez.

\* In the Italian  
copie they are  
called Baiocchi.

that end. But before any butcher dare sell his flesh vnto the citizens, he must carrie it to the gouernour of the shambles, who so soone as he seeth the flesh, he sets downe in a peece of paper the price thereof, which they shew together with their meate vnto the people; neither may they in any case exceed the said price. Next vnto the shambles standeth the market where course cloathes are sold, which containeth at least an hundred shops: the said cloth is deliuered vnto certaine criers (which are about threescore in number) who carrying the cloth from shop to shop tell the price thereof, and for the selling of euery duckats-woorth they haue two \* Liardos allowed them. This traffique of cloth indureth from noone till night, to the merchants great aduantage. Then follow their shops that scowre and sell armour, swordes, iauelings, and such like warlike instruments. Next vnto them stand the fishmongers, who sell most excellent and great fish, taken both in the riuer of Fez and in other waters, exceeding cheape; for you may buie a pound of fish for two farthings onely. There is great abundance of the fish called in Rome *Laccia*, and that especially from the beginning of October till the moneth of Aprill, as we will declare more at large when we come to speake of the riuers. Next vnto the fishmongers dwell such as make of a certaine hard reed, coopes and cages for fowles; their shops being about fortie in number. For each of the citizens vseth to bring vp great store of hennies and capons. And that their houses may not be defiled with hennes-dung, they keepe them continually in coopes and cages. Then follow their shops that sell liquide sope; but they be not many, for you shall finde more of them in other partes of the citie. Neither make they sope at Fez onely, but also in the mountaines thereabout, from whence it is brought vnto the citie vpon mules backs. Next of all are certaine of their shops that sell meale, albeit they are diuersly disperfed throughout the whole citie. Next vnto them are such as sell seed-graine and seed-pulse: which you cannot buie of any citizen, because that euery one had rather keepe his corne in store: many there are likewise in the same place, that will carrie pulse or corne to mules or horses, whither soeuer you will haue them. A mule vseth to carrie three measures of pulse vpon his backe (which the muliter is enioined to measure) in three sacks lying one vpon another. Then are there ten shops of them that sell straw. Next them is the market where threed and hempe is to be sold, and where hempe vseth to be kempt: which place is built after the fashion of great houses, with fower galleries or spare-rooms round about it; in the first whereof they sell linnen-cloth, and weigh hempe: in two other sit a great many women hauing abundance of sale-threed, which is there sold by the criers, who carrie the same vp and downe from noone till night. In the midst of this place growe diuers mulberie trees, affoording pleasant shade and shelter vnto the merchants: and hither such swarms of women resort, that a man shall hardly withdraw himselfe from among them: good sport it is sometime to see how they will barter and scould one at another: yea and oftentimes you shall see them fall together by the eares. Let vs now

come

come to the west part, which stretcheth from the temple to that gate that leadeth vnto Mecnase. Next vnto the smokie place before mentioned, their habitations directly stand, that make leather-tankards, to draw water out of wells; of whom there are some fourteene shops. Vnto these adioine such as make wicker-vessels and other, to lay vp meale and corne in: and these enioy about thirtie shops. Next them are 150. shops of tailors. And next the tailors are those that make leather-shieldes, such as I haue often seene brought into Europe. Then follow twenty shops of laundresses or washers, being people of a base condition; to whom the citizens that haue not maids of their owne, carrie their shirtes and other fowle linnen, which after few daies are restored vnto them so cleane and white as it is woonderfull. These laundresses haue diuers shops adioining together in the same place: but here and there throughout the citie are about two hundred families of such persons. Next vnto the laundresses are those that make trees for saddles; who dwell likewise in great numbers eastwarde right in the way to the college founded by king *Abuhinan*. Vpon these adioine about fortie shops of such as work stirrops, spurres, and bridles, so artificially, as I thinke the like are not to be seene in Europe. Next standeth their street, that first rudely make the said stirrops, bridles, and spurres. From thence you may go into the street of saddlers, which couer the saddles before mentioned threefold with most excellent leather: the best leather they lay vppermost, and the woorst beneath, and that with notable workmanship; as may be seene in most places of Italie. And of them there are more then an hundred shops. Then follow their long shops that make pikes and launces. Next standeth a rocke or mount, hauing two walks thereupon; the one whereof leadeth to the east gate, and the other to one of the kings pallaces, where the kings sisters, or some other of his kinred are vsually kept. But this is by the way to be noted, that all the foresaid shops or market begin at the great temple: howbeit, that I might not inuert my set-order, I haue onely described those places that are round about the said temple, minding last of all to speake of the merchants station or burse.

*Of the station or burse of merchants in Fez.*

**T**His burse you may well call a citie, which being walled round about hath twelue gates, & before euery gate an iron chaine, to keepe horses & cartes from comming in. The said burse is diuided into 12. seuerall wards or partes: two whereof are allotted vnto such shoemakers as make shooes onely for noblemen and gentlemen, and two also to silke-merchants or haberdashers, that sell ribands, garters, skarfes, and such other like ornaments; and of these there are about fiftie shops. Others there are that sell silke onely for the embrodering of shirtes, cushions, and other such furniture made of cloth, possessing almost as many shops as the former. Then follow those that make womens girdles of course wooll (which some make of silke)

M 2

but



but very grossely, for I thinke they are moe then two fingers thicke, so that they may serue almost for cables to a ship. Next vnto these girdlers are such as sell woollen and linnen cloth brought out of Europe: which haue also silke-stuffes, caps, and other like commodities to sell. Having passed these, you come to them that sell mats, mattresses, cushions, and other things made of leather. Next adioineth the customers office; for their cloth is sent about by certaine criers to be solde, who before they can passe, must goe to the customers to haue the said cloth sealed, and to pay toll vnto the customers. Criers here are, to the number of sixtie, which for the crying of euery cloth haue one \* Liardo allowed them. Next of all dwell the tailors, and that in three seuerall streetes. Then come you to the linnen-drapers, which sell smocks and other apparell for women: and these are accounted the richest merchants in all Fez, for their wares are the most gainfull of all others. Next vnto these are certaine woollen garments to be sold, made of such cloth as is brought thither out of Europe. Euery afternoone cloth is sold in this place by the criers, which is lawfull for any man to doe, when necessarie occasion vrgeth him. Last of all is that place where they vse to sell wrought shirts, towels, and other embroidered works; as also where carpets, beds, and blankets are to be sold.

*The reason why this part of the citie was called Casaria.*

**T**He foresaid burse or station of merchants was in times past called Casaria, according to the name of that renowned conquerour *Iulius Caesar*: the reason whereof some affirme to be; because all the cities of Barbarie were in those daies first subiect to the Romans, and then to the Goths. And each citie alwaies had either Romans or Goths to receiue and take charge of the tribute. Howbeit because the people often made ciuill wars and assaults vpon them, their determination was in euery citie to build some strong walled place, where both the tribute and the principall goods of the citizens might remaine in safetie: hoping by this meanes that the citizens would be as carefull of the princes goods as of their owne. Which course had the Italians imitated, they had neuer beene spoiled so often of their goods. For in ciuill wars it many times befalleth, that the greedie soldiers not being satisfied with the enemies goods, will prey vpon the wealth of their friendes.

*Of the grocers, apothecaries, and other tradesmen, and artizans of Fez.*

**N**Ext vnto the said burse, on the north side, in a streight lane, stand an hundred and fiftie grocers and apothecaries shops, which are fortified on both sides with two strong gates. These shops are garded in the night season by certaine hired and armed watchmen, which keepe their station with

with lanternes and mastiues. The said apothecaries can make neither syrups, ointments, nor electuaries: but such things are made at home by the phisitions, and are of them to be bought. The phisitions houses adioine for the most part vnto the apothecaries: howbeit very few of the people knowe either the phisition or the vse of his phisicke. The shops here are so artificially built and adorned, that the like (I thinke) are no where else to be found. Being in Tauris a citie of Persia, I remember that I saw diuers stately shops curiously built vnder certaine galleries, but very darke, so that (in my iudgement) they be far inferiour vnto the shops of Fez. Next the apothecaries are certaine artificers that make combes of boxe and other wood. Eastward of the apothecaries dwell the needle-makers, possessing to the number of fiftie shops. Then follow those that turne iuorie, and such other matter, who (because their craft is practised by some other artizans) are but few in number. Vnto the turners adioine certaine that sell meale, sope, & brooms: who dwelling next vnto the threed-market beforementioned, are scarce twenty shops in all: for the residue are dispersed in other places of the citie, as we will hereafter declare. Amongst the cotton-merchants are certaine that sell ornaments for tents, and beds. Next of all stand the fowlers, who, though they be but few, yet are they stored with all kinde of choise and dainties fowles: whereupon the place is called the fowlers market. Then come you to their shops that sell cords and ropes of hempe: and then to such as make high corke-slippers for noblemen and gentlemen to walke the streetes in, when it is fowle weather: these corke-slippers are finely trimmed with much silke, and most excellent vpper leathers, so that the cheapest will cost a duckat, yea some there are of ten duckats, and some of five and twentie duckats price. Such slippers as are accounted most fine and costly are made of blacke and white mulberie-tree, of blacke walnut-tree, and of the Iujubatre, albeit the corke-slippers are the most durable and strong. Vnto these adioine ten shops of Spanish Moores, which make crosse-bowes: as also those that make broomes of a certaine wilde palme-tree, such as are daily brought out of Sicilie to Rome. These broomes they carrie about the citie in a great basket, either selling them, or exchanging them for bran, ashes, or olde shooes: the bran they sell againe to shepherds, the ashes to such as white threed; & the old shooes to cobblers. Next vnto them are smithes that make nails; & coopers which make certaine great vessels in forme of a bucket, hauing corne-measures to sell also: which measures, when the officer, appointed for the same purpose, hath made triall of, he is to receiue a farthing apiece for his fee. Then follow the wooll-chapmen, who hauing bought wooll of the butchers, put it forth vnto others to be scowred and washed: the sheepe-skins they themselves dresse: but as for ox-hides they belong to another occupation, and are tanned in another place. Vnto these adioine such as make certaine langols or withs, which the Africans put vpon their horses feete. Next of all are the braziers; then such as make weights and measures; and those likewise that make instruments to carde

wooll or flaxe. At length you descend into a long streete; where men of diuers occupations dwell together, some of which doe polish and enamell stirrups, spurres, and other such commodities, as they receiue from the smithes roughly and rudely hammered. Next whom dwell certaine cartwrights, plow-wrights, mill-wrights, and of other like occupations. Diers haue their aboad by the riuers side, and haue each of them a most cleere fountaine or cesterne, to wash their silke-stuffes in.ouer against the diers dwell makers of bulwarkes or trenches, in a very large place, which being planted with shadie mulberie-trees is exceeding pleasant in the summer-time. Next them are a companie of farriers, that shooe mules and horses: and then those that make the iron-woke of crosse-bowes. Then followe smithes that make horse-shooes; and last of all those that white linnen-cloth: and here the west part of the citie endeth, which in times past (as is aforesaid) was a citie by it selfe, and was built after the citie on the east side of the riuier.

*A description of the second part of Fez.*

**T**He second part of Fez situate eastward, is beautified with most stately palaces, temples, houses, and colleges; albeit there are not so many trades and occupations as in the part before described. For here are neither merchants, tailors, shoemakers, &c. but of the meaner sort. Here are notwithstanding thirtie shops of grocers. Neere vnto the walles dwell certaine bricke-burners and potters: and not far from thence is a great market of white earthen vessels, platters, cups, and dishes. Next of all standes the come-market, wherein are diuers granaries to lay vp come. ouer against the great temple there is a broad street paved with brick, round about which diuers handy-crafts and occupations are exercised. There are likewise many other trades diuersly dispersed ouer this east part of the citie. The drapers and grocers haue certaine peculiar places allotted vnto them. In this east part of Fez likewise there are five hundred and twenty weauers houses, very stately and sumptuously built: hauing in each of them many worke-houses and loomes, which yeeld great rent vnto the owners. Weauers there are (by report) in this citie twenty thousand, and as many millers. Moreouer in this part of Fez are an hundred shops for the whiting of threed; the principall whereof being situate vpon the riuier, are exceedingly well furnished with kettles, cauldrons, and other such vessels: here are likewise many great houses to saw wood in, which worke is performed by Christian captiues, and whatsoeuer wages they earne, redoundeth vnto their Lordes and masters. These Christian captiues are not suffered to rest from their labours, but only vpon fridaies, and vpon eight feuerall daies of the yeere besides, whereon the Moores feastes are solemnized. Here also are the common stews for harlots, which are fauoured by great men, and sometime by the cheefe gouernours of the citie. Likewise there are certaine vintners, who are freely permitted to keepe harlots, and to take filthie hire for them. Here are also

moe

moe then fixe hundred cleere fountaines walled round about and most charily kept, euery one of which is feuerally conueied by certaine pipes vnto each house, temple, college, and hospitall: and this fountaine-water is accounted the best: for that which commeth out of the riuier is in summer oftentimes dried vp: as likewise when the conducts are to be cleansed, the course of the riuier must of necessitie be turned out of the citie. Wherefore euery familie vseth to fetch water out of the said fountaines, and albeit in summer-time the cheefe gentlemen vse riuier-water, yet they will often call for fountaine-water, because it is more coole and pleasant in taste. But in the spring-time it is nothing so. These fountaines haue their originall for the most part from the west and south, for the north part is all full of mountains and marble-rocks, containing certaine caues or cels, wherein corne may be kept for many yeeres; of which caues some are so large, that they will holde two hundred bushels of corne. The citizens dwelling neere those caues, and such as possesse them, do sufficiently maintaine themselues in taking yeerely euery hundred bushell for rent. The south part of east Fez is almost halfe destitute of inhabitants: howbeit the gardens abound with fruites and flowers of all sortes. Euery garden hath an house belonging thereunto, and a christall-fountaine enuironed with roses and other odoriferous flowers and herbes; so that in the spring-time a man may both satisfie his cies, and solace his minde in visiting this part of the citie: and well it may be called a Paradise, sithence the noblemen doe here reside from the moneth of April till the end of September. Westward, that is, toward the kings palace, standeth a castle built by a king of the Luntune-familie, resembling in bignes an whole towne: wherein the kings of Fez, before the said palace was built, kept their royal residence. But after new Fez began to be built by the Marinings, the said castle was left onely to the gouernour of the citie. Within this castle standes a stately temple built (as aforesaid) what time it was inhabited by princes and nobles, many places being afterward defaced and turned into gardens: howbeit certaine houses were left vnto the gouernour, partly to dwell in, and partly for the deciding of controuerfies. Here is likewise a certaine prison for captiues supported with many pillars, and being so large, that it will hold (as diuers are of opinion) three thousand men. Neither are there any feuerall roomes in this prison: for at Fez one prison serueth for all. By this castle runneth a certaine riuier very commodious for the gouernour.

*Of the magistrates, the administration of iustice, and of the apparell used in Fez.*

**I**N the citie of Fez are certaine particular iudges and magistrates: and there is a gouernour that defineth ciuill controuerfies, and giueth sentence against malefactors. Likewise there is a iudge of the canon law, who hath to doe with all matters concerning the Mahumetan religion. A third iudge

iudge there is also that dealeth about marriages and diuorcements; whose authoritie is to heare all witnesses, and to giue sentence accordingly. Next vnto them is the high aduocate, vnto whom they appeale from the sentence of the saide iudges, when as they doe either mistake themselves, or doe ground their sentence vpon the authoritie of some inferiour doctor. The gouernour gaineth a great summe of money by condemning of parties at feuerall times. Their manner of proceeding against a malefactor is this: hauing giuen him an hundred or two hundred stripes before the gouernour, the executioner putteth an iron-chaine about his necke, and so lea-  
 deth him starke-naked (his priuities onely excepted) through all partes of the citie: after the executioner followes a sergeant, declaring vnto all the people what fact the guiltie person hath committed, till at length hauing put on his apparell againe, they carrie him backe to prison. Sometimes it falleth out that many offenders chained together are led about the citie: and the gouernour for each malefactor thus punished; receiue one duckat and one fourth part; and likewise at their first entrance into the saile, he demaunds of each one a certaine dutie, which is paid particularly vnto him by diuers merchants and artificers appointed of purpose. And amongst his other liuings, he gathereth out of a certaine mountaine seuen thousand duckats of yeerely reuenue: so that when occasion serueth, he is at his proper costs to finde the king of Fez three hundred horses, and to giue them their pay. Those which follow the canon-lawe haue neither stipend nor rewarde allowed them: for it is forbidden by the law of Mahumet, that the iudges of his religion should reape any commoditie or fees by their office; but that they shoulde liue onely by reading of lectures, and by their priesthood. In this facultie are many aduocates and proctors, which are extreme idio-  
 tes, and vterly voide of all good learning. There is a place also in Fez whereinto the iudges vse to cast the citizens, for debt, or for some light offence. In all this citie are fower officers or sergeants onely; who from midnight till two a clocke in the morning doe walke about all partes of the citie; neither haue they any stipend, but a certaine fee of such malefactors as they lead about in chaines, according to the qualitie of euery mans crime; more-  
 ouer, they are freely permitted to sell wine, and to keepe harlots. The saide gouernour hath neither scribes nor notaries, but pronounceth all sentences by word of mouth. One onely there is that gathereth customes and tributes ouer all the citie, who daily paieth to the kings vse thirtie duckats. This man appointeth certaine substitutes to watch at euery gate, where nothing, be it of neuer so small value, can passe before some tribute be paid. Yea sometime they goe forth of the citie to meete with the carriers and muliters vpon the high waies, to the end they may not conceale nor closely conuey any merchandize into the citie. And if they be taken in any deceite, they pay double. The set order or proportion of their custome is this, namely to pay two duckats for the woorth of an hundred: for Onix-stones, which are brought hither in great plentie, they pay one fourth part: but for wood,  
 come,

come, oxen, and hennes, they giue nothing at all. Neither at the entring of the citie doe they pay any tribute for rammes, but at the shambles they giue two \* Liardos apeece, and to the gouernour of the shambles one. \* *Or Eaiochi.* The saide gouernour of the shambles hath alwaies twelue men waiting vpon him, and oftentimes he rideth about the citie to examine the weight of bread, and finding any bread to faile of the due waight, he causeth the baker to be beaten with cudgels, and to be led in contempt vp and downe the citie. The saide office was woont to be allotted vnto men of singular honestie; but now adaies euery ignorant and lewd person enioieth it. The citizens of Fez goe very ciuilly and decently attired, in the spring-time wearing garments made of outlandish cloth: ouer these shirtes they weare a iacket or cassocke being narrow and halfe-sleeued, whereupon they weare a certaine wide garment, close before on the breast. Their caps are thinne and single, like vnto the night-caps vsed in Italie, sauing that they couer not their eares: these caps are couered with a certaine skarfe, which being twise wreathed about their head and beard, hangeth by a knot. They weare neither hose nor breeches, but in the spring-time when they ride a iourney they put on bootes: many the poorer sort haue onely their cassocke, and a mantle ouer that called \* Barnussi, and a most course cap. The doctors and ancient  
 gentlemen weare a certaine garment with wide sleeues, somewhat like to the gentlemen of Venice. The common sort of people are for the most part clad in a kinde of course white cloth. The women are not altogether vn-  
 seemely apparelled, but in sommer-time they weare nothing saue their smocks onely. In winter they weare such a wide sleeued garment, being close at the breast, as that of the men before mentioned. When they goe abroad, they put on certaine long breeches, wherewith their legs are all couered, hauing also, after the fashion of Syria, a vaile hanging downe from their heads, which couereth their whole bodies. On their faces likewise they weare a maske with two little holes onely for their eies, to peepe out at. Their eares they adorne with golden eare-rings & with most pretious iewels: the meaner sort weare eare-rings of siluer and gilt only. Vpon their armes the ladies and gentlewomen weare golden bracelets, and the residue siluer, as likewise gold or siluer-rings vpon their legs, according to each ones estate and abilitie.

*Of their manner of eating and drinking.*

**L** Et vs now speake somewhat of their victuals and manner of eating. The common sort set on the pot with fresh meat twise euery weeke: but the gentlemen and richer sort euery day, and as often as they list. They take three meales a day: their breakefast consisteth of certaine fruits and bread, or else of a kinde of liquid pap made like vnto frumentie: in winter they sup off the broth of salt flesh thickened with course meale. To dinner they haue flesh, fallers, cheefe, and oliues: but in summer they haue greater cheere. Their supper is easie of digestion, consisting of bread, melons, grapes, or milke:

*A kinde of  
meate called  
Cuscusu.*

milke: but in winter they haue sodden flesh, together with a kinde of meate called Cuscusu, which being made of a lumpe of dowe is set first vpon the fire in certaine vessels full of holes, and afterwarde is tempered with butter and pottage. Some also vse often to haue roste-meat. And thus you see after what sort both the gentlemen & common people lead their liues: albeit the noblemen fare somewhat more daintily: but if you compare them with the noblemen and gentlemen of Europe, they may seeme to be miserable and base fellowes; not for any want or scarcitie of victuals, but for want of good manners and cleanlines. The table whereat they sit is lowe, vncovered, and filthie: seats they haue none but the bare ground, neither kniues or spoones but only their ten talons. The said Cuscusu is set before them all in one only platter, whereout as well gentlemen as others take it not with spoones, but with their clawes fne. The meat & pottage is putal in one dish; out of which euery one raketh with his greasie fists what he thinks good: you shall neuer see knife vpon the table, but they teare and greedily deuoure their meate like hungrie dogs. Neither doth any of them desire to drinke before he hath well stuffed his panch; and then will he sup off a cup of cold water as big as a milke-bowle. The doctors indeede are somewhat more orderly at meales: but, to tell you the very truth, in all Italie there is no gentleman so meane, which for fine diet and stately furniture excellerh not the greatest potentates and lords of all Africa.

*The manner of solemnizing mariages.*

**A**S touching their mariages, they obserue these courses following. So soone as the maides father hath espoused her vnto her louer, they goe forthwith like bride and bridegroome to church, accompanied with their parents and kinsfolkes, and call likewise two notaries with them to make record before all that are present of the couenants and dowrie. The meaner sort of people vsually giue for their daughters dowrie thirtie duckats and a woman-slave of fiftene duckats price; as likewise a partie-coloured garment embrodered with silke, and certaine other silke skarfs or iags, to weare vpon her head in stead of a hood or vaile; then a paire of fine shooes, and two excellent paire of startups; and lastly many pretie knackes curiously made of siluer and other metals, as namely combes, perfuming-pans, bellowes, and such other trinkets as women haue in estimation. Which being done, all the guests present are inuited to a banquet, wheretunto for great dainties is brought a kinde of bread fried and tempered with honie, which wee haue before described; then they bring roste-meate to the boord, all this being at the bridegroomes cost: afterward the brides father maketh a banquet in like sort. Vho if he bestow on his daughter some apparell besides her dowrie, it is accounted a point of liberalitie. And albeit the father promisseth but thirtie duckats onely for a dowrie, yet will he sometimes bestow, in apparell and other ornaments belonging to women, two hundred, yea sometimes

times three hundred duckats besides. But they seldome giue an house, a vineyarde, or a field for a dowrie. Moreouer vpon the bride they bestowe three gownes made of costly cloth; and three others of silke chamlet, or of some other excellent stuffe. They giue her smockes likewise curiously wrought, with fine vailes, and other embrodered vestures; as also pillowes and cushions of the best sort. And besides all the former giftes, they bestow eight carpets or couerlets on the bride, fower whereof are onely for seemelines to spread vpon their presses and cupboords: two of the courser they vse for their beds; and the other two of leather, to lay vpon the floore of their bed-chambers. Also they haue certaine rugs of about twenty elles compasse or length; as likewise three quilts being made of linnen and woollen on the one side, and stuffed with flockes on the other side, which they vse in the night in manner following. VWith the one halfe they couer themselues, and the other halfe they lay vnder them: which they may easily doe, when as they are both waies about ten elles long. Vnto the former they adde as many couerlets of silke very curiously embrodered on the vpper side, and beneath lined double with linnen and cotton. They bestow likewise white couerlets to vse in summer-time onely: and lastly they bestow a woollen hanging diuided into many partes, and finely wrought, as namely with certaine peeces of gilt leather; whereupon they sowe iags of partie-coloured silke, and vpon euery iag a little ball or button of silke, whereby the saide hanging may for ornaments sake be fastened vnto a wall. Here you see what be the appurtenances of their dowries; wherein some doe striue so much to excell others, that oftentimes many gentlemen haue brought themselues vnto pouertie thereby. Some Italians thinke that the husband bestowes a dowrie vpon his wife; but they altogether mistake the matter. The bridegroome being ready to carrie home his bride, causeth her to be placed in a wooden cage or cabinet eight-square, couered with silke, in which she is carried by porters, her parents and kinsfolkes following, with a great noise of trumpets, pipes, and drums, and with a number of torches; the bridegroomes kinsmen goe before with torches, and the brides kinsfolkes followe after: and so they goe vnto the great market place, and hauing passed by the temple, the bridegroome takes his leaue of his father in lawe and the rest, hying him home with all speed, and in his chamber expecting the presence of his spouse. The father, brother, and vncl of the bride lead her vnto the chamber-doore, and there deliuer her with one consent vnto the mother of the bridegroome: who, as soone as she is entred, toucheth her foote with his, and forthwith they depart into a seuerall roome by themselues. In the meane season the banquet is comming forth: and a certaine woman standeth before the bride-chamber doore, expecting till the bridegroome hauing defloured his bride reacheth her a napkin stained with blood, which napkin she carrieth incontinent and sheweth to the guesstes, proclaiming with a lowd voice, that the bride was euer till that time an vnspotted and pure virgine. This woman together with other women her companions, first the parents of the bridegroome



groome and then of the bride doe honourably entertaine. But if the bride be found not to be a virgine, the mariage is made frustrate, and she with great disgrace is turned home to her parents. At complete mariages they make for the most part three bankets: the first the same day when the bride-groome and bride are ioined in wedlocke; the second the day following for women onely; and the third seuen daies after; whereat all the kinsfolks and friends of the bride are present; and this day the brides father, according to his abilitie, sendes great store of daintie dishes vnto his sonne in lawe: but so soone as the new married man goeth forth of the house (which is for the most part on the seuenth day after the mariage) he buieth great plentie of fishes, which he causeth his mother or some other woman to cast vpon his wiues feete; and this they, from an ancient superstitious custome, take for a good boading. Likewise at the bridegroomes fathers they vse to make two other feasts; the one vpon the day before the bride is married; and so that night they spend in dauncing and disport. The morrow after a companie of women goe to dresse the bride, to combe her locks, and to paint her cheekes with vermillion; her hands and her feete they die blacke, but all this painting presently looseth the fresh hew; and this day they haue another banquet. The bride they place in the highest roome that she may be seene of all, and then those that dressed the bride are condignely entertained. Being come to the bridegroomes house, his parents salute the new bride with certaine great cups full of new wine and cakes, with other iuncats, (which wee wil here passe ouer in silence) all which are bestowed vpon the bridegroomes companions. The same night which we said was spent in dauncing, which are present at the bridall-house certaine minstrels and fingers, which by turnes sometimes vse their instruments and sometimes voice-musicke: they daunce alwaies one by one, and at the end of each galliard they bestow a largesse vpon the musitions. If any one wil honour the dancer, he bids him kneele downe before him, and hauing fastened peeces of money all ouer his face, the musitions presently take it off for their fee. The women daunce alone without any men, at the noise of their owne musitions. All these things vse to be performed when the bride is a maide. But the mariages of widowes are concluded with lesse adoe. Their cheere is boiled beefe and mutton, and stued hens, with diuers iuncating dishes among. In stead of trenchers, the gueses being ten or twelue in number, haue so many great round platters of wood set before them. And this is the common custome of gentlemen and merchants. The meaner sort present their gueses with certaine sops or bruesse of bread like vnto a pan-cake, which being dipped in flesh-pottage, they eate out of a great platter not with spoones but with their fingers onely: and round about each great platter stand to the number of ten or twelue persons. Likewise they make a solemne feast at the circumcision of their male children, which is vpon the seuenth day after their birth; and at this feast the circumciser, together with all their friends and kinsfolks is present: which being done, each one, according to his abilitie, bestoweth

The marriage  
of widowes.

The circumci-  
sion of their  
children.

a gift vpon the circumciser in manner following. Euery man laies his money vpon a lads face which the circumciser brought with him. Whereupon the lad calling euery one by his name, giueth them thanks in particular: and then the infant being circumcised, they spend that day with as great iollitie as a day of mariage. But at the birth of a daughter they shew not so much alacritie.

Of their rites obserued vpon festiuall daies, and their manner  
of mourning for the dead.



Mong the people of Fez there haue remained certaine reliques of festiuall daies instituted of olde by the Christians; whereupon they vse certaine ceremonies which themselves vnderstande not. Vpon Christmas euen they eate a faller made of diuers herbs: they seeth likewise that night all kind of pulse, which they feede vpon for great dainties. Vpon New-yeeres day the children goe with maskes and vizards on their faces to the houses of gentlemen and merchants, and haue fruits giuen them for singing certaine carols or songs. When as the feast of Saint John Baptist is hallowed among Christians, you shall here see all about great store of fires made with straw. And when their childrens teeth begin to grow, they make another feast called, according to the Latines, *Dentilla*. They haue also many other rites and customes of diuining or soothsaying, the like wherof I haue seene at Rome and in other cities of Italie. As touching their feasts prescribed by the Mahumetan lawe, they are at large set downe in that brieft treatise which we haue written concerning the same law. The women hauing by death lost their husbands, fathers, or any other of their deere friends, assemble forthwith a great multitude of their owne sexe together, who stripping themselves out of their owne attire, put on most vile sackcloth, and defile their faces with much durt: then call they certaine men clad in womens attire, bringing great fower-square drums with them; at the noise of which drums the women-mourners sing a funerall song, tending as much as may be, to the commendation of the partie deceased: and at the end of euery verse, the said womē vtter most hideous shrieks & outcries, tearing their haire, & with much lamentation beating their cheekes & breasts, till they be all-imbrued with blood: and so these heathenish superstitions continue for seuen whole daies together. At which seuen daies ende they surcease their mourning for the space of 40 daies, & then they begin anew to torment themselves for three daies together in maner aforesaid: howbeit these kinds of obsequies are obserued onely by the baser people, but the gentlemen and better sort behaue themselves more modestly. At this time all the widowes friends come about her to comfort her, and send diuers kinds of meats vnto her: for in the mourning house they may dresse no meate at all, till the dead corpes be carried forth. The woman herselfe that looseth her husband, father, or brother,

N r

neuer

neuer goeth forth with the funerall. But how they wash and burie the dead corpses, and what superstitions they vse thereabout, you shall finde recorded in my little treatise about mentioned.

*Of their done-houses.*

**D**iuers there are in this citie, that take much pleasure in keeping of doves, which are here in great plentie, of all colours. These doves they keepe in certaine cages or lockers on the tops of their houses, which lockers they set open twise a day, to wit, morning and euening, delighting greatly to see them flie, for those that out-flie the residue are accounted the best. Oftentimes it falleth out, that neighbours doves will be mingled together, for which cause you shall see the owners goe together by the eares. Some haue a certaine net bound vnto two long canes, wherewith they vse to take their neighbours doves, as they come flying forth of their louers. Amongst the colliers you shall find seuen or eight shops onely of those that sel doves.

*Their manner of gaming at Fez.*

**T**He citizens vse most of all to play at chesse, and that from ancient times. Other games there are also, but very rude, and vsed onely by the common people. At certaine times of the yeere the boies of one street wil fight with clubs against the boies of another street, and that sometimes with so great furie, that they betake themselves to other weapons and slay one another, especially vpon their festiuall daies, what time they will challenge and prouoke one another forth of the citie-walles. And hauing fought hard all the whole day, at night they fall to throwing of stones: till at length the citie-officers come vpon them, taking some, and beating them publicly throughout the citie. Sometimes it falleth out, that the yong striplings arming themselves, and going by night out of the citie, range vp and downe the fields and gardens: and if the contrarie faction of yoonkers and they meete, it is woonderfull what a bloodie skirmish ensueth: howbeit they are often most seuerely punished for it.

*Of the African poets.*

**I**N Fez there are diuers most excellent poets, which make verses in their owne mother toong. Most of their poems and songs intreat of loue. Every yeere they pen certaine verses in the commendation of Mahumet, especially vpon his birth-day: for then betimes in the morning they resort vnto the palace of the chiefe iudge or gouernour, ascending his tribunall-seate, and from thence reading their verses to a great audience of people: and hee whose verses are most elegane and pithie, is that yeere proclaimed prince of the

*Rewards for  
poets in Fez.*

the poets. But when as the kings of the Marin-familie prospered, they vsed to inuite all the learned men of the citie vnto their palace; and honourably entertaining them, they commanded each man in their hearing to recite their verses to the commendation of Mahumet: and he that was in all mens opinions esteemed the best poet, was rewarded by the king with an hundred duckats, with an excellent horse, with a woman-slave, and with the kings owne robes wherewith he was then apparelled: all the rest had fiftie duckats apiece giuen them, so that none departed without the kings liberalitie: but an hundred and thirtie yeeres are expired since this custome, together with the maiestie of the Fessan kingdome, decayed.

*A description of the grammar-schools in Fez.*



**F** schooles in Fez for the instructing of children, there are almost two hundred, euery one of which is in fashion like a great hall. The schoolemasters teach their children to write and read not out of a booke, but out of a certaine great table. Euery day they expound one sentence of the Alcoran: and hauing red quite through they begin it againe, repeating it so often, til they haue most firmly committed the same to memorie: which they doe right well in the space of 7. yeeres. Then read they vnto their scholers some part of orthographie: howbeit both this and the other parts of Grammar are far more exactly taught in the colleges, then in these triuiall schooles. The said schoolemasters are allowed a very small stipend; but when their boies haue learned some part of the Alcoran, they present certaine gifts vnto their master, according to each ones abilitie. Afterward so soon as any boy hath perfectly learned the whole Alcaron, his father inuitheth all his sonnes schoole-fellowes vnto a great banket: and his sonne in costly apparell rides through the street vpon a gallant horse, which horse and apparell the gouernour of the royall citadell is bound to lend him. The rest of his schoole-fellowes being mounted likewise on horse-backe accompany him to the banketing house, singing diuers songs to the praise of God and of Mahumet. Then are they brought to a most sumptuous banket, whereat all the kinsfolkes of the foresaid boyes father are vsually present: euery one of whom bestoweth on the schoolemaster some small gift, and the boyes father giues him a new sure of apparell. The said scholers likewise vse to celebrate a feast vpon the birth-day of Mahumet, and then their fathers are bound to send each man a torch vnto the schoole: whereupon euery boy carrieth a torch in his hand, some of which waigh thirty pound. These torches are most curiously made, being adorned round about with diuers fruits of waxe, which being lighted betimes in the morning doe burne till sun-rise, in the meane while certaine fingers resound the praises of Mahumet, and so soone as the sunne is vp, all their solemnitie ceaseth: this day vseth to be very gainfull vnto the schoolemasters, for they sell the remnant of the waxe vpon the torches for an hundred

dred duckats, and sometimes for more. None of them paies any rent for his schoole: for all their schooles were built many yeeres agoe, and were freely bestowed for the training vp of youth. Whatsoever ornaments or toys are vpon the torches, the schoolemasters diuide them among their scholers and among the singers. Both in these common schooles and also in the colleges they haue two daies of recreation every weeke, wherein they neither teach nor studie.

*Of the fortune-tellers and some other artizans in Fez.*

Three sorts of  
diuiners in  
Fez.

WE haue said nothing as yet of the leather-dressers, who haue diuers mansions by the riuers side, paying for euery skin an halfe peny custome, which amounteth yeerely almost vnto three hundred duckats. Here are likewise chirurgions & barbers, whom, because they are so few, I thought not to haue mentioned in this place. Now let vs speake of the fortune-tellers and diuiners, of whom there is a great number, and three kindes. For one sort vseth certaine Geomanticall figures. Others powring a drop of oile into a viall or glasse of water, make the saide water to bee transparent and bright, wherein, as it were in a mirrour, they affirme that they see huge swarmes of diuels that resemble an whole armie, some whereof are traueling, some are passing ouer a riuer, and others fighting a land-battell, whom when the diuiner seeth at quiet, he demandeth such questions of them as he is desirous to be resolued of: and the diuels giue them answers with beckning, or with some gesture of their hands or eies: so inconsiderate and damnable is their credulitie in this behalfe. The foresaid glasse-viall they will deliuer into childrens hands scarce of eight yeeres old, of whom they will aske whether they see this or that diuell. Many of the citie are so befotted with these vanities, that they spend great summes vpon them. The third kinde of diuiners are women-witches, which are affirmed to haue familiaritie with diuels: some diuels they call red, some white, and some blacke diuels: and when they will tell any mans fortune, they perfume themselves with certaine odours, saying, that then they possesse themselves with that diuell which they called for: afterward changing their voice, they faine the diuell to speake within them: then they which come to enquire, ought with great feare & trembling aske these vile & abominable witches such questions as they meane to propound, and lastly offering some fee vnto the diuell, they depart. But the wiser and honestest sort of people call these women *Sahaaat*, which in Latin signifieth *Fricatrices*, because they haue a damnable custome to commit vnlawfull Venerie among themselves, which I cannot expresse in any modester termes. If faire women come vnto them at any time, these abominable witches will burne in lust towards them no otherwise then lustie yoonkers doe towards yoong maides, and will in the diuels behalfe demaunde for a rewarde, that they may lie with them: and so by this meanes it often falleth out, that thinking thereby to fulfill the diuels command

command they lie with the witches. Yea some there are, which being allured with the delight of this abominable vice, will desire the companie of these witches, and faining themselves to be sicke, will either call one of the witches home to them, or will send their husbands for the same purpose: and so the witches perceiuing how the matter stands, will say that the woman is possessed with a diuell, and that she can no way be cured, vnlesse she be admitted into their societie. With these words her silly husband being persuaded, doth not onely permit her so to doe, but makes also a sumptuous banquet vnto the damned crew of witches: which being done, they vse to daunce very strangely at the noise of drums: and so the poore man commits his false wife to their filthie disposition. Howbeit some there are that will soone coniure the diuell with a good cudgell out of their wiues: others faining themselves to be possessed with a diuell, wil deceiue the said witches, as their wiues haue been deceiued by them.

*Of the coniurers, inchanters, and iuglers in Fez.*

IN Fez likewise there are a kinde of iuglers or coniurers called *Muhazimin*: who of all others are reported to be most speedie casters out of diuels. And because their Necromancie sometimes taketh effect, it is a wonder to see into what reputation they grow thereby: but when they cannot cast forth a diuell, they say it is an aerie spirite. Their manner of adiuring diuels is this: first they drawe certaine characters and circles vpon an asheape or some other place; then describe they certaine signes vpon the hands and forehead of the partie possessed, and perfume him after a strange kinde of manner. Afterward they make their inchantment or coniuration; enquiring of the diuell, which way or by what meanes he entred the partie, as likewise what he is, and by what name he is called, and lastly charging him to come forth. Others there are that worke by a certaine Cabalisticall rule called *Zaragita*: this rule is contained in many writings, for it is thought to be naturall magique: neither are there any other Necromancers in all Fez, that will more certainly and truly resolue a doubtfull question; howbeit their arte is exceeding difficult: for the students thereof must haue as great skill in Astrologie, as in Cabala. My selfe in times past hauing attained to some knowledge in this facultie, continued (I remember) an whole day in describing one figure onely: which kinde of figures are described in manner following. First they draw many circles within the compasse of a great circle: in the first circle they make a crosse, at the fower extremities whereof they set downe the fower quarters of the world, to wit, East, West, North, and South: at each end of one of the said crosse lines, they note either pole: likewise about the circumference of the first circle, they paint the fower elements: then diuide they the same circle and the circle following into fower partes: and euery fourth part they diuide into other seuen, each one being distinguished with certaine great Arabian characters, so that

euery element containeth eight and twentie characters. In the third circle they set downe the seven planets; in the fourth the twelue signes of the Zodiacke; in the fift the twelue Latine names of the moneths; in the sixt the eight and twentie houses of the moone; in the seventh the 365. daies of the yeere, and about the conuexitie thereof, the fower cardinall or principall windes. Then take they one onely letter of the question propounded, multiplying the same by all the particulars aforesaid, & the product or summe totall they diuide after a certaine manner, placing it in some roome, according to the qualitie of the character, and as the element requireth wherein the said character is found without a figure. All which being done, they make that figure which seemeth to agree with the foresaid number or sum produced, wherewith they proceed as they did with the former, till they haue found eight and twentie characters, whereof they make one word, and of this word the speech is made that resoluerth the question demanded: this speech is alwaies turned into a verse of the first kinde, which the Arabians call *Ethauil*, consisting of eight *Stripites* and twelue *Chordi*, according to the meeter of the Arabian toong, whereof we haue intreated in the last part of our Arabian grammar. And the verse consisting of those characters, comprehendeth alwaies a true and infallible answer vnto the question propounded, resolving first that which is demanded, and then expounding the sense of the question it selfe. These practitioners are neuer found to erre, which causeth their arte of Cabala to be had in great admiration: which although it be accounted naturall, yet neuer saw I any thing that hath more affinitie with supernaturall and diuine knowledge. I remember that I saw in a certaine open place of king *Abuluman* his college in Fez, vpon a floore paved with excellent smooth marble, the description of a figure. Each side of this floore or court was fiftie elles long, and yet two third parts thereof were occupied about the figure, and about the things pertaining thereto: three there were that made the description, euery one attending his appointed place, and they were an whole day in setting it downe. Another such figure I saw at Tunis, drawn by one that was maruellous cunning in the arte, whose father had written two volumes of commentaries or expositions vpon the precepts of the same arte, wherein whosoever hath exact skill, is most highly esteemed of by all men. I my selfe neuer sawe but three of this profession, namely one at Tunis, and two other at Fez: likewise I haue seene two expositions vpon the precepts of the said arte, together with a commentarie of one *Margian* father vnto the foresaid Cabalist which I sawe at Tunis: and another written by *Ibnu Caldin* the historiographer. And if any were desirous to see the precepts and commentaries of that arte, he might doe it with the expence of fiftie duckats: for sailing to Tunis a towne neere vnto Italie, he might haue a sight of all the particulars aforesaid. I my selfe had fit oportunitie of time, and a teacher that offered to instruct me gratis in the same arte: howbeit I thought good not to accept his offer, because the said arte is forbidden and accounted hereticall by the law of Mahumet: for Mahumets

An Arabian  
grammar writ-  
ten by Iohn Leo.

Diuination and  
soothsaying  
forbidden by  
the lawe of  
Mahumet.

law affirmeth all kinde of diuinations to be vaine, and that God onely knoweth secrets and things to come: wherefore sometimes the saide Cabalists are imprisoned by the Mahumetan inquisitours, who cease not to persecute the professours of that arte.

*Of certaine rules and superstitions obserued in the  
Mahumetan law.*

Here also you may finde certaine learned men, which will haue themselves called wizards and morall philosophers. They obserue certaine rules which Mahumet neuer prescribed. By some they are accounted catholique or true Mahumetans, and by others they are holden for heretiks, howbeit the greatest part of the common people reuerence them as if they were gods, notwithstanding they commit many things vnlawfull and forbidden by the Mahumetan lawe, as namely; whereas the said lawe forbiddeth any loue-matters to be expressed in any muscicall ditties or songs, these moralists affirme the contrarie. In the foresaid Mahumetan religion are a great number of rules or sectes, euery of which hath most learned patrones and protectours. The foresaid sect sprang vp fower score yeeres after Mahumet, the first author thereof being called *Elhesen Ibnu Abilhasen*, and being borne in the towne of Basora: this man taught his disciples & followers certaine precepts, but writings he left none behinde him. About an hundred yeeres after there came another notable doctor of that sect from Bagaded, called *Elharis Ibnu Esed*, who left volumes of writings vnto his disciples. Afterward those that were found to be his followers, were all condemned by the Mahumetan patriarks and lawyers. Howbeit 80. yeeres after, that sect began to reuiue againe vnder a certaine famous professour, who drew after him many disciples, vnto whom he published his doctrine. This man at length and all his followers were by the patriarke and lawyers condemned to die. Which he ynderstanding, wrote forthwith vnto the patriarke, requesting that hee might be licenced to dispute with the lawyers as touching his doctrine, of whom if he were conuicted, he would most willingly suffer death; otherwise that it would be against all equitie, that so many innocents should perish vpon an vniust accusation. The patriarke thinking his demand to be reasonable, condescended wholly thereunto. But when the matter came to disputation, the partie condemned soone put all the lawyers to silence. Which when the patriarke perceiued, he repoked the sentence as vniust, and caused many colleges and monasteries to be erected for the said partie and his followers. After which time this sect continued about an hundred yeeres, till the emperour *Malicfach* of the Turkish race came thither out of Asia the greater, and destroyed all the maintainers thereof. Whereupon some of them fled vnto Cairo, and the rest into Arabia, being dispersed here and there for the space of twenty yeeres, till in the raigne of *Casellah* nephew vnto *Malicfach*, *Nidam Elmule* one of his counsellors, and a man of an high spirit,

Diuers Mahu-  
metan sects.



spirit, being addicted vnto the said sect; so restored, erected, and confirmed the same, that by the helpe of one *Elgazzuli* a most learned man (who had written of the same argument a notable worke diuided into seuen partes) he reconciled the lawyers with the disciples of this sect, conditionally, that the lawyers should be called Conseruers of the prophet Mahumet his lawes, & the sectaries Reformers of the same. This concord lasted betweene them, til Bagdad was sacked by the Tartars; which befell in the yeere of the Hegeira 656. at what time those sectaries so increased, that they swarmed almost ouer all Africa and Asia. Neither would they admit any into their societie, but such as were very learned, and trained vp in all kinde of liberall sciences; to the end they might the better defend their owne opinions, and confute their aduersaries: but now adaies they admit all kinde of rude and ignorant persons, affirming all sortes of learning to be needlesse; for the holy spirit (say they) reuealeth the knowledge of the truth vnto such as are of a cleane hart; and they alleage many reasons for the confirmation of this their opinion, though not very forcible. Wherefore despising their ancesters rites, and the strict obseruations of the law, they addict themselues to nought else but delights and pleasures, feasting often & singing lasciuious songs. Sometimes they will rend their garments, either alluding thereby to the verses that they sing, or being moued thereunto by their corrupt and vile disposition; saying falsely that they are then rauished with a fit of diuine loue: but I rather impute it to their abundance of meat, and gluttonie. For each one of them will deuoure as much meate, as may well suffice three. Or (which is more likely) they utter those passionate clamours and out-cries, because they are inflamed with unlawfull and filthie lust. For sometimes it happeneth that some one of the principall of them, with all his scholers and disciples, is invited to the mariage of some gentleman, and at the beginning of the banquet they will rehearse their deuout orizons and songs; but so soone as they are risen from the table, the elder of the companie being about to daunce, teare their garments: and if any one in the midst of their dauncing, that hath drunke immoderately, chaunceth to fall downe, he is taken vp forthwith by one of the scholers, and too lasciuiously kissed. Whereupon this proverbe grew among the people of Fez: *The heremites banquet*. Which they vse in reproch of those masters, that make their scholers their minions.

*Of diuers other rules and sectes, and of the superstitious credulitie of many.*

**A**Mongst these sectes there are some, that haue not onely a diuers law, but also a different beleefe from the residue, whereupon by some others they are called heretikes. Some there are also which hold, that a man by good works, by fasting and abstinence, may attaine vnto the nature of an angell, which good works, fastings, &c. doe (say they) so purge and free the minde from all contagion of euill, that by no meanes it can sinne any more, though

though it would neuer so faine. Howbeit they thinke themselues not capable of this felicitie, before they haue ascended thereunto by the degrees of fiftie disciplines or sciences: and although they fall into sinne before they be come to the fiftith degree, yet they say that God will not impute that sinne vnto them. These fellows indeed in the beginning leade a most strict life, and doe euen maccrate and consume themselues with fasting; but afterward they giue themselues to all licentiousnes and pleasure. They haue also a most seuer form of liuing set downe in fower bookes, by a certaine learned man of their faction, called *Essehrauar de Sehrauard*, and borne in the citie of Corasan. Likewise there was another author called *Ibnul Farid*, that described all their religion in wittie verses, which being fraught with allegories seemed to intreate of nought but loue: wherefore one *Elfargani* expounded the said verses with a commentarie, and thereout gathered the canons and orders of the sect, and shewed the degrees to the attainment of felicitie. Moreouer the said verses are so sweet and elegant, that the maintainers of this sect will sing and repeate none other in their bankers: for these three hundred yeeres no author hath so adorned their language as the said *Ibnul*. These sectaries take the heauens, the elements, the planets, and the fixed starres to be one god, and that no law nor religion is erroneous: for euery man (say they) may lawfully worship that which his mind is most addicted to worship. They thinke that all the knowledge of God was infused into one man, whom they call in their language *Elcorb*; this man, they say, was elect by god, and was made equall in knowledge to him. Fourtie there are among them called all by the name of *Elauted*, which signifieth in our language, a blocke, or stocke of a tree: out of this number, when their Elcoth deceaseth, they create another in his roome, namely seuentie persons that haue the authoritie of election committed vnto them. There are likewise 765. others (whose names I doe not well remember) who are chosen into the said electors roomes, when any of them decease. These 765. being bound thereunto by a certaine canon or rule of their order, are constrained alwaies to goe vnknownen, and they range almost all the world ouer in a most vile and beggerly habite, so that a man would take them for mad men and estranged from all sense of humanitie: for these lewd miscreants vnder pretence of their religion run like roagues naked and sauage throughout all Africa, hauing so little regarde of honestie or shame, that they will like brute beastes rauish women in publike places; and yet forsooth the grosse common people reuerence them as men of woonderfull holines. Great swarmes of these filthie vagabonds you may see in Tunis, but many more in Egypt, and especially at Alcair, whereas in the market called Bain Elcafrain I saw one of these villaines with mine owne eies, in the presence of much people, deflowre a most beautifull woman as she was comming forth of the bath: which being done, the fond people came flocking about the said woman, struiuing to touch her garment as a most holie thing: saying that the adulterer was a man of great sanctitie, and that he did not commit the sinne, but onely seemed to commit it: which

which when the fillie cuckold her husband vnderstood, he shewed himselfe thankfull to his false god with a solemne banquet, and with liberall giuing of almes. The magistrates of the citie would haue punished the adulterer, but they were in hazard to be slaine of the people for their labours, who (as is before said) adore these varlets for saints and men of singular holines. Other more villanous actes I saw committed by them, which I am ashamed to report.

*Of the Caballistes and certaine other sectes.*

**L**ikewise there is another sort of men, which we may fitly call Caballists. These fast most strictly, neither doe they eate the flesh of any liuing creature, but haue certaine meates and garments allotted vnto them: they rehearse likewise certaine set-prayers appointed for euery hower of the day and for the night, according to the varietie of daies and monethes, and they vse to carrie about certaine square tables with characters and numbers engrauen therein. They faine themselves to haue daily conference with the angels, of whom they learne (they say) the knowledge of all things. They had once a famous doctor of their sect called *Boni*, who was author of their canons, prayers, and square tables. Which when I saw, me thought their profession had more affinitie with magique then with Cabala. Their arte was diuided into eight partes; whereof the first was called *Elumha Enormita*, that is, the demonstration of light: the which contained prayers and fastings. The second called *Semful Meharif*, that is, the sunne of sciences, contained the foresaid square tables, together with their vse and profit. The third part they call *Sirru Lafmei Elchusne*; this part contained a catalogue of those 99. vertues, which (they say) are contained in the names of God, which I remember I saw at Rome in the custodie of a certaine Venetian Iew. They haue also a certaine other rule called *Suvach*, that is, the rule of heremites, the professors and followers whereof inhabite woods and solitarie places, neither haue they any other food, but such as those wilde deserts wil affoord: the conuersation of these heremites no man is able exactly to describe, because they are estranged from all humane societie. But if I should take vpon me to describe the varietie of Mahumetan sectes, I should digresse too farre from my present purpose. He that desireth to know more of this matter, let him read ouer the booke of *Elefacni*, who discourseth at large of the sectes belonging to the Mahumetan religion, the principall whereof are 72. euery one of which defend their opinions to be true and good, and such as a man may attaine saluation by. At this day you shall finde but two principall sects onely, the one of *Lesbhar* being disperfed ouer all Africa, Egypt, Syria, Arabia, and Turkie: the other of *Imamia*, which is authorized throughout the whole kingdome of Persia, and in certaine townes of *Corasani*; and this sect the great Sophi of Persia maintaineth, insomuch that all Asia had like to been destroyed thereabout. For whereas before they followed the sect of *Lesbhar*,

72. principall  
sectes in the  
religion of  
Mahumet.

*Lesbhar*, the great Sophi by force of armes established his owne of *Imamia*: and yet one onely sect stretcheth ouer all the Mahumetans dominions.

*Of such as search for treasures in Fez.*

**M**oreouer in the citie of Fez there are certaine men called *Elcanesin*, who supposing to finde treasure vnder the foundations of old houses, doe perpetually search and delue. These grosse fellows vse to resort vnto certaine dennes and caues without the citie-walles, certainly perswading themselves, that when the Romans were chased out of Affrica, and driuen into Bætica or Granada in Spaine, they hid great abundance of treasure in the bowels of the earth, which they could not carrie with them; and so enchanted the same by art-magique, that it can by no meanes be attained vnto but by the same arte; wherefore they seeke vnto inchanters to teach them the arte of digging vp the said treasures. Some of them there are that will stedfastly affirme, that they sawe gold in this or that caue: others, that they sawe siluer, but could not digge it out, by reason that they were destitute of perfumes and enchantments fit for the purpose; so that being seduced with this vaine opinion, and deeply deluing into the earth, they turne vpside downe the foundations of houses and sepulchers, and sometimes they proceede in this manner ten or twelue daies iourney from Fez: yea so fond they are and so besotted, that they esteeme those bookes that professe the arte of digging gold, as diuine oracles. Before my departure from Fez these fantastical people had chosen them a consul, and getting licence of certaine owners to dig their grounds, when they had digged as much as they thought good, they paid the said owners for all dammages committed.

*Of the Alchymistes of Fez.*

**I**n this citie likewise there are great store of Alchymists which are mightily addicted to that vaine practise: they are most base fellows, and contaminate themselves with the steam of Sulphur, and other stinking smells. In the euening they vse to assemble themselves at the great temple, where they dispute of their false opinions. They haue of their arte of Alchymie many bookes written by learned men, amongst which one *Geber* is of principall account, who liued an hundred yeeres after Mahumet, and being a Greeke borne, is said to haue renounced his owne religion. This *Geber* his works and all his precepts are full of allegories or darke borrowed speeches. Likewise they haue another author, that wrote an huge volume of the same arte, intituled by the name of *Attogrehi*: this man was secretarie vnto the Soldan of Bagaded, of whom we haue written in the liues of the Arabian philosophers. Also the songs or articles of the said science were written by one *Mugaribi* of Granada, whereupon a most learned Mamaluch of Damasco wrote a commentarie; yet so, that a man may much more easily vnderstand the text then

A booke written  
by Iohn Leo  
of the liues of  
the Arabian  
philosophers.

then the exposition thereof. Of Alchymistes here are two sorts; whereof the one seeke for the *Elisir*, that is, the matter which coloureth brasse and other metals; and the other are conuerfant about multiplication of the quantities of metals, whereby they may conveniently temper the same. But their chiefest drift is to coine counterfeit money: for which cause you shall see most of them in Fez with their hands cut off.

*Of charmers and inchanter's of snakes.*

**I**N this citie likewise there is a great swarme of base people, such as the Italians commonly call Ciurmatori: these sing foolish songs and rimes in all the streets of the citie, and broching meere trifles with the musick of drums; harpes, and citterns, they sell vnto the rude people certaine scroules or brieft charmes instead of preseruatiues. Vnto these you may adde another kinde of reffuse people of one family and disposition with the former, who carrie dauncing apes vp and downe, and haue their neckes and armes all entwined with crawling snakes. These also professe Geomancie, and perswade women that they can foretell them their fortune. Likewise they carrie stone-horses about with them, which for a certaine fee, they will let others haue to couer their mares. I coulde heere reckon vp more sorts of people; but let it suffice to haue admonished in this place, that the greatest part of the forenamed are people of most base condition, and such as beare little good will to strangers, albeit there are but a few in this citie, by reason it is distant more then an hundred miles from the sea, the way thither also being rough and dangerous. Their gentle men are very stately and high minded, and will haue little or no familiaritie at all with the citizens: so likewise the doctors and iudges of principall account will admit but few vnto their acquaintance. This citie it selfe is most beautifull and right commodiously situate; where albeit in winter time the streetes are so mirie, that you cannot walke in them without startups, yet they let passe such abundance of water out of their conduits, that all the filth is washed cleane away. Where conduits are wanting, they carry all the dirt in carts vnto the next part of the riuer.

*A description of the suburbs without the foresaid citie of Fez.*

**W**ithout the wals of this citie westward standeth a suburbe containing almost fve hundred families, the houses whereof are but meane, and the inhabitants base, as namely driuers of camels, water-bearers, and cleauers of woode for the kings pallace. Yet here you may finde diuers shops, and all kinds of artificers. Here likewise dwell all the charmers and roguish minstrels before named; as also great swarmes of sluttish and filthy harlots. In the principall streete of this suburbe, you shall finde certaine caues most artificially hewen out of excellent marble, wherein the noble

men

men of Fez were wont to lay vp their corne: but after that by reason of the warres it was often taken from thence, they haue since vsually conueied their corne into new Fez, and there stored it vp: and from that time to this the marble-caues haue remained desolate. It is a woonder to see howe wide and large these caues are; for the least of them will containe more then a thousand measures of corne, there being about an hundred and fiftie of them in all, but now they lie waste and open, insomuch that diuers fall into them at vnawares, for which cause their brimmes are enuironed with wals. Here euery one may play the vintener and the baud; so that this suburbe may iustly be called the sinke of Fez. From the twentieth hower you shall see none at all in their shops: for then euery man runs to the tauerne to disport, to spend riotously, and to bee drunken. Another suburbe there is allotted vnto the lepers, of whom there are two hundred families: these leproous persons haue a gouernour, which gathereth certaine yeerely reuenues from the noble-men, and taketh such care of the saide lepers, that they want no necessarie thing. He is bound by his office to discharge the citie of all leproous persons, and to compell all such as he vnderstandes to be infected with that disease, to depart into the foresaide suburbs. If any leper chanceth to die without issue, part of his goods are emploied to the common benefite of the lepers, and part fall to the gouernours share: but if he hath any children, they enioy his goods. Among the lepers also those are placed, which are infected with white botches, or with any other incurable maladie. Next beyond standeth another suburbe inhabited onely with muleters, plaisterers, and wood-mongers: which although it be but little, yet containeth it about an hundred and fiftie families. Moreouer vpon the way leading westward from the citie there is another great suburbe of moe then fower hundred houses: howbeit they are low & base, and the inhabitants are beggerly, which neither can nor will dwell among any other people. By this suburbe there is a certaine broad plaine which leadeth to the riuer two miles off, and extendeth westward almost three miles. Vpon this plaine euery weeke there is an exceeding great market of cattell. Likewise the shopkeepers of the citie resort hither and sell their wares in tents. Also a certaine companie of gentlemen vse to come hither, and to diuide a ramme among themselues, leauing the head vnto the butcher for his fee, but the feete and the skin they sell vnto the wooll-chapmen. For those wares that are heere sold they pay so little tribute to the king, that it is not woorth the mentioning. But this one thing I must in no wise passe ouer in silence, namely, that I neuer sawe neither in Asia, Africa, nor Italy, a market either more populous, or better furnished with wares. Not farre from Fez stand certaine high rockes enuironed with a ditch of two miles compasse, out of which rockes certaine matter is hewed to make lime withall. Neere vnto the saide ditch are many furnaces, some whereof are so large, that they will containe moe then fixe thousand measures of lime: and this lime is made at the costes of the richest citizens in Fez. Westward without the wals of Fez by the riuers side stande about an hundred

*The habitation  
of lepers in Fez,  
and their gouernour.*

O I

dred

dred cottages, which are onely inhabited by them that white linnen cloth. Hither in the spring and in summer vse the citizens to bring their linnen cloth, spreading it vpon the medowes, and as often as they see it drie in the sunne, casting water thereupon, which water they fetch either out of the riuer or out of some cesterne in certaine lether tankards made for the same purpose: but at night each one carrieth his cloth into the foresaid cottages. Neither are the medowes wherein they bleach their cloth euer destitute of grasse. A most gallant prospect it is to beholde a farre off the white clothes disperfed ouer the greene meadow, and the cristall streames of the riuer, which seeme to be of an azure hue, running along: all which the Poets haue celebrated in their verses.

*A description of the common place of buriall  
without the citie.*

**M**Any fieldes there are without the citie, which haue been giuen by certaine noblemen for the buriall of the dead. Vpon their sepulchers for the most part they lay a long three-square stone. When any noble man or any principall citizen deceaseth, they lay one stone ouer his head and another ouer his feete, whereon vseth to bee engrauen some epitaph, with the day and yeere when the partie deceased. I my selfe bestowed much labour in gathering of epitaphes, which I sawe both about Fez and in other places of Barbary; all which being set downe in a booke I gaue vnto the kings brother. The matter of their epitaphes is diuers, some tending to consolation, and others to sorrow.

*Of the sepulchres of the kings of Fez.*

**N**Orthward of the citie vpon a certaine high hill stands a palace, wherein are the monuments of diuers Marinkings, being most artificially hewen out of marble with epitaphes vpon them, so that I cannot condignely expresse the maiestie and beautie thereof.

*A description of their gardens.*

**W**ithout the north, east, and south parts of the citie are great store of gardens, replenished with all kinde of fruite and with stately trees. Through the midst of these gardens, they deriue some small vaine of the riuer, some whereof are so full of trees, that you woulde take them for groues rather then for gardens. These gardens they manure not at all, but only water them continually in the moneth of May, whereupon they haue great abundance of fruit. All their fruits, saue their peaches onely, are of a most delicate taste, whereof, so soone as they are ripe, aboue fise hundreth cart-loads are daily carried into the market, besides grapes, which here I do not mention.

tion. But the saide fruits are carried vnto a certaine place in Fez, where tribute being paide for them, they are solde by criers vnto the fruiterers there present. In the same place likewise after paying of tribute, they sell certaine Negro-slaves. Towards the east of Fez lieth a plaine fiftene miles broad, and thirtie miles long: this plaine is full of fountaines and freshters, and is referued for the vse of the great temple. It is farmed out vnto gardiners, who sowe thereupon such abundance of hemp, melons, turneps or nauewes, radish, and other such like rootes and herbes; that euery summer there are saide to be gathered thereof aboue fiftene thousand cart-loads, and as many in winter. Howbeit the aire is verie vnholosome thereabout, for the inhabitants are continually vexed with feuers, and are of a yellowish colour.

*Of that part of Fez which is called new Fez.*

**N**EW Fez beeing enuironed with an high and impregnable wall, and situate on a most beautifull plaine not farre from the riuers side, is almost a mile distant from old Fez, and that vpon the east and south side thereof. Betweene the wals of either towne, to the northward, entereth a certaine arme of the riuer, where the foresaid milles do stande, and the other part of the riuer is seuered into two branches, one whereof runneth betweene new Fez and old Fez, not farre from the edge of the rocke, and the other passing through certaine vallies and gardens, trendeth at length southward. The other part of the riuer holdeth on his course by the rocke, and so by the college of king \* *Abutiman*. This citie of new Fez *Iacob* the sonne of *Abdullah* caused to bee built, who was the first king of the Marin family, and expelled the kings of Maroco, and vsurped the kingdome vnto himselfe: but the king of Telenfin, to the end he might make the people of Maroco beholding vnto him, and might subuert the prosperous successe of the Marin family, went about to hinder the king of Fez his attempts against Maroco: wherefore king *Iacob* hauing finished the wars of Maroco, determined to reuenge himselfe to the vttermost for the iniuries offered by them of Telenfin. But considering with himselfe, that the strong townes of his owne kingdome were farre distant from Telenfin, he thought it a better course to builde this citie, whereunto the seate roiall of all Maroco might be translated: which being erected, he called The white citie, but it was afterward named by the inhabitants new Fez. This citie king *Iacob* the founder diuided into three parts, whereof the first contained his roiall pallace, and diuers noble mens houses, vnto euery one of which he allotted a most pleasant garden. Not farre from his pallace he built a most stately and sumptuous temple. In another part of this citie he built a large and faire stable for the kings horses to stande in. Then also he caused other palaces to be erected for his captaines and principall courtiers. From the west gate to the east he appointed the market place; the distance betweene which gates is a mile and an halfe, and on both sides he placed artificers and merchants shops. At



the west gate he caused a faire portall to be set vp, to harbour the watchmen and warders of the citie. Not far from thence he erected two stables sufficient to containe three hundreth horses, which he might vse for the protection of his owne palace. The third part of the citie was appointed for the kinges garde and attendants, which were most of them borne eastwarde of Fez, neither had they any other weapons but hand-bowes (for crosse-bowes were not then vsed in that kingdome) vnto which attendants the king allowed a large stipend: but now the same place is full of beautifull temples and stoues. Neere vnto the kings palace standes the mint, hauing in the midst a fower-square court with certaine portals or cels rounde about it, wherein the money-minters dwell. Likewise there is another lodging in the midst of the same court, where the gouernor of the mint with his scribes and notaries haue their aboad. Here, as well as in any other places, whatsoever commoditie is raised, redoundeth wholly to the king. Neere vnto the mint stande the gold-smiths shops, whose Consul or gouernour keepes the seale and stamps of the coine. In Fez neither ring nor any other Iewell or commoditie can bee made of siluer or golde, before the metall bee sealed, for the offenders are most seuerely punished. And, the metall being sealed, whatsoever is made thereof is weighed as if it were money. The greatest part of goldsmiths dwelling in new Fez are Iewes, who carrie their vessels of gold and siluer vnto a certaine place of old Fez, neere vnto the grocers shops, and there sell them. For in old Fez neither gold nor siluer is coined, nor any Mahumetans are suffered to be goldsmiths, because they haue vsurers among them, which will sell any peece of wrought siluer or golde deerer then the weight requireth; albeit the same priuilege is by the gouernours of the citie granted vnto the Iewes. Some there are also that onely make plate for the citizens, who are paid hire onely for their worke. That part of the citie which the kings attendants or guard once possessed, is now inhabited by Iewes: for now a daies the kings vse no such guard. The Iewes indeed first dwelt in old Fez, but vpon the death of a certaine king they were all robbed by the Moores: whereupon king *Abusabid* caused them to remooue into new Fez, and by that meanes doubled their yeerely tribute. They therefore euen till this day doe occupie a long street in the said new citie, wherein they haue their shops and synagogues, and their number is maruellously increased euer since they were driuen out of Spaine. These Iewes are had in great contempt by all men, neither are any of them permitted to weare shooes, but they make them certaine socks of sea-rushes. On their heads they weare a blacke \* *dulipan*, and if any will goe in a cap, he must fasten a red cloth thereunto. They pay vnto the king of Fez monethly fower hundred duckats. At length within the space of an hundred and forty yeeres this new citie was enuironed with most impregnable walles, and adorned with temples, colleges, palaces, and other such buildings as serue to beautifie a citie, so that I thinke there was more bestowed in garnishing of the citie, then in building of the walles. Without the citie-walles are built many huge wheelles or en-

\* *Orturbant.*Engins for the  
conueiance of  
water.

gins, for the conueying of riuer-water ouer the said walles into cisternes, from whence it is conueied in certaine chanelles and pipes vnto the temples, gardens, & palaces. The said wheelles were built not fully an hundred yeeres past, before which time water was brought vnto the citie by a certaine conduct, from a fountaine ten miles distant. Of which artificiall conduct a certaine Genouese, beeing then in great fauour with the king, is reported to haue been the author: but the wheelles (they say) were inuented by a Spaniard: and in them there is maruellous cunning workmanship: for to the conueiance of so huge a quantitie of water, each wheele is turned about but fower and twentie times onely in a day and a night. To conclude, here are but few gentlemen in this citie, except such as attend vpon the court, for the residue are base and mechanicall people: but such as carie any shew of honestie, doe so hate and disdain the kings courtiers and gentlemen, that they will by no meanes vouchsafe to marie their daughters vnto them.

*Of the fashions and customes used in the kings court.*

**A**mongst all the princes of Africa, I neuer red of any that was created by the common suffrages and consent of the people vnto his kingdome or principedome, or that was called from any strange prouince or citie to beare rule. Also by the law of Mahumet no man may beare any secular authoritie, which may be called lawfull, saue onely the Mahumetan patriarkes and prelates: howbeit the saide patriarkes authoritie decreasing daily more and more, the ringleaders of such people as ranged vp and downe the deserts began to inuade places inhabited & ciuized, and by force of armes, against Mahumets lawe, and maugre his prelates, to ordaine sundrie princes: As for example in the East, whereas the Turkes, Cordians, and Tartars, haue vsurped dominion ouer such as were not able to repell them. So likewise in the west parts first the families of Zeneta and Luntuna, then the seditious Mahumetan preachers, and afterward the family of Marin got the vpper hand. Howbeit the family of Luntuna is reported to haue aided the western regions, & to haue released them from the furie of the seditious heretiques, wherein they shewed themselues friends and not enimies: but afterward their tyrannie began to shew it selfe. And this is the reason why they do not now a daies attaine vnto gouernment by hereditarie succession or by election of the people, or of the nobilitie. But the prince himselfe when he feelles death seazing vpon him, calleth about him all his peeres and nobles, and bindeth them by oath, to establish his sonne, brother, or anie other whom he most fauoureth, in his kingdome. But they after the princes decease neglecting their oath, will chuse any other whom they list. And this is ordinarily the election of the king of Fez, who, so soone as he is proclaimed king, chuseth forthwith some one of his nobles to be his chiefe counsellour, and on him he bestoweth the thirde part of all his kingly reuenues. Then chuseth another to be his secretarie, treasurer, and high steward of his household. Then is created the capitaine of the horsemen appointed

*The manner of  
choosing officers  
in the court of  
Fez.*

for the kings guard, and these horsemen with their horses liue most commonly in the fieldes. Lastly he appointeth a new gouernour ouer euery citie, vnto whom all the tributes and reuenues of the same place redound, with condition, that as often as any warres betide, he shall maintaine a certaine companie of horses to the kings seruice. After a while also he placeth certaine deputies and commissioners ouer his people inhabiting the mountaines, and ouer the Arabians subiect vnto him. The gouernours of cities diuersly administer iustice, according to the custome of the place. Some there are also appointed by the king to collect all the tributes and reuenues of his kingdome, and duly to paie the same vnto him. Likewise there are others chosen, whom they call in their language keepers or guardians, and vnto euery one of these the king giueth some castle or village, whereby he may procure his owne maintenance, and be able to serue the king in time of warre. Moreouer the king of Fez maintaineth a troupe of light horsemen, who so long as they serue the king in his campe, haue their diet allowed them out of the kings prouision: but in time of peace, he findeth them corne, butter, and poudered flesh for the whole yeere, but money they haue very feldome. Once a yeere they are apparelled at the kings cost; neither do they prouide for their horses either within the citie or without, for the king furnisheth them with all necessaries. Those that giue attendance to their horses are Christian captiues, which go shackled in great chaines and fetters. But when the armie remooueth any whither, the saide Christians are carried vpon camels backs. Another officer there is that giueth attendance onely to the camels, assigning certaine pastures vnto the heards-men, and diuiding fields among them, and making such prouision for the kings camels, as himselfe shall thinke expedient. Each camel-driuer hath two camels, which are laden with the kings furniture, according to the appointment of the gouernour. Likewise the king hath a certaine purueiour or steward, whose office is to prouide, keepe, and distribute corne both to the kings household and to his armie. This man in time of warre hath tenne or twelue tents to lay vp corne in, and euery day with change of camels he sendeth for newe corne, least the armie shoulde be vnprouided of victuals: he hath also cooks at his command. Moreouer there is a gouernour or master-groome of the stables, who prouideth for the kings horses, mules, and camels, and is furnished with all necessaries by the steward. There is another also appointed ouerseer of the corne, whose dutie it is to prouide barley and other prouender for the beasts: and this man hath his scribes and notaries about him, who diligently set downe all particular expenses, for they must giue vp a perfect account vnto the chiefe steward. They haue also a certaine captaine ouer fiftie horsemen, which horsemen may well be called purseuants, for they are sent by the secretarie in the kings name to do his busines. Likewise the Fezzan king hath another captaine of great name, being as it were gouernour of his guard, who in the kings name, may compell the iudges to do iustice, and to put their sentences in execution. This mans

authoritie

authoritie is so great, that sometimes he may commit principal noblemen to ward, & may seuerely punish them, according to the kings commandment. Moreouer the saide king hath a most trusty chancelor, who keepeth the great sea'e, and writeth and signeth the kings letters. He hath also a great number of footemen, the gouernour of whom accepteth and dismisseth whom he thinkes good, and giueth to euery one wages according to his agilitie and desert. And whensoever the king commeth in place of iudgement, the saide gouernour alwaies attendeth vpon him, and is in a manner his high chamberlain. Also there is another that taketh charge of the carriages and baggage of the armie, and causeth the tents of the light horsemen to be carried vp and downe on mules, and the tents of the other soldiers on camels. There are likewise a company of ensigne-bearers, who in marching on a journey carrie their colours wrapped vp: but he that goeth before the armie hath his banner displaid, and of a great height. And euery one of the saide standard-bearers knoweth most exactly alwaies, fords of riuers, and passages through woods, wherefore they are for the most part appointed to guide the armie. The drummers (of whom there are great store in the kings host) plaie vpon certaine drums of bras as bigge as a great kettle, the lower part whereof is narrow, & the vpper broad, being couered with a skin. These drummers ride on horsebacke, hauing alwaies on the one side of their horses a great waight hanging downe, to counterpoize the heauines of their drums on the other side. They are allowed most swift horses, because the Moores account it a great disgrace to loose a drum. The saide drums make such a loude and horrible noise, that they are not onely heard a farre off, but also strike exceeding terrour both vpon men and horses, and they are beaten onely with a buls pizzle. The musitions are not maintained at the kings charge, for the cities are bounde at their costs to send a certaine number of them to the warres, who, according to their demeanour in the warres, are admitted or not admitted vnto the kings tabie. This king hath also a certaine master of ceremonies, who sitteth at his feete in the senate-house, and commandeth each man to sit downe, and to speake according to his dignitie. All the maideseruants in the kings familie are Negro-slaues, which are partly chamberlains, and partly waiting-maids. And yet his Queene is alwaies of a white skin. Likewise in the king of Fez his court are certaine Christian captiues, being partly Spanish, and partly Portugale women, who are most circumspectly kept by certaine Eunuchs, that are Negro-slaues. The king of Fez hath very large dominions, but his reuenues are small, to wit, scarce three hundred thousand ducats, the fift part whereof redoundeth not to the king: for the remainder is diuided into sundrie portions, as we haue before signified. Yea, the greater part of the saide reuenues is paie in corne, cattle, oile, and butter, all which yeeld but small store of money. In some place they pay a ducate and one fourth part, tribute for euery acre, but in other places a whole family paieth but so much. In some other regions each man aboue fiftene yeeres of age paieth as much tribute also. Neither are the people

of

of this great citie more vexed with any thing then with paying of their tributes and impositions. Heere also is to be noted, that the Mahumetan gouernours (the priests onely excepted) may not exact greater reuenues then those that Mahumet hath allotted vnto them, namely of euery of their subiects which possesseth 100. ducates in ready money, they are to haue two ducates & an halfe for yeerely tribute. Euery husbandman likewise is bound to pay for tribute the tenth part of all his corne. And all the saide tributes he appointed to be paid vnto the patriarke, who should bestow that which was superfluous for the Prince to haue, vpon common vses; namely for the relieuing of poore impotent people and widowes, and for maintaining of wars against the enemie. But since the Patriarches began to decay, the Princes (as we haue before saide) exercised tyrannie. For it was not sufficient for them to exact all the forenamed tributes, and riotously to consume the same, but also to vrge people vnto greater contributions; so that all the inhabitants of Africa are so oppressed with daily exactions, that they haue scarcely wherewithall to feed and apparell themselves: for which cause there is almost no man of learning or honesty, that will seeke any acquaintance with courtiers, or will intite them to his table, or accept any gifts (bee they neuer so pretious) at their hands: thinking that whatsoeuer goods they haue, are gotten by theft and briberie. The King of Fez continually maintaineth fixe thousand horsemen, five hundred crossbowes, and as manie Harquebusiers, being at all assayes prepared for the warres, who in time of peace, when the king goeth on progresse, lye within a mile of his person: for being at home in Fez, he needeth not so strong a guard. When he waggeth warre against the Arabians that be his enemies, because the forenamed garison is not sufficient, he requireth ayde of the Arabians his subiects, who at their owne costs finde him a great armie of men better trained to the warres, then his owne souldiers before-mentioned. The pompe and ceremonies of this king are but meane, neither doth he willingly vse them, but onely vpon festiuall daies, and when meere necessitie requireth. When the king is to ride forth, the master of ceremonies signifieth so much vnto certaine herbengers or postes, whereupon the herbengers giue notice thereof vnto the kings \*parents, vnto his nobilitie, his senatours, captaines, guardians, and gentlemen, who presently arrange themselves before the palace gate. At the kings comming forth of the palace, the herbengers appoint vnto each man his place and order of riding. First and foremost go the standard-bearers, next the drummers, then followeth the chiefe groomer of the stable with his seruants and family; after him comes the kings pensioners, his guard, his master of ceremonies, his secretaries, his treasurer, and last of all his chiefe Iudge and his captaine generall, at length comes the king accompanied with his principall counsellor, or with some other great peere. Before the king also ride certaine officers belonging to his person, whereof one carries his sword-royall, another his shield, and the third his crosse-bow. On each side of him march his footemen, one carrying a payet of

The king of  
Fez his guard.

How the king  
of Fez rideth  
on progresse.

\*Or his folkes.

of stirrups, another the kings partizan, the third a couering for his saddle, and the fourth a halter for his horse. And so soone as the king is dismounted, they forthwith couer his saddle, and put the foresaide halter vpon his horse-head. Likewise there is another footeman that carrieth the kings pantofles most artificially wrought. After the king followeth the captaine of the footemen, then the eunuches, the kings family, the light horsemen, and last of all the crosse-bowes and Harquebusiers. The apparell of the king is then verie moderate and plaine: inso much that if a man knew him not, he would thinke him to be absent: for the attendants be far more sumptuously attired. Moreouer no Mahumetan king or prince may weare a crowne, dia-  
deme, or any such like ornament vpon his head, for that is forbidden by the law of Mahumet. When the king lyeth with his armie in the fields, first his owne great tent is pitched in a fower square forme like vnto a castle, each side of the saide square being fiftie elles in length. At euery of the fower corners standeth a little sharpe turret made of cloth, with a gallant spheare on the top which glistereth like gold. This royall pavilion hath fower gates, euery one of which is kept by eunuches. Within the saide pavilion are contained diuers other tents, among which is the kings lodging, being framed in such wise, that it may easily be remooued from place to place. Next vnto it stand the tents of the noble men, and of such as are most in the kings fauour; then the lodgings of the principall guard beeing made of goatskinnes, after the Arabian fashions; and in the midst of all stands the kings kitchen and his pantrie. Not farre from hence the light horsemen haue their abode, who all of them are victualled out of the kings storehouse, notwithstanding their attire be verie base. Next of all are the stables, wherein their horses are marvellous well tended. Without this circuit keepe such as carrie the tents and the kings furniture from place to place. Here are also butchers, victuallers, and such like. All merchants & artificers that resort hither, take vp their abode next vnto the tent-carriers: so that the kings pavilion is pitched like a strong citie, for it is so enuironed with the lodgings of the garde, and with other tents adioining, that there is very difficult passage to the king. Round about the saide royall pavilion, there are certaine appointed to watch and ward all night long, howbeit they are base and vnarmed people. In like sort there is a watch kept about the stables, but sometimes so negligently, that not onely some horses haue bene stolne, but there haue bene founde enemies in the kings owne pavilion, that came to murder him. The king liueth the greatest part of the yeere in the fieldes, both for the safegard of his kingdome, and also that he may keepe his Arabian subiects in obedience, and sometimes he recreateth himselfe with hunting, and sometime with playing at cheffe. I know right well how tedious I haue bene in the description of this citie: but because it is the metropolitan not onely of Barbary, but of all Africa, I thought good most particularly to decypher euery parcell and member thereof.

The king of  
Fez his manner  
of warfare.

## Of the towne of Macarreda.

**T**His towne standeth almost twentie miles eastward of Fez, and was built by the familie of Zeneta, vpon the banke of a most beautifull riuer. It had in times past a large territorie, and great store of inhabitants. On both sides of the saide riuer are many gardens and vineyards. The kings of Fez were wont to assigne this towne vnto the gouernour of their camels; but in the warre of Sahid it was so destroied and wasted, that at this day scarce is there any mention of wals to be found. But the fields thereof are now in the possession of certaine gentlemen of Fez, and of the peasants.

## Of the castle of Hubbed.

**T**His castle standeth vpon the side of an hill, about fixe miles from Fez, and from hence you may beholde the citie of Fez, and all the territorie adiacent. It was founded by a certaine hermite of Fez, being reputed for a man of singular holines. The fields thereto belonging are not verie large, bicause the houses being demolished, it is vtterly destitute of inhabitants, the wals onely and the temple as yet remaining. In this castle I liued fower summers, bicause it standeth in a most pleasant aire, being separate from concourse of people, and a solitarie place fitte for a man to studie in: for my father had got a lease of the ground adioining to this castle from the gouernour of the temple, for many yeeres.

## Of the towne of Zauia.

**T**He towne of Zauia was founded by *Ioseph* the second king of the Marin-family, and is distant from Fez about fowerteene miles. Heere king *Ioseph* built a stately hospitall, and commanded that his corps shoulde be interred in this towne. But it was not his fortune heere to be buried, for he was slaine in the warres against Tremizen. From thencefoorth Zauia fell to decay and grew destitute of inhabitants, wherein at this present the hospitall onely remaineth. The reuenues of this place were giuen vnto the great temple of Fez, but the felde thereof was tilled by certaine Arabians dwelling in the region of Fez.

## Of the castle of Chaulan.

A hot bath

**T**He ancient castle of Chaulan is built vpon the riuer Sebu, eight miles southward of Fez. Not farre from this castle there is a certaine hot bath, whereunto *Abulhezen* the fourth king of the Marin-family added a faire building, vnto this bath once a yeere in the moneth of Aprill the gentlemen of Fez vsually resort, remaining there fower or fife daies together.

There

There is no ciuilitie to be found in this castle: for the inhabitants are base people, and exceeding couetous.

## Of the mountaine of Zelag.

**T**His mountaine beginneth eastward from the riuer of Sebu, extending thence almost fowerteene miles westward, and the highest part thereof to the north, is fiefen miles distant from Fez. The south part of this mountaine is vtterly destitute of inhabitants; but the north side is exceeding fertile, and planted with great store of castles and townes. Most of their fields are imployed about vineyards, the grapes whereof are the sweetest that euer I tasted, and so likewise are their oliues, and other fruits. The inhabitants being verie rich, haue most of them houses in the citie of Fez. And so likewise most part of the gentlemen of Fez haue vineyards vpon the saide mountaine. At the north foote of this mountaine the fields are replenished with all kinde of graine and fruits. For all that plaine is watered southward with the riuer Sebu: and here the gardiners with certaine artificiall wheelles and engines draw water out of the riuer to moisten their gardens. In this plaine are wel-nigh two hundreth acres of ground, the reuenues whereof are giuen vnto the kings master of ceremonies, howbeit he maketh thereof not about fife hundreth ducates a yeere: the tenth part of all which reuenues, amounting to three thousand bushels of corne, belongeth to the kings prouision.

## Of mount Zarhon.

**T**His mountaine beginneth from the plaine of Esais lying ten miles distant from the citie of Fez; westward it extendeth thirtie miles, and is almost ten miles broad. This mountaine is all couered with waste and desert woods, being otherwise well stored with oliues. In this mountaine there are of sheepe-foldes and castles to the number of fiftie, and the inhabitants are very wealthy, for it standeth betweene two flourishing cities, that is to say, Fez on the east, and Mecnase on the west. The women weaue woollen cloth, according to the custome of that place, and are adorned with many siluer rings and bracelets. The men of this mountaine are most valiant, and are much giuen to pursue and take lions, whereof they send great store vnto the king of Fez. And the king hunteth the said lions in manner following: in a large field there are certaine little cels made, being so high, that a man may stand vpright in them: each one of these cels is shut fast with a little doore; and containe within euery of them an armed man, who opening the doore presents himselfe to the view of the lion: then the lion seeing the doores open, comes running toward them with great furie, but the doores being shut againe, he waxeth more furious then before: then bring they foorth a bull to combat with the lion, who enter a fierce and bloudie

Hunting of  
lions used by  
the king of Fez.



bloudie conflict, wherein if the bull kill the lion, that daies sport is at an end; but if the lion get the victorie, then all the armed men, being ordinarily twelue, leape foorth of their cels, and inuade the lion: each one of them hauing a iavelin with a pike of a cubite and an halfe long. And if these armed men seeme to bee too hard for the lion, the king causeth their number to be diminished: but perceiuing them too weake, the king with his companie from a certaine high place, where he standeth to behold the sport, kill the lion with their crossebowes. And oftentimes it falleth out, that before the lion be slaine, some one of the men dies for it, the residue being sore wounded. The reward of those that encounter the lion is ten duckats apeece; and a new garment: neither are any admitted vnto this combat but men of redoubted valour, and such as come from mount Zelagi: but those that take the lions first are inhabitants of mount Zarhon.

*Of Gualili a towne of mount Zarhon.*

**T**His towne was built by the Romanes vpon the top of the foresaide mountaine, what time they were lordes of Granada in south Spaine. It is enuironed around with mighty thicke walles made of smoothe and hewen stones. The gates are large and high, and the fields are manured for the space of sixe miles about: howbeit this towne was long sithence destroyed by the Africans. But afterward when the schismatike *Idris* came into this region, he began to repaire this desolate towne, and to replant it so with inhabitants, that within short time it grew very populous: howbeit after his decease it was neglected by his sonne, being wholly addicted (as is before-said) vnto the building of Fez. And yet *Idris* lieth buried in this towne, whose sepulchre is visited with great reuerence almost by all the people of Barbarie, for he is as highly esteemed as if he had been some patriarke, because he was of the linage of Mahumer. At this present there are but two or three houses in all the towne, which were there built for the honour and maintenance of the sepulchre. The fields adiacent are exceedingly well husbanded: and their gardens are most pleasant by reason of two sweet freshets running through them, the which diuersly winding themselves about the little hills and vallies, doe water all that plaine.

*Of a certaine towne called the palace of Pharao.*

**T**His towne was founded by the Romanes vpon the top of an hill, about eight miles distant from Gualili. The people of this said mountaine, together with some historiographers are most certainly perswaded; that this towne was built by *Pharao* king of Egypt in the time of *Moses*, and tooke the name from the first founder, which notwithstanding I thinke to be otherwise: for I can read in no approoued author that either *Pharao* or any other Egyptians euer inhabited these regions. But I suppose that this fond opinion

opinion was taken out of that booke which one *Elcabi* wrote concerning the words of Mahumer. For the said booke affirmeth from the authoritie of Mahumer, that there were fower kings onely that gouerned the whole world, two whereof were faithfull, and the other two ethnikes: the faithfull he saith were *Alexander* the great, and *Salomon* the sonne of *Dauid*: and the ethnikes were *Nimrod* and *Pharao*. But I am rather of opinion, by the Latine letters which are there engrauen in the walles, that the Romanes built this towne. About this towne run two small riuers on either side thereof. The little hills and vallies adiacent doe greatly abound with oliues. Not far from hence are certaine wilde deserts frequented with lions and leopards.

*Of the towne called Pietra Rossa or The red roske.*

**P**ietra Rossa is a small towne built by the Romanes vpon the side of the foresaid mountaine, being so neere the Forrest, that the lions will come *Tame lions.* daily into the towne and gather vp bones in the streets, yea, they are so tame and familiar, that neither women nor children are afraid of them. The wals of this towne are built very high and of great stones, but now they are ruined in many places, and the whole towne is diminished into one streete. Their fields being ioyned vnto the plaines of Azgara, abound with oliues and all kinde of pulse.

*Of the towne of Maghilla.*

**M**aghilla is a little towne founded of old by the Romanes vpon that side of the foresaid hill which looketh toward Fez. About this towne are most fertill fields, and greatly enriched with oliues: there is a plaine likewise containing many fresh fountaines, and well stored with hennep and flaxe.

*Of the castle of Shame.*

**T**His ancient castle is built at the foote of the said mountaine neer vnto the high way from Fez to Mecnase: and it was called by this name, because the inhabitants are most shamefully addicted to couetise, like vnto all the people thereabouts. In old time it is reported that a certaine king passed by, whom the inhabitants of the castle inuited to dinner, requesting him to change the ignominious name of the place: which when the king had condescended vnto, they caused, according to their custome, a companie of rams to be slaine, and certaine bladders and vessels to be filled with milke, to serue for the kings breakfast the morrow after. But because the said vessels were very large, they consulted together to put in halfe milke and halfe water, hoping that the king should neuer perceiue it. The day following albeit the king was not very hastie of his breakfast, yet, his seruants vrging him thereunto, he perceiued the milke to be halfe water; whereat smiling he said: Friends, that which nature hath giuen, no man can take away. And with that

saying he departed. Now this castle is razed to the ground & vnterly destroyed, but the territorie thereof is occupied by certaine miserable Arabians.

*Of the region of Beni Guariten.*

**T**He region of Beni Guariten lieth eastward of Fez about eightene miles. It is altogether hillie and mountainous, abounding with all kind of pulse, and with store of good pasture and medow-ground, and containing almost two hundred villages. Their houses are in all places rudely built, and the inhabitants are base people, neither haue they any vineyards or gardens, nor any tree that beareth fruit. This region the king of Fez vsually diuideth among his yoongest brothers and sisters. The inhabitants haue great store of corne and wooll: and albeit they are passing rich, yet go they very meanly attired: they ride onely vpon asses, for which cause they are had in great derision by their neighbours.

*Of the region called Afeis.*

**T**His region is distant to the west of Fez almost twentie miles, and is by the inhabitants called Afeis; it consisteth of a perpetuall plaine, whereupon some coniecture, that it hath had in olde time many villages and castles, whereof now there is no mention at all, nor so much as a signe of any building, onely the names of places yet remaine. This region extendeth westward eightene, and southward almost twenty miles. The soile is most fertile, and bringeth forth blacke and small graines. Welles and fountaines are here very rare. It was wont to be subiect vnto certaine Arabian husbandmen, but now it is assigned by the king vnto the gouernor of that citie.

*Of mount Togat.*

**T**His mountaine standeth almost seuen miles westward of Fez, being very high, and but of small bredth. Eastward it extendeth to the riuer Bunafe being about fiue miles distant. All that side which looketh towards Fez, and the top thereof, and that part which lieth ouer against Essieh are woonderfully replenished with vines, and with all kinde of graine. Vpon the top of this mountaine are diuers caues and hollow places, where the searchers of treasure suppose that the Romans hid vp their wealth, as we haue before signified. The said treasure-searchers, so soone as the vintage is past, vse to take great paines in digging of the rocke, and albeit they finde nothing, yet will they not giue ouer. All the fruits of this mountaine are most vnpleasant both to the eie and to the taste, and yet they are sooner ripe, then the fruits of other places thereabout.

of

*Of mount Guraigura.*

**T**His mountaine being neer vnto Atlas is almost fortie miles distant from Fez. From hence springeth a certaine riuer, which running westward falleth into the riuer Bath. This mountaine standeth betweene two most large and spacious plaines, whereof the one to Fez ward is (as we haue before said) called Afeis: and the other lying southward is named Adecsen. Which Adecsen is most fertile both for corne and pasture. And they are possessed by certaine Arabians called Zuhair being vassals vnto the king of Fez: but the king assigneth for the most part this plaine vnto his brother or some other of his kinsfolkes, out of which they yeerely gather ten thousand duckats. The foresaid Arabians are continually molested by certaine other Arabians called Elhusein, which liue in the deserts: for in summer-time they vsually inuade the plaines: wherefore the king of Fez for the defence of this region maintaineth a certaine number of horsemen and of crosse-bowes. This plaine is watered with christall-fountaines and pleasant riuers. Neere vnto the said plaine are diuers woods and Forrests, where lions keepe Tame lions. which are so gentle and tame, that any man may driue them away with a staffe, neither doe they any harme at all. Now let vs proceede vnto the description of Azgara.

*A description of Azgara, one of the seuen principall regions belonging to the kingdome of Fez.*



**T**His region bordereth northward vpon the Ocean-sea; westward vpon the riuer of Buragrag; eastward vpon the mountaines partly of Gamera, partly of Zathon, and partly of Zalag; and southward it is inclosed with the riuer of Bunafar. This region consisteth altogether of plaine ground being a most fertile soile, and in olde time very populous, and adorned with many townes and castles, which are now so defaced and ruined by reason of wars, that small villages onely are left for the inhabitants to hide their heads in. The length of this region is about fower score, and the bredth almost three score miles. Through the midst thereof runneth the riuer of Subu. The Arabian inhabitants are called Elculoth, being descended from the familie of Muntafic; they are subiect to the king of Fez, and pay vnto him large tributes: howbeit they are rich, and curious in their apparell, and are such valiant soldiers, that the king of Fez leuieth his whole armie of them onely, when he hath any warres of great moment to atchieue. This region abundantly furnisheth not onely Fez, but all the mountaines of Gamera with victuals, horses, and other cattell; and here the king of Fez vsually remaineth all winter and the spring, by reason of the temperature and holesomnes of the aire. Here is great plentie of roes and hares, and yet very few woods.

Q2

of

## Of Giumba a towne in Azgara.

**T**His towne the Africans built in our time by a riuers side vpon that plaine ouer which the way lieth from Fez to the citie of Harais, and it is distant from Fez about thirtie miles. It was in times past very populous, but now it lieth so desolate by reason of the war of *Sahid*, that it serueth onely for caues and receptacles for the Arabians to lay vp their corne in, for the fauegard whereof they pitch certaine tents neere vnto the place.

## Of the towne of Harais.

**T**His towne was founded by the ancient Africans vpon the Ocean sea shore, neere vnto the mouth of the riuer Luccus, one side thereof adjoining vpon the said riuer, and the other side vpon the maine Ocean. When the Moores were lords of Arzilla and Tangia, this towne was well inhabited: but those two townes being woon by the Christians, Harais remained destitute of inhabitants, almost twentie yeeres together: howbeit afterward the king of Fez his sonne, fearing the Portugals inuasion, caused it strongly to bee fortified and kept with a perpetuall garrison. The passage vnto this towne by the riuers mouth is very dangerous and difficult. Likewise the kings sonne caused a castle to be built, wherein is maintained a garrison of two hundred crosse-bowes, an hundred Harquebusiers, & three hundred light horsemen. Neere vnto the towne are diuers medowes and fennes where the townesmen take great store of eeles and of water-fowles. Vpon this riuers side are huge and solitarie woods haunted with lions and other wilde beastes. The inhabitants of this towne vse to transport coales by sea to Arzilla and Tangia, whereupon the Moores vse for a common prouerbe, A ship of Harais, which they alleage when a man after great brags and promises performeth trifles; for these ships hauing sailes of cotton, which make a gallant shew, are laden with nought but base coales: for the territorie of this citie aboundeth greatly with cotton.

Of the towne called Casar Elcibir, that is,  
The great palace.

**T**His large towne was built in the time of *Mansor* the king and patriarke of Maroco; of whom this notable historie is reported, namely, that the said king, as he rode on hunting, being separated from his companie by tempestuous weather, came vnto a certaine vnknown place, where if he continued all night, fearing least he should die in the fens, he looked round about him, and at length espied a fisher getting of eeles: can you, my friend (quoth the king) conduct me to the court? The court (saith the fisher) is ten miles distant. Howbeit, the king intreating hard to be conducted;

*A pleasant discourse how king Mansor was entertained by a fisher.*

ted; if king *Mansor* himselfe were present (quoth the fisher) I could not at this present conduct him, for feare least he should be drowned in the fennes. Then answered *Mansor*: what hast thou to doe with the kings life or safetie? Marie (quoth the fisher) I am bound to loue the king as well as mine owne life. Then haue you obtained some singular benefite at his hands, said the king. What greater benefit (quoth the fisher) can be expected at the kings hand, then iustice, loue, and clemencie, which he vouchsafeth vnto his subiects; by whose fauour and wisdom I fillie fisher with my poore wife and children liue a most quiet and contented life, so that I can euen at midnight haue free egress and regress vnto this my cottage amidst these vallies and desert fennes, no man lying in wait to doe me iniurie? But (gentle Sir) what-foeuer you be, if you please to be my guest for this night, you shall be right welcome, and to morrow morning betimes I will attend vpon you at your pleasure. Then the king went vnto the fishers cottage, where after his horse was provided for, the fisher caused some eeles to be roasted for his supper, while he sate drying of his garments by the fire: but the king not being contented with this fare, demanded if his host had any flesh in the house: Sir (quoth he) I haue a shee-goate and a kid, and they are all my substance of cattell: but because by your countenance you seeme to be some honourable personage, I will aduenture my kid for your sake; and so without any more words he caused his wife to kill it & roste it. Thus the king remained the fishers guest all night: and the next morning about sun-rise, being scarcely gone out of the doores with his liberall host, he espied a great companie of his gentlemen and hunters whooping and hallowing for their king amidst the fennes, but when they saw him, they all greatly reioiced. Then *Mansor* turning him to the fisher, told him what he was, promising that his liberallitie should not be vnrewarded. Neere vnto the place were certaine faire castles and palaces, which the king at his departure gaue vnto the fisher in token of thankfulness; and being by the fisher requested, for declaration of his farther loue, to enuiron the said buildings with wals, he condescended thereunto. From thencefoorth the fisher remained lord and gouernour of that new citie, which in proesse of time grew so large, that within these fewe yeeres it contained fower hundred families. And because the soile neer vnto it is so fertile, the king vsed to make his aboad thereabout all summer time, which was a great benefite to the towne. By the walles of this towne runneth the riuer Luccus, which sometimes encreaseth so, that it floweth to the citie-gates. In this towne are practised diuers manuarie artes and trades of merchandize: also it hath many temples, one college of students, and a stately hospitall. They haue neither springs nor wels, but onely cisternes in stead thereof. The inhabitants are liberall honest people, though not so wittie as some others. Their apparell is but meane, being made of cotton-cloth, and wrapped often about their bodies. In the suburbs are great store of gardens replenished with all kinde of fruits. Their grapes are vsauourie, because the soile is fitter for medow-ground. Euery munday they haue a market vpon

*Read Orosius lib. 2. de rebus gestis Eman. concerning this towne.*

the next plaine, whither their neighbours the Arabians vsually resort. In the moneth of May they goe forth of their towne a fowling, and take great store of turtles. Their ground is exceeding fruitfull, and yeeldeth thirtie fold increase: but it cannot be tilled for fixe miles about, because the Portugals garrison at Arzilla which is but eightene miles distant, doth so molest and endamage them: whom likewise the gouernour of this towne with three hundred horsemen continually encountereth, and sometime proceedeth euen to the gates of Arzilla.

*Of the region of Habat.*

**T**His region beginneth southward from the riuer of Guarga, and bordereth northward vpon the Ocean, westward it adioineth vnto the fennes of Argar, and eastward it abutteth vpon those mountaines which are next vnto the streites of Gibraltar. In bredth it stretcheth fower score, and in length almost an hundreth miles. The fruitfulness of the soile, and the abundance of corne cannot easily be described: it is almost a perpetuall plaine, watered with many riuers: howbeit heretofore it hath bene more noble and famous, by reason of the ancient cities built partly by the Romans & partly by the Goths: and I thinke it to be the same region which *Ptolemy* calleth Mauritania; but since Fez was first built, it hath fallen into woonderfull decay. Moreover *Isidore* the founder of Fez leauing ten sonnes behinde him, bestowed this region vpon the eldest: afterward ensued a rebellion of diuers Mahumetan heretiques and lords, one faction of whom suing for aide at the gouernour of Granada, and others seeking aide from certaine gouernours of Cairaoan, they were all vanquished and put to flight by the Mahumetan patriark of Cairaoan: who hauing thus subdued the region, left it vnder garrison and returned home. Afterward the great chancelour of Cordoua leuying an huge armie, conquered all this countrey euen to the borders of the region of Zab. Fiftie yeeres after king *Ioseph* of the Luntunc family, chasing out the people of Granada, obtained the faide prouince by force: and last of all the king of Fez enioied it.

*Of Ezaggen a towne of Habat.*

**T**His towne was built by the ancient Africans vpon the side of a mountaine, almost ten miles distant from Guarga: all which distance being plaine ground, serueth for corn-fields and gardens: howbeit the hilles are farre more fruitfull. This towne is distant from Fez almost three-score and ten miles, and containeth to the number of fise hundred families, out of the territorie whereof there is the summe of tenne thousand ducates yeerely gathered for tribute, with which tribute the gouernour of the same towne is bound to maintaine on the kings behalfe fower hundred horsemen, for the defence of the whole region. For they are often molested with inua-

sions

sions of the Portugals, who proceed wasting and spoiling the countrey, sometimes fortie, and sometimes fiftie miles. Here is but little ciuility to be found, neither are the people but homely apparelled, though they be verie rich. They haue a priuilege granted them by the ancient kings of Fez to drinke wine, which is otherwise forbidden by the law of Mahumet, and yet none of them all will abstaine from drinking it.

*Of the towne called Bani Teude.*

**T**His ancient towne was built also by the Africans on a large plaine by the riuer of Guarga, fise and fortie miles from the citie of Fez. In the prosperitie thereof it contained to the number of eight thousand families, but afterward it was so destroyed by the wars of the Patriarkes of Cairaoan, that now the towne wall is only remaining. At my being there I sawe diuers monuments and sepulchres of noblemen, and certaine conducts curiously built of excellent marble. From this towne mount Gamera is almost fowerteene miles distant: the fieldes adiacent being good arable, and very fruitfull.

*Of the towne of Mergo.*

**M**Ergo standing vpon the toppe of a mountaine is from Bani Teude about ten miles distant. Some thinke that the Romans were founders of this towne, because there are found vpon the ancient ruines certaine Latine letters ingrauen. But now it is quite destitute of inhabitants, howbeit vpon the side of the same mountaine standeth another small towne inhabited with weauers of course cloth; from whence you may behold the riuer Subu to the south, and the riuer Guarga to the north, from which riuers the faide towne is fise miles distant. The inhabitants loue to bee accounted gentlemen, albeit they are couetous, ignorant, and destitute of all goodnes.

*Of the towne of Tansor.*

**T**Ansor standeth vpon a little hill, almost ten miles from Mergo, and containeth three hundreth families, but very fewe artificers. The inhabitants are rude and barbarous peop'le, hauing neither vineyardes nor gardens, but onely exercising husbandry, and possessing abundance of cattle. This towne standeth in the midde way between Fez and mount Gamera, which (I thinke) is the occasion, that the inhabitants are so couetous and void of humanitie.

*Of the towne of Agla.*

**T**His ancient towne was built by the Africans vpon the banke of the riuer Guarga. The fruitfull fields thereof are manured by the Arabians: but the towne it selfe hath bene so wasted with warre, that nowe there



there is nothing to be seene but in a few places the ruines of houses & wals, & certaine pits. In the suburbs there is euery weeke a great market, wherunto the next Arabians vsually resort; and so do some merchants of Fez likewise, to buie oxe-hides, wooll, and waxe, which are the principall commodities of that place. Hereabouts keepe great store of lions, but they are by nature so fearefull, that they will flee at the voice of a childe: hence cometh the prouerbe so rife in Fez; A lion of Agla; which they applic vnto such a one as maketh great brags, and is but a meere dastard.

The occasion  
of a prouerbe.

Of the castle of Narangia.

**T**He castle of Narangia built by the Africans vpon a little hill not farre from the riuer Luccus, is almost ten miles distant from Ezaggen, It hath most fruitfull corn-fields, but no plaines belonging vnto it. Along the riuers side are huge deserts, wherein grow great store of wilde fruits, especially cherries, such as the Italians call *Ciriegie marine*. This castle was surprised and sacked by the Portugals in the yeere of the Hegeira 895. which was in the yeere of our Lord, 1486.

Of the Isle of Gesira.

**T**He Isle of Gesira lying not farre from the mouth of the riuer Luccus, is distant from the sea about ten, and from Fez about an hundred miles. There was in times past a little ancient towne vpon this Island, which was abandoned when the Portugals first made warrs vpon Barbarie. About the saide riuer are many deserts, but very fewe corn-fields. In the yeere of the Hegeira 894. the king of Portugall sent hither a great armie, which being landed on the Isle, the generall of the field built a strong fort thereupon, by means whereof he hoped to be free from the enemies inuasion, and to enioy the fields adiacent. But the king of Fez, namely his father that now reigneth, foreseeing the damage that he shoulde sustaine, if he permitted the saide fort to be finished, leuied a mightie armie to withstand the Portugals proceedings. Howbeit, so great was the force of their ordinance, that the Moores durst not approach within two miles of the Portugal campe. Wherefore the Fessan king being almost out of hope, was perswaded by some that were about him to stoppe vp the riuer with postes and raftes two miles from the Island: by which means the Moores being defended, and hauing cut downe all the woodes adioining, the Portugals perceiued the passage of the riuer in short time to be choaked and stopped vp with great trees, and that there was no possibilitie for them to depart. Then the king hoping easily to ouercome the Portugales, determined to assaile their fort: but considering he could not do it without great slaughter of his people, he couenanted with the Portugall generall, that besides a great summe of money payde vnto him, the saide generall shoulde

obtaine

obtaine of the Portugall king to haue certaine daughters of the king of Fez his gouernour (which were at that time prisoners in Portugall) to be restored, and that then he would freely dismisse him and his companie: which being done, the Portugall armie returned home.

Of the towne of Basra.



His towne containing almost two thousand families, was built by Mahumet the sonne of *Idris*, which was the founder of Fez, vpon a certaine plaine betweene two mountaines, being distant from Fez about fower score, and from Casar southward almost twentie miles. And it was named Basra for the memorie of a citie in Arabia Foelix called by that name, where *Hali* the fourth Mahumetan patriarke after *Mahumet*, and great grandfather vnto *Idris* was slaine. It was in times past enuironed with most high and impregnable wals: and so long as it was gouerned by the posteritie of *Idris*, the people were verie ciuill; for *Idris* his successours vsed alwaies to remaine there in sommer time, by reason of the pleasant situation of the place, the hills and valleies being beautified with sweete gardens, and yeelding corne in abundance: and that both by reason of the vicinitie of the towne, and of the neighbour-hood of the riuer Luccus. Moreouer, in old time this towne was verie populous, being adorned with many faire temples, and inhabited with most ciuill people: but the family of *Idris* decaying, it became a pray vnto the enemy. At this present the ruines of the wals are onely to be seene, and certaine forlorne gardens, which, because the ground is not manured, bring forth naught, but wilde fruits.

Of the towne called Homar.

**T**His towne was built by one *Hali* a disciple of the foresaid Mahumet vpon a little hill, and by a riuers side, being situate about fourteene miles to the north of Casar, and sixteen miles to the south of Arzilla: which although it be but a small towne, yet is it well fortified and fairely built, and enuironed with fruitfull fieldes, vineyardes, and gardens replenished with woonderfull varietie of fruits. The inhabitants being most of them linnen-weauers, gather and prouide great store of flaxe. But euer since the Portugals woon Arzilla, this towne hath remained desolate.

A description of the citie of Arzilla.

**T**He great citie of Arzilla called by the Africans Azella, was built by the Romans vpon the Ocean sea shore, about seuentie miles from the straits of Gibraltar, and an hundred and fortie miles from Fez. It was in times past subiect vnto the prince of Septa or Ceuta, who was tributarie to the Romans, and was afterward taken by the Goths, who established the

saide

An attempt  
and defeat of  
the Portugals.

\* 1562.

saïd prince in his former gouernment: but the Mahumetans wan it in the yeere of the Hegeira 94. and helde the same for two hundred and twenty yeeres, till such time as the English at the persuation of the Goths besieged it with an huge armie; and albeit the Goths were enemies to the English, because themselves were Christians, and the English worshippers of idols, yet the Goths perswaded them to this attempt, hoping by that meanes to draw the Mahumetans out of Europe. The English hauing good successe tooke the citie, and so wasted it with fire and sword, that scarce one citizen escaped, so that it remained almost thirtie yeeres voide of inhabitants. But afterward when the Mahumetan patriarks of Cordoua were lords of Mauritania, it was againe reedified, and by all meanes augmented, enriched and fortified. The inhabitants were rich, learned, and valiant. The fields adiacent yeeld graine and pulse of all sorts in great abundance, but because the towne standeth almost ten miles from the mountaines, it sustaineth great want of wood; howbeit they haue coales brought them from Harais, as is aforesaid. In the yeere of the Hegeira 882. this citie was suddenly surprised and taken by the Portugalles, and all the inhabitants carried prisoners into Portugall, amongst whom was *Mahumet* the king of Fez that now is, who together with his sister being both children of seuen yeeres old, were taken and led captiue. For the father of this *Mahumet* seeing the prouince of Habat reuolt from him, went and dwelt at Arzilla, the very same time, when *Esserif* a great citizen of Fez, hauing slaine *Habdulac* the last king of the Marin familie, was by the fauour of the people aduanced vnto the Fessan kingdome. Afterward one *Saie Abra* being pricked forward with ambition, went about to conquer the citie of Fez, and to make himselfe king; howbeit *Esserif* by the aduise of a certaine counsellour of his, being couzin vnto *Saie*, vanquished and put to flight the saide *Saie* to his great disgrace. Moreouer while *Esserif* had sent his saide counsellour to Temesna, to pacifie the people of that prouince being about to rebell, *Saie* returned; and hauing for one whole yeere besieged new Fez with eight thousand men, at length by treason of the townesmen he easily wan it, and compelled *Esserif* with all his familie, to flee vnto the kingdome of Tunis. The same time therefore that *Saie* besieged Fez, the king of Portugall (as is aforesaid) sending a flecte into Africa, tooke Arzilla, and then was the king of Fez that now is with his yoong sister caried captiue into Portugall, where he remained seuen yeeres, in which space he learned the Portugall-language most exactly. At length with a great summe of money his father ransomed him out of Portugall, who afterward being aduanced to the kingdome, was by reason of his long continuance in Portugall called king *Mahumet* the Portugall. This king afterward attempted very often to be auenged of the Portugals, and to reouer Arzilla. Wherefore suddenly encountering the saide citie he beat down a great part of the wall, and entring the breach, set all the captiue-Moores at libertie. The Christians retired into the castle, promising within two daies to yeeld vnto the king. But *Pedro Namarro* comming in the meane season with

The taking of  
Arzilla by the  
English.

Arzilla taken  
by the Portu-  
gals.

Habdulac the  
last king of the  
Marin familie.

Read Osorius  
lib. 5. de rebus  
gestis Eman.

a great flect, they compelled the king with continuall discharging of their ordinance, not onely to relinquish the citie, but also to depart quite away with his whole armie: afterward it was so fortified on all sides by the Portugals, that the saide king attempting often the recouerie thereof, had alwaies the repulse. I my selfe seruing the king in the foresaid expedition could find but fise hundred of our companie slaine. But the warre against Arzilla continued from the yeere of the Hegeira 914. to the yeere 921.

John Leo serued  
the king of Fez  
in his wars a-  
gainst Arzilla.

### Of the citie of Tangia.

**T**He great and ancient citie of Tangia called by the Portugals Tangiara, according to the fond opinion of some historiographers, was founded by one *Sedded* the sonne of *Had*, who (as they say) was emperour ouer the whole world. This man (say they) determined to build a citie, which for beautie might match the earthly paradise. Wherefore he compassed the same with walles of brasse, and the roofes of the houses he couered with gold and siluer, for the building whereof he exacted great tributes of all the cities in the world. But the classick and approved authors affirme that it was built by the Romanes vpon the Ocean sea shore, at the same time when they subdued the kingdome of \*Granada. \* Or Barica. From the Streites of Gibraltar it is distant almost thirtie, and from Fez an hundred and fiftie miles. And from the time that the Goths were first lordes of Granada, this citie was subiect vnto *Septa* or *Centa*, vntill it and Arzilla were woon by the Mahumetans. It hath alwaies beene a ciuill, famous, and well-peopled towne, and very stately and sumptuously built. The field thereto belonging is not very fertill, nor apt for tilth: howbeit not far off are certaine vallies continually watered with fountaines, which furnish the saide citie with all kinde of fruits in abundance. Without the citie also growe certaine vines, albeit vpon a sandie soile. It was well stored with inhabitants, till such time as Arzilla was surprized by the Portugals: for then the inhabitants being dismaied with rumours of warres, tooke vp their bag and baggage and fled vnto Fez. Whereupon the king of Portugall his deputie at Arzilla sent one of his captaines thither, who kept it so long vnder the obedience of the king, till the king of Fez sent one of his kinsmen also to defend a region of great importance neere vnto the mountaines of Gumera, being enemie to the Christians. Twentie fise yeeres before the Portugall king wan this citie, he sent forth an armada against it, hoping that the citie being destitute of aide, while the king of Fez was in warres against the rebels of Mecnase, would soone yeeld it selfe. But contrarie to the Portugals expectation the Fessan king concluding a sudden truce with them of Mecnase, sent his counsellour with an armie, who encountering the Portugals, made a great slaughter of them, and amongst the rest slue their generall, whom he caused to be caried in a case or sacke vnto new Fez, and there to be set vpon an high place where all men might behold him. Afterward the king of Portugall sent a new

new supply, who suddenly assailing the citie in the night, were most of them slaine, and the residue enforced to flee. But that which the Portugall-king could not bring to passe with those two Armadas, he achieved at length (as is aforesaid) with small forces and little disadvantage. In my time *Mahomet* king of Fez left no meanes vntempted for the recouerie of this citie, but so great alwaies was the valour of the Portugals, that he had ever ill successe. These things were done in the yeere of the Hegeira 917, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1508.

*Of the towne called Casar Ezzaghir, that is,  
the little palace.*



His towne was built by *Manfor* the king and Patriarke of Maroco vpon the Ocean sea shore, about twelue miles from Tangia, and from Septa eightene miles. It was built (they say) by *Manfor*, because euerie yeere when he passed into the Province of Granada, hee was constrained with his whole armie to march ouer the rough and ragged mountaines of Septa, before he could come vnto the sea shore. It standeth in an open and pleasant place ouer against the coast of Granada. It was well peopled in times past, part of the inhabitants beeing weauers and merchants, and the rest mariners, that vsed to transport the wares of Barbarie into Europe. This towne the king of Portugall tooke by a sudden surprise. And the Fessan king hath laboured by all meanes to recouer it, but euer with ill successe. These things were done in the yeere of the Hegeira 863.

*Casar Ezzaghir  
taken by the  
king of Portu-  
gall.*

*Of the great citie of Septa.*



Septa, called by the Latines, *Ciuitas*, and by the Portugals, *Seupra*, was (according to our most approoued Authors) built by the Romanes vpon the streits of Gibraltar, being in olde time the head citie of all Mauritania; wherefore the Romanes made great account thereof, inso much that it became verie ciuill, and was thoroughly inhabited. Afterward it was woone by the Gothes, who appointed a gouernour there; and it continued in their possession, till the Mahumetans inuading Mauritania surprised it also. The occasion whereof was one *Julian* Earle of Septa; who being greatly injured by *Roderigo* king of the Gothes and of Spaine, ioyned with the infidels, conducted them into Granada, and caused *Roderigo* to loose both his life and his kingdome. The Mahumetans therefore hauing taken Septa, kept possession thereof on the behalfe of one *Elqualid*, sonne of *Habdulmalic* their Patriarke, who then was resident at Damasco, in the yeere of the Hegeira 92. From thencefoorth till within these fewe yeeres, this citie grew so ciuill and so well stored with inhabitants, that it prooued the most worthie and famous citie

*The entrance of  
the Moores into  
Granada.*

citie of all Mauritania. It contained many temples and colledges of students, with great numbers of artizans, and men of learning and of high spirit. Their artizans excelled especially in workes of brasse, as namely in making of candlesticks, basons, standishes, and such like commodities, which were as pleasant to the eie, as if they had beene made of siluer or gold. The Italians haue great cunning in making of the like, but their workmanship is nothing comparable to theirs of \*Septa. Without the citie are diuers faire villages and granges, especially in that place which for the abundance of vines is called The vineyards: howbeit the fields are verie barren and fruitles, for which cause their corne is exceeding deere. Both without and within the citie there is a pleasant and beautifull prospect to the shore of Granada vpon the streits of Gibraltar, from whence you may discern living creatures, the distance being but 12. miles. Howbeit this famous citie not many yeeres since was greatly afflicted by *Habdulmumen* the king and patriarke: who hauing surprised it, razed the buildings, and banished the principal inhabitants thereof. And not long after it sustained as great damage by the king of Granada, who (besides the foresaide harmes) carried the nobles and chiefe citizens captiues into Granada. And lastly in the yeere of *Mahomet* his Hegeira 818, being taken by a Portugall-armada, all the citizens did abandon it. *Abu Sahid* being then king of Fez, and a man of no valour, neglected the recouerie thereof: but in the midst of his dauncing and disport being aduertised that it was lost, he would not so much as interrupt his vaine pastime: wherefore by gods iust iudgement, both himselfe and his sixe sonnes were all slaine in one night by his Secretarie, in whom he reposed singular trust, because hee would haue deflowered the said Secretaries wife. These things came to passe in the yeere of the Hegeira 824. Afterward, the kingdome of Fez being eight yeeres destitute of a king, a sonne of the murdered king whom he begot of a Christian woman, and who the same night that his father was slaine fled vnto Tunis, succeeded in the gouernment: this was *Habdulac* the last king of the Marin family, who likewise (as is aforesaide) was slaine by the people.

*\* Or Septa.*

*The streits of  
Gibraltar from  
Septa but 12.  
miles broad.*

*Septa taken by  
the Portugals.*

*Abu Sahid  
king of Fez, and  
his sixe sonnes  
slaine all in one  
night.*

*Of the towne of Tetteguin, now called Tetuan.*



His towne being built by the ancient Africans eightene miles from the streits of Gibraltar, and sixe miles from the maine Ocean, was taken by the Mahumetans at the same time when they woon Septa from the Gothes. It is reported that the Gothes bestowed the gouernment of this towne vpon a woman with one eie, who weekly repairing thither to receiue tribute, the inhabitants named the towne Tetteguin, which signifieth in their language an eie. Afterward being often assayed and encountered by the Portugals, the inhabitants forooke it, and it remained fower score and fiftene yeeres desolate: which time being expired, it was reedified and replanted a new with inhabitants

inhabitants by a certaine captaine of Granada, who together with his king being expelled thence by *Ferdinando* king of Castile, departed vnto Fez. This famous captaine that shewed himselfe so valiant in the warres of Granada was called by the Portugals Almandali. Who hauing obtained the gouernment of this towne, and gotten licence to repaire it, enuironed the same with new wals, and built an impregnable castle therein compassed with a deepe ditch. Afterward making continuall warre against the Portugals, he extremely molested and endamaged their townes of Septa, Casar, and Tangia: for with three hundred valiant horsemen of Granada he made daiely incursions and inroades vpon the Christians, and those that he tooke, he put to continuall labour and toile about the building of his forts. Vpon a time I my selfe traouelling this way saw three thousand Christian captiues, who being clad in course sacke-cloth, were constrained in the night to lye fettered in deepe dungeons. This captaine was exceeding liberall vnto all African and Mahumeran strangers that passed by: howbeit within these few yeeres one of his eies being thrust out with a dagger, and the other waxing dim with age, he deceased; leauing the towne after his death vnto his nephew, who was a most valiant man.

*Of the mountaines of Habat.*

**A**mongst the mountaines of Habat there be eight more famous then the rest, all which are inhabited by the people of Gamera, who vse one generall forme and custome of liuing: for all of them maintaine Mahumets religion, albeit they drinke wine contrarie to his precept. They are proper men of personage and much addicted to industrie & labour, but for the wars they are verie vnfit. Subiect they are vnto the king of Fez, who imposeth such heauie tribute vpon them, so that besides a few (of whom we will speake hereafter) the residue are scarce able to finde themselves apparell.

*Of mount Rahona.*

**T**his mountaine being neere vnto Ezaggen, containeth in length thirtie miles, and in breadth twelue miles. It aboundeth with oyle, hony, and vines. The inhabitants are principally imployed about making of sope and trying of waxe. Vines they haue great store both browne and white. They pay vnto the king of Fez for yeerely tribute three thousand ducates, which being allowed vnto the gouernour of Ezaggen, he maintaineth fower hundred horsemen in the kings seruice.

*Of the mountaine called Beni-Fenescare.*

**T**his mountaine of Fenescare adioyning vnto mount Rahon, is about siue and twentie miles long, and eight miles broad. It is better peopled then

then Rahon, hauing many leather-dressers, and weauers of course cloth, and yeelding great abundance of waxe. Euery saturday they haue a great market, where you may finde all kinde of chapmen and of wares; insomuch that the Genoueses come hither to buy ox-hides and waxe, which they conuey into Portugall and Italy. Out of this mountaine is yeerely collected for tribute the summe of sixe thousand ducates, three thousand whereof are allowed vnto the gouernour of Ezaggen, the residue being payd into the kings exchequer.

*Of the mountaine called Beni-Haros.*

**T**his mountaine standing neer vnto Casar extendeth northward eight, and westward 20 miles. It containeth but sixe miles only in bredth. It was wont to be well peopled and inhabited with gentlemen, who, when the Portugals woon Arzilla, cruelly vsurping ouer the people, compelled them to flee and leaue the mountaine desolate. There are at this present certaine cottages vpon the mountaine; but all the residue lyeth wast. While this mountaine continued in good estate, it allowed yeerely vnto the gouernor of Casar three thousand ducates.

*Of mount Chebib.*

**V**pon this mountaine are sixe or seuen castles inhabited with ciuill and honest people: for when the Portugals wan Tangia, the citizens fled vnto this mountaine being but twentie miles distant. The inhabitants are perpetually molested with the Portugals inuasions: the tributes of this mountaine being halfe diminished since the losse of Tangia, waxe euery day woofe and woofe, because the garrison is thirtie miles distant, and cannot come to succour them so often as the Portugals come to waste and spoyle their territories.

*Of the mountaine called Beni Chessen.*

**T**his mountaine is of an exceeding height, and very hard to be encountered: for besides the naturall fortification thereof, it is inhabited with most valiant people. These inhabitants being oppressed with the tyrannie of their gouernours, rose vp at length in armes against them, & brought them to great miserie and distresse. Whereupon a yoong gentleman, one of their said gouernours, disdaining to submit himselfe vnto the yoke of his inferiours, went to serue in the king of Granada his warres, where being trained vp a long time in martiall discipline against the Christians, he prooued an expert warrior: and so at length returning vnto one of his native mountaines, he gathered a certaine troupe of horsemen, and valiantly defended the said mountaine from the Portugals inuasions: whereof the king of Fez



being aduertised, sent him an hundred and fiftie crossebowes: which he imployed to the subduing of that mountaine, and to the conquest of the mountaines of his enemies. But after he began to vsurpe the kings tribute in the same mountaine, the king waxing wroth sent forth an huge armie against him. Howbeit vpon his repentant submission, the king pardoned him, and ordained him gouernour of Seufauon, and of all the region adiacent. After him succeeded in the same gouernment one of the lineage of *Mahumet*, and of *Idris* the founder of Fez. This man became very famous among the Portugals, and by reason of his nobilitie (for he was of the familie called *Heli-benres*) he grew vnto great renowme.

*Of mount Angera.*

**I**T standeth southward of Casar the lesse almost eight miles, being tenn miles long and three miles broad. The soile thereof is exceeding fruitful, and in times past greatly abounded with woods, which being cut downe by the inhabitants, were sent to Casar for the building of ships: which at that time had a great fleete belonging therunto. This mountaine likewise yeelded abundance of flaxe; and the inhabitants were partly weauers and partly mariners. Howbeit when the foresaid towne of Casar was woon by the Portugals, this mountaine also was forsaken by the inhabitants: and yet at this day all the houses stand still, as if the inhabitants had not forsaken it at all.

*Of mount Quadres.*

**T**His high mountaine standing in the midst betweene Septa and Tetteguin, is inhabited with most valiant and warlike people, whose valour sufficiently appeered in the warres betweene the king of Granada, and the Spanyards; where the inhabitants onely of this mountaine preuailed more then all the armed Moores beside. Vpon the said mountaine was borne one called by them *Hellul*: this *Hellul* atchieued many woorthie exploits against the Spanyards; the historie whereof is set downe partly in verse and partly in prose, and is as ripe in Africa and Granada, as is the storie of *Orlando* in Italie. But at length in the Spanish warre (wherein *Ioseph Enefir* king and patriarke of Maroco was vanquished) this *Hellul* was slaine in a castle of Catalonia, called by the Moores, The castle of the eagle. In the same battell were slaine threescore thousand Moores, so that none of them escaped saue the king and a few of his nobles. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 699, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1160. From thenceforth the Spanyards had alwaies good successe in their warres, so that they recovered all those cities which the Moores had before taken from them. And from that time till the yeere wherein king *Ferdinando* conquered Granada, there passed (according to the Arabians account) 285. yeeres.

Threescore  
thousand  
Moores slaine.

of

*Of the mountaine called Beni Guedarseth.*

**T**His mountaine standing not farre from Tetteguin (although it be not very large) is well fraught with inhabitants. The people are very warlike, being in pay vnder the gouernour of Tetteguin, whom they greatly honour and attend vpon him in all his attempts against the Christians: for which cause they pay no tribute vnto the king of Fez, vnlesse it be for their fieldes, which is very little. They reape much commoditie out of those mountaines, for there groweth great abundance of boxe, whereof the Fessan combs are made.

*A description of Errifone of the seven regions of Fez.*

**W**estward this region beginneth neere vnto the streites of Gibraltar, and extendeth eastward to the riuer of Nocor, which distance containeth about an hundred and fortie miles. Northward it bordereth vpon the Mediterran sea, and stretcheth fortie miles southward vnto those mountains which lie ouer against the riuer Guarga and the territorie of Fez. This region is very vncuen, being full of exceeding colde mountaines and waste deserts, which are replenished with most beautifull and straight trees: Here is no come growing, they haue great store of vines, figs, oliues, & almonds. The inhabitants of this region are valiant people, but so excessiuely giuen to drinking, that they scarcely reserue wherewithall to apparell themselves. Head-cattell they haue but fewe: howbeit vpon their mountaines they haue great plentie of goates, asses, and apes. Their townes are but few: and their castles and villages are very homely built without any plancher or stories, much like to the stables of Europe, and are couered with thatch or with the barke of trees. All the inhabitants of this region haue the balles of their throat-pipes very great, and are vnciuill and rude people.

*Of the towne of Terga.*

**T**His small towne (as some thinke) built by the Goths vpon the shore of the Mediterran sea, is distant from the streites of Gibraltar about fower score miles, and containeth to the number of fiew hundred families. The towne wall is of no force. The inhabitants are most part of them fishers; who getting great abundance of fish, salt them, and carrie them to sell almost an hundred miles southward. This towne was in times past well stored with people, but since the Portugals entered the same region, it hath fallen greatly to decay. Not farre from this towne groweth abundance of wood vpon the ragged and cold mountaines. And albeit the inhabitants are valiant, yet are they rusticall and void of all humanitie.

Of Bedis, otherwise called Velles de Gamera.



His ancient towne built vpon the Mediterran sea shore, & sealed by the Spaniards *Velles de Gamera*, containeth about fixe hundred families. Some writers there are that affirme it to be built by the Africans, and others by the Gothes; so that it remaineth as yet vncertaine who were the true founders thereof. It standeth betweene two high mountaines: and not farre from it there is a faire and large valley, from whence cometh a little river or streame to the towne, alwaies when it raineth. In the midst of the towne standeth the market place, which containeth great store of shops. Here is also a verie stately temple to be seene. Water for drinke is exceeding scarce among them, for they are all constrained to resort vnto one pit or well, being in the suburbs, nere vnto the sepulchre of a certaine man, that was in times past very famous among them. Howbeit in the night it is dangerous to fetch water from thence, because it is so full of blood-suckers or horse-leeches. The townesmen are of two sorts: for some be fishers, and the residue are pirates, which daily doe great harme vnto the Christians. Vpon the mountaines grow great store of wood, verie commodious for the building of ships and of galleies. The inhabitants of which mountaines are almost wholly employed about carrying of the said wood from place to place. They have very little corne growing, for which cause most of them eate barley bread. Their principall foode are certaine fishes (which the Italians call *Sardelli*) together with other like fishes. They haue such abundance of fish, that one man alone is not able to draw vp a net; wherefore whosoever will assist the fishermen in that busines, are rewarded with good store of fishes for their labour; yea sometimes they will freely bestow fishes vpon such as passe by. They salt the foresaid *Sardelli*, and send them to the mountaines to be sold. In this towne there is a long street inhabited with Iewes, wherein dwell sundry vintners that sell excellent wines. So that in calme euenings the citizens vse to carrie wine aboard their barks in the sea, and to spend their time in drinking and singing. In this towne standeth a faire castle, but not strong, wherein the gouernour hath his aboad. And nere vnto this castle the said gouernour hath a palace, whereunto belongeth a most pleasant garden. Vpon the shore the gouernour buildeth galleies and other ships wherewith they greatly molest the Christians. Whereupon *Ferdinando* king of Spaine taking a certaine Iland within a mile of the towne, built a fort thereon, and so planted it with ordinance and souldiers, that neither their temples nor themselves walking in the streets were free therefrom, but were daily slaine. Wherefore the gouernour of the towne was constrained to craue ayde from the king of Fez, who sent out a great armie against the Christians; but they were partly taken, and partly slaine, so that verie few escaped backe vnto Fez. The Christians kept this isle almost two yeeres: and then

it

it was betrayed by a false trecherous Spaniard (who slew the gouernour of the isle, because he had taken his wife from him) into the Moores possession, and all the Christians were slaine: not a man of them escaped, saue onely the Spanish traitour, who in regard of his treason was greatly rewarded, both by the gouernour of Bedis, and also by the king of Fez. Being at Naples I heard the whole relation of this matter from a certaine man that was present at all the former exploits, who said that they were done about the yeere of our Lord 1520. But now the said isle is most diligently kept by a garrison of souldiers sent from Fez: for Bedis is the neereft hauen-towne vnto Fez vpon the Mediterran sea shore, although it be an hundred and twenty miles distant. Euerie yeere or euerie second yeere the Venetian galleies vse to resort vnto this isle, and to exchange wares for wares with the inhabitants, or sometimes to buy for readie money: which wares the Venerians transport vnto Tunis, Venice, Alexandria, and sometime to Barutto.

Of the towne of Telles.

His towne being built vpon the Mediterran sea shore is almost fixe miles distant from Bedis: the hauen thereof is very commodious and much frequented by ships in fowle and tempestuous weather. Not farre from this towne are diuers mountaines and waste deserts growing full of pine trees. In my time it remained voide of inhabitants, by reason of certaine Spanish pyrates which haunted the same; and now there are but a few poore cottages of fishers, who standing in dayly dread of the Spaniards, keepe continuall and circumspect watch to see if they can escrie any ships making towards them, which if they do, they flee forthwith vnto the next mountaines, bringing from thence a sufficient number of armed men to withstand the attempts of the Spaniards or Portugals.

Of the towne of Tegassa.

His towne, though it be but little is well stored with inhabitants, and standeth vpon a riuers side, about two miles from the Mediterran sea. Families it containeth to the number of fise hundredth, the buildings thereof being very rude and homely: all the inhabitants are fishers and seafaring men, who from thence carrie victuals vnto other cities; for their own towne being enuironed with mountaines and woods, they haue no corne at all. Howbeit certaine vines there are, and very fruitfull trees, without which the whole region were in a miserable case. Besides barley-bread the inhabitants haue nought to liue on, sauing a fewe little fishes and onions. I my selfe coulde hardly for one day endure the extreme stinking sinell of their fishes, which stinch miserablie infecteth the whole prouince.

of

## Of the towne of Gebha.

**G**ebha is a little towne walled round about, and built by the Africans vpon the Meditteran sea shore. From Bedis it is aboute fower and twentie miles distant. Sometimes it hath inhabitants and sometimes none, according to the custome of that region. All the fields adiacent are vsuite for corne, being full of fountaines and woods. Here also are certaine vines and other fruits, but no buildings of any account.

## Of the towne of Mezemme.

**I**t is a very large sea-towne standing vpon a certaine hill which bordereth vpon the prouince of Garet. Neere vnto this towne lieth a verie large plaine, the length whereof stretching southward is eight and twentie, and the breadth almost ten miles; and through the midst of it runneth the riuer called Nocore, which diuideth the region of Errif from that of Garet. This plaine is occupied by certaine Arabian husbandmen, who reape such plenty of corne there, that they are constrained to pay about fife thousand bushels a yeere vnto the gouernour of Bedis. This citie was wont in times past to be well peopled, and was the metropolitan of the whole region, although it were continually molested with inconueniences. For first it was almost vtterly destroyed by the patriarke of Cairaoan: who, because the townesmen refused to pay him his wonted tribute, burnt it downe, and beheaded the gouernour thereof: whose head was carried to Cairaoan vpon the pike of a iaueline. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 318. From thencefoorth for fifteene yeeres after it remained destitute of inhabitants: and then vnder the same patriarke the foresaide towne was by certaine noblemen inhabited a newe. Lastly it was taken by a certaine great man of Cordoua. He seeing this citie stande within fower-score miles of his confines (for so broad is the sea betweene Malaga in Granada, and this part of Barbarie) began to demaund tribute of the citizens: which when they refused to pay, he tooke their towne with a small number of men: for the patriark could not in so short space succour it, by reason that Cairaoan is distant from thence aboute \*three and twentie hundreth miles. Wherefore this towne being taken and vtterly razed, the gouernour thereof was sent captiue vnto Cordoua, where he spent the residue of his daies in prison. And now the wals of this towne are onely to be seene. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 892. Now let vs speake somewhat of the mountaines of Errif.

\* Here seemeth  
to be an error in  
the originall.

## Of mount Benigarir.

**T**his mountaine is inhabited by certaine people which came first from the mountaines of Gamera. It standeth neere vnto Terga, and is ten miles long, and almost fower miles broad. Vpon this mountaine are great store of woods, as likewise abundance of vines and oliues. The inhabitants are miserable and poore people. Cattell are very scarce among them: they vse to make much wine and sodden must. Neither haue they any store of barly growing vpon this mountaine.

## Of mount Beni Mansor.

**T**his mountaine containeth in length fifteene, and in bredth almost fife miles. Vpon this mountaine are great store of woods and fountaines: All the inhabitants are most valiant, and yet poore and miserable people, for the whole mountaine yeeldeth nothing but vines: they haue indeede some small number of goats. Euery weeke they haue a market, whereunto is brought nothing but garlike, onions, raisins, salt fishes called before Sardelli, together with some corne and panicke, whereof they make bread. This hill is subiect to the gouernour of Bedis.

## Of mount Buccuia.

**T**his mountaine is fower teene miles long, and almost eight miles broad. The inhabitants are richer and somewhat better apparelled then they of other mountaines, & possesse great store of horses. Corne it yeeldeth in abundance: neither are the people constrained to pay any great tribute, by reason of a certaine holy man buried at Bedis, and borne vpon this mountaine.

## Of mount Beni Chelid.

**B**y this mountaine lieth the high way from Bedis to Fez. It is a verie cold place, and containeth great store of wood and fountaines. It yeeldeth no corne, but vines onely. The inhabitants being subiect to the gouernour of Bedis, are by reason of continuall exactions so impouerished, that they are faine to rob and steale for their liuing.

## Of mount Beni Mansor.

**T**his mountaine extendeth eight miles, standing an equall distance from the sea with the mountaines aforesaid. The inhabitants are valiant and stout people, but too much addicted to drunkennes. Wine they haue great store, and but little corne. Their women keepe goates and spinne

spinne vpon the distaffe both at one time: the greater part of whom will not refuse the dishonest company of any man.

*Of mount Beni Ioseph.*

**T**HE length of this mountaine is twelue miles, and the bredth about eight miles. The inhabitants are poore, and basely apparelled: neither haue they any corne but panicke, whereof they make blacke and most vsauorie bread. They liue also vpon onions, and garlike. Their fountaines are very muddie. They haue great store of goates, the milke whereof they keepe as a most precious thing.

*Of mount Beni Zaruol.*

**V**Pon this mountaine is great store of vines, olines, and other fruites. The inhabitants are poore miserable people, being subiect to the gouernour of Senfaoen, who exacteth so great tribute at their handes, that all which they can scrape and get out of the mountaine will hardly maintaine them. Euery weeke they haue a market, wherein nothing is to be solde, but onely dried figs, raisins, and oile. Likewise they vse to kill their hee and thee goates, whose flesh is so vsauorie, that it cannot be eaten, vnlesse it be fried.

*Of mount Beni Razin.*

**T**His mountaine bordereth vpon the Mediterran sea, not farre from Terga. The inhabitants liue a secure and pleasant life; for the mountaine is impregnable, and aboundeth with all kinde of graine, neither are they constrained to pay any tribute at all. They haue likewise good plentie of olines and wine; and their ground is exceeding fruitfull, especially vpon the side of the mountaine. Their women partly keepe goates, and partly till the ground.

*Of mount Senfaoen.*

**T**HERE is no mountaine in all Africa for pleasant situation comparable to this: hereon standeth a towne inhabited with all kinde of artificers and merchants. Vpon this mountaine dwelleth one called *Sidi Heli Berrased*, being lord ouer many mountaines. This *Sidi Heli* brought some ciuillie into this mountaine, rebelled against the king of Fez; and maintained continuall warre against the Portugals. The inhabitants of the villages of this and the foresaid mountaines, are free from all taxation and tribute, blasse they serue vnder their captaine as well for horsemen as for footemen. Some heere groweth small store; but great plentie of flaxe. There are great woods, and many fountaines vpon this hill: and the inhabitants go all depcely apparelled.

*Of mount Beni Gebara.*

**T**His mountaine is very steepe, and of a woonderfull height, out of the foote whereof spring certaine riuers. Vines and figges here are great store, but no corne at all: and the inhabitants weare most base attire. They haue abundance of goats, & oxen of so little a stature, that a man would take them to be calves of halfe a yeere olde. Euery weeke they haue a market, being furnished with very few commodities. Hither doe the merchants of Fez resort, and the muletters or carriers, which conueie fruits out of this mountaine vnto Fez. In times past it was subiect vnto a certaine prince of the king of Fez his kinred: and there were collected out of this mountaine almost two thousand ducates of yeerely tribute.

*Of mount Beni Ierso.*

**T**His mountaine in times past was exceedingly well peopled. Heere was likewise a faire colledge built, wherein the Mahumetan lawe was publicly taught, for which cause the inhabitants were freed from all tributes and exactions. Afterward a certaine tirant being assisted by the king of Fez, made this mountaine to become tributarie vnto him; but first he put the inhabitants to flight, and then destroyed the colledge, wherein were founde bookes woorth more then fowre thousand ducates, and the learned and famous men he cruelly put to the sword. This was done in the 918. yeere of the Hegeira, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1509.

*Of mount Tezarin.*

**T**His mountaine called by the inhabitants Tezarin, standeth neer vnto the foresaid Beni Ierso, & aboundeth greatly with fountaines, deserts, & vineyards. Vpon the top thereof stand diuers ancient buildings, which (so farre forth as I can coniecture) were erected by the Romans. And here (as is before signified) certaine fond people continually search in caues and holes of the earth for the Romans treasure. All the inhabitants of this mountaine are most ignorant people, and greatly oppressed with exactions.

*Of mount Beni Busibet.*

**T**His is a most cold mountaine, and therefore it yeeldeth neither corne nor cattell, both by reason of the extreme coldnes, and the barrennes thereof. Moreouer the leaues of the trees are not fit for goates to feede vpon. They haue so great plentie of nuts, that they abundantly furnish the citie of Fez, and all other neighbour cities and townes therewith. All their grapes are blacke, whereof they make a certaine pleasant meate called Zibibbo.



Zibibbo.

Zibibbo. They make likewise great store of must and wine. They are clad in certaine woollen cokes or mantles, such as are vsed in Italy: these mantles haue certaine hoods, which couer their heads and visages so, that you can scarce discerne them to be men: and they are particoloured with blacke and white spots. In winter the merchants that resort vnto this mountaine to carrie away nuts and raisins vnto Fez, can scarce finde any meate to eate, for there is neither corne nor flesh, but onely onions and certaine salt fishes, which are extreme deere. They vse likewise to eate sodden must and beanes dressed after their manner, and this is the daintiest fare that this mountaine can afford; and their sodden must they eate with much bread.

*Of mount Beni Gualid.*

**I**T is an exceeding high and steepe hill, and the inhabitants are very rich, for of their blacke grapes they make the foresaid meate called Zibibbo. Almonds, figges, and oliues they haue in great abundance: neither pay they any tribute vnto the king of Fez, but onely each family one fourth part of a ducate, to the end they may haue free libertie to buie and sell in Fez market. And if any citizen of Fez doth them any wrong, when they take him or anie of his kined in their mountaine, they will not suffer him to returne home to Fez, till sufficient recompence be made. These people go decently apparelled, and they haue a priuilege granted, that whatsoeuer persons are banished out of Fez, may freely remaine in their mountaine; yea, they will bestow their liuing gratis vpon such banished persons, so long as they continue amongst them. And doubtles if this mountaine were subiect vnto the king of Fez, it would afford him yeerely for tribute fixe thousand ducates: for it containeth mo then fixe hundreth rich families.

*Of mount Merniza.*

**T**His mountaine standeth iust by the former, the inhabitants being endued with the same nobilitie, libertie, and wealth, that the people of the former are endued with. The women of this mountaine for any light iniurie offered by their husbands, leauing foorth with their saide husbands and children, will depart vnto some other mountaine, and seeke them newe paramours fit for their humor. For which cause they are at continuall warre one with another: neither will they be reconciled till he that is last possessed of the woman pay her former husband all such money as he spent in the solemnizing of her marriage: and for this purpose they haue certaine iudges, that make their poore clients spend almost all their whole substance.

*Of mount Hangustian.*

**I**T is an exceeding high and a cold mountaine, containing great store of springs, and abundance of vines bearing blacke grapes, together with plen-

plentie of figs, of honie, and of quinces: howbeit the sweetest and fairest quinces grow vpon a plaine at the foote of the hill. Likewise they are well stored with oile, and are free from all tribute, and yet there is not one of them, but in token of a thankfull minde will sende great gifts vnto the king of Fez: hence it is that they may freely and securely traffique with the people of Fez, of whom they buie great store of corne, wooll, and cloth. They are most ciuilly and decently apparelled, especially such as dwell vpon the principall part of this mountaine, who are most of them either merchants or artificers, and a great many of them gentlemen.

*Of Mount Beni Iedir.*

**T**His is a great and well peopled mountaine, but it yeeldeth nought but grapes, whereof they vse to make the foresaid Zibibbo and wines. The inhabitants were in times past free from all tribute; howbeit in regard of their daily robberies and outrages committed against other people, the gouernour of Bedis being aided with some souldiers of Fez, subdued them all, and depriued them of their libertie: in this mountaine there are about fiftie farmes or granges, which scarcely pay fower hundred ducates for tribute.

*Of Mount Lucai.*

**T**His mountaine is of a wonderfull height, and verie difficult to ascepd. The inhabitants are exceeding rich, hauing great abundance of raisins, figs, almonds, oyle, quinces, and pome-citrons: and dwelling but siue and thirtie miles distant from Fez, they carrie all their fruits and commodities thither. They are almost all gentlemen, and verie proude and high minded, so that they would neuer pay any tribute at all: for they know that their mountaine is so fortified by nature, that it cannot easly be subdued: here likewise all such as are banished out of Fez, except onely adulterers, are friendly entertained: for the inhabitants are so ieaious, that they will admit no adulterers into their societie. The king of Fez granteth them many priuileges and fauours, in regard of the great commodities which he reapeth out of their mountaine.

*Of mount Beni Guazemall.*

**I**His mountaine is almost thirtie miles long, and about fifteen miles broad: it is diuided into three parts, and betweene this and the mountaines aforesaid run certaine little riuers. The inhabitants are most valiant & warlike people, but extremely oppressed and burthened with exactions by the gouernor of Fez, who euery yeere demaundeth of this mountaine for tribute eighteen thousand

thousand ducates: the mountaine indeed aboundeth with grapes, oliues, figs, and flaxe, whereby great summes of mony are raised; howbeit whatsoever they can gather goeth presently to the gouernour of Fez, who hath his officers and receiuers in the mountaine, which doe miserably oppresse and bribe the inhabitants: in this mountaine are a great number of villages and hamlets, that containe some an hundred, and some two hundred families and aboue: of most expert & trained soldiers they haue aboue fise & twentie thousand, & are at continuall war with those that border vpon them. But the king of Fez for those that are slaine on both parts requireth great sums of mony, so that he gaineth much by their dissensions. In this mountaine there is a certaine towne indifferently well peopled, and furnished with all kinde of artificers; whereunto the fields belonging maruellously abounde with grapes, quinces, and pome-citrons, all which are sold at Fez: here are likewise great store of linnen weauers, and manie iudges and lawyers. They haue also a good market, whereunto the inhabitants of the neighbour mountaines resort. Vpon the top of this mountaine there is a certaine caue or hole that perpetually casteth vp fire. Some woondering greatly at the matter, haue cast in wood, which was suddenly consumed to ashes: I my selfe neuer saw the like miracle in any other place, so that a great manie thinke it to be hell-mouth.

*Of mount Benigueriaghell.*

**T** standeth neer vnto the mountaine last mentioned, and yet the inhabitants of these mountaines are at continuall warre and discord. At the foot of this mountaine there is a large plaine which extendeth to the territorie of Fez, and through the same runneth that riuer which the inhabitants call Guarga. This mountaine greatly aboundeth with oyle, corne, and flaxe, for which cause here are great store of linnen-weauers. The greatest part of al their commodities is gathered for the kings vse, so that they which otherwise would prooue exceeding rich, becom by this meanes starke beggers, and that especially by reason of the courtiers continuall extortions. They are people of an ingenuous and valiant disposition. Souldiers they haue almost twelue thousand, and to the number of threescore villages.

*Of mount Beni Achmed.*

**T**his mountaine is eightene miles long and seuen miles broad. It is verie steepe and containeth many waste deserts, and yeeldeth likewise great store of grapes, oliues, & figs: howbeit the soile is not so apt for corne. All the inhabitants are continually oppressed with the exactions of the Fessan king. At the foote of this mountaine are diuers springs and small streames, the water whereof is muddie and vnpleasant in taste, for in regard

gard of the nature of the sande or earth it tasteth of chalke. There are many in this place, the balles of whose throte-pipes are verie great and sticke farre out, like vnto those abouementioned. All of them drinke pure wine, which being boyled will last fiftene yeeres, howbeit they boyle not all their wine, but some they keepe vnboyled, and they yeerely make great quantity of boyled wine, which they vse to put in vessels, that are narrow at the bottome, and broad at the top. They haue euerie weeke a great market, where wine, oyle, and raisins are to bee sold. The people of this mountaine likewise are extreme poore and beggerly, as a man may coniecture by their apparell. They haue had continuall and ancient quarrels among themselues, which make them oftentimes fall together by the eares.

*Of mount Beni Ieginesen.*

**T**his mountaine bordereth vpon Beni Achmed, & stretcheth in length almost ten miles. And betweene it and mount Beni Achmed runneth a certaine small riuer. The inhabitants are too much addicted to drunkenness, by reason that their wines are so excellent. No fruits grow vpon this mountaine but onely great abundance of grapes. Goates they haue which liue continually in the woods, neither haue they any other flesh to eate but goates-flesh. I my selfe had great acquaintance with the inhabitants, by reason that my father had some possessions vpon the mountaine: but he hardly got any rents or money at their hands: for they are the worst paymasters that euer I knew.

*Of mount Beni Mesgaldia.*

**T**his mountaine bordereth vpon the mountaine last mentioned, and vpon the riuer of Guarga. The inhabitants make great store of liquid sope, for they know not how to make hard sope. At the foote of this mountaine there is a large plaine possessed by certaine Arabians, who haue often combates with them of the mountaine. They pay yeerly to the K. of Fez an huge summe of mony, and it is a woonder to see with what new exactions they are daily burthened. In this mountaine are many Doctors of the Mahumetan lawe, and diuers inferior students: who put the inhabitants to great damage. Themselues forsooth will drinke wine, and yet they perswade the people that it is vnlawfull for them to drinke it, albeit some do giue them little credit. The inhabitants of this mountaine pay in respect of others no great tribute, and that perhaps, because they maintaine the foresaid Doctors and students.

## Of mount Beni Guarnad.

**T**His mountaine standeth so neere vnto the territorie of Fez, that they are diuided onely by a riuer. All the inhabitants make sope, out of which commoditie the king of Fez reapeth fixe thousand ducates of yeerely tribute. The villages of this mountaine are about fiue and twentie in number. All the sides thereof bring foorth corne and cattell in great abundance, sauing that they are sometimes destitute of water. The inhabitants are verie rich and carrie all kinde of wares to Fez, where they gaine exceedingly by them. This mountaine yeeldeth nothing, but is commodious for mans vse. From Fez it is almost ten miles distant.

## Of Garet, one of the seuen Prouinces of the Fessan kingdome.



Auing described all the chiefe townes and mountaines of the prouince of Errife, it now remaineth that we say somewhat of Garet, which is the sixt Prouince of Fez. This Prouince beginneth westward from the riuer Melulo, and bordereth eastward vpon the riuer Muluia; southward it is enclosed with the mountaines next vnto the Numidian desert, and northward it extendeth to the Mediterran sea. The bredth of this region along the sea shore stretcheth from the riuer Nocor to the foresaide riuer of Muluia: the southern bredth is bounded with the riuer Melulo, & westward with the mountaines of Chauz. The length of this Prouince is fiftie, and the bredth fortie miles. The soyle is rough, vntilled, and barren, not much vnlike to the deserts of Numidia. The greater part hath beene destitute of inhabitants, especially euer since the Spaniards tooke two of the principall townes in all the Prouince, as we will in due place record.

## Of the towne of Melela in Garet.



His great and ancient towne built by the Africans vpon a certaine bay or haven of the Mediterran sea, containeth almost two thousand families. It was in times past well stored with inhabitants, as being the head-citie of the whole prouince. It had a great iurisdiction or territorie belonging thereto, and collected great abundance of yron and honie, whereupon the towne it selfe was called Mellela, which word in their language signifieth honie. In the haven of this towne they fish for pearles, and get great store of oysters wherein pearles doe breed. This towne was once subiect vnto the Goths, but fell afterward into the Mahumetans possession. The Goths being chased thence, fled ouer to Granada, which citie is almost an hundred miles distant, to wit, so farr as the bredth of

of the sea is ouer. In my time the king of Spaine sent a great armie against this towne: before the arriual whereof, the townesmen sent vnto the king of Fez for aide, who making warre as then against the people of Temesna, could send but small forces to succour them. Which the townesmen being aduertised of, and fearing least their small forces would prooue too weake for the Spanyards great armada, they tooke all the bag and baggage that they could carrie, and fled vnto the mountains of Buthoia. Howbeit the captaine of the Fessan soldiers, both to be reuenged vpon the townesmens cowardice, and also to leaue nothing for the Spanyards to inioy, burnt downe all the houses, temples, and buildings. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 896, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1487. But the Spanyards, for all they found the citie so wasted, would not depart thereupon, but first built a strong castle, and afterward by litle and litle repaired the towne-walles, and by that meanes haue kept possession thereof euen till this day.

*Mellela enjoyed  
and reedified  
by the Spaniards.*

## Of the towne of Chasafa.

**T**His towne is from Mellela about twenty miles distant. It hath beene a famous towne and strongly walled, with a royall haven belonging thereunto, which was yeerely frequented by Venetian ships. The townesmen haue alwaies had great traffique with the people of Fez, to the exceeding comoditie of them both. At length, while the king of Fez was seriously employed in the warres, Don *Ferdinando* king of Spaine came with great forces against it, and wan it very easily; for the inhabitants being aduertised of the Spanyards approach, betooke themselves wholly to flight.

*Chasafa taken  
by the Spaniards.*

## Of the towne of Tezzota.

**I**T standeth vpon an high grauelly hill almost fiftene miles from Chasafa, and hath but a narrow passage to ascend vp vnto it. Within the towne they haue no water but onely out of one cesterne. The founders hereof are reported to haue beene some of the familie of *Beni Marin*, before they attained vnto great dominions, and in this towne they laid vp their corne and other of their commodities. At that time were all the deserts of the region adiacent void of danger, for the Arabians were not as yet possessed of Garet: but after the familie of *Beni Marin* began to flourish, they left this towne and all the region of Garet vnto their neighbours, and went to inhabit better prouinces. Howbeit in the meane season *Ioseph* the sonne of king *Iacob* of the Marin-familie (I know not vpon what occasion) in a manner vtterly destroyed Tezzota: but after the Christians were possessed of Chasafa, one of the king of Fez his captaines being a valiant man and borne in Granada, got licence of his prince to reedifie it againe. The inhabitants of this reedified towne are Moores, and are at continuall warre with the Christians of Chasafa.

*Of the towne of Meggeo.*

**T**His little towne standeth vpon the top of an exceeding high mountaine being westward from Tezzora ten miles, & almost 6 miles southward of the Mediterran sea. Founded it was by the Africans, and is inhabited with people of a noble and liberall disposition. At the foote of this mountaine there are most fruitfull corne-fields. Likewise great store of iron is digged out of the mountaines adioining. The gouernment of this towne was committed vnto one of the blood-royall, namely of the familie of *Muschi-din*, whose father was not very rich, but being a weauer, he taught his sonne the same occupation. Afterward the valiant yoong man being aduertised of the estate and nobilitie of his ancestors, left his loome, and went to serue the king at Bedis, where he continued an horseman for a certaine time: but because he was an excellent musitian, the king loued him most intirely for his skill in musick. A while after, the gouernour of Tezzora requiring the kings aide against the Christians, this woorthie yoong gentleman with three hundred horsemen was sent to succour him, who as he had valiantly behaued himselfe oftentimes before, so now also he appeared to be a most resolute commander. Howbeit the king regarded not his valour so much as his excellent skill in musicke: which the yoong gallant disdainning, went at length to Garet vnto certaine gentlemen of his acquaintance there, who joining fiftie horsemen vnto him, appointed him gouernour of the castle of Meggeo: and afterward he was so wel beloued by all the inhabitants of the next mountaines, that each man according to his abilitie pleased and gratified him. At length the gouernour of Bedis hauing assembled an armie of three hundred horsemen and a thousand footmen, went about to expell the foresaid yoong gouernour out of Meggeo; who presently with that small troupe which he had, so valiantly encountered his enemies, that he put them to flight, and so growing famous in regarde of his manifold victories, the king of Fez bestowed very large reuenues vpon him (which he had giuen before-time vnto the gouernours of Bedis), to the ende he might wholly indue himselfe to expell the Spanyards out of that region. And of this noble gouernour the Moores learned great skill in warlike affaires. The king of Fez hath now doubled his yeerely allowance, so that at this present he hath two hundred horsemen at command, who are of greater force, then two thousand soldiers of any other capitaines thereabout.

*Of mount Echebdeon.*

**T**His mountaine extendeth from Chafasa eastward as farre as the riuer Mulua; and from the Mediterran sea southward it stretcheth vnto the desert of Garet. The inhabitants are exceeding rich and valiant; and the mountaine it selfe aboundeth with honie, barlie, and all kinde of cattel. Here  
are

are likewise great store of pleasant and greene pastures. But since that Chafasa was taken by the Spanyards, the people of this mountaine seeing that for want of soldiers they were not able to withstande the violence of their enemies, abandoned their owne mountaine, burnt their houses, and fled vnto the mountaines next adioining.

*Of mount Beni Sakid.*

**W**estward this mountaine extendeth almost to the riuer Nocor, for the space of fower and twentie miles. The inhabitants are rich, valiant, and liberal, and entertaine all strangers with great courtesie and bountie. They haue abundance of iron and of barlie; and their pastures are very commodious, abounding with store of cattel; and yet in those pastures are their iron-mines, where they sometime lacke water; neither pay they any tribute at all. Their houses that dig the iron are not farre distant from the iron-mines. This iron the merchants sell at Fez in rude lumpes, because they vse not to frame it into barres, neither indeede haue they the cunning so to frame it. Also they make culters, spades, and such like tooles of husbandrie, and yet their iron hath no Steele at all in it.

*Of mount Azgangan.*

**T**His mountaine beginning southward from Chafasa is inhabited with most rich and valiant people: for besides the great plentie of all things in the mountaine it selfe, it hath the desert of Garet adioining vpon it. The inhabitants of which desert haue great familiaritie and traffique with the people of the said mountaine: howbeit this mountaine also hath remained void of inhabitants, euer since the taking of Chafasa.

*Of mount Beni Teuzin.*

**T**He south part of this mountaine bordereth vpon the mountaine last mentioned, the length whereof from the desert of Garet to the riuer Nocor is almost ten miles; and on the one side thereof lie most beautifull & pleasant plaines. The inhabitants are all free, paying no tribute at all, and that perhaps, because they haue more soldiers, then Tezzora, Meggeo, and Bedis can afford. Moreouer they are thought in times past so to haue assisted the gouernour of Meggeo, that by their aide he attained vnto that gouernment. They haue alwaies been great friends with the people of Fez, by reason of that ancient familiaritie which they had, before Fez was gouerned by a king. Afterward a certaine lawyer dwelling at Fez, who was borne in this mountaine, so represented vnto the king the said ancient familiaritie, that he obtained freedome for his countie-men. At length also they were greatly beloued by the Marin-familie, perhaps because the mother of *Abu Sahid*



*fabid* the third king of the saide familie was borne of noble parentage in the foresaide mountaine.

*Of mount Guardan.*

**T**He north part of this mountaine ioineth vnto the former; and it stretcheth in length toward the Meditteran sea twelue miles, and in bredth to the riuier of Nocor, almost eight miles. The inhabitants are valiant & rich. Euery saturday they haue a great market vpon the banke of a certaine riuier: and hither resort many people from the mountaines of Garet, and diuers merchants of Fez, who exchange iron and bridles for oile, for in these mountaines grow great plentie of oliues. They haue little or no wine at all, notwithstanding they are so neere vnto mount Arif, where the people carouse wine in abundance. They were for a certaine time tributarie to the gouernour of Bedis, but afterward by the meanes of a learned Mahumetan preacher, the king granted them fauour, to pay each man so much tribute as themselves pleased. So that sending yeerely to the king some certaine sum of money, with certaine horses and slaues, they are put to no further charge.

*Of the extreme part of the desert of Garet.*

**T**He province of Garet is diuided into three parts: the first whereof containeth the cities and townes, the second the foresaide mountaines, (the inhabitants whereof are called Bottoia) and the thirde comprehendeth the deserts, which beginning northwarde at the Meditteran sea, and extending south to the desert of Chauz, are bounded westward with the foresaide mountaines, and eastward with the riuier of Muluia. The length of these deserts is 60. miles, and the bredth thirty. They are vnpleasant and dry, hauing no water but that of the riuier Muluia. There are many kinds of beasts in this desert, such as are in the Lybian desert next vnto Numidia. In sommer time many Arabians take vp their abode neere vnto the riuier Muluia; and so do another kinde of fierce people called Baralifa, who possesse great abundance of horses, camels, and other cattell, and maintaine continuall warre against the Arabians that border vpon them.

*A description of Chauz, the seuenth province of the kingdome of Fez.*

**T**His province is thought to comprehend the thirde part of the kingdome of Fez. It beginneth at the riuier Zha from the east, & extendeth westward to the riuier Guruigara: so that the length thereof is an hundred fower score and tenne; and the bredth an hundred threescore and ten miles: for all that part of mount Atlas which lieth ouer against Mauritania, ioineth vpon the bredth of this region. Likewise it containeth

containeth a good part of the plaines and mountaines bordering vpon Lybia. At the same time when *Habdulach* the first king of the Marin-familie began to beare rule ouer Mauritania and those other regions, his kinred began also to inhabite this region. This king left fower sonnes behinde him, whereof the first was called *Abubdar*, the second *Abuichia*, the third *Abu-fabid*, and the fourth *Jacob*: this *Jacob* was afterward chosen king, bicause he had vanquished *Muachidin* the king of Maroco, & had conquered the city of Maroco it selfe: the other three brethren died in their nonage: howbeit before *Jacob* had woon Maroco, the old king assigned vnto each of them three, one region a peece. The other three parts were diuided into seuen, which were distributed among the fower kinreds of the Marin-familie, and two other tribes or families that were growen in great league with the same familie: insomuch that this region was accounted for three regions. They which possessed the kingdome were ten in number, and the regions onely seuen. The foresaid king *Habdulach* was author of the saide partition, who left the region of Chauz after his decease in such estate, as we will foorthwith orderly describe.

*Of the towne of Teurerto.*

**T**His ancient towne was built vpon a mountaine by the Africans not farre from the riuier Zha. The fields hereof not being very large, but exceeding fruitfull, adioine vpon a certaine dry and barren desert. The north part of the same bordereth vpon the desert of Garet, and the south vpon the desert of Adurha: eastward thereof lieth the desert of Anghad, which is neere vnto the kingdome of \* Telenfin, and westward it is enclosed with the desert of Tastrata, which bordereth likewise vpon the towne of Tezza. This Teurerto was in times past a most populous and rich towne, and contained about three thousand families: heere also are stately palaces, temples, and other such buildings to be seene. The towne wall is built of most excellent marble. Euer since the Marin-familie enioied the westerne kingdome of Fez, this towne was an occasion of great warres: for the Marin-familie woulde haue it belong to the crowne of Fez: but the king of Telenfin chalenged it as his owne.

*Of the towne of Haddagia.*

**T**His towne was built by the Africans in manner of an Isle, for it is enuironed with the riuier Mululo, which not far from hence falleth into the riuier Muluia. It was in times past a most populous & flourishing towne: but after the Arabians became lords of the west, it fell by little and little to decay: for it bordereth vpon the desert of Dahra, which is inhabited with most lewde and mischieuous Arabians. At the same time when Teurerto was sacked, this towne was vtterly destroyed also, whereof nothing remaineth at this day but the towne wals onely.

**I**T standeth vpon a rocke by the riuer Mulua, fiftene miles distant from Teurerto. Here, as in a most impregnable place, the familie of Beni Marin laide their prouision of corne; when as they inhabited the deserts. Afterward it became subiect vnto *Abubenan* the fift king of the Marin-familie. It hath no great quantitie of arable or pasture ground belonging thereto: but it hath a most pleasant garden replenished with grapes, peaches, and figges, and enuironed on all sides with most thicke and shadie woods, so that it is a paradise in respect of other places thereabout. The inhabitants are rude and vnciuill people, neither do they ought, but keepe such corne as the Arabians commit vnto their custodie. If a man behold the castle a farre off, he woulde thinke it rather to be a cottage then a castle: for the wall being in many places ruined, maketh shew of great antiquitie, and the rooffe is couered with certaine blacke stones or slates.

**T**His ancient towne was built by the Africans vpon an exceeding high and impregnable mountaine, and is inhabited by certaine people of the familie of Zeneta. From the top of this mountaine diuers springs come running into the towne. From this towne the next plaines are distant almost fife miles, and yet they seeme to be but a mile and an halfe off; for the way is very crooked and winding. All the iurisdiction longing to this towne is onely vpon the topp of the mountaine, for the plaine vnderneath is vnpleasant and barren; except certaine gardens on either side of a little riuer running by the foote of the hill: neither haue the townesmen corne growing vpon the same hill sufficient for their prouision, vnlesse they were supplied with great store of corne from Tezza: so that this towne was built for a fortresse onely by the family of Marin, what time they were dispossessed of the western kingdome. Afterward it was inhabited by a certaine family called Beni Guertaggen, who are lords of the saide towne euen till this day. But when the Marin-family were expelled out of the kingdome of Fez, the next Arabians endeuoured to winne the towne: howbeit by the aide of one *Mose Ibnu Chamu*, who was one of the saide family, the Arabians were so valiantly resisted, that they concluded a truce with the people of Marin: and so *Mose Ibnu* remained gouernour of the towne; after whose death his sonne *Acmed* succeeded him, who treading iust in his fathers vertuous steps, kept the saide towne in great tranquillitie euen till his dying day. After him succeeded one *Mahumet*, a man highly renowned for his noble valour and great skill in martiall affaires. This *Mahumet* had before time conquered many cities and castles vpon the foote of the mount Atlas, southward whereof bordereth the land of Numidia. But hauing gotten this

towne in possession, he beautified it exceedingly with store of faire houses and buildings: likewise he greatly altered and reformed the gouernment of this towne; and shewed such extraordinarie curtesie vnto al strangers, that he grew very famous. Moreouer the saide *Mahumet* consulted howe to get *Tezza* from the king of Fez, & offered great matters to the performance of his intent: and that he might the easlier attaine his purpose, he determined to go to the market of *Tezza* in a simple habite, and so to make an assault vpon the capitaine of the towne: for he hoped that a great part of the townesmen, whom he knew to be his friends, woulde assist him in that enterprife. Howbeit this practise was at length discovered vnto the king of Fez (which king was called *Saich*, and was the first of the family of Quattas, and father vnto the king that now reigneth) who presently assembled an huge armie, \* 1526. and marched of purpose against Dubdu, vnto the foote of the mountaine he there encamped. The people of the mountaine hauing gathered an armie of fixe thousand men, hid themselves craftilie behinde the rockes, suffering their enemies to ascende by certaine difficult & streite passages, from whence they were sure they could hardly escape, & so at length they brake forth on the sodaine & encountered their said enemies being wearie of ascending; and because the way was very troublesome and narrow, the king of Fez his soldiers could not endure their assaults, but being constrained to giue backe, were moe then a thousand of them throwne downe headlong and slaine. In this skirmish were slaine in all to the number of three thousand Fessan soldiers: and yet the king not being dismaied with so great an ouerthrow, prepared forthwith a band of fife hundred crossebowes, and three hundred Harquebuziers, and determined to make a newe assault vpon the towne. But *Mahumet* seeing that he could no longer withstand the king, resolved to goe himselfe vnto him, that he might, if it were possible, obtaine peace, and to release his countrie from the furie of the enemy. Wherefore putting on the habit of an ambassadour, he went and deliuered a letter with his owne hand vnto the king. Which the king hauing perused, asked him what he thought concerning the gouernour of Dubdu? Mary I thinke (quoth *Mahumet*) he is not well in his wits, in that he goeth about to resist your Maiestie. Then said the king, if I had conquered him (as I hope to doe within these few daies) I would cause him to be dismembred and torne in peeces. But what if he should come hither (saith *Mahumet*) to submit himselfe, and to acknowledge his offence; might it then please the king to admit him into fauour? Then the king answered: I sweare vnto thee by this my head, that if he will come and acknowledge his fault in manner as thou hast said, I will not onely receiue him into fauour, but will espouse my daughters vnto his sonnes, and will bestowe most ample and princely dowries vpon them. But I am sure, being distraught of his wits (as thou hast said) that he will by no meanes come and submit himselfe. Then said *Mahumet*: he would soone come (I assure you) if it pleased the king to protest this for a certaintie vnto his nobles. I thinke (said the king) it hath beene

beene sufficiently protested and affirmed, sithence I haue bound it with a solemne oath in the presence of these fower; for heere stande my chiefe secretarie, the generall of my forces, my father in lawe, and the chiefe iudge and patriarke of Fez; the testimonie of which fower may well satisfie you. Whereupon *Mahumet* humbly falling at the kings feete: lo heere the man (quoth he) that submissively acknowledgeth his fault, and craueth the kings gracious pardon. With that the king himselfe lifted him from the ground, embraced him, and saluted him with friendly speeches. Then caused he both his daughters to be called, which he bestowed vpon *Mahumet's* sonnes: all which being done, he remooued his armie from that mountaine, and returned conquerour vnto Fez. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 904. which was in the yeere of our Lord 1495. And in the yeere of the Hegeira 921. I my selfe was at the citie of Dubdu, where I was most curteously entertained by the foresaid *Mahumet*, in regard of certaine letters of commendation which I brought from the king of Fez and his brother. Neither would he cease enquiring how all things passed at the king of Fez his court.

*Of the citie of Teza or Tezza.*

**T**His great, noble, and rich citie of Tezza was built by the Africans, fife miles from mount Atlas, being distant from Fez fiftie, from the Ocean an hundred and thirtie, and from the Mediterran sea seuen miles, and standing in the way from Garet to Chafasan. It contained in times past about fife thousand families: the buildings of this towne are not very stately, except noblemens palaces, colleges, and temples, which are somewhat beautifull. Out of Atlas springeth a little riuer which runneth through the chiefe temple of this citie: and sometimes it falleth out, that certaine people bordering vpon the citie, vpon some quarrell with the citizens will cut off this riuer from the citie, and turne the course thereof some other way, which breedeth great inconueniences vnto the citizens: for then they can neither builde houses, nor get any water to drinke, but onely corrupt water which they take out of certaine cisterns, for which cause they are often constrained to make a league with those borderers. This citie both for wealth, ciuilitie, and abundance of people is the thirde citie of all the kingdome, and hath a greater temple then that at Fez: heere are likewise three colleges, with diuers bath-stoues, and a great number of hospitals. Each trade and occupation hath a seuerall place in this citie, like as they haue in Fez: the inhabitants are of a more valiant and liberall disposition, then they of Fez: heere are also great store of learned and rich men: and the fieldes adiacent are exceeding fruitfull. Without the citie wals are verie large plaines, and many pleasant streames, that serue to water their gardens which are replenished with all kinde of fruits: heere are abundance of vines also yeelding verie sweete grapes, whereof the Iewes (being fife hundred families) make excellent wine, such as I thinke all Africa scarce affoordeth better.

towne

towne standeth a faire castle, where the gouernour hath his abode. The king of Fez assigned the gouernment of this towne vnto his second sonne; being rather a meete place for the kings owne residence, in regard of the whole some aire both in sommer and winter: heere were the nobles of the Marin family wont to remaine all summer, both in respect of the holesomenies of the place, and also that they might defend those regions from the Arabians dwelling in the deserts: which Arabians resorted yeerely to Tezza, to the end they might there furnish themselves with victuals and other necessaries, and brought dates thither from Segelmese to exchange for corne: the citizens also receiued of the Arabians for corne great summes of money, whereupon all of them in a manner grow exceeding rich, neither are they annoied so much with any inconuenience, as with durtye streetes in winter. I my selfe was acquainted in this citie with a certaine aged sire, whom the townesmen adored as if he had beene a god: he was maruelous rich both in fruits, grounds, and other commodities, which the people bestowed vpon him in great abundance. The citizens of Fez vsed to come fiftie miles (for so farre is Fez distant) onely to visite the saide olde man. My selfe conceived some great opinion of this aged sire: but after I had seene him, I could finde no such superexcellencie in him, saue onely that he deluded the fonde people with strange deuises. The iurisdiction of this citie is very large, containing diuers mountaines vnder it, as we will forthwith declare in order.

*Of mount Margara.*

**T**His mountaine is very high & difficult to ascend, both by reason of the vast deserts & the narrow passages, and it is distant from Teza almost fife miles: the top of this hill is most fruitfull ground, and full of cleere fountains: the inhabitants being burthened with no exactions, gather yeerely great store of corne, flaxe, and oile: they haue likewise abundance of cattell, and especially of goates: neither doe they any whit regard princes. Hauing vpon a day vanquished the king of Fez in battell, they carried a certaine captaine of Fez taken prisoner vnto the toppe of the hill, where in the kings owne presence they put him to a most cruell, and miserable death: whereupon the saide inhabitants haue beene at continuall discord with the people of Fez: they haue almost a thousand soldiers, and their mountaine containeth about fiftie villages and hamlets.

*Of mount Ganata.*

**T**His mountaine being as difficult to ascende as the former, standeth westward of Fez, almost fiftene miles: both the sides and top of this mountaine are very fruitfull for barley and flaxe: it is extended in length from east to west eight miles, and in bredth about fife miles: manie deserts here are, haunted with apes and leopards. The greater part of the

T I inhabitants

inhabitants are linnen-weauers; people they are of a franke disposition, neither can they till the fields adioining to their mountaine, by reason of their continuall diffension with the king of Fez, vnto whom they will pay no tribute nor custome at all; perhaps because of the strong situation of their mountaine, & for that it aboundeth with all things necessarie for mans sustentance: so that albeit this mountaine were besieged ten yeeres together, yet could it by no meanes be woon; neither is it euer destitute of water; for there-upon are two huge fountaines, which running downe into the plaine, become the heads of two riuers.

*Of mount Megefa.*

**T**His mountaine also is somewhat difficult to ascend: it is rough and full of woods, and yeeldeth little come, but great plentie of oliues. The inhabitants being most part weauers (for their soile yeeldeth good store of flaxe) are in the warres right valiant both on foote and horsebacke. Their faces are white, and that perhaps for the coldnes of the mountaine: neither doe these pay any tribute at all. Here also the exiles of Fez and Teza haue safe aboad, and albeit they haue great store of gardens and vineyards, yet are they no wine-drinkers. Soldiers they haue to the number of seuen thousand, and almost fortie villages.

*Of mount Baronis.*

**T**His mountaine standeth fiftene miles northward of Teza. The inhabitants are rich and mighty, and possesse great store of horses: neither doe they pay any tribute at all. This hill aboundeth with plentie of come, fruits, and grapes, and yet they make no wine at all. Their women are white and fat, and adorne themselves with much siluer. In this place also they entertaine exiles, but if any of them offer to haue familiaritie with their wiues, they punish him most seuerely; for of all iniuries they cannot indure this.

*Of the mountaine called Beni Guerrenage.*

**T**His is an exceeding high and impregnable mountaine, both in regard of the ragged rocks, and of the vast desertes, being distant from Teza about thirtie miles. This mountaine affoordeth great store of come, flaxe, oliues, pome-citrons, and excellent quinces. They haue likewise all sorts of cattell in great abundance, except horses and oxen. The inhabitants are valiant and liberall, and as decently apparelled as any citizens. The villages and hamlets of this mountaine are about thirtie fiue, and the soldiers almost three thousand.

*Of mount Gueblen.*

**T**His high, cold, and large mountaine containeth in length about thirtie, and in bredth about fiftene miles. Eastward it bordereth vpon the mountaine

mountaine of Dubdu, and westward vpon mount Beni-Iazga, and it is distant from Teza almost fiftie miles southward. At all times of the yeere the top of this mountaine is couered with snowe. The inhabitants in times past were most rich and valiant people, and liued in great libertie: but afterward when they began to play the tyrants, the people of all the mountaines adioining hauing gathered great forces, inuaded this mountaine, slew them euerie one, and so burned and wasted their townes and villages, that vnto this day it hath remained voide of inhabitants: except onely a few, which detesting the cruell tyrannie of their parents, conueied themselves and all their goods vnto the top of the mountaine, where they liued an abstinent and vertuous life; wherefore these were spared, and their posteritie remaineth in the mountaine till this present: they are all learned and of honest conuersation, and well esteemed of by the king of Fez: one of them in my time being a very learned and famous old man was vsed by the king of Fez, both about treaties of peace, and in other serious affaires: and in this man the king reposed all his confidence, as if he had beene some petie-god: for which cause all the courtiers had him in great detestation.

*Of mount Beni Isseten.*

**T**His mountaine is subiect vnto the gouernour of Dubdu, being inhabited with most base and beggerly people. Their houses are made of sea-rushes, and so likewise are their shooes made of such rushes when they travel any iourney, whereby a man may coniecture the miserable estate of this people. The mountaine yeeldeth nought but panicke, whereof they make bread and other victuals: but at the foote thereof are certaine gardens replenished with grapes, dates, and peaches. Their peaches they cut into fower quarters, and casting away the nuts or stones, they drie them in the sunne, and keepe them an whole yeere, which they esteeme for great dainties. Vpon this mountaine are many iron-mines: and they frame their iron in manner of horse-shooes, which serueth them sometimes in stead of money, whereof they haue great want in this mountaine, vnlesse the smithes by their arte keepe this money in store: who, besides horse-shooes, make certaine daggers with blunt points. Their women weare iron-rings vpon their fingers and eares for a great brauerie; but they are more basely apparelled then the men, and remaine continually in the woods, both to keepe goates, and to gather fewell. They haue neither ciuilitie nor learning, but liue after a brutish manner without all discretion and humanitie.

*Of mount Selego.*

**T**His woodie mountaine is full of pine-trees and fountaines. Their houses are not made of stone, but of sea-rushes, so that they may easily be remooued from place to place, which is very commodious to



the inhabitants, for euery spring they leaue the mountaine and descend into the vallies, from whence about the end of May they are expelled by the Arabians which inhabit the deserts: who by reason of their abundance of goates and other cattell, forsaking the said deserts, seeke vnto the fountaines and moist places: but in winter, because their camels are so impatient of cold, they resort vnto the woods, and warme regions. In this mountaine are great store of lions, leopards, and apes. And from the said mountaine runneth a certaine streame of water with such violence, that I haue seene a stone of an hundred pound waight carried with the force thereof: and here Subi taketh his beginning, which is the greatest riuer of all Mauritania.

*Of mount Beni Isaga.*

**T**He inhabitants of this mountaine are rich, and ciuil people: it standeth so neere the mountaine last mentioned, that they are onely separated with the foresaid riuer: and to the end they may the easilier passe from one mountaine to another, they haue made a certaine strange bridge in the midst, and that in manner following: on either side stand certaine postes, through the which runneth a rope vpon a truckle or pulley, vnto which rope is fastened a great basket, that will containe ten persons, and that in such sort, that so often as they will passe ouer to the opposite mountaine, they enter into the basket, and drawing the rope whereon it hangeth, they are easily carried aloft in the aire ouer the riuer by the helpe of the foresaid pulleyes, but sometimes with great hazard of their liues, especially if the basket or the rope be worne in any place: yea and the distance of place is often an occasion of great terror. In this mountaine there is great store of cattel, but little wood. It aboundeth likewise with most excellent fine wooll, whereof their women make cloth comparable vnto silke, which is solde at Fez for a great price. Here also is great plentie of oile. The king of Fez is lord of this mountaine, the yeerely tribute whereof amounting wel nigh to eight thousand duckats, is paid to the gouernour of old Fez.

*Of mount Axgan.*

**T**His mountaine bordering eastward vpon Seclgo, westward vpon mount Sofroi, southward vpon the mountaines by the riuer Maluia, and northward vpon the territorie of Fez, containeth in length fortie, and in bredth about fiftene miles. It is of an exceeding height, and so intolerably cold, that onely that side thereof is habitable which looketh towards Fez. It aboundeth greatly with oliues and other fruites: and from thence also run great store of fountaines into the plaines and fields adiacent, which are most fruitfull for barlie, flaxe, and hempe. In my time there were abundance of mulberie-trees planted vpon this plaine, which beare white berries, and bring forth silke-wormes. The inhabitants in winter dwell in most base cottages. Their

Their water is most extremely cold: insomuch that I my selfe knew one, who with drinking onely a cup thereof, suffered most intolerable gripings and tortures in his bowels for three moneths after.

*Of the towne of Sofroi.*

**T**His towne being situate at the foote of mount Atlas, and standing about fiftene miles southward of Fez, almost in the way to Numidia, was built by the Africans betweene two riuers, on either sides whereof grow great abundance of grapes and all kinde of fruites. The towne for fivemiles compass is enuironed with oliue-trees: but the fieldes are apt onely for hempe and barlie. The inhabitants are very rich, notwithstanding they goe in meane apparell, and greazie with oile, the occasion whereof is in that they carie oile vnto Fez to sell. There is no memorable thing in all their towne, saue onely a certaine temple, through the midst whereof runneth a large riuer; and at the doores standeth a fountaine of most pure water. Howbeit the greatest part of this towne is fallen to decay by the negligence of one of the kings brothers that now reigneth, & is ruined in many places.

*Of the towne of Mezdana.*

**T**His towne being situate likewise at the foote of Atlas, and standing about eight miles westward of Sofroi, is compassed with a faire wall, and albeit the houses thereof are but meane, yet euery one hath a fountaine of cleere water belonging vnto it. Most of the inhabitants are potters, because they haue such abundance of porcellan earth, whereof they make great store of earthen vessels, and send them to be sold at Fez, from whence they are but twelue miles distant southward. Their fields are most fruitfull for barlie, flaxe, and hempe: and they gather yeerely great abundance of figs, and of other fruites. In the Forrests about this towne, as also about the former, are marvellous store of lions, being not very hurtfull, for any man may driue them away with a little stick.

*Of the towne of Beni Bahlul.*

**T**His little towne standing vpon the side of Atlas towards Fez, is distant from Fez about twelue miles, not farre from the high way leading to Numidia. Through the midst of this towne run certaine little riuers from the next mountaine, neither doth it differ much in situation from Mezdana, sauing that the south frontier thereof is full of woods, whereout the inhabitants get timber and fowell, and carrie it vnto Fez to be solde. They are oppressed with continuall exactions of courtiers and others, neither haue they any ciuilitie at all among them.

## Of the towne called Ham Lisfan.

**T**His towne built by the Africans vpon a certaine plaine enuironed with mountaines, in the way from Sefroi to Numidia, borrowed the name thereof from the fountaine of an idoll, vpon the occasion following. At the same time while the Africans were as yet idolaters, they had a temple standing neere vnto this towne, whither at certaine times of the yeere resorted in the night great multitudes of people both men and women: where hauing ended their sacrifices, they vsed to put out their lights, and euerie man to commit adulterie with that woman which hee first touched. But the women which were present at this abominable sport, were forbidden to lie with any man for a yeere after: and the children begotten in the saide adulterie, were kept and brought vp by the priest of the temple, as being dedicated to sacred vses. In the same temple there was a fountaine which is to be seene at this day; but neither the temple it selfe, nor any monument or mention of the towne is remaining, because they were vitterly demolished by the Mahumetans.

## Of the towne of Mahdia.

**T**His towne being situate vpon a plaine, betwene mount Atlas, and certaine woods and riuers, is about ten miles distant from the former. The founder thereof was a certaine Mahumetan preacher of that nation, which was borne in the next mountaine: and it began to be built at the same time when the familie of Zeneta were lords of the Fessan kingdome. But when king *Iuseph* of the Luntune family got possession of the said kingdome, this towne was so wasted and destroyed, that the beautifull temple with some part of the towne wall onely was left standing, and the inhabitants became tributaries to the king of Fez: this was done in the yeere of the Hegira 515.

Of Sabblel Margas that is, The plaine of the  
valiant man.

**T**His plaine continueth in length fortie, and in bredth almost thirtie miles, neere vnto it are certaine mountains which border vpon mount Atlas: and in these mountaines are waste deserts full of goodly timber: here are likewise a great number of cottages inhabited with colliers for the most part, who carrie abundance of coales from the said mountaines to Fez. The lions that are here doe so haunt the poore colliers, that sometimes they deuour them. From hence likewise are carried to Fez store of excellent and great beames of timber. All the plaine is so barren and drie, that it will scarce bring forth any good thing at all.

of.

## Of the plaine called Angari Camaren.

**T**His plaine also is enuironed around with woodie mountaines, being a kinde of medowe-ground, for it is couered all ouer with most pleasant herbes and grasse: wherefore in the sommer time they vse to keepe their cattell heere, and to defend them with high and strong hedges from the fury of the lions.

## Of mount Centopozzi.



**P**on this high mountaine are great store of most ancient buildings, neere vnto the which there is a hole or drie pit of so great a depth, that the bottome thereof can in no wise be seene. Into this pit some mad fellowes will haue themselves let downe by ropes, carrying a candle or torch in their hands: and beneath they say it is diuided into manie rounes, and as it were, chambers; and last of all they come to a most large place hewen out of the rocke with instruments, and compassed about as it were with a wall, in which wall are fower doores which lead to other more narrow places, where they say that fountaines of springing water are. And sometimes it falleth out that some miserably ende their liues here: for if their lights chaunce to be blowne out with any sudden blast of wind, they can by no meanes finde the place where the rope hangeth, but are there constrained to die for extreme famine. It was told me by a certaine nobleman of Fez, that there were ten persons, who being desirous to see the woonders of this pit, and being prepared for the same purpose, went first three of them downe, who when they were come to the foresaid fower doores, two of them went one way, and the third went alone another way. And being thus diuided, after they had proceeded almost a quarter of a mile, there came great swarmes, of bats flying about their lights, insomuch that one light was put out; at length being come to the springing fountaines, they found there certaine white bones of men, and fixe or fixe candles, whereof some were new, and others were olde and worne with long lying there: but hauing found nothing but water in the said fountaines, they returned backe againe the same way that they came: and they had scarce gone halfe way, but their other light also was blowne out with a sudden blast. Afterward seeking earnestly vp and downe, and being wearie of manie falles that they caught among the rockes, they found that there was no hope of returne: wherefore in this desperate case committing themselves with teares into the hands of God, they vowed, if they once escaped this danger, neuer to aduensure any more. They that stood at the cause, though being ignorant of their companions mishappe expected their returne, and hauing staide ouer long, at length they let downe themselves by the rope, and began with lights to seeke their fellowes, making a

great

great noise, and at length found them heauie and sad. But the third who was wandring vp and downe those darke places, they could by no meanes finde, wherefore leauing him, they returned forth of the caue. And he that was left behinde heard at length a noise like the barking of little dogs, and shap-  
 \* The beast  
 called Dabab.  
 ping his course toward them, he found immediately fower strange, and (as it should seeme) new-borne beasts, after which followed the damme being not much vnlike to a shee-woolfe, sauing that she was bigger: wherefore he began exceedingly to feare; howbeit there was no danger, for being about to flee, the beast came towards him, fawning gently vpon him with her taile. And so at length, after long seeking, he found the holes mouth with great ioy, and escaped the danger. For within a while he saide that he began to see some glimmering of light, as they do which haue long bin in the darke. But after a certaine time this caue was filled with water vp to the top.

*Of the mountaine of rauens, called Cunaigel Gherben.*

**T**His mountaine standeth verie neere the former, and is full of woods and lions. Here is no citie, nor any other place of habitation, perhaps by reason of the extreme coldnes of the place. From this mountaine runneth a certaine little riuer: and here is a rocke of an exceeding height, whereup on keepe infinit swarms of crows and rauens, which some thinke to haue bene the occasion of the name of this mountaine. Sometime the terrible northerly windes bring such abundance of snow vpon this mountaine, that such as trauell from Numidia towards Fez loose their liues thereby, as hath bene signified in the first booke. Euerie sommer the Arabians next inhabiting, being called Beni Essen, vsually resort vnto this mountaine, in regard of the coole water and pleasant shadows, notwithstanding they knowe it to be haunted with great store of lions and leopards.

*Of the towne of Tezerghé.*

**T**His little towne was by the Africans built in manner of a fort vpon the side of a small riuer which runneth by the foote of the foresaid mountaine: both the inhabitants and their houses are most bare and destitute of all ciuilitie. Their fields being enuironed with the mountaines adioyning, bring forth some small quantitie of barley and peaches. The inhabitants are all subiect vnto certaine Arabians called Deul Chusein.

*Of the towne called Ymen Giunabe.*

**T**His auncient towne being destroyed by the Arabians was situate about twelue miles from Tezerghé vpon the south side of Atlas. It is so dangerous a place by reason of the often inuasions of certaine Arabians, that none almost dare trauell that way. There lyeth a way neere this towne, which

which a man may not passe without daunting and leaping, vnlesse he will fall into an ague: the certaintie whereof I haue heard many touch.

*Of mount Beni Merasen.*

**T**He inhabitants of this exceeding high and colde mountaine haue great plentie of horses and asses: here are store of mules likewise, which carie wares vp and downe without either bridle or saddle. Their houses are built not with walles of stone, but of rushes. The people are very rich, and pay no tribute to the king, perhaps in regard of the strong situation of their mountaine.

*Of mount Mesetaza.*

**T**His mountaine extendeth in length from east to west almost thirtie miles, and twelue miles in bredth. The west part thereof adioineth vpon the plaine of Edcesen, which bordereth vpon Temesna. It is like vnto the foresaid mountaine, both in regard of the inhabitants, and also for plentie of horses and mules. At Fez there are great store of learned men which were borne in this mountaine: they pay no tribute at all, but onely send the king such gifts as themselves please.

*Of the mountaines of Ziz.*

**T**Hele mountaines are thought to haue borrowed their name from a certaine riuer springing out of them. Eastward they begin at Mesetaza, and extend westward to the mountaines of Tedla and Dedis, southward they border vpon that part of Numidia which is called Segelmesse, and northward vpon the plaines of Edcesen and Guregra: in length they containe an hundred, and in bredth almost fortie miles: in number they are fiftene, being extremely cold and difficult to ascend, and sending forth many streames of water. The inhabitants are called Sanaga, and are men most patient of all boisterous and cold weather. They wear but one coate at all seasons of the yeere, ouer which they cast a kinde of cloke or mantle: their legs and feet they wrap in certaine clothes as it were in swathing bands, and they goe at all times bare-headed. In this mountaine are great store of mules, asses, and other cattell, but very few deserts. The inhabitants are a most lewd and villanous generation, being wholly addicted to theft and robbrie. They are at continuall dissension with the Arabians, and practise daily mischiefs and inconueniences against them, and to the end they may prouoke them to greater furie, they will sometimes throwe their camels downe headlong from the top of some high mountaine. In these mountaines there happeneth a certaine strange and incredible matter, for there are serpents so familiar with men, that at dinner-time they wil come like dogs & cats

*Domesticall and tame serpents.*

cats, and gather vp the crums vnder the table, neither wil they hurt any body, vnlesse they be offered some iniurie. The walles of their houses are made of chalke, and the roofes are couered with thatch. There are also another kinde of inhabitants in these mountaines, who possesse more droues of cattell then the former, and dwell for the most part in cottages made of rushes. And these carrie vnto Segelinefe butter and wool to be sold, but at that time only when the Arabians inhabite the deserts, for it often falleth out that they are encoûtered by them, & spoiled of their goods. These people are most valiant warriours, for they will fight euen to the last gaspe, rather then be taken of their enemies: they carrie fower or foue iauelins about with them, where-with they know right well how to defend themselves from the enemy. They fight alwaies on foote, neither can they be vanquished but with a great number of horsemen, and they vse to carrie swords and daggers with them also. In my time they obtained safe conduct of the Arabians, and the Arabians of them likewise, which was a cause, that the merchants of both partes trauelled more securely.

*Of the towne of Gerseluin.*

**T**His ancient towne was built by the Africans at the foote of one of the foresaid mountaines, not farre from the riuer of Ziz. It is enuironed with an impregnable and stately wall, the founder whereof was a certaine king of the Marin-familie. In regard of the walles and bulwarks it is a most beautifull towne. But being once entred thereinto, you shall see most base and beggerly houses, and scarce any inhabitants dwelling in them, and that by the iniurie of certaine Arabians, who when they revolted from the Marin-familie, tooke this towne and grievously oppressed the citizens. Their drie and barren fields lie open to the north. Vpon the riuer are diuers mills, and by the side thereof are many gardens replenished with grapes and peaches, which they vse to drie in the sunne, and to keepe an whole yeere. They haue great scarcitie of cattell, which causeth them to liue a most miserable life. This towne was built by the familie of Zeneta in stead of a fort, to the end it might be a place of refuge onely in their iournie to Numidia, but afterward it was surprised and vtterly destroyed by the familie of Luntuna. Here also are great store of such domesticall serpents, as we reported to be in the mountaines of Ziz.

*Here endeth the third booke.*

IOHN

# IOHN LEO HIS FOVRTH BOOKE OF

the Historie of Africa, and  
of the memorable things  
contained therein.

*A description of the kingdome of\* Telenfin.*

\* Or Tremizen.



His kingdome beginneth westward from the riuers of Zha & Muluia, eastward it bordereth vpon The great riuer, southward vpon the desert of Numidia, and northward vpon the Meditteran sea. This region was called by the Romanes Cæsaria, and was by them inhabited: howbeit after the Romanes were expelled, it was fullie possessed by the ancient gouernours thereof called Beni Habdulgua, and being a generation of the familie of Magraua. And it remained vnto them and their successors three hundred yeeres, vntill such time as a certaine mightie man called *Ghamrazen* the sonne of *Zeijen* tooke possession thereof. His posteritie changing at length their ancient name were called *Beni Zeijen*, that is, the sonnes of *Zeijen*: and they enioied this kingdome for the space almost of 380. yeeres. At length the kings of Fez of the Marin-familie greatly molested them, so that those ten kings which succeeded *Zeijen* were some of them vnfortunate in battell, some slaine, some taken captiue, and others expelled their kingdome, and chased to the next mountaines. Neither were they free from vexation of the kings of Tunis: howbeit the kingdome of Telenfin remained still to this familie, and they continued in peace for almost an hundred and twentie yeeres, being endamaged by no forren power; sauing that one *Abu Feris* king of Tunis, and his sonne *Hutmen* made them to pay tribute for certaine yeeres vnto Tunis, till the decease of the said *Hutmen*. This kingdome stretcheth in length from east to west 380. miles, but in bredth from north to south, that is, from the Meditteran sea to the deserts of Numidia not aboue foue and twentie miles: which is the occasion that it is so often oppressed by the Arabians inhabiting the Numidian deserts. The kings of Telenfin haue alwaies endeoured by great gifts to gaine the good will and friendship of the Numidians, but they could neuer satisfie their insatiable couetice. A man shall seldome trauell safely through this kingdome: howbeit here are great store of merchants, perhaps either because it adioineth to Numidia, or else for that the way to the land of Ne-gros



\* Or Oran.  
\* Or Mersal-  
cabir.

Abuchemmen  
king of Tremi-  
zen restored to  
his kingdom by  
the emperor  
Charles the first.

\* 1526

groslieth through it. It hath two most famous & frequented haven-townes, the one called \*Horam, and the other \*Marfa Elcabir, whither vse to resort great store of Genoueses, and Venetians. But afterward both these townes were taken by Don *Ferdinando* the Catholike king, to the great inconuenience of all this kingdom: for which cause the king then reigning called *Abuchemmen*, was expelled his kingdom and put to flight by his owne subiects: afterward *Abuzeijen* was restored to the kingdom, who had for certaine yeeres been imprisoned by his nephew *Abuchemmen*: howbeit he enioied the kingdom but a very short space. For he was at length miserably slaine by *Barbarossa* the Turke, who conquered the kingdom of Tremizen by force of war. Whereof *Abuchemmen*, that was expelled by his owne subiects, hauing intelligence, sent to craue aide of the emperor *Charles* the first, whereby he hoped to recouer his kingdom. Which request being granted, he leuiued a puissant armie, and made warre against *Barbarossa*, and hauing driuen him out, he recouered his kingdom, and seuerely punished them that had conspired his banishment. And then he gaue the Spanish soldiers their pay, sent the captaines home with great rewardes, and allowed *Charles* the emperor a large yeerely reuenue so long as he liued. After his decease succeeded his brother *Habdulla*, who neglecting the league made before betweene the emperor and his brother, and relying vpon *Soliman* the great Turke, refused to pay any more tribute vnto the emperor *Charles*, and hath kept possession of the kingdom, till \*this present. The greater part of this region is vntilled, drie, and barren, especially towards the south. Howbeit the sea coast is somewhat more fertill. The territorie adiacent to the citie of Telenfin is full of woods, sauing that the westerne part towards the sea is mountainous. Likewise the regions of Tenez and Alger containe mountaines abounding with all kinde of commodities. In this part are but few cities and castles, howbeit it is a most fruitfull and blessed place, as we will hereafter declare in particular.

#### Of the desert of Angad.

Great store of  
ostriches.

This barren, drie, and vntilled desert being vtterly destitute of water and wood, is situate vpon the westerne frontire of the kingdom of Telenfin; and extendeth in length fowerscore, and in bredth almost fiftie miles. Here are great store of roes, deere, and ostriches. Such merchants as trauell from Fez to Telenfin passe ouer this desert not without great danger, by reason of certaine Arabians which liue onely vpon theft and robbery, especially in winter, when as the soldiers appointed to defend the said desert from those lewd vagabonds, doe vsually retire themselues into Numidia. Many shepherds there are in this desert, who are daily vexed with multitudes of fierce lions, which sometime seaze not onely vpon cartell, but also vpon men.

of

#### Of the castle of Temzegzet.

This castle standing in the same place, where the foresaid desert adioineth vnto the territorie of Telenfin, and built by the Africans vpon a rocke, was in times past very strong, and often annoied by the people of Fez; for it standeth in the high way from Fez to Telenfin. Through the fields adiacent runneth a certaine riuer called in their language *Tefme*. The said fields adiacent sufficiently abound with all things necessarie for the sustenance of the inhabitants. Heretofore being subiect vnto the kings of Telenfin it well deserued the name of a citie, but since the Arabians got possession thereof, it hath prooued more like to a stable: for here they keepe their corne onely, and the naturall inhabitants are quite expelled by reason of their bad demeanour.

#### Of the castle of Izli.

This ancient castle of Izli built by the Africans vpon a certaine plaine bordering vpon the foresaid desert, hath some fieldes adioining vnto it, apt only for barlie and punicke. It was in times past well stored with inhabitants, and enuironed with stately walles: but afterward by the iniurie of warre it was razed to the ground, and the inhabitants expelled. Howbeit a few yeeres after it began to be inhabited anew by certaine religious persons had in great reuerence both by the kings of Telenfin and by all the Arabians. These religious persons with great courtesie and liberalitie giue entertainment for three daies vnto all strangers that passe by, and then dismisse them without paying of ought. All their houses are very base and low built, their walles being of claye, and the roofes of straw. Not far from this castle runneth a riuer, out of which they water all their fields: for this region is so hot and dry, that vnlesse the fields were continually watered, they would yeeld no fruit at all.

#### Of the towne of Guagida.

This ancient towne built by the Africans vpon a large plaine, standeth southward of the Mediterran sea fortie miles, and about the same distance from the citie of Telenfin. The southwest part of the said plaine bordereth vpon the desert of Angad, and it containeth most fruitfull fields and pleasant gardens, exceedingly replenished with figs and grapes. Through the midst of this towne runneth a certaine riuer, which affoordeth good water to drinke and to seeth meate withall. In times past the towne-walles and all the buildings were most sumptuous and stately, and the inhabitants exceeding rich, ciuill, and valiant: but afterward by reason of certaine warres waged by the king of Fez against the king of Telenfin, this towne was left desolate, and the inhabitants all put to flight: but the said warres being ended,

V 1

ded, new inhabitants reedified it and dwelt therein: howbeit they could not reduce it to the former state, neither doth it now containe about fifteene hundred families. The townesmen lead now a miserable life, being constrained to pay tribute both to the king of Telenfin and also to the Arabians of Angad, and wearing most base apparell: asses and mules they haue great store, whereof they make round summes of money. They speake after the ancient manner of the Arabians, neither is their language so corrupt as the language of the people round about them.

*Of the citie called Ned Roma.*

**T**His ancient towne built by the Romans, while they were lords of Africa, standeth vpon a large plaine, almost two miles from a certaine mountaine, and about twelue miles from the Mediterran sea, and neere vnto it runneth a little riuer. The historiographers of those times report, that this towne was in all respects built after the fashon of Rome, whereupon they say it borrowed the name. For *Ned* in the Arabian toong signifieth like. The wall of this towne is as yet to be seene: but all the ancient buildings of the Romans are so destroied, that now there scarcely remaine any ruines thereof. It began in some places to be repaired and reedified anew, but nothing comparable to the former buildings. The fieldes adiacent are exceeding fruitfull, and containe many gardens replenished with such trees as beare Carobs (being a fruitlike vnto *Cassa fistula*) which in the suburbs they vse for foode. This towne is indifferently well inhabited, especially with weauers, who make great store of cotton-cloth, and are free from all tribute. The gouernours of the towne are chosen onely at their assignement: and that they may haue more free traffique with the people of Telenfin, they sende many gifts vnto the king.

*Of the towne of Tebecrit.*

**T**His little towne built by the Africans vpon a certaine rocke neere vnto the Mediterran sea, is almost twelue miles distant from the former. All the next mountaines are, exceeding high and barren, and yet well stored with inhabitants. In this towne dwell great store of weauers; and here they haue abundance of Carobs and honie. Being in continuall feare of the Christians, they keepe euery night most diligent watch and ward: for they are not of sufficient abilitie to maintaine a garrison of soldiers. Their fields are no lesse barren then vtilld; and yeelde onely very small quantitie of barlie and panicke. The townesmen are most basely apparelled, and vtterly destitute of humanitie.

*Of the towne of Hunain.*

**T**His towne being founded by the Africans, and being famous both for stately building and ciuill inhabitants, hath a little haven belonging thereunto

thereunto well fortified with two turrets standing one on the one side, and another on the other side. The towne-wall also is very high and beautifull, especially on that side which standeth next vnto the sea. Hither doe the Venetians yeerely bring great store of merchandize, and doe traffique with the merchants of Telenfin; for the citie of Telenfin is but fourteene miles from hence. Since the time that Oran was surprized by the Christians, the Venetians would no longer frequent Oran, fearing least the Spanyards hauing it in possession should worke them some mischief: wherefore then they began to repaire vnto this port. The townesmen in times past were most ciuill people, the greatest part being weauers of cotton and of linnen. Their houses are most stately built, and haue euery one fountaines belonging vnto them: likewise here are many vines running pleasantly vpon bowers or arbours. Their houses are paved with mats of diuers colours, and their chambers and vaults are curiously painted and carued. Howbeit, so soone as the inhabitants were aduertised of the losse of Oran, they fled from Hunain and left it void of inhabitants: sauing that the king of Telenfin maintaineth here a garison of footemen, who giue notice when any merchants ships approach. Their fields abound with cherries, peaches, figs, oliues, and other fruites: howbeit they reape but little commoditie thereby. Imy selfe passing this way could not but bewaile the extreme calamitie whereinto the inhabitants of this towne were fallen: at the same time there arriued a certaine ship of Genoa, which one ship brought commodities sufficient to serue Telenfin for fise yeeres: the tenth part whereof amounting to fifteene thousand ducats, was paid for tribute to the king.

*A ship of great value.*

*Of the towne of Haresgol.*

**T**He great and ancient towne of Haresgol was built vpon a rocke enuironed on all sides with the Mediterran sea, sauing on the south, where lieth a way from the firme land to the towne. It standeth northward of Telenfin fourteene miles; and was in times past well stored with inhabitants. The gouernour thereof was one *Idris*, vncle vnto that *Idris* that was the founder of Fez; the posteritie of whom enioied the same gouernment for the space of an hundred yeeres. At length there came a certaine king and patriarke of Cairaoan who vtterly destroied this towne, so that it remained voide of inhabitants almost an hundred yeeres: after which time it was reinhabited by certaine people of Granada, which came thither with *Mansor*; which *Mansor* repaired the towne, to the end it might alwaies be a place of refuge for his soldiers. After whose deccase, and the death of his sonne *Mudassir*, all the soldiers were expelled by the tribes or people of Zanhagia and Magraoa: and this second desolation of that towne happened in the yeere of the Hegeira 410.

Of the great citie of Telenfin, otherwise called Tremizen.



Telenfin is a great citie and the royall seate of the king; but who were the first founders thereof it is vncertaine: howbeit most certaine it is, that this citie was very small at the beginning, and began greatly to be augmented at the same time when Haregol was laid waste. For then, a certaine family called Abdulgad bearing rule, it increased so exceedingly, that in the raigne of king *Abu Tesfin* it contained sixteene thousand families. And then it was an honourable and well-governed citie: howbeit *Ioseph* king of Fez continually molested it, and with an huge armie besieged it for seuen yeeres together. This *Ioseph* hauing built a fort vpon the east side of the towne, put the besieged citizens to such distresse, that they could no longer endure the extreme famine: wherefore with one accord they all went vnto their king, beseeching him to haue compassion vpon their want. The king, to make them acquainted with his daintie fare, which he had to supper, shewed them a dish of foddren horse-flesh and barlie. And then they well perceiued how little the kings estate was better then the estate of the meanest citizen of them all. Soone after the king hauing procured an assemblie, perswaded his people that it was much more honourable to die in battell for the defence of their countrie, then to liue so miserable a life. Which words of the king so inflamed all their mindes to the battell, that the day following they resolved to encounter the enemy, and valiantly to fight it out. But it fell out farre better for them then they expected; for the same night king *Ioseph* was slaine by one of his owne people: which newes being brought vnto the citizens, with greater courage they marched all out of the towne, easily vanquishing and killing the confused multitude of their enemies; after which vnexpected victorie they found victuals sufficient in the enemies campe to relieue their long and tedious famine. About fortie yeeres after, the fourth king of Fez of the Marin-familie called *Abulhesen*, built a towne within two miles westward of the citie of Telenfin. Then he besieged Telenfin for thirty moneths together, making daily and fierce assaults against it, and euery night erecting some new fort, so that at length the Fessan forces next vnto Telenfin easily entered the citie, and hauing conquered it, caried home the king thereof captiue vnto Fez, where he was by the king of Fez beheaded, and his carcase was cast forth among the filth of the citie: and this was the second and the greater damage that Telenfin sustained. After the decay of the Marin-familie Telenfin began in many places to be repaired, and replenished with new inhabitants, inso much that it increased to twelue thousand families. Here each trade and occupation hath a peculiar place, after the manner of Fez, saying that the buildings of Fez are somewhat more stately. Here are also many and beautifull temples, hauing their Mahumetan priestes and preachers. Likewise here are fiue colleges most sumptuously built, some by the

The king of  
Telenfin taken  
prisoner and  
beheaded.

the king of Telenfin, and some by the king of Fez. Here also are store of goodly bathes and hot-houses, albeit they haue not such plentie of water as is at Fez. Also here are very many innes built after the manner of Africa: vnto two of which innes the merchants of Genoa and Venice doe vsually resort. A great part of this citie is inhabited with Iewes; who were in times past all of them exceeding rich: vpon their heads they weare a \* Dulipan to distinguish them from other citizens: but in the yeere of the Hegeira 923, vpon the death of king *Abuhabdilla*, they were all so robbed and spoiled, that they are now brought almost vnto beggerie. Moreouer in this citie there are many conducts, the fountaines whereof are not farre from the citie-walles, so that they may easily be stopped by any forren enemy. The citie-wall is very high and impregnable, hauing fiue great gates vpon it, at euery one of which there is placed a garde of soldiers, and certaine receiuers of the kings custome. On the south side of the citie standeth the kings palace, enuironed with most high walles, and containing many other palaces within it, which are none of them destitute of their fountaines and pleasant gardens: this royall palace hath two gates, one leading into the fields, and the other into the citie, and at this gate standeth the captaine of the garde. The territorie of Telenfin containeth most pleasant habitations, whither the citizens in summer-time vse to retire themselues: for besides the beautifull pastures and cleere fountaines, there is such abundance of all kinde of fruites to delight both the eyes and the taste, that to my remembrance I neuer sawe a more pleasant place: their figs they vse to drie in the sunne and to keepe vntill winter: and as for almonds, peaches, melons, and pome-citrons, they grow here in great plentie. Three miles eastward of this citie are diuers mils vpon the riuer of Sessif; and some other there are also not far from the citie vpon the mountaine of Elcalha. The south part of the citie is inhabited by Iewes, lawyers, and notaries: here are also very many students, and professors of diuers artes, which haue maintenance allowed them out of the fiue forenamed colleges. The citizens are of fower sorts, to wit, some artificers, some merchants, others schollers and doctors, and all the residue soldiers. The merchants are men most iust, trustie, liberall, and most zealous of the common good; who for the most part exercise traffique with the Negros. The artificers liue a secure, quiet, and merrie life. The kings soldiers being all of a comely personage and of great valour, receiue very large and liberall pay, for they are monethly allowed three peeces of the gold-coine of Telenfin, which are worth three Italian duckats and one second part. All students before they attaine to the degree of a doctor liue a bare and miserable life, but hauing attained thereunto, they are made either professors or notaries, or priestes. The citizens and merchants of this citie are so neate and curious in their apparell, that sometimes they excell the citizens of Fez in brauerie. The artificers weare short garments carrying seldome a Dulipan vpon their heads, and contenting themselues with plaine caps: their shooes reach vp to their mid-leg. Of all others the soldiers go woofst apparelled, for wearing

\* Or Turbant.

a shirt or iacket with wide sleeues, they cast ouer it a large mantle made of cotton, and thus they are clad both sommer and winter: sauing that in winter they haue certaine iackets of leather with hoods vpon them, such as trauellers vse in Italie, and by this meanes their heads are defended from raine and from snow. The schollers and students are diuerfly apparelled, according to their abilitie, and according to the fashion of their natie cuntry: the doctors, iudges, and priestes goe in more sumptuous and costly attire.

*The customes and rites obserued in the King of Telenfin  
his court.*

**A** Woonder it is to see how stately and magnificently the King of Telenfin behaueth himselfe, for no man may see him nor be admitted to parle with him, but onely the principall nobles of his court, each one of whom are assigned to beare offices according to their place and dignitie. In this court are sundry offices and dignities, and the Kings lieutenant beeing principall officer, alloteth vnto each one such places of dignitie, as may be correspondent to their honour: and this lieutenant leuieth the kings armies, and sometime conducteth them against the enemye. The second officer is the Kings chiefe Secretarie, who writeth and recordeth all things pertaining to the King. The third is the high treasurer, who is bound by his office to receiue tributes and customes. The fourth is the kings dispensator or almoner, who bestoweth such liberalitie as the king vouchsafeth. The fift is the captaine of the kings garde, who so often as any nobles are admitted to the kings presence, conducteth the garde vnto the palace-gate. Then are there other meaner officers, as namely, the master of the kings stable, the ouerseer of his saddles & stirrups, and his chiefe chamberlaine, who giueth attendance onely at such times as any courtiers are admitted vnto the kings audience. For at other times the kings wiues, with certaine Christian captiues, and eunuches doe performe that dutie. The king sometimes in sumptuous and costly apparell rideth vpon a stately steed richly trapped and furnished. In riding he obserueth not much pompe nor many ceremonies; neither indeede doth he carrie so great a traine; for you shall scarcely see a thousand horsemen in his companie, except perhaps in time of warre, when as the Arabians and other people giue attendance. When the king goeth forth with an armie, there are not many carriages transported therein, neither can you then discern the king by his apparell from any meane captaine; and though he conducteth neuer so great a garde of soldiers, yet a man would not thinke how sparing he is of his coine. Gold-money he coineth of baser golde, then that whereof the Italian money called *Bislaachi* is coined, but it is of a greater size, for one peece thereof waigheth an Italian duckat and one fourth part. He stampeth likewise coine of siluer & of brasse. His dominions are but slenderly inhabited: howbeit because the way from Europe to Aethiopia lieth through his kingdom, he reapeth much benefit

*A passage from  
Europe to Aethiopia through  
the kingdom of  
Tremizen.*

by

by the wares that passe by, especially since the time that Oran was surprized by the Christians. At the same time Telenfin it selfe was made tributarie, which was euer before a free citie: whereupon the king that was the author thereof, was extremely hated of his subiects till his dying day. Afterward his sonne that succeeded him, demanded customes and tributes likewise: for which cause being expelled out of his kingdom by the people, he was enforced to craue aide of the emperour *Charles* the fift, by whose meanes (as is before said) he was restored vnto his said kingdom. When Oran was subiect vnto the king of Telenfin, the region therabout paid vnto the king for yeerly tribute sometime three thousand, and sometime fower thousand duckats, the greatest part whereof was allowed vnto the kings garde, and to the Arabian soldiers. I my selfe continuing certaine monethes in this kings court, had good experience of his liberalitie. I haue indeede omitted many particulars in the description of this court of Telenfin: but because they agreed for the most part with those things which we reported of Fez, I haue here passed them ouer, lest I should seeme too tedious vnto the reader.

*Of the towne of Hubbed.*

**T** His towne being built in manner of a castle standeth about a mile and an halfe southward of Telenfin. It containeth store of inhabitants, who are for the most part dyers of cloth. In this towne was buried one *Sadi Bu Median* being reputed a man of singular holines, whom they adore like a god; ascending vp to his monument by certaine steps. Here is likewise a stately college, and a faire hospitall to entertaine strangers in; both which were built by a king of Fez of the Marin-familie, as I finde recorded vpon a certaine marble stone.

*Of the towne of Tefesra.*

**T** This towne standing vpon a plaine fiftene miles from Telenfin hath great store of smiths therein, by reason of the iron-mines which are there. The fields adiacent are exceeding fruitfull for corne: and the inhabitants being for the most part blacke-smithes are destitute of all ciuilitie.

*Of the towne of Tefesla.*

**T** His ancient towne was built by the Africans vpon a certaine plaine, extending almost twenty miles in length. Here groweth such abundance of excellent corne, as is almost sufficient for the whole kingdom of Telenfin. The inhabitants liue in tents, for all the buildings of this towne are destroyed, though the name remaineth still. These also in times past paid a great yeerely tribute vnto the king of Telenfin.

of



*Of the prouince called Beni Rasid.*

**T**His region extendeth in length from east to west fiftie, and in breadth almost fve and twentie miles. The southerne part thereof is plaine ground, but toward the north it is full of fruitfull mountaines. The inhabitants are of two sorts: for some of them dwell vpon the mountaines in houses of indifferent good building: and these imploy themselves in husbandry and other necessarie affaires. Others being of a more noble condition liue onely vpon the plaines in tents, and there keepe their camels, horses, and other cattell. They are molested with daily inconueniences, and pay ycerely tribute vnto the king of Telenfin. Vpon the foresaid mountaines are sundrie villages, among which there are two principall, whereof the one called Chalah Haoara, and built in manner of a castle vpon the side of a certaine hill, containeth to the number of fortie merchants and artificers houses: the other called Elmo Hascar is the seate of the kings lieutenant ouer those regions; and in this village euery thursday there is a great market, where abundance of cattell, come, raisins, figs, and honie is to be sold: here are likewise cloth-merchants and diuers other chapmen, which for breuities sake I passe ouer in silence. I my selfe continuing for some time among them, found to my hinderance what cunning theeuers they were. The king of Telenfin collecteth ycerely out of this prouince the summe of fve and twenty thousand duckats; and it containeth so many most expert foldiers.

*Of the towne of Batha.*

**T**His great, rich, and populous towne was built in my time vpon a most beautifull and large plaine, which yeeldeth great abundance of corne. The tribute which the king of Telenfin hath here, amounteth to the summe of twentie thousand duckats. Howbeit this towne was afterward destroyed in that warre which happened betweene the king and certaine of his kinsmen. For they growing mightie by the king of Fez his aide, woon many townes in the kingdome of Telenfin: and whatsoeuer towne they thought themselves not able to keepe by force of armes, they burnt it quite downe: and thus they serued Batha, whereof now there remaine but very few ruines. Not far from this towne runneth a little riuer, on both sides whereof there are many gardens and fields replenished with all kinde of fruites. Moreouer the foresaid plaine was vterly destitute of inhabitants, till a certaine heremite with his followers, whom they reuerenced as a man of singular holines, repaired thither. This heremite in short time grew so rich in oxen, horses, and other cattell, that no man almost throughout the whole region was comparable vnto him. Neither he nor his followers pay any tribute at all, when as notwithstanding (as I heard of his disciples) he reapeth ycerly eight thousand bushels of corne, and at this time possesseth fve hundred hortes,

ten

ten thousand small cattell, and two thousand oxen; and besides all the former hath ycerely sent vnto him from diuers partes of the world fower or fve thousand duckats: so greatly hath the fame of his false holines spread ouer all Africa and Asia. Disciples he hath to the number of fve hundred, whom he maintaineth at his owne cost: neither emploiethe he them to ought else, but daily to read a few praiers: for which cause many resort vnto him, desiring to be of the number of his disciples, whom after he hath instructed in certaine ceremonies, he sendeth them thither from whence they first came. He hath about an hundred tents pitched, whereof some are for strangers, others for shepherds, and the residue for his owne familie. This holy heremite hath fower wiues, and a great many women-slaues wearing most sumptuous apparell. His sonnes likewise haue their wiues and families: insomuch that the whole familie of this heremite and of his sonnes containeth fve hundred persons. He is greatly honoured by all the Arabians, and by the king of Telenfin himselfe. My selfe was once desirous to trie what manner of man this heremite was: and for three daies I was entertained by him in the most secrete places of his habitation, where amongst other things he shewed me certaine bookes intreating of art-Magique and of Alchymie: and he endeouored by all meanes to perswade me, that Magique was a most true and vndoubted arte, whereby I perceiued that himselfe was a magician, albeit he neuer vsed nor regarded the arte, except it were in inuocating of God by certaine names.

*Of the towne of Oran.*

**T**His great and populous towne containing about fixe thousand families, and built many yeeres agoe by the Africans vpon the Mediterranean sea shore, is distant from Telenfin an hundredth and fortie miles. Heere may you see great store of stately buildings, as namely of temples, colledges, hospitals, bath-stoues, and innes. The towne is compassed with most high and impregnable walles, hauing on the one side a faire plaine, and on the other side diuers mountaines. The greatest part of the inhabitants were weauers, and the residue liued of their yeerely reuenues. The territorie of this towne yeeldeth but small store of corne, so that the townesmen make all their bread of barley: howbeit they are most courteous and friendly to all strangers. This towne was greatly frequented with merchants of Catalonia, and of Genoa: and one street thereof is at this present called the street of the Genoueses. They were at perpetuall enmitie with the king of Telenfin, neither would they euer accept of any gouernor, but one which receiued the kings tribute. But the townesmen chose one of their chiefe Burgo-masters to iudge of cases ciuill and criminall. The merchants of this towne maintained at their owne costs certaine foists and brigandines of warre, which committed many piracies vpon the coast of Catalonia, Genisa, Maiorica, and Minorica, insomuch that Oran was full of Christian captiues.

tues. Afterward Don *Ferdinando* king of Spaine encountering Oran with a great Armada, determined to release the said Christians out of captiuitie: but he had verie hard successe. Howbeit within a few moneths after beeing ayded by the *Biscaines* and the *Cardinall* of Spaine, he tookē Oran. For the *Moore*s issuing forth with great furie vpon the Christians armie, left the towne vtterly destitute of souldiers, which the Spaniards perceiuing, began to assaile the towne on the other side; where being resisted by none but by women, they had easie entrance. Whereupon the *Moore*s seeing the Christians banners aduanced vpon their wals, they returned backe into the town, and were there put to so great a slaughter, that few of them escaped. Thus was Oran taken by the Spaniards in the yeere of *Mahomet* his Hegeira 916.

*Of the towne Mersalcabir.*

This towne was built in my time by the king of *Telensin* vpon the Mediterranean sea, not farre from Oran. And *Mersalcabir* in the *Moore*s language signifieth a great or large haven: for I thinke there is not the like haven to be found in the whole world besides: so that here infinite numbers of ships and galleies may finde most safe harbour in any tempestuous weather. Hither the *Venetians* ships made often resort, when they perceiued any tempest to approach: and from hence they would cause all their wares to be transported to Oran in other vessels. This towne also was at length taken by the Spaniards as well as Oran.

*Of the towne of Mezzagran.*

This towne also was built by the Africans vpon the Mediterranean sea, neere vnto the place where the riuer *Selef* disemboueth. It is well peopled and much molested by the Arabians. The gouernour thereof hath little authoritie within the towne, and lesse without.

*Of the towne of Mustuganin.*

*Mustuganin* beeing founded by the Africans vpon the Mediterranean sea, standeth almost three miles from *Mezzagran*, on the other side of the riuer *Selef*. It was in times past verie populous; but since the kingdom of *Telensin* began to decay, this towne hath beene so vexed by the Arabians, that at this present the third part thereof scarce remaineth. Families it containeth to the number of fifteene hundred; and it hath a most beautifull and stately temple. In this towne are great store of weauers; and the houses are most sumptuously built, hauing cleere fountaines belonging vnto them. Through the midst of the towne runneth a riuer, on each side whereof stand diuers milles. Not far from the towne there are most pleasant

Oran taken by  
the Spaniards.

Mersalcabir  
surprised by the  
Spaniards.

sant gardens; but they lie now vtilld and desolate. Their fields are exceeding fruitfull. There belongeth an haven vnto this towne, whereunto many merchants of Europe vs to resort, albeit they finde not much traffick here, because the towne men are so destitute of money.

*Of the towne of Bresch.*

This ancient towne built by the Romanes vpon the Mediterranean sea, standeth many miles distant from *Mustuganin*. It containeth great store of inhabitants, which are many of them weauers. The people of this towne vse to paint a blacke crosse vpon their cheeke, and two other blacke crosses vpon the palmes of their hands: and the like custome is obserued by all the inhabitants of the mountaines of *Alger*, and *Bugia*: the occasion whereof is thought to be this, namely that the *Gothes* when they first began to inuade these regions, released all those from paying of tribute (as our African historiographers affirme) that would imbrace the Christian religion. But so often as any tribute was demanded, euery man to eschew the payment thereof, would not sticke to professe himselfe a Christian: wherefore it was then determined, that such as were Christians indeed should be distinguished from others by the foresaid crosses. At length the *Gothes* being expelled, they all reuoluted vnto the *Mahumetan* religion; howbeit this custome of painting crosses remained still among them, neither doe they know the reason thereof. Likewise the meaner sort of people in *Mauritania* vse to make such crosses vpon their faces, as we see vsed by some people of Europe. This towne aboundeth greatly with figs, and the fields thereof are exceeding fruitfull for flaxe and barley. The townesmen haue continued in firme league and friendship with the people of the mountaines adioyning; by whose fauour they liued an hundred yeeres together without paying of any tribute at all: but *Barbarossa* the Turke hauing woon the kingdom of *Telensin* put them to great distresse. From hence they vse to transport by sea great store of figs and flaxe vnto *Alger*, *Tunis*, and *Bugia*, whereby they gaine great store of money. Here also you may as yet behold diuers monuments of the Romans ancient buildings.

*Of the towne of Serfell.*

This great and ancient towne built by the Romanes vpon the Mediterranean sea, was afterward taken by the *Gothes* and lastly by the *Mahumetans*. The wall of this towne is exceeding high, strong, and stately built, and containeth about eight miles in circuit. In that part of the towne next vnto the Mediterranean sea standeth a most beautifull and magnificent temple built by the Romans, the inward part whereof consisteth of marble. They had also in times past an impregnable fort standing vpon a rock by the Mediterranean sea. Their fields are most fruitfull: and albeit this towne was much oppressed

oppressed by the Gothes, yet the Mahumetans enjoyed a great part thereof for the space almost of fivie hundred yeeres. And then after the warre of Telenfin it remained voide of inhabitants almost three hundred yeeres. At length when Granada was won by the Christians, diuers Moores of Granada fled hither, which repaired the houses and a good part of the castle: afterward they began to build ships, wherewith they transported their merchantable commodities into other regions: and they increased so by little and little, that now they are growne to twelue hundred families. They were subiect not long since vnto *Barbarossa* the Turke, vnto whom they paid but three hundred ducates for yeerely tribute.

Of the citie of *Meliana*.

His great and ancient citie, commonly called now by the corrupt name of Magnana, and built by the Romanes vpon the top of a certaine hill, is distant from the Mediterran sea almost fortie miles. Vpon this mountaine are many springs, and woods abounding with walnuts. The citie it selfe is enuironed with most ancient and high wals. One side thereof is fortified with impregnable rockes, and the other side dependeth so vpon the mountaine as *Narma* doth, which is a citie neere Rome: it containeth verie stately houses, euerie one of which houses hath a fountaine. The inhabitants are almost all weauers: and there are diuers turners also which make fine cups, dishes, and such like vessels. Many of them likewise are husbandmen. They continued many yeeres free from all tribute and exaction, till they were at length made tributarie by *Barbarossa*.

Of the towne of *Tenez*.

His ancient towne built by the Africans vpon the side of an hill not far from the Mediterran sea, is enuironed with faire walles, and inhabited with many people. The inhabitants are exceeding rusticall and vnciuill; and haue alwaies bene subiect to the king of Telenfin. King *Mahumet* that was grandfather vnto the king which now reigneth, left three sonnes behinde him; the eldest being called *Abuabdilla*, the second *Abuzeuen*, and the third *Iahia*. *Abuabdilla* succeeded his father, whom his brethren being ayded by the citizens went about to murder. But afterward, the treason being discovered, *Abuzeuen* was apprehended and put in prison. Howbeit, king *Abuchemmen* being after that expelled out of his kingdome by the people, *Abuzeuen* was not onely restored to his former libertie, but was also chosen king, and enjoyed the kingdome so long, till (as is before mentioned) he was slaine by *Barbarossa*. *Iahia* fled vnto the king of Fez, who being at length proclaimed king by the people of Tenez, reigned for certaine yeeres. And his yong sonne that he left behinde him being vanquished by *Barbarossa*, fled vnto *Charles* who was then onely king of Spaine.

But

But when as the ayde promised by *Charles* the Emperour stayed long, and the Prince of Tenez was too long absent, a rumour was spread abroad, that hee and his brother were turned Christians: whereupon the gouernment of Tenez fell immediatly to the brother of *Barbarossa*. Their fields indeed yeeld abundance of corne; but of other commodities they haue great want.

Of the towne of *Mazuna*.

His towne (as some report) was built by the Romanes, and standeth about fortie miles from the Mediterran sea. It hath fruitfull fields, strong walles, but most base and deformed houses. Their temple indeed is somewhat beautiful: for it was in times past a most stately towne, but being often sacked, sometime by the king of Telenfin, and sometime by his rebels; and at length falling into the hands of the Arabians, it was brought vnto extreme miserie, so that at this present there are but few inhabitants remaining, all being either weauers or husbandmen, and most grievously oppressed by the Arabians. Their fields abound plentifully with all kinde of corne. Neere vnto this towne there haue bene in times past many houses, streets, and villages, which may probably be coniectured by the letters engrauen vpon marble stones. The names of which villages are not to be found in any of our histories or Chronicles.

Of *Gezeir*, otherwise called *Alger*.

*Gezeir* in the Moores language signifieth an island, which name is thought to haue bene giuen vnto this citie, because it lieth neere vnto the isles of Maiorica, Minorica, and Ieuiza: howbeit the Spanyards call it *Alger*. It was founded by the Africans of the familie of *Mesgana*, wherefore in old time it was called by the name of *Mesgana*. It is a large towne, containing families to the number of fower thousand, and is enuironed with most stately and impregnable walles. The buildings thereof are very artificiall and sumptuous: and euery trade and occupation hath here a seuerall place. Innes, bath-stoues, and temples here are very beautifull; but the stateliest temple of all standeth vpon the sea-shore. Next vnto the sea there is a most pleasant walke vpon that part of the towne wall, which the waues of the sea beat vpon. In the suburbs are many gardes replenished with all kinde of fruits. On the east side of the towne runneth a certaine riuer hauing many mils thereupon: and out of this riuer they draw water fit for drinke, and for the seruices of the kitchin. It hath most beautifull plaines adioining vpon it, and especially one called *Metteggia*, which extendeth fortie fivie miles in length, and almost thirtie miles in bredth, and aboundeth mightily with all kindes of graine. This towne for many yeeres was subiect vnto the kingdome of Telenfin: but hearing that Bugia was also gouerned by a king, and being neerer thereunto, they submitted themselves vnto the king of Bugia.

X I

For

\* Perhaps  
*Abuabdilla*.

For they saw that the king of Telenfin could not sufficiently defend them against their enemies, and also that the king of Bugia might doe them great dammage, wherefore they offered vnto him a yeerely tribute of their owne accord, and yet remained almost free from all exaction. But certaine yeeres after, the inhabitants of this citie building for themselves gallies, began to play the pirates, and greatly to molest the foresaid islands. Whereupon king *Ferdinando* prouided a mightie armada, hoping thereby to become lord of the citie. Likewise vpon a certaine high rocke standing opposit against the townne, he caused a strong forte to be built, and that within gun-shot of the citie, albeit the citie walles could not be endammaged thereby. Wherefore the citizens immediately sent ambassadours into Spaine, to craue a league for ten yeeres, vpon condition that they should pay certaine yeerely tribute; which request was granted by king *Ferdinando*. And so they remained for certaine moneths free from the danger of warre: but at length *Barbarossa* hastening to the siege of Bugia, and hauing woon one fort built by the Spaniards, determined to encounter another, hoping if he could obtaine that also, that he should soone conquer the whole kingdome of Bugia. Howbeit all matters fell not out according to his expectation: for a great part of his soldiers being husbandmen, when they perceiued the time of sowing corne to approach, without any leaue or licence they forsooke their generall, and returned home to the plough-taile. And many Turks also did the like, so that *Barbarossa* failing of his purpose, was constrained to breake vp the siege. Howbeit before his departure, he set on fire with his owne handes twelue gallies, which lay in a riuer but three miles from Bugia. And then with fortie of his soldiers he retired himselfe to the castle of Gegel being from Bugia about sixtie miles distant, where he remained for certaine daies. In the mean while, king *Ferdinando* deceasing, the people of Alger released themselves from paying any more tribute: for seeing *Barbarossa* to be a most valiant warriour, and a deadly enemy vnto Christians, they sent for him, and chose him captaine ouer all their forces; who presently encountred the fort, but to little effect. Afterward this *Barbarossa* secretly murdered the gouernour of the citie in a certaine bath. The said gouernour was prince of the Arabians dwelling on the plaines of Mettegia, his name was *Selim Etteumi*, descended of the familie of *Telaliba*, and created gouernour of Alger at the same time when Bugia was taken by the Spaniards: this man was slaine by *Barbarossa*, after he had gouerned many yeeres. And then *Barbarossa* vsurped the whole government of the citie vnto himselfe, and coined money, and this was the first entrance into his great and princely estate. At all the foresaid accidents I my selfe was present, as I trauelled from Fez to Tunis, and was entertained by one that was sent ambassadour from the people of Alger into Spaine, from whence he brought three thousand bookes written in the Arabian toong. Then I passed on to Bugia, where I found *Barbarossa* besieging the foresaid fort: afterward I proceeded to Constantina, and next to Tunis. In the meane while I heard that *Barbarossa* was slaine at Tremizen,

Alger become  
tributarie to  
the king of  
Spaine.

A voyage per-  
formed by Iohn  
Leo.

and

and that his brother called *Cairadin* succeeded in the government of Alger. Then we heard also that the emperor *Charles* the fift had sent two armies to surprize Alger; the first whereof was destroyed vpon the plaine of Alger, and the second hauing assailed the townne three daies together, was partly slaine and partly taken by *Barbarossa*, insomuch that very few escaped backe into Spaine. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira nine hundred twentie two.

Of the townne of Tegdemt.

**T**His ancient townne was built (as some thinke) by the Romanes; and Tegdemt signifieth in the Arabian language Ancient. The wall of this townne (as a man may coniecture by the foundations thereof) was ten miles in circuite. There are yet remaining two temples of an exceeding height, but they are very ruinous, and in many places fallen to the ground. This townne when it was possessed by the Mahumetans, was marvellous rich, and abounded with men of learning and poets. It is reported that *Idris* vncle to the same *Idris* that founded Fez, was once gouernour of this townne, and that the government thereof remained to his posteritie almost an hundred and fiftie yeeres. Afterward it was destroyed in the warres betwene the schismaticall patriarks of Cairaoan, in the yeere of the Hegeira 365: but now there are a few ruines onely of this townne to be seene.

Of the townne of Medua.

**T**His townne standing not farre from the borders of Numidia, is distant from the Mediterran sea almost an hundred and fower score miles; and it is situate on a most pleasant and fruitfull plaine, and is enuironed with sweete riuers and beautifull gardens. The inhabitants are exceeding rich, exercising traffique most of all with the Numidians; and they are very curious both in their apparell and in the furniture of their houses. They are continually molested with the inuasions of the Arabians; but because they are almost two hundred miles distant from Telenfin, they can haue no aide sent them by the king. This townne was once subiect vnto the gouernour of Tenez, afterward vnto *Barbarossa*, and lastly vnto his brother. Neuer was I so sumptuously entertained as in this place: for the inhabitants being themselves vnlearned, so often as any learned man comes amongst them, they entertaine him with great honour, and cause him to decide all their controuersies. For the space of two moneths while I remained with them, I gained about two hundred duckats, and was so allured with the pleasantnes of the place, that had not my dutie enforced me to depart, I had remained there all the residue of my life.



*Of the towne of Temendast.*

**T**His towne also was built by the Romans vpon the Mediterran sea, and is about twelue miles distant from Alger. Vnto this towne belongeth a faire hauen, where the ships of Alger are safely harboured, for they haue no other hauen so commodious. This towne was at length destroyed by the Goths, and the greatest part of the wall of Alger was built with the stones which came from the wall of this towne.

*Of the towne of Teddeles.*

**T**His towne built by the Africans vpon the Mediterran sea, and being thirtie miles distant from Alger, is enuironed with most ancient and strong walles. The greatest part of the inhabitants are dyers of cloth, and that by reason of the many riuers and streames running through the midst of the same. They are of a liberall and ingenuous disposition, and can play most of them vpon the citterne and lute. Their fields are fertill, and abounding with corne. Their apparell is very decent: the greatest part of them are delighted in fishing, and they take such abundance of fishes, that they freely giue them to euery bodie, which is the cause that there is no fish-market in this towne.

*Of the mountaines contained in the kingdom of Telenfin.**Of the mountaine of Beni Iezneten.*

His mountaine standeth westward of Telenfin almost fiftie miles, one side thereof bordering vpon the desert of Garet, and the other side vpon the desert of Angad. In length it extendeth fife and twentie, and in bredth almost fiftene miles, and it is exceeding high and difficult to ascend. It hath diuers woods growing vpon it, wherein grow great store of Carobs, which the inhabitants vse for an ordinarie kinde of foode: for they haue great want of barley. Here are diuers cottages inhabited with valiant and stout men. Vpon the top of this mountaine standeth a strong castle, wherein all the principall men of the mountaine dwell, amongst whom there are often dissensions, for there is none of them all but woulde be sole gouernour of the mountaine. I my selfe had conuersation with some of them, whom I knew in the king of Fez his court, for which cause I was honorably entertained by them. The foldiers of this mountaine are almost ten thousand.

of

*Of mount Matgara.*

**T**His exceeding high and colde mountaine hath great store of inhabitants, and is almost fixe miles distant from Ned Roma. The inhabitants are valiant, but not very rich: for this mountaine yeeldeth nought but barley and Carobs. They speake all one language with the people of Ned Roma, and are ioined in such league with them; that they will often aide one another against the king of Telenfin.

*Of mount Gualhasa.*

**T**His high mountaine standeth nigh vnto the towne of Hunain. The inhabitants are sauage, rude, and vnciuill people, and are at continuall warre with the people of Hunain, so that oftentimes they haue almost vtterly destroyed the towne. This mountaine yeeldeth great store of Carobs, and but little corne.

*Of mount Agbal.*

**T**His mountaine is inhabited with people of base condition, and subiect to the towne of Oran. They all exercise husbandrie, and carrie woode vnto Oran. While the Moores enioied Oran, their state was somewhat better; but since the Christians got possession thereof they haue bene driuen to extreame miserie.

*Of mount Beni Guerened.*

**T**His mountaine being three miles distant from Tremisen, is well peopled, and aboundeth with all kinde of fruits, especially with figges and cherries. The inhabitants are some of them colliers, some wood-mongers, and the residue husbandmen. And out of this onely mountaine (as I was informed by the king of Telenfin his Secretarie) there is yeerely collected for tribute, the summe of twelue thousand ducats.

*Of mount Magraua.*

**T**His mountaine extending it selfe fortie miles in length towardes the Mediterran sea is neer vnto the towne of Mustuganin before described. The soile is fertile, and the inhabitants are valiant and warlike people, and of a liberall and humane disposition.

x 3

of

*Of mount Beni Abusaid.*

**T**His mountaine standing not farre from Tenez, is inhabited with great multitudes of people, which lead a sauage life, and are notwithstanding most valiant warriors. They haue abundance of honey, barley, and goats. Their waxe and hides they carrie vnto Tenez, and there sell the same to the merchants of Europe. When as the king of Tremizen his kinsemen were lords of this mountaine, the people paid for tribute certaine thousands of ducats.

*Of mount Guanferis.*

**T**His exceeding high mountaine is inhabited with valiant people, who being aided by the king of Fez, maintained warre against the kingdome of Telenfin, for about three-score yeeres. Fruitfull fields they haue, and great store of fountains. Their soldiers are almost twentie thousand in number, whereof 2500. are horsemen. By their aide *Iahia* attained to the gouernment of Tenez: but after Tenez began to decay, they gaue themselves wholly to robberie and theft.

*Of the mountaines belonging to the state of Alger.*

**N**ere vnto Alger on the east side and on the west are diuers mountains well stored with inhabitants. Free they are from all tribute, and rich, and exceeding valiant. Their corne fields are very fruitfull, and they haue great abundance of cattell. They are oftentimes at deadly warre together, so that it is dangerous traouailing that way, vnlesse it be in a religious mans company. Markets they haue and faires vpon these mountaines, where nought is to be solde but cattle, corne, and wooll, vnlesse some of the neighbour-cities supplie them with merchandise now and then.

*Here endeth the fourth booke.*

IOHN

# IOHN LEO HIS FIFTH BOOKE OF

the Historie of Africa, and  
of the memorable things  
contained therein.

*A description of the kingdomes of Bugia and Tunis.*

When as in the former part of this my historie I diuided Barbaria into certaine parts, I determined to write of Bugia as of a kingdome by it selfe: and I found indeed that not many yeeres ago it was a kingdome. For Bugia was subiect to the king of Tunis, and albeit for certaine yeeres the king of Telenfin was Lord thereof, yet was it at length recovered againe by the king of Tunis, who committed the gouernment of the city vnto one of his sons, both for the tranquillitie of Bugia, and also that no discord might happen among his sonnes after his decease. He left behinde him three sonnes, the eldest whereof was called *Habdulhaziz*, and vnto him he bequeathed the kingdome of Bugia, as is aforesaide: vnto the second, whose name was *Hutmen*, he left the kingdome of Tunis: and the third called *Hammare*, he made gouernour of the region of dates. This *Hammare* began forthwith to wage warre against his brother *Hutmen*, by whom being at length taken in the towne of Asfacos, & deprived of both his eies, he was carried captiue vnto Tunis, where he liued many yeeres blinde: but his brother *Hutmen* gouerned the kingdome of Tunis full fortie yeeres. The prince of Bugia being most louing and dutifull to his brother, reigned for many yeeres with great tranquillitie, till at length he was by king *Ferdinand* of Spaine, and by the meanes of one *Pedro de Nanarra*, cast out of his kingdome.

*A description of the great citie of Bugia.*

This auncient citie of Bugia built (as some thinke) by the Romans, vpon the side of an high mountaine, neere vnto the Mediterranean sea, is enuironed with walles of great height, and most stately in regard of their antiquitie. The part thereof now peopled containeth about eight thousand families: but if it were all replenished with buildings, it were capeable of more then fower and twentie thousand households, for it is of a great length. The houses, temples, and colleges of this citie are most sumptuously built. Professors of liberall sciences heere

are

are great store, whereof some teach matters pertaining to the lawe, and others professe naturall Philosophie. Neither Monasteries, Innes, nor Hospitals erected after their manner are heere wanting: and their market place is very large and faire: their streetes either descend or ascend, which is verie troublesome to them that haue any busines in the towne. In that part of the citie next vnto the toppe of the mountaine standeth a strong castle, most sumptuously and beautifully walled: and there are such notable letters and pictures most artificially carued vpon the plaister-worke and timber, that they are thought to haue cost much more then the building of the wall it selfe. The citizens were exceeding rich, and vsed with their warlike gallies continually to molest the coasts of Spaine; which was the occasion of the vtter ouerthrowe of their citie. For *Pedro de Nauarra* was sent against them with a flecte of fowerteene sailes onely. The citizens being addicted wholly to pleasure and ease, and being terrified with the rumour of warre, because they were neuer exercised therein, were no sooner aduertised of *Pedro de Nauarra* his approach, but al of them together with their king betooke themselves to flight, and left their citie abounding with all kinde of riches and wealth, to bee spoiled by the Spaniards, so that it was easily taken, in the yeere of *Mahomet* his Hegeira nine hundred and seuentene. Soone after *Pedro de Nauarra* hauing sacked the citie, built a strong forte vpon the sea shore, and repaired an other which had lien a long time waste, furnishing them both with soldiers and munition. And fixe yeeres after, *Barbarossa* the Turke being desirous to winne this citie from the Christians, and hauing leuied onely a thousand soldiers, tooke the old forte, because he was fauoured by the inhabitants of all the mountaines adiacent: wherein hauing placed a garrison, he attempted to winne the other fort also: but at his first encounter he lost an hundred of his principall Turkes, & fower hundred of the mountainers that came to aide him; insomuch that *Barbarossa* was enforced to flie vnto the castle of *Gegel*, as is aforesaid.

*Of the castle of Gegel.*

**T**His ancient castle built by the Africans, vpon an high rocke by the Mediterran sea, is distant about threescore miles from Bugia. Families it containeth to the number of fise hundred; and the buildings thereof are very base. The inhabitants are of a trustie and ingenuous disposition, and do most of them exercise husbandrie: howbeit their fieldes are but barren, and apt onely for barley, flaxe, and hempe. They haue great store of figs and nuts, which they vse to carrie in certaine barks vnto Tunis. They haue in despight of the kings of Bugia and Tunis continued alwaies free from tribute: for that impregnable mountaine can be surprised by no siege nor encounter of the enimie. At length they yeelded themselves vnto *Barbarossa*, who demaunded none other tribute of them, but onely the reathes of certaine fruits and corne.

of

*Of the towne of Mesila.*

**M**Esila founded by the Romans not far from the Numidian desert, and being distant from Bugia almost an hundred miles, hath stately wals about it, but base houses within. The inhabitants being partly artificers and partly husbandmen, goe very homely apparelled, and are most greuously oppressed with the continuall exactions of the Arabians, and with the daily molestations of the king of Bugia. My selfe vpon a time travelling this way, could not finde so much fodder as was sufficient for twelue horses onely.

*Of the towne of Stefe.*

**T**His towne also built by the Romans, sixtie miles southward of Bugia, vpon a certaine beautifull plaine, is enuironed with strong and stately walles. It was in times past exceedingly well stored with inhabitants: but since the Mahumetans were Lords thereof, it hath so decayed by the iniuries of the Arabians, who razed to the ground a great part of the wall, that within the whole circuit of this great and ancient towne, there are but an hundred houses at this present remaining.

*Of the towne of Necaus.*

**T**His towne built by the Romans neere vnto Numidia, and being distant from the Mediterran sea an hundred and eightie, and from the towne last mentioned eightie miles, is compassed with a strong and ancient wall. By this towne runneth a certaine riuer, on both sides whereof grow the best wal-nuts and figs that are to be found in the whole kingdome of Tunis, being vsually carried to Constantina to be solde, which citie is thence distant an hundred and eightie miles. The fields of this towne are exceeding fruitfull, and the inhabitants are very rich, liberall, and curious in their apparell. Here is an hospirall maintained at the common charges of the towne, to entertaine strangers that passe by. Here is a college also, the students whereof are allowed their diet and apparell. Neither is this towne destitute of a most stately and well-furnished temple. Their women are white, hauing blacke haire: and a most delicate skinne, because they frequent the bath-stoues so often. Most of their houses are but of one storie high, yet are they very decent, and haue each one a garden thereto belonging, replenished with damaske-roses, myrtles, cammomill, and other herbes and flowers, and being watered with most pleasant fountaines. In these gardens likewise there are most stately arbours and bowres, the coole shadow whereof in summer-time is most acceptable. And (to be brieft) all things here are so delightfull to the senses, and so alluring, that any man would be loth to depart from hence.

of

## Of the towne of Chollo.

**T**He great towne of Chollo founded by the Romans, vpon the Mediterranean sea, at the foot of a certaine high mountaine, is enuironed with no walles at all: for the walles were razed to the ground by the Goths: neither did the Mahumetans, when they had got possession, build them vp againe. Howbeit this towne is notably well gouerned, and well stored with inhabitants, which are all men of a liberall and tractable disposition. They haue continually great traffique with the merchants of Genoa, and doe gather abundance of waxe and hides. Their fieldes vpon the mountaine are exceeding fruitfull, and they haue alwaies so defended themselues against the princes of Tunis and Constantina, that vntill this present they remaine free from tribute. From the iniurie of Constantina they are easily defended, both in regarde of the difficult mountaines lying in the mid-way, and also in respect of the great distance; for Constantina standeth almost an hundred and twentie miles off. Neither is there any citie throughout the whole kingdom of Tunis, either for wealth, or strong situation, any way comparable vnto this.

## Of the towne of Sucaicada.

**T**His ancient citie built by the Romans also vpon the Mediterranean sea, and standing about thirtie fife miles from Constantina, was wasted and almost vtterly destroyed by the Goths: howbeit by reason of the hauen, being so famous and so frequented by the merchants of Genoa, the prince of Constantina caused certaine faire houses to be built thereabouts, for the said merchants of Genoa, to repose themselues and their goodes therein: and vpon a mountaine not farre off he built a strong castle, for the securitie and defence of the said merchants from all enemies whatsoever. From the said hauen to Constantina the high way is paved with certaine black stones, such as are to be seene in some places of Italie, being there called *De strade Romane*, which is a manifest argument, that Sucaicada was built by the Romans.

## Of the citie of Constantina.

**N**O man can denie the Romans to haue beene founders of this citie, that shall consider the great strength, height, and antiquitie of the walles, and how curiously they are beset and adorned with blacke stones. This citie standeth vpon the south side of an exceeding high mountaine, and is enuironed with steepe rocks, vnder which rocks and within the compasse whereof runneth the riuer called Sufegmare, so that the said deepe riuer with the rocks on either side, serueth in stead of a towne-ditch to Constantina. The north part is compassed with a wall of great thicknes: and there are two extreme narrow passages onely, to enter into the citie, one on the

cast

east part, and another on the west. The citie-gates are very large and stately. The citie it selfe containeth about eight thousand families. Buildings it hath very sumptuous, as namely, the chiefe temple, two colleges, three or fower monasteries, and other such like. Here euery trade and occupation hath a seuerall place assigned: and the inhabitants are right honest and valiant people. Here is likewise a great companie of merchants, whereof some sell cloth and wooll, others send oile and silke into Numidia, and the residue exchange linnen-cloth and other wares for slaues and dates. Neither are dates so cheape in any region of all Barbarie besides. The kings of Tunis vsually commit the gouernment of Constantina vnto their eldest sonnes: and so he that is now king of Tunis bestowed Constantina vpon his eldest sonne in like sort: who waging warre against the Arabians was slaine in the first battel. Then fel the gouernment of Constantina vnto his second sonne, whose intemperate life was the cause of his sudden and vntimely death. After him succeeded the third and yoongest sonne, who in regarde of his insolent and shamelesse behauiour, was so hated of all the citizens, that some had determined to kill him: whereof his father hauing intelligence, sent for him, and kept him for certaine yeeres prisoner at Tunis. Afterward he committed the gouernment of Constantina to a certaine Renegado that of a Christian became a Mahumetan: this Renegado he trusted as his owne brother, for he had made former triall of him: who for many yeeres gouerned the place with great tranquillitie. Vpon the north part of the citie standeth a certaine strong castle built at the same time when the citie it selfe was built: which castle was more strongly fortified then before, by one *Elcaied Nabil* the kings lieutenant: and this castle greatly bridled both the citizens, and all the bordering Arabians, whose great captaine it held as prisoner, and released him not, till he had left his three sonnes for hostages. At length the said *Elcaied* grew so haucie, that he coined money, to the great contempt of his king and soueraigne, whom notwithstanding he endeouored by many giftes and presents to appease. But when men perceiued *Elcaied* to degenerate from his first forme of gouernment, they that before loued him, and had him in high regarde, were presently of another minde, and vtterly forsooke him. So that laying siege vnto a certaine citie of Numidia called Pescara, he perceiued some treason to be attempted against him: and thereupon returning forthwith to Constantina, he found the citie-gates shut against him: from whence he presently tooke his journey to the king of Tunis, and was by him cast into prison, and not restored to libertie, till he had paid an hundred thousand duckats. Afterward by the kings aide he was restored to his former gouernment: but when he began to tyrannize ouer some of the chiefe citizens, he againe prouoked the whole citie vnto armes, who besieged forthwith the castle whereunto he fled, which was such a corrasieue vnto *Elcaied* his minde, that within few daies he died for sorrow. And so the people after they were reconciled to their king, would from thenceforth neuer admit any forren gouernour: wherefore the king of Tunis was (as is

aforesaid)

*The hard successe of the king of Tunis his three sonnes.*



aforesaid) againe constrained to send his owne sonnes thither. The fields belonging to this citie are exceeding fertil. And on either side the riuer which runneth through the plaines, there are most commodious gardens, if they were well husbanded. Also without the citie stand many faire and ancient buildings. About a mile and a halfe from the citie standeth a certaine triumphall arch, like vnto the triumphall arches at Rome, which the grosse common people thinke to haue beene a castle where innumerable diuels remained, which (they say) were expelled by the Mahumetans, when they came first to inhabite Constantina. From the citie to the riuer they descend by certaine staires hewen out of the rocke: and neere vnto the riuer standeth a little house so artificially cut out of the maine rocke, that the rooffe, pillars, and walles are all of one continued substance, and here the women of Constantina wash their linnen. Neere vnto the citie likewise there is a certaine bath of hot water dispersing it selfe among the rocks: in this bath are great store of snails, which the fond women of the citie call Diuels: and when any one falleth into a feuer or any other disease, they suppose the snails to be the authors thereof. And the onely remedie that they can apply vpon such an occasion is this: first they kill a white hen, putting her into a platter with her feathers on, and then verie solemnly with waxe-candles they carry her to the bathe, and there leaue her: and many good fellowes there are, which so soone as the silly women haue set downe their hens at the bath, will come secretly thither, and conuey away the hens to their owne kitchins. Somewhat farther from the citie eastward there is a fountaine of extreme cold water, and neere vnto it standeth a certaine building of marble adorned with sundrie Hieroglyphicall pictures or emblemes, such as I haue seene at Rome, and at many other places of Europe. But the common people imagine that it was in times past a Gramar-schoole, & because both the masters and schollers thereof were most vitious, they were transformed (say they) into marble. The inhabitants twise euerie yeere send great store of wares into Numidia: and because as they trauell, they are in danger of the Arabian theeues, they hire certaine Turkish Harquebusiers for great wages to guard them. The merchants of Constantina traouelling to Tunis pay no tribute at all, but onely at their departure forth of Constantina for the worth of euerie 100. ducates in merchandise, they allow two ducates and a halfe.

#### Of the towne of Mela.

**T**His towne built by the Romans within twelue miles of Constantina, and enuironed with most strong walles, containeth almost three thousand families: but at this present there are but few buildings by reason of the warres that haue happened. Here are great store of artizans: the most whereof are such weauers as make couerlets. In the market place there is a most cleere fountaine. The citizens are valiant, though they bee of rude behaviour. Here is abundance, not onely of fruits (whereupon some thinke the

name

name of the towne to be deriued) but also of cattle and corne. Vnto this towne the gouernour of Constantina sendeth euery yeere a certaine Iudge, to decide the townesmens controuersies, and to receiue the yeerely tribute: howbeit oftentimes the said Iudge is slaine by the people.

#### Of the ancient towne of Bona.

**T**His towne built by the Romans vpon the Mediterran sea, almost 120. miles more to the west was in auncient times called Hippo, where the reuerend father Saint *Augustine* was once Bishop. It was in processse of time subdued by the Gothes, and was afterward surprised and burnt to ashes by *Huimen* the third patriarke after *Mahumer*. And many yeeres after they built a new town within two miles of the stones that were brought from the ruines of Bona: which new towne they called Beld Elhuneb, that is, the citie of the fruit called Ziziphus or Iuiuba, by reason of the great abundance of that fruit: the which they vse to drie in the sunne, and to keepe till winter. It containeth almost three hundred families, and all the houses and buildings thereof are verie base, saue one onely temple which standeth next the sea. The inhabitants are all of an ingenuous disposition, some of them being merchants, and the residue artizans. Here is great store of linnen-cloath wouen, the greatest part whereof is carried to Numidia. The inhabitants of this towne hauing vpon a time slaine their gouernours, were so bold as to threaten the king of Tunis: and they had without all doubt betrayed the towne vnto the Christians, had not the king of Tunis taken speciall heed thereunto. In this towne are certaine lewd people and most beggerly apparelled, which notwithstanding are highly reuerenced by the citizens. Here are no fountains, nor yet any water at all, but rainewater onely which is kept in cisterns. On the east side of the towne standeth a strong castle built by the king of Tunis, where the gouernour of the towne appointed by the king hath his aboad. Vnto this towne adioyneth a most large plaine, containing in length fortie, and in bredth fiue and twentic miles: verie commodious it is for corne, and is inhabited by certaine Arabians called Merdez: these Arabians haue great store of cattell and but little money, and they bring good store of butter dayly vnto Bona. Vnto this towne the people of Tunis, of the isle of Gerbi, and of Genoa vse yeerely to resort, and to buy great abundance of corne and butter. Euerie friday they haue neere vnto the towne wals a market, which is well frequented euen till night. Not farre from hence there is a certaine place in the sea, abounding with great store of corall: and because the townesmen know not how to fish for the same, the king of Tunis licenced certaine merchants of Genoa to fish for it: who in regard of the continuall assaults of pirates, because they could not speed of their purpose, they obtained leaue also of the king to build a castle neere vnto the place: but that the townesmen would in no case permit, saying

Y I

that

*S. Augustine in  
times past bi-  
shop of Hippo.*

*Great store of  
corall.*

*Hot baths.*

*A fond and  
senseles super-  
stition.*

that the Genoueses in times past tooke their towne by such a wile, and that it was afterward recouered againe by the king of Tunis.

*Of the towne of Tefas.*

THE towne of Tefas founded by the Africans vpon the side of a mountaine, and standing almost an hundred and fiftie miles southward of Bona, was in times past verie populous, and full of braue buildings, but it hath beene since destroyed by the Arabians. Afterward being replanted with new inhabitants, and remaining free from war for certaine moneths, it was the second time destroyed by the Arabians. Last of all (because it was a place commodious for corne) it was inhabited the third time by certaine Africans called Haoara, and that by the ayde of a certaine prince brother vnto him, which had slaine *Enasir* the king of Tunis his sonne: but now all that remained of this towne was vterly razed by the king of Tunis.

*Of the citie of Tebessa.*

THIS great and strong citie built by the Romans neere vnto Numidia, and being distant two hundred miles southward from the Mediterranean sea, is compassed with an high wall made of such stones, as are to be seene vpon the Colosso at Rome: neither saw I, to my remembrance, any such wals in all Africa or Europe; and yet the houses and other buildings are verie base. Through part of this citie runneth a great riuer: and in the market, and diuers other places stand certaine marble pillers, hauing Epigrams and sentences with Latin letters engrauen vpon them: there are also other square pillers of marble couered with roofs. The plaines adjacent albeit verie drie, yet are they most fruitfull for corne. Five miles from hence grow such abundance of wall-nut-trees, as you would take them to be some thicke Forrest. Neere vnto this towne standeth a certaine hill full of mighty caues, wherein the common people say, that giants inhabited of olde: but it is most euident, that those caues were digged by the Romans at the same time, when they built the citie: for certaine it is that the stones whereof the citie-walles consist, were taken out of those rockes. The inhabitants are people of a couetous, inhumane, and beastly disposition; neither will they vouchsafe to looke vpon a stranger: insomuch that *Eldabag* a famous Poet of the citie of Malaga in Granada, hauing in his trauell this way receiued some discourtesie, wrote in disgrace of Tebessa certaine satyricall verses, which my selfe likewise haue thought good here to set downe in the dispraise thereof.

*Within this place here's nought of any worth,  
Sauer worthles nuts, which Tebessa affords.  
Soft, I mistake, the marble wallles are worth  
Your earnest view, so are the Christall fowds:*

But

*But hence are banisht vertues all diuine,  
The place is hell, the people worse then swine.*

This *Eldabag* was a most learned and elegant Poet in the Arabian toong, and out of measure satyricall, and bitter in his inuectiues. But to returne to our former purpose, these Tebessians haue alwaies rebelled against the king of Tunis, and haue slaine all the gouernours that he hath sent. Wherefore the king that now is, traouelling vpon a time towards Numidia, sent certaine ambassadours into the city, to know how the citizens stood affected towards him: vnto whom they (instead of *God saue the King*) made answer: *God saue our Citie-walles*. Whereat the king waxing wroth, sacked the citie forthwith, beheaded and hanged diuers of the inhabitants, and made such hauock, that euer since it hath remained desolate. This was done in the ycere of the Hegeira 915.

*Of the towne called Vrbis.*

BY the name of this towne it sufficiently appeareth, that the Romans were the first founders thereof. Situate it is vpon the most beautifull plaine of al Africa, which by reason of the abundance of fountaines is so well stored with corne, that from thence to Tunis (which standeth 190. miles northward of this place) and to other regions adioyning, great plentie of corne is transported. In this towne are to bee seene fundrie monuments of the Romans, as namely images of marble, and euerie where vpon the wallles are sentences in Latin letters engrauen: the towne-walles are most artificially and sumptuously built. This towne the Gothes, being assisted by the Moores, surprised, when as it contained the chiefe treasure and wealth that the Romanes enioyed in all Africa. Afterward it remained for certaine yeeres desolate, being at length notwithstanding inhabited a new, yet so, that it deserueth rather the name of a village then of a towne. Not far from this towne runneth a certaine riuer, vpon the which are diuers water-milles; and this riuer taketh his beginning from a little hill but halfe a mile distant from the towne. All the inhabitants are either weauers or husbandmen, and are continually molested by the king of Tunis. Howbeit if the fertilitie of the soyle, the pleasantnes of the place, and the holesome disposition of the aire, were as well knowne to the king, as they are to my selfe, I thinke verily that he would leaue Tunis, and goe and dwell in this region. The Arabians are well acquainted with the place, for from hence they yeerely transport great store of corne vnto their deserts.

*Of the towne of Beggia.*

THIS towne built by the Romans vpon a mountaine almost twentie miles distant from the Mediterranean sea, and about eightie miles westward of Tunis, standeth right in the way from Tunisto Constantina.

Y 2

But

But because the name of this towne is no Arabian name, it seemeth, that the first name hath been oftentimes corrupted and changed. The ancient walles of this towne are as yet standing, and it is a most defensible place, and well furnished with all kinde of necessaries. It is inhabited with great store of weauers and husbandmen, and the fields thereof are so large and fruitfull for all kindes of graine, that the people of the same region could not sufficiently manure them, vnlesse they were assisted by certaine bordering Arabians: and yet a great part of their fields lieth vtilld: howbeit they send continually great store of corne vnto Tunis. The king of Tunis surchargeth them with continuall and greuous exactions, which is the cause why their estate so mightily decaieth.

*Of the towne called Hain Sammir.*

**T**His towne was in my time founded by the king of Tunis, being distant almost thirtie miles from Beggia. It was built (they say) of purpose, that none of the fields thereabout might lie vtilld. But it hath since bene destroyed by the Arabians, at the commandement of the king of Tunis: and now there remaineth a tower and certaine other buildings onely, whereof some haue roofes vpon them and others none.

*Of the towne of Casba.*

**T**His towne built by the Romans vpon a large plaine of twelue miles compasse, is fower and twentie miles distant from Tunis. The towne-wall remaineth strong as yet; but the towne it selfe is destroyed by the Arabians, and the fields lie vtilld, and all by the negligence of the king of Tunis, and of the inhabitants of the same region.

*Of the castle of Choros.*

**T**His castle founded not many yeeres past by the Africans vpon the riuer of Magrida, and being about ten miles distant from Tunis, is enuironed with most fruitfull fields. Neere vnto this towne groweth a certaine wood greatly abounding with oliues. At length it was destroyed by certaine Arabians called *Beni Heli*, which make perpetuall warre against the king of Tunis, and liue onely vpon theft and robbrie.

*Of the towne of Biserta.*

**T**He ancient towne of Biserta otherwise called Bensart, founded by the Africans vpon the Mediterran sea, thirtie fiue miles from Tunis, is but of a small bignes, and is inhabited with most miserable people. Neere vnto this towne entreth a certaine creeke or arme of the sea, which at the first be-  
ing

ing very narrow, increaseth by little and little into a marvellous bredth. On either side thereof dwell great store of fishers, and husbandmen: and westward of the said creeke lieth a most large and fruitfull plaine called Mater, which is greuously molested by the king of Tunis, and by the Arabians. In this creeke are taken abundance of fishes: and after the moneth of October they catch a certaine fish called by the Africans *Giarrafa*, which I take to be the same that is at Rome called *Laccia*: for then by reason of the abundance of raine that falleth, the salt water of the baye becommeth somewhat fresh, wherewith those fishes (they say) are much delighted. Very deepe it is, and affoordeth good fishing till the end of May: but then the fishes begin to decrease, and to be much drier in taste then before, like vnto the fishes taken in the riuer of Fez.

*The fish called  
Giarrafa or  
Laccia.*

*Of the great citie of Carthage.*

**T**His famous and ancient citie was built at the first by a certaine people that came out of Syria. But others say that it was founded by a queene.

The African chronicler *Ibnu Rachich* is of opinion, that it was built by a certaine people that came from Barca, being expelled thence by the king of Egypt: wherefore I cannot in this place affirme any certaintie as touching the founders thereof: for besides that the African historiographers disagree about this matter, there is none that hath left any writing thereof ancienter then the decay of the Roman empire: when as all the Romans that were found in Africa were expelled by the Goths. But afterward Tripolis of Barbaria and Capis being taken by the Mahumetans, the inhabitants of them both went vnto Carthage, whither the principall Romans and Goths had retired themselves, who endeouored by all meanes to withstand the Mahumetans: and after many skirmishes the Romans fled to Bona, and the Goths left Carthage for a pray vnto the Mahumetans; so that it remained desolate many yeeres after, till a certaine Mahumeran patriarke called *Elmahdi* brought in new colonies: howbeit he could scarce furnish the twentieth part with inhabitants. There are to be seene at this day certaine ruines of the citie-walles, till you come to a deepe and large cesterne. And there remaineth as yet also a certaine conduct which conueieth water to the citie from a mountaine thirtie miles distant, being like vnto the conduct of the great palace at Rome. Neere vnto Carthage likewise are certaine great and ancient buildings, the description whereof is out of my remembrance. On the west and south part of this citie are diuers gardens replenished with all kinde of fruites, which are carried from thence to Tunis in great abundance. The plaines adioining to this citie are exceeding fruitfull, though not very large: for vpon the north part thereof lieth a mountaine, the sea, and the gulf of Tunis: on the east and south parts it ioyneth to the plaines of Bensart. But \*now this citie is fallen into extreme decay & miserie: merchants shops there are not about twenty or fiue and twenty at the most: and

\* 1526

all the houses of the towne being scarce five hundred, are most base and beggerly. In my time here was a stately temple and a faire college also, but no students were therein. The townesmen, though very miserable, yet are they exceeding proud withall, and seeme to pretend a great shew of religion: And the greater part of them are either gardeners or husbandmen, and are greuously oppressed with the kings daily exactions.

*A description of the mightie citie of Tunis.*



His citie is called by the Latines *Tunetum*, and by the Arabians *Tunus*, which name they thinke to be corrupt, because it signifieth nought in their language: but in olde time it was called *Tarfis*, after the name of a citie in Asia. At the first it was a small towne built by the Africans vpon a certaine lake, about twelue miles distant from the Meditteran sea. And vpon the decay of Carthage Tunis began to increase both in buildings and inhabitants. For the inhabitants of Carthage were loth to remaine any longer in their owne towne, fearing least some armie would haue beene sent out of Europe: wherefore they repaired vnto Tunis, and greatly enlarged the buildings thereof. Afterward came thither one *Hucha Virmen* the fourth Mahumetan patriarke, who perswaded the citizens, that no armie or garrison ought to remaine in any sea-townes; wherefore he built another citie called *Cairaoan*, being distant from the Meditteran sea thirtie, and from Tunis almost an hundred miles: vnto which citie the armie marched from Tunis, and in the roome thereof other people were sent to inhabite. About an hundred and fiftie yeeres after, *Cairaoan* being sacked by the Arabians, the prince thereof was expelled, and became gouernour of the kingdome of Bugia: howbeit he left certaine kinsmen of his at Tunis, who gouerned that citie. And ten yeeres after, Bugia was taken by *Ioseph* the sonne of *Tesfin*, who seeing the humanitie of the foresaid prince, would not expel him out of his kingdome: but so long as it remained to the said prince and his posteritie, *Ioseph* caused it to be free from all molestation. Afterward *Abdul Mumen* king of Maroco hauing recovered Mahdia from the Christians, marched toward Tunis, and got possession thereof also. And so Tunis remained peaceably vnder the dominion of the kings of Maroco, so long as the kingdome was gouerned by the said *Abdul*, and his sonne *Ioseph*, and their successors *Iacob* and *Mansor*. But after the decease of *Mansor*, his sonne *Mahumet Ennasir* made war against the king of Spaine, by whom being vanquished, he fled to Maroco, and there within few yeeres ended his life. After him succeeded his brother *Ioseph*, who was slaine by certaine soldiers of the king of Telenfin. And so vpon the death of *Mahumet*, and of his brother *Ioseph*, the Arabians began to inhabite the territorie of Tunis, and to make often sieges and assaults against the citie it selfe: whereupon the gouernour of Tunis aduertised the king of Maroco, that vnlesse present aide were sent, he must be constrained

The building of  
Cairaoan.

Tunis subiect  
vnto Abdul-  
Mumen and  
other kings of  
Maroco.

to

to yeeld Tunis vnto the Arabians. The king therefore sent a certaine valiant captaine, called *Habdulnahidi*, and borne in Siuill a citie of Granada, with a fleet of twentie sailes vnto Tunis, which he found halfe destroied by the Arabians: but so great was his eloquence and wisdom, that he restored all things to their former estate, and receiued the yeerely tribute. After *Habdulnahidi* succeeded his sonne *Abu Zachberia*, who in learning and dexteritie of wit, excelled his father. This *Abu* built a castle vpon a certaine high place of the west part of Tunis, which he adorned with faire buildings and with a most beautifull temple. Afterward taking his iourney vnto the kingdome of Tripolis, and returning home by the southerne regions, he gathered tribute in all those places: so that after his decease he left great treasure vnto his sonne. And after *Abu* succeeded his sonne, who grew so insolent, that he would not be subiect to the king of Maroco, because he perceiued his kingdome to decay: at the same time also had the Marin-familie gotten possession of the kingdome of Fez, and so was the familie of *Beni Zeijen* possessed of the kingdomes of Telenfin and Granada. And so while all those regions were at mutuall dissension, the dominions of Tunis began mightily to encrease. Infomuch that the king of Tunis marched vnto Telenfin, and demanded tribute of the inhabitants. Wherefore the king of Fez, who as then laid siege against Maroco, craued by his ambassadours the king of Tunis his friendship, and with great giftes obtained the same. Then the king of Tunis returning home conquerour from Telenfin, was receiued with great triumph, and was saluted king of all Africa, because indeed there was no prince of Africa at the same time comparable vnto him. Wherefore he began to ordaine a roiall court, and to choose Secretaries, counsellors, captaines, and other officers appertaining to a king; after the very same manner that was vsed in the court of Maroco. And from the time of this king euen till our times, the kingdome of Tunis hath so prospered, that now it is accounted the richest kingdome in all Africa. The said kings sonne raiging after his fathers death, enlarged the suburbs of Tunis with most stately buildings. Without the gate called *Bed Suvaica* he built a streete containing to the number of three hundred families: and he built another streete at the gate called *Bed el Manera* consisting of more then a thousand families. In both of these streetes dwell great store of artificers, & in the street last mentioned all the Christians of Tunis, which are of the kings garde, haue their aboad. Likewise there is a third streete built at the gate next vnto the sea, called *Bebel Bahar*, and being but halfe a mile distant from the gulf of Tunis. Hither doe the Genoueses, Venetians, and all other Christian merchants resort, and here they repose themselves out of the tumult and concourse of the Moores: and this street is of so great bignes, that it containeth three hundred families of Christians and Moores, but the houses are verie low, and of small reccit. The families of the citie, together with them of the suburbs, amount almost to the number of ten thousand. This stately and populous citie hath a peculiar place assigned for each trade and occupation. Heere dwell

\* Or perhaps  
Andalusia.



A strange kind  
of spinning.

dwelling great store of linnen-weauers, and the linnen that they weaue is exceeding fine, & sold at a great price ouer al Africa. The women of this towne vse a strange kinde of spinning: for standing vpon an high place or on the vpper part of the house, they let downe their spindles at a window, or through a hole of the placher into a lower rounge, so that the weight of the spindle makes the thread verie equall and euen. And here the linnen-drapers haue many shops, and are accounted the wealthiest citizens in all Tunis: here are also great store of grocers, apothecaries, taylors, and of all other trades and occupations: butchers here are verie many which sell mutton for the most part, especially in the spring, and in summer: also here are abundance of all kinde of artificers, euerie of which to describe would prooue tedious: the apparell of their merchants, priests, and doctors is verie decent. Vpon their heads they weare a Dulipan, which is couered with a great linnen-cloth: the courtiers likewise and the souldiers weare all of them Dulipans, but not couered with linnen. Rich men here are but few, by reason of the exceeding scarcitie of all kinde of graine: for a man cannot till a piece of ground, be it neuer so neere the citie, in regard of the manifold inuasions of the Arabians. Corne is brought vnto them from other regions and cities, as namely from Vrbs, from Beggia, and from Bona. Some of the citizens of Tunis haue certaine fields in the suburbs walled round about, where they sowe some quantitie of barley and of other corne: howbeit the soyle is maruellously dry, and standeth in need of much watering: for which purpose euerie man hath a pit, whereout with a certaine wheele turned about by a mule or a camel, and through certaine conueyances and passages made for the nonce, they water all the vpper part of their ground: now consider (I pray you) what great crop of corne can be reaped out of so little a field, walled round about and watered by such cunning and industrie. Bread they make verie excellent, albeit they leaue the bran still among the flower, & they bake their loaves in certaine mortars, such as the Egyptians vse to beat flaxe in. The merchants and most part of the citizens vse for food a kinde of homely pulse or pappe called by them Befis, being made of barley meale in forme of a dumpling, whereupon they powre oyle, or the broth of Pome-citrons. And there is a certaine place in the citie where nothing but barley prepared in a readines to make the said pulse, is to be sold. They vse also another kinde of foode almost as homely as the former: for seething a quantitie of meale thoroughly in water, and afterward braying it in another vessell with a pestill, they powre oyle or flesh-pottage thereunto, and so eat it: and this meate they call Bezin: but the richer sort feede themselves with more daintie meats. All their milles (except such as stand vpon a riuer not far from the citie) are turned about either by the strength of mules, or asses. In this citie they haue no fountaines, riuers, nor welles of fresh water: but they all vse raine-water taken out of cisterns, sauing that there is a fontaine in the suburbs, from whence certaine porters bring salt-water into the citie to sell, which they thinke to be more holesome and fit for drinke then raine-water. Other wells there

there are that afforde most excellent water, which is reserued onely for the king & his courtiers. In this citie there is one most stately temple, furnished with sufficient number of priests, and with rich reuenues. Other temples there be also, but not endowed with so ample reuenues: here are colledges likewise and monasteries built after their maner, al which are maintained vpon the common beneuolence of the citie. There are certaine people in this citie whom a man would take to be distraught, which goe bare-headed and bare-footed, carying stones about with them, and these are reuerenced by the common people, for men of singular holines. Moreouer on the behalfe of one of these mad fellowes, called *Sidi el Dahi*; and for the residue of his fond societie, the king of Tunis built one of the foresaid monasteries, & endowed the same with most ample reuenues. All the houses of this citie are indifferently beautifull, being built of excellent stones, and adorned with much painting and caruing. They haue verie artificiall pargettings or plaister-works, which they beautifie with orient colours: for wood to carue vpon is verie scarce at Tunis. The floores of their chambers are paved with certaine shining and faire stones: and most of their houses are but of one storie high: and almost euerie house hath two gates or entrances; one towards the street, and another towards the kitchin and other backe-roumes: between which gates they haue a faire court, where they may walke and conferre with their friends. The bath-stoues here are far more commodious then those at Fez, though not so large and sumptuous. In the suburbs are many pleasant gardens which yeeld fruit, albeit not in great abundance, yet verie excellent: pome-citrons, roses, and other flowers here are great store, especially in that place which they call Bardo, where the king hath built a palace amidst those beautifull and sweete gardens. On all sides of the citie within fower or fife miles, there growe such plentie of oliues, that the oyle thereof sufficeth not onely the citie, but is carried also in great quantitie into Egypt. The wood of the oliue-trees which they cut downe they vse to burne and to make char-coales thereof: neither do I thinke any place to be more destitute of wood then this. Pouertie constraineth some of their women to lead an vnchast life: they are decently apparelled, and going forth of the house, they weare vails or masks before their faces, like vnto the women of Fez: for with one linnen-cloath they couer their foreheads, and ioine thereto another which they call *Setfari*: but about their heads they lap such fardels of linnen, as they seeme comparable to the heads of Giants. Most part of their substance and labour they bestow vpon perfumes and other such vanities. They haue here a compound called *Lhasis*, whereof whosoeuer eateth but one ounce falleth a laughing, disporting, and dallying, as if he were halfe drunken; and is by the said confection maruellously prouoked vnto lust.

*Of the king of Tunis his court, and of the rites and ceremonies there used.*

**S**O soone as the king of Tunis hath by inheritance attained to his kingdom, all his nobles, doctors, priestes, and iudges, binde themselves by solemne oth vnto him. Immediately after any kings death, his sonne and heire apparent succeedeth in the kingdom: then the chiefe officer of the court (called the Munafid, because he is the kings vice-roy or high deputy) presenteth himselfe foorthwith vnto the new king, and giueth vp an account of all things which he did while the olde king liued: and then at the kings appointment euerie of the nobles receiue offices from the Munafid according to their seuerall places of dignitie. Another principall officer there is, called the Mesuare, that is, the great commander and gouernour of the warlike forces: who hath authoritie to increase or diminish the number of soldiers, to giue them their pay, to leuie armies, and to conduct the same whither he thinketh good. The third officer in dignitie is the Castellán, who with his soldiers taketh charge of the castle, and looketh to the sauegarde of the kings owne person: and he alloteth punishments vnto such prisoners as are brought into the said castle, as if he were the king himselfe. The fourth officer is the gouernour of the citie, whose dutie is to administer iustice in the common wealth, and to punish malefactors. The fift officer is the kings secretarie, who hath authoritie to write, and to giue answer in the kings name: he may open also and read any letters whatsoeuer, except such as are sent vnto the Castellán and gouernour of the citie. The sixt is the kings chiefe chamberlaine, who is to furnish the walles with hangings, to appoint vnto euery man his place, and by a messenger to assemble the kings counsellours, and this man hath great familiaritie with the king, and hath access to speake with him, as often as he pleaseth. The seuenth in dignitie is the kings treasurer, who receiueth all customes, tributes, and yeerely reuenues, and paieth them, with the kings consent, vnto the Munafid. The eight officer is he that receiueth tribute for merchandize that are brought by land, who taketh custome also of forren merchants, which are constrained for the value of euery hundred duckats to pay two duckats and a halfe: this customer hath many spies and officers, who hauing intelligence of any merchants arrivall, they bring him foorthwith before their master, in whose absence they keepe him so long in their custodie, till their said master be present, and till the merchant hath deliuered all such custome as is due, and then being bound with many othes, he is dismissed. The ninth officer receiueth tribute onely of such wares as are brought by sea, and dwelleth in a house by the hauens side. The tenth is the steward of the kings household, who is to provide bread, meate, and other necessarie victuals, and to apparell all the kings wiues, eunuches, and the Negro-slaues that attend vpon him. He also taketh charge of the kings sonnes and of their nurses, and alloteth busines vnto the

the Christian captiues. These are the chiefe officers vnder the king of Tunis: the residue (least I should seeme tedious to the reader) I haue of purpose omitted to intreate of. The king of Tunis hath fiftene hundred most choise soldiers, the greatest part of whom are Renegadoes or backsliders from the Christian faith: and these haue liberall pay allowed them. They haue a captain ouer them also, who may increase or diminish their number as he pleaseth. Also there are an hundred and fiftie soldiers being Moores, who haue authoritie to remoue the tents of the kings armie from place to place. There are likewise a certaine number of crossebowes, which attend vpon the king whither soeuer he rideth: but next of all to the kings person is his garde of Christians, which (as we signified before) dwell in the suburbs. Before the king marcheth a garde of footemen, being all of them Turkish archers, and gunners. Immediately before the king goe his lackies or footemen. One there is that rideth on the one side of the king, carrying his partizan, another on the other side beareth his target, and the third comming behinde him carrieth his crossebowe. Others there are also that attend vpon the king, whom (for breuities sake) we omit here to speake of. These are the principall rites and ceremonies of the ancient kings of Tunis, being much different from them which are used by the king that now is. I could here make a large discourse of the kings vices that now reigneth (at whose hands I confesse my selfe to haue receiued great benefits) but that is not my purpose at this present: this one thing I can affirme, that he is marvellous cunning to procure money out of his subiects purses. But he himselfe liueth sometimes in his palace, and sometimes in gardens, in the companie of his concubines, musicians, stage-plaiers, and such like. When he calleth for any musician, he is brought in blindfold or hoodwinked in manner of a hawke. The golden coine of Tunis containeth fower and twenty charats apeece, that is to say, a duckat and one third part of the coine of Europe: there is a kinde of siluer-money coined also being fower square in forme, which waieth fixe charats apeece: and thirtie or two and thirtie of these peeces are equall in value to one peece of their gold coine, and they are called Nafari: the Italians call the gold-coine of Tunis Doble. And thus much concerning the king of Tunis, and the customes of his court.

*Of the towne of Neapolis.*

**T**His ancient towne built by the Romans vpon the Mediterran sea almost twelue miles eastward of Tunis is inhabited by certaine Moores called Nabell. It was in times past very populous, but now there dwell but a few pesants therein, which exercise themselves onely about sowing and reaping of flaxe.

*Of the towne of Cammar.*

Sugar-Canes.

**T**His towne is very ancient also and neere vnto Carthage, standing eight miles northward of Tunis. The inhabitants being many in number are all of them gardeners, and vse to bring their herbes and fruits to Tunis to be solde. Here also growe great store of sugar-canes, which are brought likewise vnto Tunis: but because they haue not the arte of getting out the sugar, they vse onely after meales to sucke the sweete iuice out of the said canes.

*Of the towne of Marsa.*

**T**His ancient towne standing vpon the Mediterran sea neere the same place where the hauen of Carthage was of olde, remained certaine yeeres desolate, but now it is inhabited by certaine fishers and husbandmen: and here they vse to white linnen-cloth. Not far from hence are certaine castles and palaces, where the king of Tunis ordinarily remaineth in summer-time.

*Of the towne of Ariana.*

**M**oreouer this ancient towne was built by the Goths almost eight miles northward of Tunis. It is enuironed with most pleasant and fruitfull gardens, and it hath a strong wall, and containeth many husbandmen. Certaine other little townes there are not far distant from Carthage, some inhabited, and the residue desolate, the names whereof I haue quite forgotten.

*Of the towne of Hammamet.*

**T**His towne built by the Mahumetans of late yeeres, and enuironed with a wall of great strength, is distant from Tunis almost fiftie miles. The inhabitants are miserable people, and oppressed with continuall exactions, being the greatest part of them either fishers or colliers.

*Of the towne of Heraclia.*

**T**His little and ancient towne was founded by the Romans vpon a certaine mountaine, and was afterward destroied by the Arabians.

*Of the towne of Sufa.*

**T**His exceeding great and ancient towne was built by the Romans vpon the Mediterran sea, being distant from Tunis about an hundred miles. The plaines adioyning abound with oliues and figs: their fieldes are most fruitfull for barlie, if they could be tilled, but the Arabians often incur-

fions

sions are the cause why they lie waste. The inhabitants being most liberall and courteous people, and great friends vnto strangers, make voyages most of them vnto the easterne regions and vnto Turkie; and some also frequent the next townes of Sicilia and Italie. The residue of the inhabitants are either weauers, or graziers of cattell, or such as turne wooden vessels, where-with they furnish the whole kingdome of Tunis. When the Mahumetans first woon that prouince, this towne was the seate of the vice-roy, whose palace is as yet remaining. A most stately towne it is, enuironed with strong walles, and situate vpon a most beautifull plaine. It was in times past well stored with inhabitants, and with faire buildings, whereof some, together with a goodly temple, are as yet extant. But now it containeth very few people, and but few shops in all, by reason of the kings continuall exactions. I my selfe was constrained to stay in this towne for fower daies, in regarde of the danger of the time.

*Of the towne of Monaster.*

**T**He ancient towne of Monaster built by the Romans vpon the Mediterran sea, and distant almost twelue miles from Sufa, is enuironed with most impregnable and stately walles, and containeth very faire buildings: but the inhabitants are most miserable and beggerly people, and weare shooes made of sea-rushes: most of them are either weauers or fishers: their fare is barlie bread, and a kinde of foode mingled with oile, which we called before Bezzin, which is vsed in all the townes thereabout: the soile will yeeld no other corne but barlie. The territorie adiacent aboundeth with oranges, pearres, figs, pomegranates, and oliues, sauing that it is continually wasted by the inuasion of the enemie.

*Of the towne of Tobulba.*

**T**His towne built also by the Romaines vpon the Mediterran sea, standeth about twelue miles eastward of Monaster. For certaine yeeres it was very populous, and greatly abounded with oliues: but afterwarde it was so wasted by the Arabians, that now there are but fewe houses remaining, which are inhabited by certaine religious men: these religious men maintaine a faire hospitall for strangers traouelling that way, where they courteously entertaine euen the Arabians themselues.

*Of the towne of El Mahdia, otherwise called Africa.*

**E**L Mahdia founded in our time by *Mahdi* the first patriarke of Caira-  
oan vpon the Mediterran sea, and fortified with strong wals, towers,  
and gates, hath a most noble hauen belonging thereto. *Mahdi* when  
he first entred into this region, fained himselfe in an vknowne habite to  
be descended of the lineage of *Mahumet*, whereby growing into great fauour  
of

of the people, he was by their assistance made prince of Cairaoan, and was called El Mahdi Califa: afterward traueiling fortie daies iourney westwarde into Numidia to receiue tribute due vnto him, he was taken by the prince of Segelmese, and put in prison, howbeit the saide prince of Segelmese being presently moued with compassion toward him, restored him to his former libertie, and was for his good will not long after slaine by him: Afterwarde tyrannizing ouer the people, and perceiuing some to conspire against him, he erected this towne of Mahdia, to the end he might there finde safe refuge when neede required. At length one *Beiezid* a Mahumetan prelate (whom they called the cauallier or knight of the asse, because that riding continually vpon an asse he conducted an armie of fortie thousand men) came vnto Cairaoan: but *Mahdi* fledde vnto his new towne, where with thirtie saile of ships sent him by a Mahumetan prince of Cordoua, he so valiantly encountered the enimie, that *Beiezid* and his sonne were both slaine in that battaile: afterward returning to Cairaoan, he grew in league and amitie with the citizens, and so the gouernment remained vnto his posteritie for many yeeres. But an hundred and thirtie yeeres past this \* towne was taken by the Christians, and was after recouered by a certaine Mahumetan patriarke of Marocco called *Abdul Mumen*, but nowe it is subiect vnto the king of Tunis, by whom it is continually oppressed with most grieuous exactions. The inhabitants exercise traffike with forraine nations: and they are at so great dissention with the Arabians, that they are scarce permitted to till their grounds. Not many yeeres ago *Pedro de Nauarra* assailing this towne onely with nine ships, was defeated of his purpose, and constrained to returne with great losse of his men. This hapned in the yeere of our Lord 1519.

\* El Mahdia.

Of the towne of Asfachus.

THIS towne was built by the Africans vpon the Mediterran sea, at such time as they waged warre against the Romaines. It is compassed with most high and strong wals, and was in times past very populous, but now it containeth but three or fower hundreth families at the most, and but a fewe shoppes. Oppressed it is both by the Arabians, and by the king of Tunis. All the inhabitants are either weauers, marriners, or fishermen. They take great store of fishes called by them Spares, which worde signifieth nought in the Arabian and Barbarian, much lesse in the Latine toong. This people liue also vpon barly bread and Bezin: their apparell is base, and some of them traffike in Egypt and Turkie.

Of the great citie of Cairaoan.

THE famous citie of Cairaoan otherwise called Caroen, was founded by *Hueba*, who was sent generall of an armie out of Arabia deserta, by *Hutmen* the thirde Mahumetan Califa. From the Mediterran sea this citie

citie is distant fixe and thirtie, and from Tunis almost an hundred miles; neither was it built (they say) for any other purpose, but onely that the Arabian armie might securely rest therein with all such spoiles as they woone from the Barbarians, and the Numidians. He enuironed it with most impregnable walles, and built therein a sumptuous temple, supported with stately pillars. The saide *Hueba* after the death of *Hutmen* was ordained prince of Muchauia, and gouerned the same till the time of *Qualid Califa* the sonne of *Habdul Malic*, who as then raigned in Damasco: this *Qualid* sent a certaine captaine called *Muse* the sonne of *Nofair*, with an huge armie vnto Cairaoan: who hauing staid a fewe daies with his armie not farre from Cairaoan, marched westward, sacking and spoiling townes and cities, till he came to the Ocean sea shore, and then he returned towards Cairaoan againe. From whence he sent as his deputie a certaine captaine into Mauritania, who there also conquered many regions and cities. Inso-much that *Muse* being moued with a ialous emulation, commanded him to staie till himselfe came. His said Deputie therefore called *Tarich* encamped himselfe not far from Andaluzia, whither *Muse* within 4. months came vnto him with an huge armie. From whence both of them with their armies crossing the seas, arriued in Granada, and so marched by lande against the Goths. Against whom *Theodoricus* the king of Goths opposing himselfe in battaile, was miserablie vanquished. Then the foresaide two captaines with all good successe proceeded euen to Castilia, and sacked the citie of Toledo, where amongst much other treasure, they founde many reliques of the saints, and the very same table whereat Christ sate with his blessed Apostles, which being couered with pure gold and adorned with great store of precious stones, was esteemed to be woorth halfe a million of ducates, and this table *Muse* carrying with him as if it had bene all the treasure in Spaine, returned with his armie ouer the sea, and bent his course towards Cairaoan. And being in the meane space sent for by the letters of *Qualid Califa*, he sailed into Egypt: but arriuing at Alexandria, it was tolde him by one *Hescian*, brother vnto the saide *Califa*, that the *Califa* his brother was fallen into a most dangerous disease: wherefore he wished him not to goe presently vnto Damasco, for feare least if the *Califa* died in the meane season, those rich and sumptuous spoiles should be wasted and dispersed to no ende. But *Muse* little regarding this counsell, proceeded on to Damasco, and presented all his spoiles to the *Califa*, who within fiewe daies after deceased. After whom his brother succeeding *Califa*, depriued *Muse* of his dignitie, and substituted one *Iezul* into his roome, whose sonne, brother, and nephewes succeeding, gouerned the citie of Cairaoan, till such time as the familie of *Qualid* was depriued of that dignitie, and one *Elagleb* was appointed lieutenant, who gouerned not the towne as a *Califa*: from that time the Mahumetan *Califas* leauing Damasco, remooued vnto Bagaded, as we find recorded in a certaine Chronicle. After the decease of *Elagleb*, succeeded his sonne, and the gouernment remained vnto his posteritie for an hundred



*The isle of Sicilia  
subdued by  
the gouernour  
Cairaoan.*

threescore and ten yeeres, till such time as they were depriued thereof by one *Mahdi Califa*. But at the same time when *Elagleb* was gouernour, the citie of Cairaoan was so increased both with inhabitants, and buildings, that a towne called *Recheda* was built next vnto it, where the prince with his nobles vsed to remaine. In his time also the Isle of Sicilia was woone: for *Elagleb* sent thither a certaine captaine called *Halcama*, who built vpon the said Island a towne in stead of a forte, calling it according to his owne name *Halcama*, which name is vsed by the Sicilians euen till this present. Afterward this new towne was besieged by certaine people that came to aide the Sicilians. Whereupon one *Ased* was sent with an armie, & so the Moores forces being augmented, they conquered the residue of Sicilia, by which meanes the dominions of Cairaoan began woonderfully to increase. The citie of Cairaoan standeth vpon a sandie and desert plaine, which beareth no trees, nor yet any corne at all. Corne is brought thither from *Susa*, from *Monaster*, and from *Mahdia*, all which townes are within the space of forty miles. About twelue miles from Cairaoan standeth a certaine mountaine called *Gueslet*, where some of the Romaines buildings are as yet extant: this mountaine aboundeth with springs of water and carobs, which springs runne downe to Cairaoan, where otherwise they shoulde haue no water but such as is kept in cesterne. Without the wals of this citie raine water is to be found in certaine cesterne onely till the beginning of Iune. In sommer time the Arabians vse to resort vnto the plaines adioining vpon this towne, who bring great dearth of corne and water, but exceeding plentie of dates and flesh with them, and that out of *Numidia*, which region is almost an hundred threescore and ten miles distant. In this citie for certaine yeeres the studie of the Mahumetan lawe mightily flourished, so that heere were the most famous lawyers in all Africa. It was at length destroyed, and replanted againe with newe inhabitants, but it coulde neuer attaine vnto the former estate. At this present it is inhabited by none but leather-dressers, who sende their leather vnto the cities of *Numidia*, and exchange it also for cloth of Europe. Howbeit they are so continually oppressed by the king of *Tunis*, that now they are brought vnto extreme miserie.

*Of the citie of Capes.*

**T**His ancient citie built by the Romaines vpon the Mediterranean sea, was fortified with most high and stately walles, and with a strong castle. Iust by it runneth a certaine riuer of hot and salt water. It hath continually beene so molested by the Arabians, that the inhabitants abandoning their citie, resorted vnto certaine plaines replenished with great abundance of dates, which by a certaine arte are preserved all the yeere long. Heere is also digged out of the grounde a kinde of fruite about the bignes of a beane, and in taste resembling an almond. This fruite being ordinarie ouer all the kingdome of *Tunis*, is called by the Arabians *Habhaziz*.

*The fruite called  
Habhaziz.*

The

The inhabitants of the foresaide plaine are blacke people, being all of them either fishers, or husbandmen.

*Of the towne called El Hamma.*

**T**His most ancient towne founded also by the Romans, and being distant from *Capes* almost fiftene miles, is enuironed with most stately and strong walles: and vpon certaine marble stones therein are engrauen diuers monuments of antiquitie. The streets and buildings of this towne are verie base, and the inhabitants miserable, and addicted to robbery. Their fields are barren and vnprofitable, and will bring forth nought but certaine vnfaurie dates. A mile and a halfe to the south of this towne beginneth a certaine riuer of hot water to spring, which being brought thorough the midst of the citie by certaine chanelis is so deepe, that it will reach vp to a mans nauell: howbeit by reason of the extreme heat of the water, there are but few that will enter thereinto. And yet the inhabitants vse it for drinke, hauing set it a cooling almost an whole day. At length this riuer not far from the towne maketh a certaine lake, which is called the lake of lepers: for it is of woonderfull force to heale the disease of leprosie, and to cure leprous sores: wherefore neere vnto it are diuers cottages of lepers, some of whom are restored to their health. The saide water tasteth in a manner like brimstone, so that it will nothing at all quench a mans thirst, whereof I my selfe haue had often triall.

*A riuer of hot  
water.*

*The lake of  
lepers.*

*Of the castle of Machres.*

**T**He castle of *Machres* was built by the Africans in my time vpon the entrance of the gulf of *Capes*, to defend the same region from the inuasion of the enemy. It is almost fife hundred miles distant from the isle of *Gerbi*. All the inhabitants are either weauers, shipwrights, or fishermen, and haue traffick & recourse ouer all the foresaid isle. They haue al the same language that the people of the isle of *Gerbi* vse: but because they want grounds and possessions, al of them, saue the weauers, liue only vpon theft & robbery.

*Of the isle of Gerbi or Zerbi, where Iohn Leo the Author of this Historie  
was taken by Italian pirates, and carried thence to Rome.*

**T**His isle being neere vnto the firme land of Africa, and consisting of a plaine and sandie ground, aboundeth exceedingly with dates, vines, oliues, and other fruits, and containeth about eighteen miles in compass. It hath also certaine farmes and granges, which are so farre distant asunder, that you shall scarce finde two or three in one village. Their ground is drie and barren, which though it be neuer so well tilled, will yeeld but a little barlie. And here corne and flesh is alwaies at an exceeding rate. At the sea shore standeth a strong castle, wherein the gouernour of the whole Island

and his retinue haue their abode. Not farre from hence there is a certaine village, where the Christian, Mauritanian, and Turkish merchants haue their place of residence; in which place there is a great market or faire weekly kept, whither all the merchants of the Island and many Arabians from the maine land with great store of cattle and wooll doe resort. The inhabitants of the Isle bring cloth thither to sell, which they themselves make, and this cloth together with great store of raisins they vsually transport vnto Tunis, and Alexandria to be solde. Scarce fiftie yeeres sithence this Isle was inuaded and conquered by Christians: but it was immediately recouered by the king of Tunis. And presently after (newe colonies being heere planted) the foresaide castle was reedified; which the kings of Tunis afterwarde enioied. But after the death of king Hutmen the Islanders returned to their former libertie, and presently broke the bridge from the Island to the maine land, fearing least they shoulde be inuaded by some land-armie. Not long after the said Islanders slaying the king of Tunis his gouernours of the Isle, haue themselves continued gouernours thereof till this present. Out of this Island is gathered the summe of fower score thousand Doubles (euery Double containing an Italian ducate, and one third part) for yeerely tribute, by reason of the great concourse and resort of the merchants of Alexandria, Turkie, and Tunis. But now because they are at continuall dissension and controuersie, their estate is much impaired. In my time *Don Ferdinando* king of Spaine, sent a great armada against this Island, vnder the conduct of the duke of Alua, who not knowing the nature of the same, commanded his soldiers to land a good distance from thence: but the Moores so valiantly defended their Island, that the Spaniards were constrained to giue backe: and so much the greater was their distresse, in that they could not finde water sufficient to quench their extreme thirst. Moreouer at the Spaniards arriuall it was a full tide, but when they woulde haue returned on board, it was so great an ebbe, that their ships were constrained to put to sea, least they shoulde haue bene cast vpon the sholdes. The shore was drie for almost fower miles together, so that the Spanish soldiers were put vnto great toile, before they could come to the waters side. And the Moores pursued them so eagerly, that they slew and tooke prisoners the greatest part of them, and the residue escaped by shipping into Sicilia. Afterwarde the Emperour *Charles* the fift sent a mightie fleet thither vnder the conduct of a Rhodian knight of the order of *Saint Iohn de Messina*, who so discreetly behaued himselfe in that action, that the Moores compounded to pay fise thousand Doubles for yeerly tribute, vpon condition of the Emperours league and good will, which yeerely tribute is payde vntill this present.

The armie of  
don Ferdinando  
defeated.

Gerbi made  
tributarie vnto  
Charles the fift  
by meanes of a  
knight of the  
Rhodes.

Of the towne of Zoara.

His towne built by the Africans vpon the Mediterran sea, standeth eastward from the Isle of Gerbi almost fiftie miles. The towne wall is weak,

and the inhabitants are poore people, being occupied about nothing but making of lime and plaistering, which they sell in the kingdome of Tripolis. Their fields are most barren: and the inhabitants haue continually bene molested by the inuasions of the Christians, especially since the time that they woon Tripolis.

Of the towne of Lepide.

His ancient towne founded by the Romans, and enuironed with most high and strong walles, hath twise bene sacked by the Mahumetans, and of the stones and ruines thereof was Tripolis afterward built.

Of the olde citie of Tripolis.

Olde Tripolis built also by the Romans, was after woon by the Goths, and lastly by the Mahumetans, in the time of *Califa Homar* the second. Which Mahumetans hauing besieged the gouernour of Tripoli six moneths together, compelled him at length to flee vnto Carthage. The citizens were partly slaine, and partly carried captiue into Egypt and Arabia, as the most famous African Historiographer *Ibnu Rachich* reporteth.

Of the new citie of Tripolis in Barbarie.



After the destruction of old Tripolis, there was built another city of that name: which city being inuironed with most high and beautifull wals, but not verie strong, is situate vpon a sandie plaine, which yeeldeth great store of Dates. The houses of this citie are most stately in respect of the houses of Tunis; and heere also euery trade and occupation hath a seuerall place. Weauers here are many. They haue no wels nor fountaines; but all their water is taken out of cisterns. Corne in this citie is at an exceeding rate; for all the fields of Tripoli are as sandie and barren as the fields of Numidia. The reason whereof is, for that the principall and fattest grounds of this region are ouerflowed with the sea. The inhabitants of this region affirme, that the greatest part of their fields northward are swallowed vp by the Mediterran sea, the like wherof is to be scene in the territories of Monaster, Mahdia, Asfacos, Capes, the Isle of Gerbi, and other places more eastward, where the sea for the space of a mile is so shallow, that it will scarce reach vnto a mans nauell. Yeay some are of opinion, that the citie of Tripolis it selfe was situate in times past more to the north, but by reason of the continuall inundations of the sea, it was built and remooued by little and little southward; for prooffe whereof there stand as yet ruines of houses drowned in certaine places of the sea. In this citie were many faire tem-

Plentie of  
dates.

ples

ples and colledges built, and an hospitall also for the maintenance of their owne poore people, and for the entertainment of strangers. Their fare is verie base and homely, beeing onely the forenamed Besis made of barley meale: for that region affoordeth so small quantitie euen of barley, that he is accounted a wealthie man that hath a bushell or two of corne in store. The citizens are most of them merchants; for Tripolis standeth neere vnto Numidia and Tunis, neither is there any citie or towne of account between it and Alexandria: neither is it farre distant from the Isles of Sicilia and Malta: and vnto the port of Tripolis Venetian ships yeerly resort, and bring thither great store of merchandize. This citie hath alwaies bene subiect vnto the king of Tunis: but when *Abulhasen* the king of Fez besieged Tunis, the king of Tunis was constrained with his Arabians to flee into the deserts. Howbeit when *Abulhasen* was conquered, the king of Tunis returned to his kingdome: but his subiects began to oppose themselves against him: and so that common wealth was afterward grievously turmoyled with ciuill dissensions and warres. Whereof the king of Fez hauing intelligence, marched the fifth yeere of the said ciuill warre with an armie against the citie of Tunis, and hauing vanquished the king thereof, and constrained him to flee vnto Constantina, he so straitly besieged him, that the citizens of Constantina seeing themselves not able to withstand the king of Fez, opened their citie gates to him and to all his armie. Whereupon the king of Tunis was carried captiue vnto Fez, and was afterward kept a while prisoner in the castle of Septa. In the meane season Tripolis was by a Genouese fleet of twentie sailes surprised and sacked, and the inhabitants carried away captiue. Whereof the king of Fez beeing aduertised, gaue the Genoueses fiftie thousand ducates, vpon condition, that he might enjoy the towne in peace. But the Genoueses hauing surrendred the towne, perceiued after their departure, that most part of their ducates were counterfait. Afterward the king of Tunis being restored vnto his former liberty by *Abuselim* king of Fez, returned home vnto his kingdome, and so the gouernment thereof remained vnto him and his posteritie, till *Abubakar* the sonne of *Hutmen* together with his yoong sonne was slaine in the castle of Tripolis by a nephew of his, who afterward vsurped the kingdome: but he was slaine in a battell which he fought against *Habdul Mumen*, who presently thereupon became Lord of Tripolis. After him succeeded his sonne *Zacharias*, who within a few moneths dyed of the pestilence. After *Zacharias*, *Mucamen* the sonne of *Hesen* and cousin to *Zacharias* was chosen king; who beginning to tyrannize ouer the citizens was by them expelled out of his kingdome: and afterward a certaine citizen was aduanced vnto the royall throne; who gouerned verie modestly. But the king which was before expelled sent an armie of souldiers against Tripolis, who loosing the field, were all of them put to flight. Afterward the king that began to raigne so modestly, proued a verie tyrant, and being murdered by his kinsman, the people made choise of a certaine nobleman, leading as then an Hermites life, and

Tripolis taken  
by a fleet of  
Genouais.

and in a manner against his will appointed him their gouernour: and so the gouernment of the citie of Tripolis remained vnto him and his posteritie, till such time as king *Ferdinando* sent Don *Pedro de Nauarra* against it: who on the sudden encountering this citie, carried away many captiues with him. The gouernour of Tripolis and his sonne in lawe were sent prisoners vnto Messina. Where, after certaine yeeres imprisonment, they were restored by the Emperour *Charles* the sixth vnto their former libertie, and returned vnto Tripolis, which towne was afterward destroyed by the Christians. The castle of Tripolis being enuironed with most strong walles, begin (as I vnderstand) to be replanted with new inhabitants. And thus much as concerning the cities of the kingdome of Tunis.

Tripolis surprized by Pedro de Nauarra.

Of the mountaines belonging to the state of Bugia.

THE territorie of Bugia is full of ragged, high, and woodie mountaines: the inhabitants being a noble, rich, and liberall people, and possessing great store of goats, oxen and horses, haue alwaies continued in libertie, since the time that Bugia was surprised by the Christians. The people of these mountaines vse to haue a blacke crosse vpon one of their cheekes, according to the ancient custome before mentioned. Their bread is made of barley, and they haue abundance of nuts and figs vpon those mountaines, especially which are neere vnto Zoaoa: in some places of these mountaines are certaine mines of iron, whereof they make a kinde of coine of halfe a pound weight. They haue also another sort of siluer coine weighing fower graines a peece: these mountaines yeeld abundance of wine and hempe; but their linnen-cloath that they weaue is exceeding coarse. And these mountaines of Bugia extende in length vpon the coast of the Mediterran sea almost a hundred and fiftie, and in bredth fortie miles: each mountaine containeth inhabitants of a diuers kinred and generation from others, whom because they liue all after one manner, we will passe ouer in silence.

Iron-mines.

Of mount Auraz.

THIS exceeding high and populous mountaine is inhabited with most barbarous people, that are wholly addicted vnto robberie and spoile. From Bugia it is distant fower score, and from Constantina almost three score miles. Also being separated from other mountaines it extendeth about three score miles in length. Southward it bordereth vpon the Numidian deserts, and northward vpon the regions of Mesila, Stefe, Nicaus, and Constantina. From the very toppe of this mountaine issue diuers streames of water, which running downe into the next plaines, increase at length into a lake, the water whereof in sommer time is salt. The passage vnto this mountaine is very difficult, in regard of certaine cruell Arabians.

*Of the mountaine of Constantina.*

**A**Ll the north and west part of the territorie belonging to the citie of Constantina is full of high mountaines, which beginning at the borders of Bugia, extend themselves to the Meditteran sea, euen as farre as Bona, that is to say, almost an hundred and thirtie miles. Their fields vpon the plaines are replenished with oliues, figges, and all other kindes of fruites, which are carried in great quantitie vnto the next townes and cities: all the inhabitants for ciuill demeanour excell the citizens of Bugia, and do exercise diuers manuarie arts, and weaue great store of linnen cloth. They are at continuall diffention among themselves, by reason that their women will so often change husbands. They are exceeding rich, and free from all tribute: and yet dare they not till their plaines, both for feare of the Arabians, and also of the gouernors of the next cities. Euerie weeke vpon sundry daies heere is a market, greatly frequented with merchants of Constantina, & of other places: and whatsoever merchant hath no friend nor acquaintance dwelling vpon the mountaines, is in great hazard to be notable cozened. Vpon these mountaines they haue nether iudges, priests, nor yet any learned men: so that when any of the inhabitants would write a letter vnto his friend, he must trudge vp and downe sometime twelue, and sometime fifteene miles to seeke a scribe. Footemen for the warres they haue almost fortie thousand, and about fower thousand horsemen. The inhabitants are men of such valour, that if they agreed among themselves, they would soone be able to conquer all Africa.

*Of the mountaines of Bona.*

**T**He citie of Bona hath on the north part the Meditteran sea, on the south and west parts certaine mountaines adioining almost vnto the mountaines of Constantina, and on the east side it hath most fruitfull fieldes and large plaines, whereupon in times past were diuers townes and castles, built by the Romaines; the ruines whereof are now onely remaining, and the names quite forgotten. All these regions by reason of the Arabians crueltie are so desolate, that they are inhabited but in very fewe places; and there they are constrained to keepe out the Arabians by force of armes. The mountaines of Bona extend in length from east to west almost fiftie miles, and in bredth about thirtie miles. Heere are great store of fountaines, from whence certaine riuers issue, running through the plaines into the Meditteran sea.

*Of the mountaines standing neere vnto Tunis.*

**T**He citie of Tunis standing vpon a plaine hath no mountaines nigh vnto it, but onely on the west side towards the Meditteran sea, where it

it hath a mountaine like vnto that which enuironeth Carthage. Neere vnto Tunis standeth another high and colde mountaine called Zagoan: inhabitants heere are none at all but a fewe that tende the Bee-hiues, and gather some quantitie of barly. Vpon the toppe of this mountaine the Romaines built certaine forts, the ruines whereof are yet to be seene, hauing epitaphes engrauen vpon them in Latine letters. From this mountaine vnto Carthage, water is conueighed by certaine passages vnder the ground.

*Of the mountaines of Beni Tefren and Nufusa.*

**T**Hese high and colde mountaines are distant from the desert, from Gerbi, and from Asfacus almost thirtie miles, and yeelde very small store of barly. The inhabitants being valiant, and renouncing the law of Mahumer, do follow the doctrine of the patriarke of Cairaoan in most points, neither is there any other nation among the Arabians that obserue the same doctrine. In Tunis and other cities these people earne their living by most base occupations, neither dare they openly professe their religion.

*Of mount Garian.*

**T**His high and cold mountaine containing in length fortie & in bredth fifteene miles, and being separated from other mountaines by a sandie desert, is distant from Tripolis almost fiftie miles. It yeeldeth great plentie of barly and of dates, which vnlesse they be spent while they are new, will soone prooue rotten. Heere are likewise abundance of oliues: Wherefore from this mountaine vnto Alexandria and other cities there is much oile conueighed. There is not better saffron to be found in any part of the worlde besides, which in regard of the goodnesse is solde very deere. For yearly tribute there is gathered out of this mountaine threescore thousand ducates, and as much saffron as fifteene mules can carrie. They are continually oppressed with the exactions of the Arabians, and of the king of Tunis. They haue certaine base villages vpon this mountaine.

*Most excellent saffron.**Of mount Beni Guarid.*

**T**His mountaine being almost an hundred miles distant from Tripolis, is inhabited with most valiant & stout people, which liue at their owne libertie, and are at continual war with the people of the next mountaines, & of the Numidian desert.

*Of the castle called Cast Acmed.*

**T**His castle built vpon the Meditteran sea by a captaine which came with an armie into Africa, standeth not farre from Tripolis, and was at the last laide waste by the Arabians.

of



*Of the castle of Subeica.*

**T**He castle of Subeica erected about the same time when the Mahumetans came into Africa, was in times past wel furnished with inhabitants, being afterward destroyed by the Arabians, and now it harboreth a fewe fishers onely.

*Of the Castle called Cafr Hefin.*

**T**His castle was founded by the Mahumetans vpon the Meditterran sea, and was afterward destroyed by the Arabians.

*Here endeth the fifth booke.*

# IOHN LEO HIS SIXTH BOOKE OF

the Historie of Africa, and

*of the memorable things  
contained therein.*

*Of the village called Gar.*

**A**uing hitherto intreated of the mountaines, it now remaineth that we say somewhat as touching certaine villages, hamlets, and territories: and afterward we will describe in order the cities of Numidia. And first the village of Gar, situate vpon the Meditterran sea, and abounding with dates, offereth it selfe: the fields thereto belonging are drie and barren, and yet bring they forth some quantitie of barley for the sustenance of the inhabitants.

*Of Garell Gare.*

**I**T is a certaine little territorie or Grange, containing caues of a maruellous depth, whence (they say) the stones were taken wherewith olde Tripolis was built; because it is not far distant from that citie.

*Of the village of Sarman.*

**T**His large village standing not farre from old Tripolis, aboundeth with dates, but no corne will grow there.

of

*Of the village called Zamiat Ben Iarub.*

**T**His village being situate neer vnto the Meditterran sea, yeeldeth great plentie of dates, but no corne at all, and is inhabited by certaine religious persons.

*Of the village of Zanzor.*

**T**His village also standing neere vnto the Meditterran sea, within twelue miles of Tripolis, is inhabited by sundrie artificers, and aboundeth with great store of dates, pomegranats, and peaches. The inhabitants haue beene verie miserable euer since Tripolis was taken by the Christians; and yet they traffique with the citizens of Tripolis, and carrie dates thither to sell.

*Of the village of Hamrozo.*

**I**T standeth fixe miles from Tripolis, and the gardens thereof bring forth great plentie of dates, and of all other kinde of fruits.

*Of the plaine of Taioza.*

**T**His plaine standing two miles eastward of Tripolis, containeth many granges exceedingly replenished with dates and other fruits. The surprise of Tripolis was verie profitable for this place, for then many principall citizens fled hither for refuge. The inhabitants being ignorant and rude people, and altogether addicted to theft and robbrie, build their cottages with the boughes of palme-trees. Their food is barley bread, and Bezin before described: all round about are subiect vnto the king of Tunis and the Arabians, saue those onely that inhabit vpon this plaine.

*Of the Prouince of Mesellata.*

**T**His Prouince standing vpon the Meditterran sea about fife and thirtie miles from Tripolis, and being fraught with rich villages, castles, and inhabitants, aboundeth also with great plentie of oliues and dates. The inhabitants being free from all forren authoritie, haue a Captaine among themselves, which gouerneth their common-wealth, and fighteth their battles against the Arabians: and the soldiers of this Prouince are about 5000.

*Of the Prouince of Mesrata.*

**T**His Prouince being situate also vpon the Meditterran sea, about an hundred miles from Tripolis, hath manie villages both vpon the plaines and mountaines. The inhabitants are rich and pay no tribute at all,

A a r

and

and exercise traffique with the Venetians resorting to this Prouince with their galleies, carrying the Venetian wares to Numidia, and there exchanging the same for slaues, muske, and ciuet, which is brought thither out of Ethiopia.

*Of the desert of Barca.*

**T**His desert beginning at the vnmōst frontire of Mesrata, and extending eastward as farre as the confines of Alexandria, containeth in length a thousand and three hundreth, and in bredth about 200. miles. It is a rough and vnpleasant place, being almost vtterly destitute of water and corne. Before the Arabians inuaded Africa, this region was void of inhabitants: but now certaine Arabians lead here a miserable and hungrie life, being a great way distant from all places of habitation: neither haue they any corne growing at all. But corne and other necessaries are brought vnto them by sea from Sicilia, which that euerie of them may purchase, they are constrained to lay their sonnes to gage, and then goe rob and rife trauellers to redeeme them againe. Neuer did you heare of more cruell and bloodie theeues; for after they haue robbed merchants of all their goods and apparel, they powre warme milke downe their throats, hanging them vp by the heeles vpon some tree, and forcing them to cast their gorge, wherein the lewd varlets search diligently for gold, suspecting that the merchants swallowed vp all their crownes before they entred that dangerous desert.

*The Arabians of Barca most cruell and bloodie theeues.*

*Of the citie of Tesser in Numidia.*

**I**N the first Booke of this present discourse we said that Numidia was accounted by the African Cosmographers the basest part of all Africa, and there we alleaged certaine reasons for the same purpose: we signified also in the second Booke, writing of the Prouince of Hea, that certaine cities of Numidia stood neere vnto mount Atlas. Howbeit \*Sus, Guzula, Helchemma, and Capes, are within the kingdome of Tunis, albeit some would haue them situate in Numidia. But my selfe following the opinion of *Ptolemy*, suppose Tunisto be a part of Barbarie. Being therefore about to describe all the cities and townes of Numidia, I will first begin with Tesser: which ancient towne built by the Numidians neere vnto the Libyan deserts, and enuironed with walles of sunne-dried bricke, deserueth scarcely the name of a towne; and yet containeth fower hundred families. It is compassed round about with sandie plaines, sauing that neer vnto the towne grow some store of dates, of mill-seed, and of barley, which the miserable townesmen vse for food. They are constrained also to pay large tribute vnto the Arabians inhabiting the next deserts. They exercise traffique in the land of Negroes and in Guzula, in so much that they spend most of their time in forren regions. They are of a blacke colour, and destitute of all learning. The women indeed teach their yoong children the first rudiments of learning, but

\* Error.

before

before they can attaine to any perfection, they are put to labour, and to the plough-tayle. The said women are somewhat whiter then other women: some of them get their living by spinning and carding of wooll, and the residue spend their time in idleness. Such as are accounted richest in this region, possesse but verie few cattell. They till their ground with an horse and a camell, which kinde of plowing is obserued throughout all Numidia.

*Of the village of Gauden.*

**T**His village situate vpon the Numidian desert neere vnto Libya, is inhabited by most miserable and grosse people. Here groweth nothing but dates: and the inhabitants are at such enmitie with their neighbours, that it is dangerous for them to go abroad. Howbeit they giue themselves to hunting, and take certaine wilde beasts called Elamth, and ostriches, neither do they eate any other flesh. All their goates they reserue for milke. And these people also are blacke of colour.

*The beast called Elamth.*

*Of the castles of Ifran.*

**F**ower castles there are called by this name, built by the Numidians three miles each from other vpon a certaine riuer, which in the heat of sommer is destitute of water. Neere vnto these castles are certaine fields greatly abounding with dates. The inhabitants are verie rich, for they haue traffique with the Portugals at the port of Gart Guessem, whose wares they carrie to Gualata and Tombuto. These castles containe great store of inhabitants, which make certaine brazen vessels to bee solde in the lande of Negroes: for they haue copper-mines in sundrie places thereabout. Euery castle hath a weekly market; but corne and flesh are at an extreme rate there. They goe decently apparelled, and haue a faire temple to resort vnto, and a Iudge also that deciderh none but ciuill controuerfies: for criminall matters they vse to punish with banishment onely.

*The port of Gart Guessem.*

*Copper-mines.*

*Of the castles of Accha.*

**T**Hree castles of this name built vpon the Numidian deserts not far from Libya were in times past well stored with inhabitants, but at length by ciuill wars they were vtterly dispeopled. Afterward (all matters being pacified) there were, by the meanes of a certaine religious man, who gouerned the same people, certaine new colonies planted. Neither haue the poore inhabitants any thing to do, but onely to gather dates.

## Of the Province of Dara.

**T**His Province beginning at mount Atlas extendeth it selfe southward by the deserts of Lybia almost two hundred and fiftie miles, and the bredth thereof is verie narrow. All the inhabitants dwell vpon a certaine riuer which is called by the name of the Province: This riuer sometime so ouerfloweth, that a man would thinke it to be a sea, but in sommer it so diminisheth, that any one may passe ouer it on foote. If so be it ouerfloweth about the beginning of Aprill, it bringeth great plentie vnto the whole region: if not, there followeth great scarcitie of corne. Vpon the banke of this riuer there are sundrie villages and hamlets, and diuers castles also, which are enuironed with walles made of sunne-dried bricke and mortar. All their beames and plachers consist of date-trees, being notwithstanding vnfit for the purpose; for the wood of date-trees is not solid, but flexible and spungie. On either side of the said riuer for the space of fise or fixe miles, the fields abound exceedingly with dates, which with good keeping will last many yeeres: and as here are diuers kindes of dates, so they are sold at sundry prices: for a bushell of some is woorth a duckat, but others wherewith they feede their horses and camels, are scarce of a quarter so much value. Of date-trees some are male and some are female: the male bring forth flowers onely, and the female fruit: but the flowers of the female will not open, vnlesse the boughes and flowers of the male be ioined vnto them: And if they be not ioined, the dates will prooue starke naught and containe great stones. The inhabitants of Dara liue vpon barlie and other grosse meate: neither may they eate any bread but onely vpon festiuall daies. Their castles are inhabited by goldsmithes and other artificers, and so are all the regions lying in the way from Tombuto to Fez: in this province also there are three or fower proper townes, frequented by merchants and strangers, and containing many shops and temples. But the principall towne called Beni Sabih, and inhabited with most valiant and liberall people, is diuided into two parts, either part hauing a seuerall captaine or gouernour: which gouernours are oftentimes at great dissension, and especially when they moisten their arable grounds, by reason that they are so skanted of water. A merchant they will most courteously entertaine a whole yeere together, and then friendly dismissing him, they will require nought at his hands, but wil accept such liberalitie as he thinks good to bestow vpon them. The said gouernours so often as they fall a skirmishing, hire the next Arabians to aide them, allowing them daily halfe a duckat for their pay and sometimes more, and giuing them their allowance euery day. In time of peace they trim their harquebuzes, handguns, & other weapons: neither saw I euer (to my remembrance) more cunning harquebuziers then at this place. In this province groweth great store of Indico being an herbe like vnto wilde woad, and this herbe they exchange with the merchants of Fez and Tremisen for other wares

The strange  
propertie of the  
palme or date-  
tree.

Indico.

wares. Corne is very scarce among them, and is brought thither from Fez and other regions, neither haue they any great store of goats or horses, vnto whom in stead of prouender they giue dates, and a kinde of herbe also which groweth in the kingdome of Naples, and is called by the Neapolitans Farfa. They feede their goates with the nuts or stones of their dates beaten to powder, whereby they grow exceeding fat, & yeeld great quantitie of milke. Their owne foode is the flesh of camels and goates, being vnfanorie and displeasent in taste. Likewise they kill and eate ostriches, the flesh whereof tasteth not much vnlike to the flesh of a dunhill-cocke, sauing that it is more tough and of a stronger sinell, especially the ostriches leg, which consisteth of slimie flesh. Their women are faire, fat, and courteous: and they keepe diuers slaues which are brought out of the land of Negros.

The flesh of the  
ostrich.

## Of the province of Segelmesse.

**T**His province called Segelmesse, according to the name of the principall citie therein contained, beginneth not farre from the towne of Gherfeluin, and stretcheth southward by the riuer of Ziz an hundred and twentie miles, euen to the confines of the Libyan deserts. The said province is inhabited by certaine barbarous people of the families of Zeneta, Zanhagia, and Haoara, and was in times past subiect vnto a certaine prince, which bare rule ouer the same province onely. Afterward it fell into the possession of king Joseph of the Luntune-family, and then into the hands of one Muahidin, and not long after it was enioied by the king of Fez his sonne. But since that time, the prince of this region was slaine in a rebellion, and the citie of Segelmesse was destroyed, and till this day remaineth desolate. Afterward the inhabitants built certaine castles, whereof some are at libertie, and others are subiect to the Arabians.

## Of the province of Cheneg.

**T**His region extending it selfe by the riuer of Ziz vnto mount Atlas, containeth many castles, and bringeth forth great abundance of dates, which dates are but of small value. Their fields are barren and of little circuit, saue onely betwene the riuer Ziz and the foote of mount Atlas, where some store of barlie vseth to grow. The inhabitants are some of them subiect to the Arabians, others to the citie of Gherfeluin, and the residue liue at their owne libertie. And vnto these the high way leading from Segelmesse to Fez is subiect, and they exact great tribute of the merchants travelling the same way. Neere vnto the said high way stand three castles, the first whereof being situate vpon an exceeding high rocke, seemeth to touch the cloudes. Vnder this castle there is a certaine house where a garde of soldiers continually stand, who for the load of euery camell that passeth by, demand one fourth part of a duckat. The second castle being fiftene miles

A a 3

distanc

distant from the first, standeth not vpon an hill but on a plaine, and is farre more stately and rich then the former. The thirde castle called Tammata-croft is situate vpon the common high way about twenty miles southward of the second. There are certaine villages also, and other castles of meaner account. Corne is marvellous scarce among them: but they haue goates great plentie, which in winter they keepe in certaine large caues, as in places of greatest safetie, whereinto they enter by a most narrow passage. Likewise the entrance into this region for the space of fortie miles is so narrow, that two or three armed men onely may withstand mighty forces.

*Of the region of Matgara.*

**T**His region beginning southward from the region last described, containeth many castles built vpon the riuer of Ziz, the principall whereof is called Helel, wherein remaineth the gouernour of the whole region being an Arabian by birth. The soldiers of this Arabian gouernour dwell in tents vpon the plaines: and he hath other soldiers attending vpon his owne person also, who will suffer no man to passe but vnder safe conduct, without depriving him of all his goods. Here are likewise diuers other villages and castles, which not being woorthy the naming I haue of purpose omitted.

*Of the territorie of Retel.*

**R**etel bordering vpon the region last described, extendeth also fiftie miles southward along the riuer of Ziz, euen to the confines of Segelmesse. It containeth many castles, and yeeldeth plentie of dates. The inhabitants are subiect vnto the Arabians, being extremely couetous, and so faint harted, that an hundred of them dare scarce oppose themselves against ten Arabians: they till the Arabians ground also as if they were their slaues. The east part of Retel bordereth vpon a certaine desolate mountaine, and the west part vpon a desert and sandie plaine, whereunto the Arabians returning home from the wildernes, do resort.

*Of the territorie of Segelmesse.*

**T**His territorie extending it selfe along the riuer of Ziz from north to south almost twenty miles, containeth about three hundred and fiftie castles, besides villages and hamlets: three of which castles are more principall then the rest. The first called Tenegent, and consisting of a thousand and moe families, standeth neere vnto the citie of Segelmesse, and is inhabited with great store of artificers. The second called Tebihasan, standeth about eight miles to the south of Tenegent, being furnished also with greater numbers of inhabitants, and so frequented with merchants, that there is not in that respect the like place to be found in all the whole region besides.

besides. The third called Mamun is resorted vnto by sundry merchants, both Iewes and Moores. These three castles haue three seuerall gouernours, who are at great dissension among themselves. They will oftentimes destroy one anothers chanelles, whereby their fieldes are watered, which cannot without great cost be repaired againe. They will stow the palme-trees also to the very stocks: and vnto them a companie of lewd Arabians associate themselves. They coine both siluer and gold-money: but their gold is not very speciall. Their siluer coine weigheth fower graines apeece, eightie of which peecces are esteemed to be woorth one peece of their gold-coine. The Iewes and Arabians pay excessive tribute here. Some of their principall men are exceeding rich, and vse great traffique vnto the land of Negros: whither they transport wares of Barbarie, exchanging the same for gold and slaues. The greatest part of them liue vpon dates, except it be in certaine places where some corne grow. Here are infinite numbers of scorpions, but no flies at all. In summer-time this region is extremely hot, and then are the riuers so destitute of water, that the people are constrained to draw salt water out of certaine pits. The said territorie containeth in circuit about eightie miles, all which, after the destruction of Segelmesse, the inhabitants with small cost walled round about, to the ende they might not be molested by continuall inrodes of horsemen. While they liued all at vnitie and concord, they retained their libertie: but since they fell to mutuall debate, their wall was razed, and each faction inuited the Arabians to helpe them, vnder whom by little and little they were brought in subiection.

*Infinite numbers of Scorpions.*

*Of the towne or citie of Segelmesse.*

**S**ome are of opinion that this towne was built by a certaine Romaine Captaine, who hauing conducted his troups forth of Mauritania, conquered all Numidia, and marching westward, built a towne, and called it Sigillumesse, because it stood vpon the borders of Messa, and was as it were the scale of all his victories, and afterward by a corrupt worde it began to be called Segelmesse. The common people together with one of our African Cosmographers, called *Bieri*, suppose that this towne was built by *Alexander* the great, for the reliefe of his sicke and wounded soldiers. Which opinion seemeth not probable to me: for I could neuer read that *Alexander* the great came into any part of these regions. This towne was situate vpon a plaine neere vnto the riuer of Ziz, and was enuironed with most stately and high wals, euen as in many places it is to be seene at this present. When the Mahumetans came first into Africa, the inhabitants of this towne were subiect vnto the family of Zeneta; which family was at length dispossessed of that authority by king *Iuseph* the son of *Tesfin*, of the family of Luntuna. The towne it selfe was very gallantly builde, and the inhabitants were rich, and had great traffike vnto the land of Negros. Heere stood stately temples and colleges also, and great store of conductes, the water whereof was drawn



drawen out of the riuer by wheeles. The aire in this place is most temperate and hole some, sauing that in winter it aboundeth with ouermuch moisture, which breedeth some diseases. But now since the towne was destroyed, the inhabitants began to plant themselves in the next castles and villages, as we haue before signified. I my selfe abode in this region almost seuen moneths at the foresaid castle of Menium.

*Of the castle of Essuwaishila.*

**T**His castle was built by the Arabians in a certaine desert place, twelue miles southward of the towne last described; and here they keepe their wares free from the danger of their enemies. Neere vnto this castle there is neither garden nor field, nor any other commoditie, but onely certaine blacke stones and sand.

*Of the castle of Humeledegi.*

**T**His castle was built also by the Arabians vpon a desert eightene miles from Segelmesse, like as was the former. Neere vnto it lieth a certaine drie plaine, so replenished with sundrie fruits, that in beholding it a farre off a man would thinke the ground were strewed with pome-citrons.

*Of the castle of Vmmelhese.*

**I**T is a forlorne and base castle, founded by the Arabians also fife and twentie miles from Segelmesse vpon a desert, directly in the way from Segelmesse to Dara. It is enuironed with blacke wals, and continually garded by the Arabians. All merchants that passe by, pay one fourth part of a ducate for euery camels lode. My selfe traueiling this way vpon a time in the companie of foureteen Iewes, and being demaunded how manie there were of vs, we saide thirteene, but after I began particularly to reckon, I founde the fourteenth and the fifteenth man amongst vs, whom the Arabians woulde haue kept prisoners, had we not affirmed them to be Mahumetans: howbeit not crediting our words, they examined them in the lawe of Mahumet, which when they perceiued them indeed to vnderstand, they permitted them to depart.

*Of the village of Tebelbelt.*

**T**His village standing in the Numidian desert, two hundred miles from Atlas, and an hundred southward of Segelmesse, is situate neere vnto three castles, well stored with inhabitants, and abounding with dates. Water and flesh is very scarce amongst them. They vse to hunt and take Ostriches, and to eate the flesh of them: and albeit they haue a trade vnto the

the land of Negros, yet are they most miserable and beggerly people, and subiect to the Arabians.

*Of the prouince of Todga.*

**T**His little prouince standing vpon a riuer of the same name, hath great plentie of dates, peaches, grapes, and figs. It containeth fower castles and ten villages, the inhabitants being either husbandmen or lether-dressers. And it standeth westward of Segelmesse about fortie miles.

*Of the region of Farcala.*

**I**T standeth also vpon a riuer, and aboundeth with dates and other fruites, but corne is greatly wanting heere. Heere are in this region three castles, and fife villages. It standeth southward of mount Atlas an hundred, and of Segelmesse almost threescore miles. The poore inhabitants are subiect to the Arabians.

*Of the region of Teserin.*

**T**His beautifull region situate vpon a riuer, is distant from Farcala thirtie, and from mount Atlas about threescore miles. Dates it yeeldeth in abundance, and containeth villages to the number of fifteene, and fixe castles, together with the ruines of two townes, the names whereof I coulde by no meanes enquire. And the worde Teserin in the African language signifieth a towne.

*Of the region called Beni Gumi.*

**T**His region adioining vpon the riuer of Ghir, aboundeth greatly with dates. The inhabitants are poore and miserable, and buie horses at Fez, which they sell afterwarde vnto merchants that trauell to the lande of Negros. It containeth eight castles, and fifteene villages, and standeth southeast of Segelmesse about an hundred and fiftie miles.

*Of the castles of Mazalig and Abuhinan.*

**T**hey are situate in the Numidian desert vpon the riuer of Ghir, almost fiftie miles from Segelmesse. Inhabited they are by certaine beggerly Arabians: neither doth the soile adiacent yeeld any corne at all, and but very fewe dates.

*Of the towne of Chasair.*

*Mines of lead and antimonie.* **T**His towne standing vpon the desert of Numidia twentie miles from Atlas, hath mines of lead and antimonie neere vnto it, whereby the inhabitants get their liuing; for this place yeeldeth none other commoditie.

*Of the region of Beni Besseri.*

*An iron-mine.* **T**His little region situate at the foote of mount Atlas, and abounding with all kinde of fruits saue dates, will beare no corne at all. It containeth three castles and a certaine iron-mine, which serueth all the prouince of Segelmesse with iron. Villages heere are but fewe, which are subiect partly to the prince of Dubdu, and partly to the Arabians; and all the inhabitants employ themselves about working in the foresaid iron-mine.

*Of the region of Ganchde.*

**T**His region standing seuentie miles southward of Segelmesse hath three castles and sundrie villages situate vpon the riuer of Ghir. Dates it yeeldeth great plentie, and but very little corne. The inhabitants exercise traffique in the land of Negros; and are all subiect, and pay tribute to the Arabians.

*Of the castles of Fighig.*

**T**He three castles of Fighig stand vpon a certaine desert maruellously abounding with dates. The women of this place weaue a kinde of cloth in forme of a carpet, which is so fine, that a man would take it to be silke, and this cloth they sell at an excessiue rate at Fez, Telenin, and other places of Barbary. The inhabitants being men of an excellent wit, do part of them vse traffique to the land of Negros, and the residue become students at Fez: and so soone as they haue attained to the degree of a doctour, they returne to Numidia, where they are made either priestes or senators, and prooue most of them men of great wealth and reputation. From Segelmesse the said castles are distant almost an hundred and fiftie miles eastward.

*Of the region of Tesebit.*

**T**He region of Tesebit being situate vpon the Numidian desert, two hundred and fiftie miles eastward of Segelmesse, and an hundred miles from mount Atlas, hath fower castles within the precincts thereof, and many villages also, which stand vpon the confines of Lybia, neer vnto the high way that leadeth from Fez and Telenin to the kingdome of Agadez and to the land of Negros. The inhabitants are not very rich, for all their wealth consisteth

consisteth in dates, and some small quantitie of corne. The men of this place are black, but the women are somewhat fairer, and yet they are of a swart and browne hue.

*Of the region of Tegerarin.*

**T**His great and large region of the Numidian desert standing about an hundred and twentie miles eastward of Tesebit, containeth fiftie castles, and aboue an hundred villages, and yeeldeth great plentie of dates. The inhabitants are rich, and haue ordinarie traffique to the land of Negros. Their fields are very apt for corne, and yet by reason of their extreme drouth, they stand in neede of continuall watering and dunging. They allow vnto strangers houses to dwell in, requiring no money for rent but onely their dung, which they keepe most charily: yea they take it in ill part if any stranger easeth himselfe without the doores. Flesh is very scarce among them: for their soile is so drie, that it will scarce nourish any cattell at all: they keepe a few goates indeede for their milks sake: but the flesh that they eate is of camels, which the Arabians bring vnto their markets to sell: they mingle their meate with salt tallow, which is brought into this region from Fez & Tremizen. There were in times past many rich Iewes in this region, who by the meanes of a certaine Mahumetan preacher, were at length expelled, and a great part of them slaine by the seditious people; and that in the very same yeere when the Iewes were expelled out of Spaine and Sicily. The inhabitants of this region hauing one onely gouernour of their owne nation, are notwithstanding often subiect to ciuill contentions, and yet they do not molest other nations: howbeit they pay certaine tribute vnto the next Arabians.

*Of the region of Meszab.*

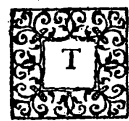
**T**His region being situate vpon the Numidian desert, 300. miles eastward from Tegerarin, and 300. miles also from the Mediterran sea, containeth sixe castles, and many villages, the inhabitants being rich, and vsing traffike to the land of Negros. Likewise the Negro-merchants, together with them of Bugia and Ghir make resort vnto this region. Subiect they are and pay tribute vnto the Arabians.

*Of the towne of Techort.*

**T**He ancient towne of Techort was built by the Numidians vpon a certaine hill, by the foote whereof runneth a riuer, vpon which riuer standeth a draw-bridge. The wall of this towne was made of free stone and lime, but that part which is next vnto the mountain hath instead of a wall an impregnable rocke opposite against it: this towne is distant fiftie hundred miles southward from the Mediterran sea, and about 300. miles from Tegerarin. Families it containeth to the number of fise

five and twentie hundred: all the houses are built of sunne-dried bricke, except their temple which is somewhat more stately. Heere dwell great store both of gentlemen and artificers: and because they haue great abundance of dates, and are destitute of corne, the merchants of Constantina exchange corne with them for their dates. All strangers they fauour exceedingly, and friendly dismisse them without paying of ought. They had rather match their daughters vnto strangers, then to their owne citizens: and for a dowry they giue some certaine portion of lande, as it is accustomed in some places of Europe. So great and surpassing is their liberalitie, that they will heape many gifts vpon strangers, albeit they are sure neuer to see them againe. At the first they were subiect to the king of Maroco, afterward to the king of Telenfin, and now to the king of Tunis, vnto whom they pay fiftie thousand ducats for yeerely tribute, vpon condition that the king himselfe come personally to receiue it. The king of Tunis that now is, demanded a second tribute of them. Many castles, and villages, and some territories there be also, which are all subiect vnto the prince of this towne: who collecteth an hundred and thirtie thousand ducates of yeerely reuenues, and hath alwaies a mightie garrison of soldiers attending vpon him, vnto whom he alloweth very large paie. The gouernour at this present called *Habdulla*, is a valiant and liberall yong prince, and most curteous vnto strangers, whereof I my selfe conuersing with him for certaine daies, had good experience.

*Of the citie of Guargala.*



His ancient citie founded by the Numidians, and enuironed with strong wals vpon the Numidian desert, is built very sumptuously, and aboundeth exceedingly with dates. It hath some castles and a great number of villages belonging thereunto. The inhabitants are rich, because they are neere vnto the kingdome of Agadez. Heere are diuers merchants of Tunis and Constantina, which transport wares of Barbarie vnto the lande of Negros. And because flesh and corne is very scarce among them, they liue vpon the flesh of Ostriches and camels. They are all of a blacke colour, and haue blacke slaues, and are people of a courteous and liberall disposition, and most friendly and bountifull vnto strangers. A gouernour they haue whom they reuerence as if he were a king: which gouernour hath about two thousand horsemen alwaies attending vpon him, and collecteth almost fiftene thousand ducats for yeerely reuenue.

*Of the prouince of Zeb.*

**Z**eb a prouince situate also vpon the Numidian desert, beginneth westward from Mesila, northward from the mountaines of Bugia, eastward from the region of dates ouer against Tunis, and southward it bordereth vpon a certaine desert, ouer which they trauaile from Guargala to Techort.

This

This region is extremely hot, sandie, and destitute both of water and corne: which wants are partly supplied by their abundance of dates. It containeth to the number of five townes and many villages, all which we purpose in order to describe.

*Of the towne of Pescara.*

**T**his ancient towne built by the Romans while they were lords of Mauritania, and afterward destroyed by the Mahumetans at their first entrance into Africa; is now reedified, stored with new inhabitants, and enuironed with faire and stately wals. And albeit the townesmen are not rich, yet are they louers of ciuilitie. Their soile yeeldeth nought but dates. They haue bene gouerned by diuers princes; for they were a while subiect vnto the kings of Tunis, and that to the death of king *Hutmen*, after whom succeeded a Mahumetan priest: neither coulde the kings of Tunis euer since that time recouer the dominion of Pescara. Here are great abundance of <sup>Deadly scor-</sup> scorpions, and it is present death to be stung by them: wherefore all the townesmen in a manner depart into the countrey in sommer time, where they remaine till the moneth of Nouember.

*Of the citie of Borge.*

**A**nother towne there is also called Borge, which standeth about fower-teene miles eastward of Pescara. Heere are a great many of artificers, but more husbandmen. And because water is very scarce in this region, and yet their fieldes stand in neede of continuall watering, euery man may conueigh water into his field by a certaine sluice, for the space of an hower or two, according to the bredth or length of his ground; and after one hath done watering his ground, his next neighbour beginneth, which oftentimes breedeth great contention and bloudshed.

*Of the towne of Nefsa.*

**N**efsa is the name of the towne it selfe, and also of the territorie adjacent; which territorie containeth three castles, the greatest whereof seemeth by the manner of building to haue bene founded by the Romans. Inhabitants heere are great store, being very rusticall and vnciuill people. In times past they were exceeding rich, for they dwell neere vnto Lybia, in the very way to the land of Negros: howbeit by reason of their perpetuall hostilitie with the kings of Tunis, the king of Tunis that now is destroyed their townes, and themselves he partly slue, and partly put to flight. Likewise he so defaced the wals and other buildings, that now a man woulde esteeme it to be but a base village. Not farre from hence runneth a certaine riuier of hot water, which serueth them both to drinke, and to water their fields withall.

Bb i

of

## Of the towne of Teolacha.

**I**T was built by the Numidians, and compassed with slender wals, and hath a riuer of hot water also running thereby. The fields adiacent yeeld plentie of dates, but great scarcitie of corne. The miserable inhabitants are oppressed with continual exactions, both by the Arabians, and also by the king of Tunis. Yet are they extremely couctous and proud, and disdainfull vnto strangers.

## Of the towne of Deusen.

**D**eusen a very ancient towne, founded by the Romans in the same place where the kingdome of Bugia ioineth to Numidia, was destroyed by the Mahumetans at their first entrance into Africa, because of a certaine Romaine captaine, which endured the Saracens siege for a whole yeere together: the towne being at length taken, this captaine and all the men of the towne were put to the sword, but the women and children were carried away captiue. Howbeit after the towne was sacked, the wall thereof remained entire, by reason it was built of most hard stone, and that a woonderfull thicknes, though in some places it seemeth to be ruined, which (I thinke) might be caused by an earthquake. Not farre from this towne are diuers monuments of antiquitie like vnto sepulchers, wherein are founde sundrie peeces of siluer coine, adorned with certaine letters and hieroglyphicall figures, the interpretation whereof I could neuer finde out.

## Of the prouince of Biledulgerio.

**F**rom the territorie of Pescara this prouince extendeth it selfe vnto the Isle of Gerbi, and one part thereof, in which Cafsa and Teufar are situate, is almost three hundred miles distant from the Mediterran sea. It is an extreme hot and drie place, bringing forth no corne at all, but great plenty of dates, which because they are speciall good, are transported vnto the kingdome of Tunis. Here are diuers townes and cities, which we will describe in their due place.

## Of the towne of Teufar.

**T**his ancient towne built by the Romans vpon the Numidian desert, neere vnto a certaine riuer springing forth of the Southren mountaines, was enuironed with most stately & impregnable wals, and had an ample territorie thereunto belonging; but it was since so destroyed by the Mahumetans, that now instead of the woonted sumptuous palaces thereof it containeth nought but base cottages. The inhabitants are exceeding rich both in wares and money, for they haue many faires euerie yeere; whereun-

to resort great numbers of merchants from Numidia and Barbarie. The foresaid riuer diuideth the towne into two parts, one whereof being inhabited by the principall gentlemen and burgo-masters, is called Fatnafa: and in the other called Merdes dwell certaine Arabians, which haue remained there euer since the towne was destroyed by the Mahumetans. They are at continuall ciuill wars among themselves, and will performe but little obedience to the king of Tunis: for which cause he dealeth alwaies most rigorously with him.

## Of the towne of Caphsa.

**T**HE ancient towne of Caphsa built also by the Romans, had for certaine yeeres a gouernour of their owne: but afterward being sacked by one *Hucba* a Captaine of *Hurmen Califa*, the walles thereof were razed to the ground; but the castle as yet remaineth, and is of great force; for the wall thereof being five and twentie cubits high, and five cubits thick, is made of excellent stones, like vnto the stones of *Vespysians* Amphitheatre at Rome. Afterward the towne-walles were reedified, and were destroyed againe by *Mansor*, who hauing slaine the Gouernour of the towne and all the inhabitants, appointed a new Gouernour ouer the same place. Now this towne is verie populous, all the houses thereof, except the temple and a few other buildings, being verie deformed and base, and the streets are paved with blacke stones, like vnto the streets of Naples and Florence. The poore inhabitants are continually oppressed with the exactions of the king of Tunis. In the midst of the towne are certaine square, large, and deepe fountaines walled round about, the water whereof is hot and vnfit to bee drunke, vnlesse it be set an hower or two a cooling. The ayre of this place is verie vnwholesome, insomuch that the greatest part of the inhabitants are continually sicke of feuers. People they are of a rude and illiberall disposition, and vnkinde vnto strangers: wherefore they are had in great contempt by all other Africans. Not far from this towne are fields abounding with dates, oliues, and pome-citrons: and the dates and oliues there are the best in all the whole prouince: here is likewise most excellent oyle. The inhabitants make themselves shooes of buckes leather.

## Of the castles of Nefzaoua.

**T**hree castles there are of this name being well stored with inhabitants, but verie homely built, and oppressed with the king of Tunis his continuall exactions. And they are distant from the Mediterran sea, about fiftie miles.

## Of the region of Teorregu.

**T**his little territory belonging to the kingdome of Tripolis, & bordering vpon the desert of *Barca*, containeth three castles of the same name,



which abound greatly with dates, but haue no corne at all. The inhabitants being farre distant from other townes and cities, lead a most miserable life.

*Of the territorie of Iasiten.*

**I**T lieth vpon the Mediterran sea, and containeth many villages abound-  
ing with dates. The inhabitants because they dwell so neere the sea, haue  
great traffique with the people of Sicilie and Egypt.

*Of the region of Gademes.*

**T**His large region hauing many castles & villages therein, standeth south-  
ward of the Mediterran sea almost three hundred miles. The inhabi-  
tants being rich in dates and all other kinde of merchandise, and trafficking  
into the land of Negros, pay tribute vnto the Arabians; albeit for a certaine  
time they were subiect vnto the king of Tunis, and the Prince of Tripolis.  
Corne and flesh are maruellous scarce here.

*Of the region of Fezzen.*

**T**His ample region containing great store of castles and villages, and  
being inhabited with rich people, and bordering vpon the kingdome  
of Agadez, the Libyan desert, and the land of Egypt, is distant from  
Cairo almost threescore daies journey: neither is there any village in all  
that desert besides Augela, which standeth in the bounds of Libya. This  
region of Fezzen hath a peculiar gouernour within it selfe, who bestoweth  
the reuenues of the whole region according to his owne discretion, and  
payeth some tribute vnto the next Arabians. Of corne and flesh heere is  
great scarcitie, so that they are constrained to eate camels flesh onely.

*A description of the deserts of Libya, and first of  
Zanhaga.*

**A**uing hitherto described all the regions of Numidia, let vs  
now proceed vnto the description of Libya; which is di-  
uided into five parts, as we signified in the beginning of this  
our discourse. We will therefore begin at the drie and for-  
lorne desert of Zanhaga, which bordereth westward vpon the  
Ocean sea, and extendeth eastward to the salt-pits of Tegaza, northward it  
abuteth vpon Sus, Haccha, and Dara, regions of Numidia; and southward  
it stretcheth to the land of Negros, adioyning it selfe vnto the kingdomes  
of Gualata and Tombuto. Water is here to be found scarce in an hundred  
miles trauell, being salt and vnfaurie, and drawn out of deepe wells, espec-  
ially in the way from Segelmesse to Tombuto. Here are great store of wilde  
beasts

beasts and creeping things, whercof we will make mention in place conue-  
nient. In this region there is a barren desert called Azaoad, wherein nei-  
ther water nor any habitations are to be found in the space of an hundred  
miles; beginning from the well of Azaoad to the well of Araoan, which is  
distant from Tombuto about 150. miles. Here both for lacke of water and  
extremite of heat, great numbers of men and beasts daily perish.

*Of the desert inhabited by the people called Zuenziga.*



His desert beginneth westward from Tegaza, extending east-  
ward to the desert of Hair which is inhabited by the people cal-  
led Targa: northward it bordereth vpon the deserts of Segel-  
messe, Tebelbelt, and Benigora; and southward vpon the desert  
of Ghir, which ioineth vnto the kingdome of Guber. It is a most barren  
and comfortlesse place: and yet merchants trauell that way from Telenfin  
to Tombuto: howbeit many are found lying dead vpon the same way in  
regard of extreme thirst. Within this desert there is included another de-  
sert called Gogdem, where for the space of nine daies journey not one drop  
of water is to be found, vnlesse perhaps some raine falleth: wherefore the  
merchants vse to carrie their water vpon camels backs.

*Of the desert inhabited by the people called Targa.*



His desert beginneth westward vpon the confines of Hair, and  
extendeth eastward to the desert of Ighidi; northward it bor-  
dereth vpon the deserts of Tuath, Tegorarin, and Mezab, and  
is inclosed southward with a certaine wilderness neere vnto  
the kingdome of Agadez. It is a place much more comforta-  
ble and pleasant then the two deserts last described; and hath great plentie  
of water also neere vnto Hair. The ayre is marvellous holesome, and the  
soyle aboundeth with all kinde of herbes. Not farre from Agadez there is  
found great store of Manna, which the inhabitants gather in certaine little  
vessels, carrying it while it is new vnto the market of Agadez: and this Man-  
na being mingled with water they esteeme very daintie and pretious drinke.  
They put it also into their pottage, and being so taken, it hath a marvellous  
force of refrigerating or cooling, which is the cause that here are so few dis-  
eases, albeit the ayre of Tombuto and Agadez be most vnholosome and cor-  
rupt. This desert stretcheth from north to south almost 300. miles.

*Great store of  
Manna.*

*Of the desert inhabited by the people of Lemta.*

**T**HE fourth desert beginning at the territorie of Ighidi and extending  
to another which is inhabited by the people called Berdoa, bordereth  
northward vpon the deserts of Techort, Guarghala, and Gademis,

and southward vpon the kingdome of Cano in the land of Negros. It is exceeding drie, and verie dangerous for merchants traueiling to Constantina. For the inhabitants challenge vnto themselves the signiorie of Guargala: wherefore making continuall warre against the prince of Guargala, they oftentimes spoile the merchants of all their goods; and as many of the people of Guargala as they can catch, they kill without all pitie and compassion.

*Of the desert inhabited by the people called Berdoa.*



HE fift desert beginning westward from the desert last mentioned; and stretching eastward to the desert of Augela; adioyneth northward vpon the deserts of Fezzan and Barca, and trendeth southward to the desert of Borno. This place is extremely drie also, neither haue any but the Gademites, which are in league with the people of Berdoa, safe passage through it: for the merchants of Fezzan, so often as they fall into their enemies hands, are depriued of all their goods. The residue of the Libyan desert, that is to say, from Augela to the riuer of Nilus is inhabited by certaine Arabians and Africans commonly called Leuata: and this is the extreme easterly part of the deserts of Libya.

*Of the region of Num.*

THIS region bordering vpon the Ocean sea, containeth many villages and hamlets, and is inhabited with most beggerly people. It standeth betwene Numidia and Libya, but somewhat neerer vnto Libya. Here groweth neither barley nor any other come. Some dates here are, but verie vnfauorice. The inhabitants are continually molested by the Arabians inuasions: and some of them traffique in the kingdome of Gualata.

*Of the region of Tegaza.*

*Sals-miner.*

IN this region is great store of salt digged, beeing whiter then any marble. This salt is taken out of certaine caues or pits, at the entrance whereof stand their cottages that worke in the salt-mines. And these workmen are all strangers, who sell the salt which they dig, vnto certaine merchants that carrie the same vpon camels to the kingdome of Tombuto, where there would otherwise be extreme scarcitie of salt. Neither haue the said diggers of salt any victuals but such as the merchants bring vnto them: for they are distant from all inhabited places, almost twentie daies iourney, in so much that oftentimes they perish for lacke of foode, whenas the merchants come not in due time vnto them: Moreouer the southeast winde doth so often blind them, that they cannot liue here without great perill. I my selfe continued three daies amongst them, all which time I was constrained to drinke salt-water drawn out of certaine welles not far from the salt-pits.

*of*

*Of the region of Augela.*

Augela beeing a region of the Libyan desert, and distant fower hundred and fiftie miles from Nilus, containeth three castles, and certain villages. Dates heere are great plentie, but extreme scarcitie of come, vnlesse it be brought hither by merchants out of Egypt. Through this region lieth the way by the Libyan desert from Mauritania to Egypt.

*Of the towne of Serre.*

SERRE an ancient towne built (according to the opinion of some) by the Egyptians; of others, by the Romans; and (as some others suppose) by the Africans, was at length destroyed by the Mahumetans, albeit *Ibn Rachich* affirmeth the Romans to haue sacked it. But now there is nought remaining but onely a few ruines of the wall.

*Of the region of Berdeoa.*

BERDEOA a region situate in the midst of the Libyan desert, and standing almost fower hundred miles from Nilus, containeth three castles & fower or six villages, abounding with most excellent dates. And the said three castles were discovered eightene yeeres agoe by one *Hamar* in manner following: the carouan of merchants wandering out of the direct way, had a certaine blinde man in their companie which was acquainted with all those regions: this blinde guide riding foremost vpon his camell, commanded some sand to be giuen him at euery miles end, by the smell whereof he declared the situation of the place; but when they were come within fortie miles of this region, the blinde man smelling of the sand, affirmed that they were not farre from some places inhabited; which some beleeued not, for they knew that they were distant from Egypt fower hundred and eightie miles, so that they tooke themselves to be neerer vnto Augela. Howbeit within three daies they found the said three castles, the inhabitants whereof woondering at the approach of strangers, and being greatly astonied, presently shut all their gates, and would giue the merchants no water to quench their extreme thirst. But the merchants by maine force entred, and hauing gotten water sufficient, betooke themselves againe to their iourne.

*A whole carouan conducted by a blinde guide who lead them by sent one, as at this present the Carouans of Marocco are conducted over the Libyan deserts to Tombuto.*

*of*

Of the region of *Alguechet*.

**A** Lguechet also being a region of the Lybian desert, is from Egypt an hundred and twenty miles distant. Here are three castles and many villages abounding with dates. The inhabitants are black, vile, and couetous people, and yet exceeding rich: for they dwell in the mid-way betweene Egypt and Gaoga. They haue a gouernour of their owne, notwithstanding they pay tribute vnto the next Arabians.

Here endeth the sixth booke.

# IOHN LEO HIS SEVENTH BOOKE OF

the Historie of Africa, and

of the memorable things

contained therein.

Wherein he intreateth of the land of *Negros*, and of  
the confines of *Egypt*.



**D**V ancient Chroniclers of Africa, to wit, *Biebr*i and *Mesbudi* knew nothing in the land of *Negros* but onely the regions of *Guechet* and *Cano*: for in their time all other places of the land of *Negros* were vndiscovered. But in the yeere of the Hegeira 386, by the meanes of a certaine Mahumetan which came into *Barbarie*, the residue of the said land was found out, being as then inhabited by great numbers of people, which liued a brutish and sauage life, without any king, gouernour, common wealth, or knowledge of husbandrie. Clad they were in skins of beasts, neither had they any peculiar wiues: in the day time they kept their cattell; and when night came they resorted ten or twelue both men and women into one cottage together, vsing hairie skins in stead of beds, and each man choosing his leman which he had most fancy vnto

vnto. Warre they wage against no other nation, ne yet are desirous to trauell out of their owne countrie. Some of them performe great adoration vnto the sunne rising: others, namely the people of *Gualata*, worship the fire: and some others, to wit, the inhabitants of *Gaoga*, approch (after the Egyptians manner) neerer vnto the Christian faith. These *Negros* were first subiect vnto king *Ioseph* the founder of *Maroco*, and afterward vnto the five nations of *Libya*; of whom they learned the Mahumetan lawe, and diuers needfull handycrafts: a while after when the merchants of *Barbarie* began to resort vnto them with merchandize, they learned the Barbarian language also. But the foresaid five people or nations of *Libya* diuided this land so among themselves, that euery third part of each nation possessed one region. Howbeit the king of *Tombuto* that now raigneth, called *Abuacre Izchia*, is a Negro by birth: this *Abuacre* after the decease of the former king, who was a Libyan borne, slue all his sonnes, and so vsurped the kingdom. And hauing by warres for the space of fifteene yeeres conquered many large dominions, he then concluded a league with all nations, and went on pilgrimage to *Mecca*, in which iournie he so consumed his treasure, that he was constrained to borrow great summes of money of other princes. Moreouer the fifteene kingdomes of the land of *Negros* knownen to vs, are all situate vpon the riuer of *Niger*, and vpon other riuers which fall thereinto. And all the land of *Negros* standeth betweene two vast deserts, for on the one side lieth the maine desert betweene *Numidia* and it, which extendeth it selfe vnto this very land: and the south side thereof adioineth vpon another desert, which stretcheth from thence to the maine Ocean: in which desert are infinite nations vnknownen to vs, both by reason of the huge distance of place, and also in regarde of the diuersitie of languages and religions. They haue no traffique at all with our people, but we haue heard oftentimes of their traffique with the inhabitants of the Ocean sea shore.

A description of the kingdome of *Gualata*.



**T**His region in regarde of others is very small: for it containeth onely three great villages, with certaine granges and fields of dates. From *Num* it is distant southward about three hundred, from *Tombuto* northward five hundred, and from the Ocean sea about two hundred miles. In this region the people of *Libya*, while they were lords of the land of *Negros*, ordained their chiefe princely seate: and then great store of *Barbarie*-merchants frequented *Gualata*: but afterward in the raigne of the mighty and rich prince *Heli*, the said merchants leauing *Gualata*, began to resort vnto *Tombuto* and *Gaogo*, which was the occasion that the region of *Gualata* grew extreme beggely. The language of this region is called *Sungai*, and the inhabitants are blacke people, and most friendly vnto strangers. In my time this region was conquered by the king of *Tombuto*, and the prince thereof fled into the deserts,

serts, whereof the king of Tombuto hauing intelligence, and fearing least the prince would returne with all the people of the deserts, graunted him peace, conditionally that he should pay a great yeerely tribute vnto him, and so the said prince hath remained tributarie to the king of Tombuto vntill this present. The people agree in manners and fashions with the inhabitants of the next desert. Here groweth some quantitie of Mil-seed, and great store of a round & white kind of pulse, the like whereof I neuer saw in Europe; but flesh is extreme scarce among them. Both the men & the women do so couer their heads, that al their countenance is almost hidden. Here is no forme of a common wealth, nor yet any gouernours or iudges, but the people lead a most miserable life.

This round and white pulse is called Maiz, in the west Indies.

*A description of the kingdome of Ghinea.*

THIS kingdome called by the merchants of our nation Gheneoa, by the natural inhabitants thereof Genni, and by the Portugals and other people of Europe Ghinea, standeth in the midst betweene Gualata on the north, Tombuto on the east, and the kingdome of Melli on the south. In length it containeth almost fise hundred miles, and extendeth two hundred and fiftie miles along the riuer of Niger, and bordereth vpon the Ocean sea in the same place, where Niger falleth into the saide sea. This place exceedingly aboundeth with barlie, rice, cattell, fishes, and cotton: and their cotton they sell vnto the merchants of Barbarie, for cloth of Europe, for brazen vessels, for armour, and other such commodities. Their coine is of gold without any stampe or inscription at all: they haue certaine iron-money also, which they vse about matters of small value, some peeces whereof weigh a pound, some halfe a pound, and some one quarter of a pound. In all this kingdome there is no fruite to be found but onely dates, which are brought hither either out of Gualata or Numidia. Heere is neither towne nor castle, but a certaine great village onely, wherein the prince of Ghinea, together with his priestes, doctors, merchants, and all the principall men of the region inhabite. The walles of their houses are built of chalke, and the roofes are couered with strawe: the inhabitants are clad in blacke or blew cotton, wherewith they couer their heads also: but the priests and doctors of their law go apparelled in white cotton. This region during the three moneths of Iulie, August, and September, is yeerely enuironed with the ouerflowings of Niger in manner of an Island; all which time the merchants of Tombuto conueigh their merchandize hither in certaine Canoas or narrow boats made of one tree, which they rowe all the day long, but at night they binde them to the shore, and lodge themselues vpon the lande. This kingdome was subiect in times past vnto a certaine people of Libya, and became afterward tributarie vnto king *Soni Heli*, after whom succeeded *Soni Heli Izechia*, who kept the prince of this region prisoner at Gago, where together with a certaine nobleman, he miserably died.

The Prince of Ghinea kept prisoner by Izechia.

of

*Of the kingdome of Melli.*

THIS region extending it selfe almost three hundred miles along the side of a riuer which falleth into Niger, bordereth northward vpon the region last described, southward vpon certaine deserts and drie mountaines, westward vpon huge woods and Forrests stretching to the Ocean sea shore, and eastward vpon the territorie of Gago. In this kingdome there is a large and ample village containing to the number of fixe thousand or mo families, and called Melli, whereof the whole kingdome is so named. And here the king hath his place of residence. The region it selfe yeeldeth great abundance of corne, flesh, and cotton. Heere are many artificers and merchants in all places: and yet the king honorably entertaineth all strangers. The inhabitants are rich, and haue plentie of wares. Heere are great store of temples, priests, and professours, which professours read their lectures onely in the temples, because they haue no colleges at all. The people of this region excell all other Negros in witte, ciuilitie, and industry; and were the first that embraced the law of Mahumet, at the same time when the vnckle of *Ioseph* the king of Maroco was their prince; and the government remained for a while vnto his posterity: at length *Izechia* subdued the prince of this region, and made him his tributarie, and so oppressed him with greuous exactions, that he was scarce able to maintaine his family.

The prince of Melli subdued by Izechia.

*Of the kingdome of Tombuto.*

THIS name was in our times (as some thinke) imposed vpon this kingdome from the name of a certain towne so called, which (they say) king *Menfe Suleiman* founded in the yeere of the Hegeira 610. and it is situate within twelue miles of a certaine branch of Niger, all the houses whereof are now changed into cottages built of chalke, and couered with thatch. Howbeit there is a most stately temple to be seene, the wals whereof are made of stone and lime; and a princely palace also built by a most excellent workeman of Granada. Here are many shops of artificers, and merchants, and especially of such as weaue linnen and cotton cloth. And hither do the Barbarie-merchants bring cloth of Europe. All the women of this region except maid-seruants go with their faces couered, and sell all necessarie victuals. The inhabitants, & especially strangers there residing, are exceeding rich, in so much, that the king that now is, married both his daughters vnto two rich merchants. Here are many wels, containing most sweete water; and so often as the riuer Niger ouerfloweth, they conueigh the water thereof by certaine sluices into the towne. Corne, cattell, milke, and butter this region yeeldeth in great abundance: but salt is verie scarce heere; for it is brought hither by land from Tegaza, which is fise hundred miles distant. When I my selfe was here, I saw one camels load of salt sold for 80. *ducates*.

Tombuto was conquered by the king of Maroco 1589. from whence he hath for yeerly tribute mightie summes of gold.

\* 1526. The king of Tombuto his daughters married vnto two rich merchants.

Great scarcitie of salt in Tombuto, which commoditie might be superfluous.



plied by our  
English mer-  
chants to their  
unspeakable  
gaine.

Reuerence vsed  
before the king  
of Tombuto.

Poysoned ar-  
rowes.

Shels vsed for  
coine like as in  
the kingdome  
of Congo.

ducates. The rich king of Tombuto hath many plates and scepters of gold, some whereof weigh 1300. poundes: and he keepes a magnificent and well furnished court. When he trauelleth any whither he rideth vpon a camell, which is lead by some of his noblemen; and so he doth likewise when hee goeth to warfar, and all his souldiers ride vpon horses. Whosoeter will speake vnto this king must first fall downe before his secte; & then taking vp earth must sprinkle it vpon his owne head & shoulders: which custom is ordinarily obserued by them that neuer saluted the king before, or come as ambassadors from other princes. He hath alwaies three thousand horsemen, and a great number of footmen that shoot poysoned arrowes, attending vpon him. They haue often skirmishes with those that refuse to pay tribute, and so many as they take, they sell vnto the merchants of Tombuto. Here are verie few horses bred, and the merchants and courtiers keepe certaine little nags which they vse to trauell vpon: but their best horses are brought out of Barbarie. And the king so soone as he heareth that any merchants are come to towne with horses, he commandeth a certaine number to be brought before him, and chusing the best horse for himselfe, he payeth a most liberall price for him. He so deadly hateth all Iewes, that he will not admit any into his citie: and whatsoeuer Barbarie merchants he vnderstandeth to haue any dealings with the Iewes, he presently causeth their goods to be confiscate. Here are great store of doctors, iudges, priests, and other learned men, that are bountifully maintained at the kings cost and charges. And hither are brought diuers manuscripts or written bookes out of Barbarie, which are sold for more money then any other merchandize. The coine of Tombuto is of gold without any stampe or superscription: but in matters of smal value they vse certaine shels brought hither out of the kingdome of Persia, fower hundred of which shels are worth a ducate: and sixe peeces of their golden coine with two third parts weigh an ounce. The inhabitants are people of a gentle and cherefull disposition, and spend a great part of the night in singing and dancing through all the streets of the citie: they keepe great store of men and women slaues, and their towne is much in danger of fire: at my second being there halfe the town almost was burnt in fure howers space. Without the suburbs there are no gardens nor orchards at all.

#### Of the towne of Cabra.

His large towne built without walles in manner of a village, standeth about twelue miles from Tombuto vpon the riuer Niger: and here such merchants as trauele vnto the kingdomes of Guinea and Melli embarka themselves. Neither are the people or buildings of this towne any whit inferiour to the people and buildings of Tombuto: and hither the Negros resort in great numbers by water. In this towne the king of Tombuto appointeth a iudge to decide all controuersies: for it were tedious to goe thither so

of

oft as need should require. I my selfe am acquainted with *Abu Bagr*, surnamed *Pargama*, the kings brother, who is blacke in colour, but most beautifull in minde and conditions. Here breed many diseases which exceedingly diminish the people; and that by reason of the fond and loathsome mixture of their meats; for they mingle fish, milke, butter, and flesh altogether. And this is the ordinarie food also in Tombuto.

#### Of the towne and kingdome of Gago.

THE great towne of Gago being vnwalled also, is distant southward of Tombuto almost fower hundred miles, and enclineth somewhat to the southeast. The houses thereof are but meane, except those wherein the king and his courtiers remaine. Here are exceeding rich merchants: and hither continually resort great store of Negros which buy cloth here brought out of Barbarie and Europe. This towne aboundeth with corne and flesh, but is much destitute of wine, trees, and fruits. Howbeit here is plentie of melons, citrons, and rice: here are many welles also containing most sweete and holesome water. Here is likewise a certaine place where slaues are to be sold, especially vpon such daies as the merchants vse to assemble; and a yoong slaue of fiteene yeeres age is sold for sixe ducates, and so are children sold also. The king of this region hath a certaine priuate palace wherein he maintaineth a great number of concubines and slaues, which are kept by eunuches: and for the guard of his owne person he keepeth a sufficient troupe of horsemen and footmen. Betweene the first gate of the palace and the inner part thereof, there is a place walled round about, wherein the king himselfe decideth all his subiects controuersies: and albeit the king be in this function most diligent, and performeth all things thereto appertayning, yet hath he about him his counsellors & other officers, as namely his secretaries, treasurers, factors, and auditors. It is a wonder to see what plentie of Merchandize is dayly brought hither, and how costly and sumptuous all things be. Horses bought in Europe for ten ducates, are here sold againe for fortie and sometimes for fiftie ducates a piece. There is not any cloth of Europe so course, which will not here be sold for fower ducates an elle, and if it be any thing fine they will giue fiteene ducates for an ell: and an ell of the scarlet of Venice or of Turkie-cloth is here worth thirtie ducates. A sword is here valued at three or fower crownes, and so likewise are spurs, bridles, with other like commodities, and spices also are sold at an high rate: but of al other commodities salt is most extremelie deere. The residue of this kingdome containeth nought but villages and hamlets inhabited by husbandmen and shepherds, who in winter couer their bodies with beasts skins; but in sommer they goe all naked saue their priue members: and sometimes they weare vpon their feet certaine shooes made of camels leather. They are ignorant and rude people, and you shall scarce finde one learned man in the space of an hundred miles. They are

Rich sale for  
cloth.

C c i

contin.

continually burthened with grieuous exactions, so that they haue scarce any thing remaining to liue vpon.

*Of the kingdome of Guber.*

IT standeth eastward of the kingdome of Gago almost three hundred miles; betweene which two kingdomes lieth a vast desert being much destitute of water, for it is about fortie miles distant from Niger. The kingdome of Guber is enuironed with high mountaines, and containeth many villages inhabited by shepherds, and other herdsmen. Abundance of cattell here are both great and small: but of a lower stature then the cattell in other places. Heere are also great store of artificers and linnen weauers: and heere are such shooes made as the ancient Romans were wont to weare, the greatest part whereof be carried to Tombuto and Gago. Likewise heere is abundance of rice, and of certaine other graine and pulse, the like whereof I neuer saw in Italie. But I thinke it groweth in some places of Spaine. At the inundation of Niger all the fields of this region are overflowed, and then the inhabitants cast their seede into the water onely. In this region there is a certaine great village containing almost sixe thousand families, being inhabited with all kinde of merchants, and here was in times past the court of a certaine king, who in my time was slaine by *Izchia* the king of Tombuto, and his sonnes were gelt, and accounted among the number of the kings eunuches. Afterward he sent gouernours hither who mightily oppressed and impouerished the people that were before rich: and most part of the inhabitants were carried captiue and kept for slaues by the said *Izchia*.

*Of the citie and kingdome of Agadez.*

THE citie of Agadez standing neere vnto Lybia was not long since walled round about by a certaine king. The inhabitants are all whiter then other Negros: and their houses are stately built after the fashion of Barbarie. The greatest part of the citizens are forren merchants, and the residue be either artificers, or stipendaries to the king. Euery merchant hath a great many of seruants and slaues, who attend vpon them as they trauell from Cano to Borno: for in that iourney they are exceedingly molested by certaine thecues called Zingani, inso much that they dare not trauell the same way vnlesse they be well appointed: in my time they vsed crossebowes for their defence: when the said merchants be arriued at any towne, they presently employ all their slaues about some busines, to the end they may not liue in idlenes: ten or twelue they keepe to attend vpon themselves and their wares. The king of this citie hath alwaies a notable garde about him, and continueth for the most part at a certaine palace in the midst of the citie. He hath greatest regarde vnto his subiects that inhabite in the deserts and fields: for they will sometime expell their king and choose another:

so

Their maner of  
sowing corne at  
the inundation  
of Niger.

The king of  
Guber slaine by  
Izchia.

Zingani.

so that he which pleaseth the inhabitants of the desert best is sure to be king of Agadez. The residue of this kingdome lying southward is inhabited by shepherds and herdsmen, who dwell in certaine cottages made of boughes, which cottages they carrie about vpon oxen from place to place. They erect their cottages alwaies in the same field where they determine to feede their cattell; like as the Arabians also doe. Such as bring merchandize out of other places pay large custome to the king: and the king of Tombuto recei- ueth for yeerely tribute out of this kingdome almost an hundred and fiftie thousand duckats.

*Of the prouince of Cano.*

THE great prouince of Cano standeth eastward of the riuer Niger almost siue hundred miles. The greatest part of the inhabitants dwelling in villages are some of them herdsmen and others husbandmen. Heere groweth abundance of corne, of rice, and of cotton. Also here are many deserts and wilde woodie mountaines containing many springs of water. In these woods growe plentie of wilde citrons and limons, which differ not much in taste from the best of all. In the midst of this prouince standeth a towne called by the same name, the walles and houses whereof are built for the most part of a kinde of chalke. The inhabitants are rich merchants and most ciuill people. Their king was in times past of great puissance, and had mighty troupes of horsemen at his command; but he hath since beene constrained to pay tribute vnto the kings of Zegzeg and Casena. Afterward *Izchia* the king of Tombuto faining friendship vnto the two foresaid kings treacherously slew them both. And then he waged warre against the king of Cano, whom after a long siege he tooke, and compelled him to marie one of his daughters, restoring him againe to his kingdome, conditionally that he should pay vnto him the third part of all his tribute: and the said king of Tombuto hath some of his courtiers perpetually residing at Cano for the receipt thereof.

*Of the kingdome of Casena.*

CAsena bordering eastward vpon the kingdome last described, is full of mountaines, and drie fields, which yeeld notwithstanding great store of barlie and mill-seed. The inhabitants are all extremely black, hauing great noses and blabber lips. They dwell in most forlorne and base cottages: neither shall you finde any of their villages containing aboue three hundred families. And besides their base estate they are mightily oppressed with famine: a king they had in times past whom the foresaid *Izchia* slew, since whose death they haue all beene tributarie vnto *Izchia*.

C 6 2

of

Agadez, tribu-  
tarie to the king  
of Tombuto.

The kings of  
Zegzeg, of Ca-  
sena, and of  
Cano subdued  
by Izchia the  
king of Tom-  
buto.

## Of the kingdome of Zegzeg.

**T**He southeast part thereof bordereth vpon Cano, and it is distant from Casena almost an hundred and fiftie miles. The inhabitants are rich and haue great traffique vnto other nations. Some part of this kingdome is plaine, and the residue mountainous, but the mountaines are extremely cold, and the plaines intolerably hot. And because they can hardly indure the sharpnes of winter, they kindle great fires in the midst of their houses, laying the coles thereof vnder their high bedsteads, and so betaking themselves to sleepe. Their fields abounding with water, are exceeding fruitfull, & their houses are built like the houses of the kingdom of Casena. They had a king of their owne in times past, who being slaine by *Ischia* (as is afore-said) they haue euer since bene subiect vnto the said *Ischia*.

## Of the region of Zanzara.

**T**He region of Zanzara bordering eastward vpon Zegzeg is inhabited by most base and rusticall people. Their fields abound with rice, mill, and cotton. The inhabitants are tall in stature and extremely blacke, their visages are broad, and their dispositions most sauage and brutish. Their king also was slaine by *Ischia*, and themselves made tributarie.

## Of the towne and kingdome of Guangara.

**T**His kingdome adioineth southeasterly vpon Zanzara, being very populous, and hauing a king reigning ouer it, which maintaineth a garrison of seuen thousand archers, and fise hundred horsemen, and receiueth yeerely great tributes. In all this kingdome there are none but base villages, one onely excepted, which exceedeth the rest both in largenes and faire building. The inhabitants are very rich, and haue continuall traffique with the nations adioining. Southward thereof lieth a region greatly abounding with gold. But now they can haue no traffique with forren nations, for they are molested on both sides with most cruell enemies. For westward they are oppressed by *Ischia*, and eastward by the king of Borno. When I my selfe was in Borno, king *Abraham* hauing leuied an huge armie, determined to expell the prince of Guangara out of his kingdome, had he not bene hindered by *Homar* the prince of Gaoga, which began to assaile the kingdome of Borno. Wherefore the king of Borno being drawne home into his owne cuntry, was enforced to giue ouer the conquest of Guangara. So often as the merchants of Guangara trauell vnto the foresaid region abounding with gold, because the waies are so rough and difficult that their camels cannot goe vpon them, they carrie their wares vpon slaues backs; who being laden with great burthens doe vsually trauell ten or twelue miles a day. Yea some

I saw that made two of those iourneies in one day: a woonder it is to see what heauie burthens these poore slaues are charged withall; for besides the merchandize they carrie victuals also for their masters, and for the soldiers that goe to garde them.

## Of the kingdome of Borno.

**T**He large prouince of Borno bordering westward vpon the prouince of Guangara, and from thence extending eastward fise hundred miles, is distant from the fountaine of Niger almost an hundred and fiftie miles, the south part thereof adioining vnto the desert of Ser, and the north part vnto that desert which lieth towards Barca. The situation of this kingdome is very vnecuen, some part thereof being mountainous, and the residue plaine. Vpon the plaines are sundry villages inhabited by rich merchants, and abounding with corne. The king of this region and all his followers dwell in a certaine large village. The mountaines being inhabited by herdesmen and shepherds doe bring forth mill and other graine altogether vnknown to vs. The inhabitants in summer goe all naked saue their priue members which they couer with a peece of leather: but al winter they are clad in skins, and haue beds of skins also. They embrace no religion at all, being neither Christians, Mahumetans, nor Lewes, nor of any other profession, but liuing after a brutish manner, and hauing wiues and children in common: and (as I vnderstood of a certaine merchant that abode a long time among them) they haue no proper names at all, but euery one is nicknamed according to his length, his fatnes, or some other qualitie. They haue a most puissant prince, being lineally descended from the Libyan people called Bardoa. Horsemen he hath in a continuall readines to the number of three thousand, & an huge number of footmen; for al his subiects are so seruiceable and obedient vnto him, that whensoever he commandeth them, they wil arme themselves and follow him whither he pleaseth to conduct them. They paye vnto him none other tribute but the tithes of all their corne: neither hath this king any reuenues to maintaine his estate, but onely such spoiles as he getteth from his next enimes by often inuasions and assaults. He is at perpetuall enmitie with a certaine people inhabiting beyond the desert of Seu; who in times past marching with an huge armie of footemen ouer the saide desert, wasted a great part of the kingdome of Borno. Whereupon the king of Borno sent for the merchants of Barbary, and willed them to bring him great store of horses: for in this countrey they vse to exchange horses for slaues, and to giue fiftene, and sometime twentie slaues for one horse. And by this meanes there were abundance of horses brought: howbeit the merchants were constrained to stay for their slaues till the king returned home conquerour with a great number of captiues, and satisfied his creditors for their horses. And oftentimes it falleth out that the merchants must stay three moneths together, before the king

*Ischia.**The king of Zanzara slaine by Ischia, and the people made tributarie.**Gold.**Ischia.**The desert of Seu.**Fiftene or twentie slaues exchanged for one horse.*

returneth from the warres; but they are all that while maintained at the kings charges. Sometimes he bringeth not home slaues enough to satisfie the merchants: and otherwhiles they are constrained to awaite there a whole yeere together; for the king maketh inuasions but euery yeere once; & that at one set and appointed time of the yeere. Yea I my selfe met with sundrie merchants heere, who despairing of the kings payment, bicause they had trusted him an whole yeere, determined neuer to come thither with horses againe. And yet the king seemeth to be marueilous rich; for his spures, his bridles, platters, dishes, pots, and other vessels wherein his meate and drinke are brought to the table, are all of pure golde: yea, and the chaines of his dogs and hounds are of golde also. Howbeit this king is extreemely couetous, for he had much rather pay his debts in slaues then in gold. In this kingdome are great multitudes of Negros and of other people, the names of whom (bicause I tarried heere but one moneth) I could not well note.

*Of the kingdome of Gaoga.*

**G**Aoga bordering westward vpon the kingdome of Borno, and extending eastward to the confines of Nubia, adioineth southward vnto a certaine desert situate vpon a crooked and winding part of Nilus, and is enclosed northward with the frontiers of Egypt. It stretcheth from east to west in length five hundred miles, and as much in breadth. They haue neither humanitie nor learning among them, but are most rusticall and sauage people, and especially those that inhabite the mountaines, who go all naked saue their priuities: their houses are made of boughes & rafts, and are much subiect to burning, and they haue great abundance of cattel, whereunto they giue diligent attendance. For many yeers they remained in libertie, of which libertie they were depriued by a certaine Negro slaue of the same region. This slaue lying vpon a certaine night with his master that was a wealthy merchant, & considering that he was not far from his native countrey, flue his saide master, possessed his goods, and returned home: where hauing bought a certaine number of horses, he began to inuade the people next adioining, and obtained for the most part the victorie: for he conducted a troupe of most valiant & warlike horfmen against his enemies that were but slenderly appointed. And by this means he tooke great numbers of captiues, whom he exchanged for horses that were brought out of Egypt: insomuch that at length (the number of his souldiers increasing) he was accounted of by all men as souerainge K. of Gaoga. After him succeeded his son, being no whit inferiour in valour & high courage vnto his father, who reigned for the space of fortie yeeres. Next him succeeded his brother *Moses*, & after *Moses* his nephew *Homara*, who beareth rule at this present. This *Homara* hath greatly enlarged his dominions, and hath entred league with the Soldan of Cairo, by whom he is often presented with magnificient gifts, which he most bountifullly requiteth: also diuers merchants of Egypt, and diuers inhabitants

*A Negro-slaue who hauing slaine his Lord grew to great might and authoritie.*

inhabitants of Cairo present most pretious and rare things vnto him, and highly commend his surpassing liberalitie. This prince greatly honoureth all learned men, and especially such as are of the linage of Mahumet. I my selfe being in his court, a certaine noble man of Damiata brought him very rich and roiall gifts, as namely, a gallant horse, a Turkish sworde, and a king-ly robe, with certaine other particulars that cost about an hundred and fiftie ducates at Cairo: in recompence whereof the king gaue him five slaues, five camels, five hundred ducates of that region, and an hundred elephants teeth of woonderfull bignes.

*Of the kingdome of Nubia.*

**N**ubia bordering westward vpon the kingdome last described, and stretching from thence vnto Nilus, is enclosed on the south side with the desert of Goran, and on the north side with the confines of Egypt. Howbeit they cannot passe by water from this kingdome into Egypt: for the riuer of Nilus is in some places no deeper then a man may wade ouer on foote. The principall towne of this kingdome called Dangala is exceeding populous, and containeth to the number of ten thousand families. The wals of their houses consist of a kinde of chalke, and the roofes are couered with strawe. The townesmen are exceeding rich and ciuill people, and haue great traffike with the merchants of Cairo & of Egypt: in other parts of this kingdome you shall finde none but villages and hamlets situate vpon the riuer of Nilus, all the inhabitants whereof are husbandmen. The kingdome of Nubia is most rich in corne and sugar, which notwithstanding they knowe not how to vse. Also in the citie of Dangala there is great plentie of ciuet and Sandall-wood. This region aboundeth with Iuory likewise, bicause heere are so many elephants taken. Heere is also a most strong and deadly poison, one graine whereof being diuided amongst ten persons, will kill them all within lesse then a quarter of an hower: but if one man taketh a graine, he dieth thereof out of hand. An ounce of this poison is solde for an hundred ducates; neither may it be solde to any but to foraine merchants, & whosoever buieth it is bound by an oath not to vse it in the kingdome of Nubia. All such as buy of this poison are constrained to pay as much vnto the king, as to the merchant: but if any man selleth poison without the princes knowledge, he is presently put to death. The king of Nubia maintaineth continuall warre, partly against the people of Goran (who being descended of the people called Zingani, inhabite the deserts, and speake a kinde of language that no other nation vnderstandeth) and partly against certaine other people also dwelling vpon the desert which lieth eastward of Nilus, and stretcheth towards the red sea, being not farre from the borders of Suachen. Their language (as I take it) is mixt, for it hath great affinity with the Chaldean toong, with the language of Suachen, and with the language of Ethiopia the higher, where *Prete Gianni* is said to beare

*The riuer of Nilus not navigable betweene Nubia and Egypt.*

*The rich commodities of Nubia.*

*Most strong poison.*

*Prete Gianni beare*



*Bugihia.*

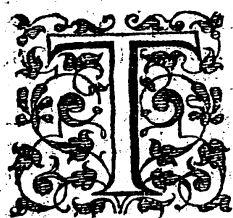
beare rule: the people themselves are called Bugihia, and are most base and miserable, and liue onely vpon milke, camels-flesh, and the flesh of such beasts as are taken in those deserts. Sometimes they receiue tribute of the gouernour of Suachen, and sometimes of the gouernors of Dangala. They had once a rich towne situate vpon the red sea called Zibid, whereunto belonged a commodious haven, being opposite vnto the haven of Zidem, which is fortie miles distant from Mecca. But an hundred yeeres since it was destroyed by the Soldan, because the inhabitants receiued certaine wares which should haue beene carried to Mecca, and at the same time the famous port of Zibid was destroyed, from whence notwithstanding was gathered a great yeerely tribute. The inhabitants being chased from thence fledde vnto Dangala and Suachin, and at length being overcome in battaile by the gouernour of Suachin, there were in one day slaine of them about fower thousand, and a thousand were carried captiue vnto Suachin, who were massacred by the women and children of the citie. And thus much (friendly reader) as concerning the lande of Negros: the fiftene kingdomes whereof agreeing much in rites and customes, are subiect vnto fower princes onely. Let vs now proceed vnto the description of Egypt.

*Here endeth the seventh booke.*

# IOHN LEO HIS EIGHT BOOKE OF the Historie of Africa, and

*of the memorable things*

contained therein.

*Of Egypt.*

He most noble and famous prouince of Egypt bordering westward vpon the deserts of Barca, Numidia, and Libya; eastward vpon the deserts lying betweene Egypt it selfe and the red sea; and northward vpon the Mediterran sea; is inclosed southward with the land of the foresaid people called Bugihia, and with the riuer of Nilus. It stretcheth in length from the Mediterran sea to the land of the people called Bugihia about fower hundred and fiftie

*Egypt 450.  
miles long.*

fiftie miles: but in bredth it is very narrow; so that it containeth nought but a small distance betweene both the banks of Nilus and the barren mountaines bordering vpon the foresaid deserts, being inhabited onely in that place where Nilus is separate from the saide mountaines: albeit towards the Mediterran sea it extendeth it selfe somewhat broader. For Nilus about fower-score miles from the great citie of Cairo is diuided into two branches, one whereof running in his chanell westward, returneth at length into the maine streame from whence he tooke his originall, and hauing passed about threescore miles beyond Cairo, it diuideth it selfe into two other branches, whereof the one runneth to Damiata, and the other to Rosetto. And out of that which trendeth to Damiata issueth another branch, which discharging it selfe into a lake passeth through a certaine gullet or streit into the Mediterran sea, vpon the banke whereof standeth the most ancient citie of Teneffe: and this diuision of Nilus into so many streames and branches causeth Egypt (as I haue before said) to be so narrow. All this prouince is plaine, and is most fruitfull for all kind of graine and pulse. There are most pleasant and greene medowes, and great store of geese and other fowles. The countrey people are of a swart and browne colour: but the citizens are white. Garments they weare which are streite downe to their wastes, and broad beneath, and the sleeues likewise are streight. They couer their heads with a round and high habite called by the Italians a Dulipan. Their shooes are made according to the ancient fashion. In sommer they weare garments of particoloured cotton: but in winter they vse a certaine garment lined with cotton, which they call Chebre: but the chiefe citizens and merchants are apparelled in cloth of Europe. The inhabitants are of an honest, cheereful, and liberall disposition. For their victuals they vse a kinde of newe and extreme salt cheeses, and sowre milke also artificially congealed: which fare albeit they account very daintie, yet cannot strangers digest it, and into eueridish almost they put fower milke.

*A diuision of Egypt.*

Since the Mahumetans were Lords of Egypt, it hath beene diuided into three parts. For the region from Cairo to Rosetto is called the shore of Errif: and from Cairo to the lande of Bugihia it is called Sahid, that is to say, The firme land: but the region adioining vpon that branch of Nilus which runneth towards Damiata and Teneffe, they call by the name of Bechria or Maremma. All Egypt is exceeding fertile: but the prouince of Sahid excelleth the two other parts for abundance of corne, cattle, fowles, and flaxe: and Maremma aboundeth with cotton and sugar. Howbeit the inhabitants of Marremma and Errif are farre more ciuill then the people of Sahid: because those two prouinces lie neerer vnto the sea, and are more frequented by European, Barbarian, and Assirian merchants: but the

the people of Sahid haue no conuersation with strangers, except it be with a fewe Ethiopians.

*Of the ancient pedigree and originall of the Egyptians.*

Gen. 10. 6.  
\* Mesraim is  
recorded to be  
the brother of  
Chus, and the  
sonne of Cham.  
Chibith.



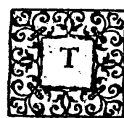
He Egyptians (as *Moses* writeth) fetch their originall from \* *Mesraim* the sonne of *Chus*, the sonne of *Cham*, the sonne of *Noe*; and the Hebrewes call both the countrie and the inhabitants of Egypt by the name of *Mesraim*. The Arabians call Egypt it selfe *Mesre*, but the inhabitants *Chibith*. And *Chibith* (they say) was the man, that first tooke vpon him the gouernment of this region, and began first to builde houses thereon. Also the inhabitants call themselves by the same name: neither are there left any true Egyptians, besides a fewe Christians, which are at this present remaining. The residue embracing the Mahumetan religion haue mingled themselves amongst the Arabians & the Moores. This kingdome was gouerned many yeeres by the Egyptians themselves, as namely by the kings that were called *Pharao*, (who by their monuments and admirable buildings, seeme to haue beene mightie princes) and also by the kings called *Ptolomai*. Afterward being subdued vnto the Romaine Empire, this kingdome since the coming of Christ was conuerted vnto the Christian religion, vnder the saide Romaine gouernment: since the decay of which Empire, it fell into the possession of the Emperours of Constantinople; who being very carefull to maintaine this kingdome, were at length depriued thereof by the Mahumetans, vnder the conduct of *Hamrus* the sonne of *Hass*, being appointed captaine generall ouer the Arabian armie of *Homar* the second Califa or Mahumetan patriarke of that name: who permitting all men to haue their owne religion required nought but tribute at their hands. The said captaine built vpon the banke of Nilus a certaine towne called by the Arabians *Fustato*, which word signifieth in their language a tabernacle: for when he first vndertooke this expedition, he marched through wilde and desert places voide of inhabitants, so that his armie was constrained to lye in tents. The common people call this towne *Mesre Hatichi*, that is to say, the auncient citie; which notwithstanding in comparison of *Cairo* may not vnfitly be called the New citie. And as concerning the situation of this towne many excellent men both Christians, Iewes, and Mahumetans haue in these our times beene deceiued. For they thinke *Mesre* to be situate in the same place where king *Pharao* in the time of *Moses*, and king *Pharao* in the time of *Ioseph* had their abode: because they suppose the towne of *Pharao* to haue stood in that part of Africa where Nilus stretcheth out one of his armes westward towards Africa, and where the Pyramides are as yet to be seene: which the holy Scripture also seemeth to auouch in the booke of Genesis, where it is said, that the Iewes in *Moses* time were employed about the building of the towne of *Aphthaj*, which was founded by *Pharao*: namely in that

The towne of  
*Pharao*.

that place where Nilus trendeth towards Africa, being about fiftie miles southward of *Cairo*, and neere vnto the most westerly arme or branch of Nilus. They alleage also another probabilitie, that the towne of *Pharao* was built in the same place, because that at the verie head or confluence of the branches of Nilus there standeth a building of maruellous antiquitie, called the sepulchre of *Ioseph*, wherein the dead bodie of *Ioseph* lay, till it was by the Iewes transported vnto the sepulchre of their fathers. To be brieft, neither *Cairo* nor any place neere vnto it, can by any likelyhood chalenge that they were at any time inhabited by the ancient *Pharaos*. But heere it is to be noted, that the nobilitie of the ancient Egyptians dwelt in times past in the region of Sahid beyond *Cairo*, in the cities of *Fium*, of *Manfichmin*, and in other such famous cities. Howbeit after Egypt was conquered by the Romans, the Egyptian nobilitie planted themselves in the region of *Errif*, vpon the sea shore thereof, namely about the cities of *Alexandria*, *Rosetto*, and other famous townes retayning as yet the Latine names. Also when the Roman Empire was translated into Greece, the said nobilitie still inhabited vpon the sea-shore, the Emperours lieutenant residing at *Alexandria*: but after the Mahumetans got the dominion of Egypt, the foresaide nobilitie retired themselves into the inland, hoping thereby to reape a double commoditie: namely first in that they might be a meanes to pacifie the kingdome on both sides of them, and secondly that they might be free from the inuasions of the Christians, whereof they should haue beene in danger, had they remained any longer vpon the sea coast.

The sepulchre of  
*Ioseph*.

*Of the qualitie and temperature of the ayre in Egypt.*



HE ayre of this countrey is hot and vnwholesome: and it raineth here verie seldome or neuer. And raine is the cause of many diseases in Egypt: for in rainie weather some of the Egyptians are subiect vnto dangerous rheumes and feuers; and others vnto a strange kinde of swelling in their priuie members: which swelling the Phisicians inpute vnto salt-cheefe and beefe, which are the common diet of the Egyptians. In sommer time this countrey is most extremely hot, for a remedie of which heat they build in euerie towne certaine high towers, hauing one doore aloft, and another beneath, right ouer against the houses, through the tops whereof the winde passing downward, doth somewhat coole and refresh the ayre: otherwise in regard of the intollerable heat of the sun it were impossible for any man to liue there. Sometime the pestilence is so hot among them, especially at *Cairo*, that almost euery day there die twelue thousand persons thereof. But with the French poxe I thinke that no other countrey vnder heauen is so molested, nor that containeth so many people infected therewith. About the beginning of Aprill they reape their corne, and hauing reaped it, they presently thrash the same; neither shall you see one ear of their corne standing till the twentieth of May. The inundation or overflow of Nilus beginneth about the middest of Iune, increa-

Extreme pe-  
stilence.

The French  
maladie most  
rise in Egypt.

The increase of  
Nilus.

sing

sing afterward for the space of fortie daies, and for the space of other fortie daies also decreasing: during which time all the cities and townes of Egypt are like vnto Ilands, which none can come vnto but by boates and barges. At this time also Nilus is verie fit to be sayled vpon with vessels of burthen; some whereof are so big that they will containe fixe thousand bushels of corne, and an hundreth head-cattell: and in these vessels they sayle onely downe the streame: for against the streame it were impossible for them to passe emptie. The Egyptians according to the increase of Nilus doe foresee the plentie or dearth of the yeere following: as we will more at large declare, when we come to speake of the island of Nilus ouer against the olde citie, where the inundation of Nilus is measured. Neither is it our purpose in this place particularly to describe all the cities of Egypt, because our African writers are of diuers opinions thereabout; for some would haue Egypt to be a part of Africa, but others are of a contrarie minde. Diuers there are that affirme that part of Egypt adioyning vpon the deserts of Barbarie, Numidia, and Libya, to belong vnto Africa. Some others ascribe vnto Africa all those places that border vpon the principall and maine chanel of Nilus: but as for other places, as namely Mans, Fium, Semenud, Damanhore, Berelies, Teneffe, and Damiata, they thinke them not to be situate in Africa: which opinion I my selfe also vpon many and great reasons take to be true. Wherefore my purpose is to describe none other cities but such as stand neere the maine and principall chanel of Nilus.

*Of the citie of Bosiri.*

**T**He ancient citie of Bosiri built by the Egyptians vpon the Mediterranean sea, and standing twenty miles westward from Alexandria, was in times past enuironed with most strong walles, and adorned with most beautifull and stately buildings. At this present it is compassed with many possessions or grounds bearing dates, whereof no man taketh charge nor reapeth any commoditie: for when Alexandria was woon by the Christians, the inhabitants abandoned this citie, and fled towards the lake called Buchaira.

*Of the great citie of Alexandria in Egypt.*

**T**He great citie of Alexandria in Egypt founded by *Alexander* the great, not without the aduise of most famous and skilfull architects, vpon a beautifull point of land stretching into the Mediterranean sea, and being distant 40. miles westward of Nilus, was in times past, till it grew subiect vnto the Mahumetans, most sumptuously and strongly built, as diuers and sundry authors beare record. Afterward this citie decaying many yeeres together, was deprived of the ancient renoume and honour, and remained in manner desolate, because no merchants of Greece, nor of any other part of Europe exercised any longer traffique therein.

therein. Howbeit a certaine craftie Mahumetan patriarke made the rude people boleeue, that by the propheticke of *Mahumer* most ample indulgences were granted vnto all such as would inhabite the citie or garde it for certaine daies, and would bestow some almes for a publike benefite: by which wilie stratagem the citie was in short time filled with forren people, which from all places resorted therevnto: by whom were built many houses neere vnto the citie-walles, and many colleges of students, and diuers monasteries for the reliefe of pilgrims. The citie it selfe is fower square, and hath fower gates to enter in at: one standing on the east side towards Nilus, another on the south side towards the lake of Buchaira, the third westward towards the desert of Barca, and the fourth towards the Mediterranean sea, and the hauen; whereat stand the searchers and customers, which ransacke strangers euen to their verie shirts: for they demaund custome not onely for wares and merchandize, but also some allowance in the hundred for all kinde of money. Neere vnto the citie-walles there are two other gates also, being diuided asunder by a faire walke, and a most impregnable castle, which standeth vpon the strand or wharfe of the port commonly called *Marsa el Bargi*, that is to say, the port of the castle: in which port ride the principall and best ships, namely such as come from Venice, Genoa, Ragusa, with other ships of Europe. For hither resort the English, the low Dutch, the Biscaines, the Portugals, and men of all other nations in Europe for traffiques sake. Howbeit this port is most vsually frequented by the ships of Appulia, Sicilia, and of Greece, which are Turkish ships; all which resort into this harbour to saue themselves from pirates, and from tempestuous weather. Another port there is also called *Marsa Esbl Sela*, that is to say, the port of the chaine, wherein the ships of Barbarie, namely those of Tunis & of the isle of Gerbi harbor themselves. The Christians are constrained to pay about the 10. part for all wares that they bring in & carie out, but the Mahumetans pay but the 20. part: and whatsoever wares are caried by land to Cairo pay no custom at all. And at this present that part of the citie which is next vnto Cairo is the most famous and best furnished with merchandize brought by merchants from all places of the world. The other parts of this city are destitute both of ciuilitie & inhabitants: for except one long street, and that part of the citie next the hauen which is full of merchants shops, & inhabited by christians, the residue is void and desolate. Which desolation happened at that time, when *Lewis* the fourth king of France being restored to libertie by the Souldan, the king of Cyprus with a fleet partly of Venetians & partly of Frenchmen suddenly assailed Alexandria, and with great slaughter surprized and sacked the same. But the Souldan comming with an huge armie to rescue Alexandria, so discouraged the Cyprians, that they burnt downe the houses thereof and betooke themselves to flight. Whereupon the Souldan repairing the walles, and building a castle neere vnto the hauen, the citie grew by little and little into that estate, wherein it standeth at this present. In the citie of Alexandria there is a certaine high mount fashioned like vnto the place

*Ancient traffique of the English vnto Alexandria.*

*Alexandria surprized and sacked by the king of Cyprus.*

called Testaccio at Rome, whereon, although it hath no naturall situation, are found diuers earthen vessels of great antiquitie. Vpon the top of the said mount standeth a turrett, where a certaine officer is appointed to watch for such ships as direct their course towards the citie, who for euery ship that he giueth notice of vnto the custumers, receiueth a certaine fee: but if he changeth to fall asleepe, or to be out of the way at the arriual of any ship, whereof he certieth not the custumers, he paieth double for his negligence into the Soldans exchequer. Vnder each house of this citie there is a great vaulted cesterne built vpon mighty pillers and arches: whereinto the water of Nilus at euery inundation is conueied vnder the walles of the citie, by a certaine woonderfull and most artificiall sluice standing without the city it selfe. But these cesterne growing sometime corrupt and fowle, are often in summer the occasion of many diseases and infirmities. This citie standeth in the midst of a sandie desert, and is destitute of gardens and vines, neither is the soile round about it apt to beare corne; so that their corne is brought them from places fortie miles distant. Howbeit neere the foresaid sluice, whereby the water of Nilus is conueied into the citie, are certaine little gardens; the fruits whereof being grown to ripenes are so vnwholesome, that they breed feuers and other poissome diseases among the citizens. Sixe miles westward of Alexandria, among certaine ancient buildings, standeth a pillar of a woonderfull height and thiknes, which the Arabians call Hemadusaor, that is to say, the pillar of trees. Of this pillar there is a fable reported, that *Ptolemy* one of the kings of Alexandria built it vpon an extreme point of land stretching from the hauē, whereby to the end he might defend the citie from the inuasion of forren enemies, and make it inuincible, he placed a certaine steele-glasse vpon the top thereof, by the hidden vertue of which glasse as many ships as passed by while the glasse was vncouered should immediately be set on fire: but the said glasse being broken by the Mahumetans, the secret vertue thereof vanished, and the great pillar whereon it stood was remooued out of the place. But this is a most ridiculous narration, and fit for babes to giue credit vnto. At this present there are amongst the ancient inhabitants of Alexandria many Christians called Iacobites, being all of them artizans & merchants: these Iacobites haue a church of their own to resort vnto, wherein the body of *S. Mark* the Euāgelist lay in times past interred, which hath since beene priuily stolne by the Venetians, & carried vnto Venice. And the said Iacobites pay tribute vnto the gouernour of Cairo. Neither is it to be passed over in silence, that in the midst of the ruinous monuments of Alexandria there remaineth as yet a certaine little house built in forme of a chappell, and containing a sepulchre much honoured by the Mahumetans, wherein they affirme out of the authoritie of their *Alcoran*, that the bodie of the high prophet and king (as they terme him) *Alexander* the great lieth buried. And thither resort yeerely great multitudes of pilgrimes from forren nations, to adore and reuerence the said sepulchre, and oftentimes to bestow large almes thereupon. Other things woorthie the

The water of Nilus brought by a sluice into Alexandria.

Certaine Christians called Iacobites.

noting

noting I purposely passe ouer, least I should seeme too tedious vnto the reader.

Of the citie of Bochim.

This ancient and small citie situate in times past vpon the Mediterranean sea shore eight miles eastward of Alexandria, lieth at this time vterly desolate, nought remaining thereof, but certaine ruines of the walles. It is now planted with date-trees, wherewith the poore inhabitants dwelling in base and solitarie cottages sustaine themselves. Neere vnto this citie standeth a towre vpon a certaine dangerous rocke, against which many ships of Syria being driuen in the night, doe suffer shipwracke, because they cannot in the darke finde the right course to the port of Alexandria. Round about this citie there are no fields but sandie deserts euen to the riuer of Nilus.

Of the citie of Rasid called by the Italians Rosetto.

The citie of Rosetto was built by a slaue of a certaine Mahumetan patriarke and gouernour of Egypt, vpon the easterne banke of Nilus three miles from the Mediterranean sea, not farre from the place where Nilus dischargeth his streames into the said sea. It containeth most beautiful houses and palaces built vpon the shore of Nilus, and a faire marketplace, enuironed on all sides with shops of merchants and artizans, with a stately and sumptuous temple also, hauing some gates towards the marketplace, and others toward Nilus, and certaine commodious staires to descend into the same riuer. Neere vnto the temple there is a certaine harbour for the safetie of ships and barks of burthen that carrie wares vnto Cairo: for the citie being vnwalled resembleth a village rather then a citie. About this citie stand diuers cottages, wherein they vse to thrash rice with certaine wooden instruments, & to make ready each moneth three thousand bushels thereof. A little farther from this citie there is a place like vnto a village, wherein great store of hackney-mules, and asses are kept for trauellers to ride vpon vnto Alexandria: neither neede the trauellers to guide the saide hackneyes, but to let them run their ordinarie course, for they will goe directly to the same house or inne where they ought to be left: and their pace is so good, that they will from sunne-rising to sunne-set carrie a man fortie miles: they trauell alwaies so neere the sea-shore, that sometimes the waues thereof beat vpon the hackneyes feete. Neere vnto this citie are many fields of dates, and grounds which yeeld aboundance of rice. The inhabitants are of a cheerefull disposition and courteous to strangers, especially to such as loue to spend their time in iollitie and disport. Here is a stately bath-stoue also, hauing fountaines both of cold and hot water belonging thereunto, the like whereof for stately and commodious building is not to be found in all Egypt besides. I my selfe was in this citie when *Selim* the great Turke returned this way from Alexandria, who with his priuate and familiar friends be-

John Leo was at Rasid the same time when Selim the great Turke passed that way.

Dd 2

holding



holding the said bath-stoue, seemed to take great delight and contentment therein.

*Of the citie called Amhius.*

**T**His citie was built vpon the easterne banke of Nilus by the Romans, as many Latin inscriptions engraue in marble, and remaining til this present do beare sufficient record. It is a beautifull and well-gouerned citie, and is furnished with men of all kinde of trades and occupations. The fields adiacent abound with great plentie of rice, come, and dates. The inhabitants are of a cheerefull and gentle disposition, and gaine much by rice which they transport vnto Cairo.

*Of the citie of Barnabal.*

**T**His citie was founded at the same time when the Christian religion began to take place in Egypt, vpon the easterne banke of Nilus, in a most pleasant and fruitfull place. Here is such abundance of rice, that in the citie there are more then fower hundred houses for the thrashing and trimming thereof. But they that impose this taske vpon the inhabitants, are men of forren countries, and especially of Barbarie, which are so lasciuiously and riotously giuen, that almost all the harlots of Egypt resort hither vnto them, who shau off their haire to the very bones without any cizzers or rasors.

*Of the citie of Thebe.*

**B**Y whom this ancient citie of Thebe standing vpon the westerne banke of Nilus should be built, our African chroniclers are of sundry opinions. Some affirme it to be built by the Egyptians, some by the Romans, and others by the Grecians, because there are as yet to be seene most ancient monuments, partly in Latine, partly in Greeke, and partly in Egyptian characters. Howbeit at this present it containeth but three hundred families in all, being most of them very stately and sumptuously built. It aboundeth with come, rice, and sugar, and with certaine fruits of a most excellent taste called Muse. It is also furnished with great store of merchants and artificers: but the most part of the inhabitants are husbandmen: and if a man walke the streetes in the day-time he shall see none but trim and beautifull women. The territorie adiacent aboundeth with date-trees which grow so thicke, that a man cannot see the citie, till he approcheth nigh vnto the walles. Here grow likewise store of grapes, figs, and peaches, which are carried in great plentie vnto Cairo. Without the citie there are many ancient monuments, as namely pillers, inscriptions, and walles of a great thicknes built of excellent stone, and such a number of ruinous places, that this citie seemeth in times past to haue beene very large.

*The fruits called Muse.*

*of*

*Of the citie of Fuoa.*

**T**His citie being distant about 45. miles southward from Rosetto, was built by the Egyptians on the side of Nilus next vnto Asia. The streetes thereof are narrow, being otherwise a well gouerned and populous citie, and abounding with all necessarie commodities. Heere are likewise very faire shops of merchants and artificers, albeit the inhabitants are much addicted vnto their ease and pleasure. The women of this towne liue in so great libertie, that they may go whither they will all the day-time, returning home at night without any controlement of their husbands. The fieldes adiacent abound greatly with dates, and neere vnto them there is a certaine plaine which is very apt for sugar and come: howbeit the sugar <sup>Sugar</sup> canes there bring not forth perfect sugar, but in steede thereof a certaine kinde of honie like sope, which they vse throughout all Egypt, because there is but little other honie in the whole country.

*Of Gezirat Eddcheb, that is to say, the golden Isle.*

**O**Ver against the foresaid city the riuer of Nilus maketh an Isle, which being situate on an high place, bringeth forth all kinde of fruitfull trees except Oliues. Vpon this Island are many palaces and beautifull buildings, which cannot be seene through the thicke and shadie woods. The soile of this Island being apt for sugar and rice, is manured by most of the inhabitants, but the residue are imployed about carrying of their merchandize vnto Cairo.

*Of the citie of Mechella.*

**T**His citie builte by the Mahumetans in my time vpon the easterne shore of Nilus, and enuironed with a lowe wall, containeth great store of inhabitants, the most part of whom being either weauers or husbandmen, are void of all curtesie and ciuilitie. They bring vp great store of geese which they sell at Cairo; and their fields bring forth plentie of come and flaxe.

*Of the citie of Derotte.*

**W**Hen Egypt was subiect to the Romaine empire, this towne was built also vpon the easterne banke of Nilus: which as it is very populous, so is it adorned with stately buildings and large streets, hauing merchants shops on either side of them. They haue a most beautifull temple, and the citizens are exceeding rich: for their ground yeeldeth such abundance of sugar, that they pay yeerely vnto the Soldan an hundred thousande <sup>Great abundance of Sugar.</sup> peeces of golde, called in their language Saraffi, for their libertie of making

and refining thereof. In this citie standeth a certaine great house like vnto a castle, wherein are their presses and caldrons, for the boiling and preparing of their fugar. Neither did I euer in all my life see so many workemen employed about that busines, whose daily wages (as I vnderstood by a certaine publike officer) amounted to two hundred Saraffi.

*Of the citie called Mechellat Chais.*

**T**He Mahumetans hauing conquered Egypt, built this citie vpon an high hill standing by the westerne banke of Nilus. The fields of this citie being high ground, are apt for to plant vines vpon, bicause the waters of Nilus cannot ouerflow them. This towne affoordeth new grapes vnto Cairo, almost for halfe the yeere long: but the inhabitants are vnciuill people, being most of them watermen and bargemen.

*A description of the huge and admirable citie of Cairo.*

\* 1526. **C**Airo is commonly reputed to be one of the greatest and most famous cities in al the whole world. But leauing the common reports & opinions thereof, I will exactly describe the forme and estate wherein it now standeth. And that I may begin with the Etymology or deriuation of the name, Cairo is an Arabian word, corruptly pronounced by the people of Europe: for the true Arabian worde is El Chahira, which signifieth an enforcing or imperious mistresse. This citie built in ancient times by one *Gehoar Chetib* a Dalmatian slaue (as I haue before signified in the beginning of my discourse) containeth within the wals not aboue eight thousand families, being inhabited by noblemen, gentlemen, and merchants that sell wares brought from all other places. The famous temple of Cairo commonly called Gemih Hafhare, that is to say, the glorious temple, was built also by the foresaide slaue, whom we affirmed to be the founder of the citie, and whose surname was *Hafhare*, that is to say, famous, being giuen him by the Mahumetan patriarke that was his prince. This city standeth vpon a most beautifull plaine, neere vnto a certaine mountaine called Mucatum, about two miles distant from Nilus, and is enuironed with stately wals, and fortified with iron gates: the principall of which gates is called Babe Nanfre, that is, the gate of victory, which standeth eastward towards the desert of the red sea; and the gate called Beb Zuaila being next vnto the old citie and to Nilus; and also Bebel Futuh, that is to say, the gate of triumph, standing towards the lake and the fieldes. And albeit Cairo aboundeth euerie where with all kinde of merchants and artificers, yet that is the principall streete of the whole citie which stretcheth from the gate of Nanfre to the gate of Zuaila; for in it are builte most stately and admirable palaces and colleges, and most sumptuous temples, among which is the temple of Gemith El-hechim the third schismaticall Califa of Cairo. Other temples there are of

a maruellous bignes, which to describe in particular, I thinke it superfluous. Heere are many bath-stoues also very artificially built. Next of all is the streete called Beinel Cafrain, containing to the number of threescore cooks or victualers shops, furnished with vessels of tinne: there are certaine other shops also, wherein are to be solde delicate waters or drinckes made of all kinds of fruits, being for noblemen to drinke of, and these waters they keepe most charily in fine vessels, partly of glasse, and partly of tinne: next vnto these are shops where diuers confections of hony & fugar, vnlike vnto the confections of Europe, are to be sold: then follow the fruiterers shops, who bring outlandish fruits out of Syria, to wit, quinces, pomegranates, and other fruits which grow not in Egypt: next vnto them are the shops of such as sell egges, cheete, and pancakes fried with oile. And next of all there is a streete of the principall artificers shops. Beyond which streete standeth a college built by the Soldan called *Ghauri*, who was slaine in a battaile against *Selim* the great Turke. And next vnto the college are diuers rankes of drapers shops. In the first ranke there is most excellent outlandish linnen cloth to be sold, as namely fine cloth of cotton brought from Balabach, and cloth called Mosall brought from Ninou of a maruellous bredth and finenesse, whereof noblemen and others of account haue shirts made them, & scarffes to weare vpon their Dulipans. Besides these there are certaine mercers shops where the rich stufes of Italy, namely silke, damaske, veluet, cloth of golde, and such like are to be bought, vnto which stufes I neuer sawe anie comparable (to my remembrance) in Italy, where they vse to be made. Next vnto the mercers are the woollen drapers which bring cloth out of Europe, as namely from Florence, Venice, Flanders, and other places. Next of all there are chamblers to be sold: and from thence the way lieth to the gate of Zuaila, at which gate dwell great store of artificers. Neere vnto the faide way standeth the famous Burse called Canel Halili, wherein the Persian merchants dwell. It is built very stately in maner of a kings palace, and is of three stories high: beneath it are certaine conuenient roomes whither merchants for the exchange of rich and costly wares do resort: for heere do the principall and most wealthie merchants abide; whose wares are spices, precious stones, cloth of India, and such like. Next vnto the Burse standeth a streete of shops where all kinde of perfumes, namely ciuet, muske, amber, and such like are to be solde: which commodities are heere in so great plentie, that if you aske for twentie pounds of muske they will presently shewe you an hundred. Next followeth the streete of the paper-merchants where you may buie most excellent and smooth paper: heere also are to be sold iewels and precious stones of great value, which the brokers carrie from one shop to another. Then come you to the goldsmiths streete being inhabited for the most part by Iewes, who deale for riches of great importance. And next vnto the goldsmiths are certaine streetes of vpholsters or brokers, who sell the apparell and rich furniture of noblemen and other citizens at the second hande; which are not cloakes, coates, napery, or such like, but things of exceeding

A stately hosp-  
itall.

ceeding price and value: amongst which I my selfe once sawe a beautifull pavilion embrodered with needle-worke, and beset with pearles that weighed fortie pounds, which pearles being taken out of it were tolde for ten thousand Saraffi. In this citie also there is a most stately hospitall builde by *Piperis* the first Soldan of the Mamelucks race: the yeerely reuenues whereof amount vnto two hundred thousand Saraffi. Hither may any impotent or diseased persons resort, and be well provided of phisitions, and of all things necessarie for those that are sicke, who if they chance to die heere, all their goods are due vnto the hospitall.

*Of the suburbe called Beb Zuaila.*

**T**His great suburbe belonging vnto Cairo, and containing about twelue thousand families, beginneth at the gate of Zuaila, and extendeth westward almost a mile & a halfe; southward it bordereth vpon the palace of the Soldan, & stretcheth northward for the space of a mile vnto the suburbe called Beb Elloch. Heere dwell as many noble men and gentlemen almost, as within the citie it selfe: and the citizens haue shops both heere and in the citie, as likewise many inhabitants of this suburbe maintaine families in the citie also. Amongst all the buildings of this suburbe the principall is that stately college built by Soldan *Hesen*, being of such a woonderfull height and great strength, that oftentimes the colleges haue presumed to rebell against the Soldan, and therein to fortifie themselves against the whole citie, and to discharge ordinance against the Soldans castle, which is but halfe a crosse-bowe shot distant.

*Of the suburbe called Gemeh Tailon.*

**T**His huge suburbe confining eastwarde vpon the foresaid suburbe of Beb Zuaila extendeth westward to certaine ruinous places neere vnto the olde citie. Before the foundation of Cairo this suburbe was erected by one *Tailon*, who was subiect vnto the Califa of Bagdet, and gouernour of Egypt, and was a most famous and prudent man. This *Tailon* leauing the old citie, inhabited this suburbe, and adorned the same with a most admirable palace, and sumptuous temple. Heere dwell also great store of merchants, and artificers, especially such as are Moores of Barbarie.

*Of the suburbe called Beb Elloch.*

**T**His large suburbe being distant from the wals of Cairo about the space of a mile, and containing almost three thousand families, is inhabited by merchants, and artizans of diuers sorts as well as the former. Vpon a certaine large place of this suburbe standeth a great palace and a stately college built by a certaine Mammeluck called *Iazbach*, being coun-

counsellor vnto the Soldan of those times; and the place it selfe is called after his name Iazbachia. Hither after Mahumetan sermons and deuotions, the common people of Cairo, together with the baudes and harlots, do vsually resort; and many stage plaiers also, and such as teach camels, asses, and dogs, to daunce: which dauncing is a thing very delightfull to behold, and especially that of the asse: who hauing frisked and daunced a while, his master comes vnto him and tels him with a loude voice, that the Soldan being about to builde some great palace; must vse all the asses of Cairo to carrie mortar, stones, and other necessarie prouision. Then the asse falling presently to the ground, and lying with his heeles vpward, maketh his belly to swell, and closeth his eies as if he were starke dead. In the meane while his master lamenting the misfortune of the asse vnto the standers by, earnestly craueth their friendly assistance and liberalitie to buie him a newe asse. And hauing gathered of each one as much money as he can get; you are much deceiued my masters (quoth he) that thinke mine asse to be dead: for the hungrie iade knowing his masters necessity hath wrought this sleight, to the end he might get some money to buie him prouender. Then turning about to the asse, he commandeth him with all speede to arise: but the asse lyeth starke still, though he command and beate him neuer so much: whereupon turning againe to the people, Be it knowen (quoth he) vnto you all, that the Soldan hath published an edict or proclamation, that to morrow next all the people shall go forth of the citie to beholde a triumph; and that all the honourable and beautifull ladies and gentlewomen shall ride vpon the most comely asses, and shall giue them otes to eate, and the christall water of Nilus to drinke. Which words being scarce ended, the asse suddenly starteth from the ground, prancing & leaping for ioy: then his master prosecuting still his narration; but (saith he) the warden of our streete hath borrowed this goodly asse of mine for his deformed and olde wife to ride vpon. At these wordes the asse, as though hee were indued with humane reason, coucheth his eares, and limpeth with one of his legges, as if it were quite out of ioint. Then saith his master; What, sir Iade, are you so in loue with faire women? The asse nodding his head seemeth to say, yea. Come on therefore sirra (quoth his master) and let vs see among all these prettie damosels, which pleasest your fancie best. Whereupon the asse going about the companie, and espying some woman more comely and beautiful then the rest, walketh directly vnto her and toucheth her with his head: and then the beholders laugh and crie out amaine: Lo, the asses paramour, the paramour of the asse. Whereupon the fellow that shewed all this sport leaping vpon the backe of his asse rideth to some other place. There is also another kinde of charmers or iuglers, which keepe certaine little birdes in cages made after the fashion of cupboords, which birds will reach vnto any man with their beaks certaine skroules contayning either his good or euill successe in time to come. And whosoeuer desireth to know his fortune must giue the bird an halfeponie: which shee taking in her bill carrieth into

*These asses are somewhat like to Banks his curtail, that plaid his prizes all England ouer.*

*Soothsaying birds.*

a little boxe, and then comming foorth againe bringeth the said skroule in her beake. I my selfe had once a skroule of ill fortune giuen me, which although I little regarded, yet had I more vnfortunate successe then was contained therein. Also there are masters of defence playing at all kinde of weapons, and others that sing songs of the battels fought betweene the Arabians and Egyptians, whenas the Arabians conquered Egypt, with diuers others that sing such toyces and ballads vnto the people.

*Of the suburb called Bulach*

**T**His large and ancient suburb of Cairo standing two miles distant from the walles of the citie vpon the banke of Nilus, containeth fower thousand families. Vpon the way lying betweene the suburb and this citie, stand diuers houses, and mills turned about by the strength of beasts. In this suburb dwell many artificers and merchants, especially such as sell corne, oyle, and sugar. Moreouer it is full of stately temples, palaces, and colledges: but the fairest buildings thereof stand along the riuer of Nilus, for from thence there is a most beautifull prospect vpon the riuer, and thither do the vessels and barks of Nilus resort vnto the common stathe of Cairo being situate in this suburb: at which place you shall see at some times, and especially in the time of haruest, about 1000. barks. And here the officers appointed to receiue custome for wares brought from Alexandria and Damietta haue their aboad: albeit but little tribute be demaunded for the said wares, because it was payd before at the port of their arriual: but those wares that come out of the firme land of Egypt allow entire custome.

*Of the suburb called Charafa.*

**T**HE suburbe of Charafa built in manner of a towne, and standing from mount Muccatim a stones cast, and from the walles of the citie about two miles, containeth almost two thousand households. But at this day the greatest part thereof lyeth waste and destroyed. Here are many sepulchres built with high and stately vaults and arches, and adorned on the inner side with diuers emblemes and colours, which the fond people adore as the sacred shrines & monuments of saints, spreading the pauement with sumptuous and rich carpets. Hither euerie friday morning resort out of the citie it selfe and the suburbs, great multitudes of people for deuotions sake, who bestow liberall and large almes.

*Of the old citie called Misrulherich.*

**T**His citie being the first that was built in Egypt in the time of the Mahumetans, was founded by *Hamre* captaine generall ouer the forces of *Homar* the second Mahumetan patriarke vpon the banke of Nilus, resembling

resembling a suburb because it is vnwalled, and containing to the number of fower thousand families. It is adorned, especially by the riuer Nilus, with diuers palaces and houses of noblemen, and also with the famous temple of *Hamre* being of an huge bignes, and most stately built. It is also indifferently well provided of tradesmen and artificers. And here standeth the famous sepulchre of a woman reuered most holy by the Mahumetans, and called by them *Saint Nassifa*, which was the daughter of one called *Zenulhebidin* being the sonne of *Husein*, the son of *Heli*, who was cousin german vnto *Mahumet*. The said *Nassifa* seeing all of her family to be deprivied of the Mahumetan patriarkship, left Cusa a citie of *Arabia Felix*, and came and dwelt in this citie; vnto whom, partly because she was of the linage of *Mahumet*, and partly for that she liued an innocent and blamelesse life, the people after her death ascribed diuine honours, canonizing her for a *Saint*. Wherefore the schismaticall patriarks of her kinred hauing got the vpper hand in Egypt, began to build for *Nassifa* a most beautifull shrine or sepulchre, which they adorned also with siluer-lamps, with carpets of silke, and such like precious ornaments. So great is the renoune of this *Nassifa*, that there commeth no Mahumetan either by sea or land vnto Cairo, but hee adoreth this sepulchre, and bringeth his offering thereunto, as likewise doe all the Mahumetans inhabiting thereabout: insomuch that the yeerely oblations and almes offered at this sepulchre, partly for the reliefe of the poore kinsfolkes of Mahumet, and partly for the maintenance of the priests which keepe the said sepulchre, amount vnto 100000. *Saraffi*: which priests by fained and counterfeit miracles do dayly delude the mindes of the simple, to the ende they may the more enflame thir blinde deuotion, and may stirre them to greater liberalitie. When *Selim* the great Turke woon the citie of Cairo, his *Tanizaries* ridding this sepulchre, found there the summe of 500000. *Saraffi* in readie money, besides the siluer lampes, the chaines, and carpets: but *Selim* tooke away a great part of that treasure from them. Such as write the liues of the Mahumetan saints, making very honourable mention of this *Nassifa*, say that she was descended of the noble family of *Heli*, and that she was most famous for her vertuous and chaste life: but the fond people and the priest of that execrable sepulchre haue deuised many fained and superstitious miracles. In this suburbe also lieth vnto the riuer of Nilus is the custome's office for such wares as are brought out of the Prouince of *Sahid*. Without the walled citie stand the magnificent and stately sepulchres of the Soldans, built with admirable and huge arches. But in my time a certaine Soldan caused a walke to be built between two high wals from the gate of the citie to the place of the aforesaid sepulchres, and at the endes of both wals caused two turrets of an exceeding height to be erected, for marks and directions vnto such merchants as came thither from the port of mount *Sinai*. About a mile and an halfe from the said sepulchres in a certaine place called *Amalthria* there is a garden containing the onely balme-tree, (for in the whole world besides there is not any other tree that beareth true balme).

*The place  
where balme  
groweth.*



balme) which balme-tree growing in the midst of a large fountaine, and hauing a short stocke or bodie, beareth leaues like vnto vine-leaues; but that they are not so long; and this tree (they say) would utterly wither and decay, if the water of the fountaine should chance to be diminished. The garden is surrounded with a strong wall, wherinto no man may enter without the speciall fauour and licence of the gouernor. In the midst of Nilus, ouer against the old citie, standeth the isle called Michias, that is to say, The isle of measure, in which isle (according to the inundation of Nilus) they haue a kinde of deuise inuented by the ancient Egyptians, whereby they most certainly foresee the plentie or scarcitie of the yeere following throughout all the land of Egypt. This island is well inhabited and containeth about 1500. families; vpon the extreme point or ende wherof standeth a most beautifull palace built in my remembrance by a Soldan, and a large temple also, which is verie pleasant in regard of the coole streames of Nilus. Vpon another side of the Island standeth an house alone by it selfe, in the midst whereof there is a fouresquare cesterne or chanell of eighteene cubits deepe; whereinto the water of Nilus is conueied by a certaine sluice vnder the ground. And in the midst of the cesterne there is erected a certaine piller, which is marked and diuided into so many cubits as the cesterne it selfe containeth in depth. And vpon the seuenteenth of Iune when Nilus be- ginneth to ouerflow, the water thereof conueied by the said sluice into the chanell, increaseth daily, sometimes two, and sometimes three fingers; and sometimes halfe a cubite in height. Vnto this place there dayly resort cer- taine officers appointed by the Senate, who viewing and obseruing the in- crease of Nilus, declare vnto certaine children how much it hath increased, which children wearing yellow skarffes vpon their heads, doe publish the faide increase of Nilus in euerie streete of the citie and the suburbs, and re- ceive gifts euerie day of the merchants, artificers, and women so long as Nilus increaseth. The foresaid deuise or experiment of the increase of Ni- lus is this that followeth. If the water reacheth onely to the fifteenth cubit of the foresaid piller, they hope for a fruitfull yeere following: but if it stayeth betwene the twelfth cubit and the fifteenth, then the increase of the yeere will prooue but meane: if it resteth betwene the tenth and twelfth cubits, then is it a signe that corne will bee solde tenne ducates the bushell. But if it ariseth to the eighteenth cubite, there is like to follow great scarcitie in regarde of too much moisture: and if the eighteenth cubite be surmounted, all Egypt is in danger to be swallowed vp by the inundation of Nilus. The officers therefore declare vnto the children the height of the ruer, and the children publish the same in all streetes of the citie, charging the people to feare God, and telling them how high Nilus is increased. And the people being astonied at the woonderfull increase of Nilus, wholly exer- cise themselves in prayers and giuing of almes. And thus Nilus continueth fortie daies increasing and fortie daies decreasing; all which time corne is sold very deere, because while the innundation lasteth, euery man may sell

The manner of  
measuring the  
increase of  
Nilus.  
This piller is  
called by Plinie  
Niloscopium.

at

at his owne pleasure: but when the eightith day is once past, the clerke of the market appointeth the price of all victuals, and especially of corne, ac- cording as he knoweth by the foresaid experiment, that the high and lowe grounds of Egypt haue receiued either too little, or too much, or conueni- ent moisture: all which customes and ceremonies being duely performed, there followeth so great a solemnitie, and such a thundering noise of drums and trumpets throughout all Cairo, that a man would suppose the whole citie to be turned vpside downe. And then euery familie hath a barge ador- ned with rich couerings and carpets, and with torch-light, and furnished with most daintie meates and confections, wherewith they solace them- selues. The Soldan also with all his nobles and courtiers resorteth vnto that sluice or conduct, which is called the great conduct, and is compassed round about with a wall, who taking an axe in his hand breaketh the said wall, and so doe his nobles and courtiers likewise: insomuch that the same part of the wall being cast downe, which stopped the passage of the water, the ruer of Nilus is so swiftly and forcibly carried through that conduct and through all other conducts and sluices in the city and the suburbs, that Cairo at that time seemeth to be another Venice; and then may you rowe ouer all places of the land of Egypt. Seuen daies and seuen nights together the foresaide festiuall solemnitie continueth in Cairo; during which space the merchants and artificers of the citie may (according to the custome of the ancient E- gyptians) consume & spend in torches, perfumes, confections, musique, & such like iollities, al their gaires that they haue gotten the whole yeere past. Without the citie of Cairo, neere vnto the suburbe of *Beb Zuaila*, standeth the castle of the Soldan vpon the side of the mountaine called Mochattan. This castle is enuironed with high and impregnable walles, and containeth such stately and beautifull palaces, that they can hardly be described. Paved they are with excellent marble, and on the roofes they are gilt and curiously painted, their windowes are adorned with diuers colours, like to the win- dows in some places of Europe; and their gates be artificially carued and beautified with gold and azure. Some of these palaces are for the Soldan and his familie; others for the familie of his wife, and the residue for his concubines, his eunuches, and his garde. Likewise the Soldan had one pa- lace to keepe publique feastes in; and another wherein to giue audience vnto forren ambassadours, and to exalt himselfe with great pompe and ce- remonies: and another also for the gouernours and officials of his court. But all these are at this present abolished by *Selim* the great Turke.

Of the customes, rites, and fashions of the  
citizens of Cairo.

**T**He inhabitants of Cairo are people of a merrie, iocund, and cheerefull disposition, such as will promise much, but traueill they not out of their

Ec 1

owne

owne native soile. Many students there are of the lawes, but very few of other liberall artes and sciences. And albeit their colleges are continually full of students, yet few of them attaine vnto perfection. The citizens in winter are clad in garments of cloth lined with cotton: in summer they weare fine shirts; ouer which shirts some put on linnen garments curiously wrought with silke, and others weare garments of chamblet, and vpon their heads they carrie great turbants couered with cloth of India. The women goe costly attired, adorning their foreheads and necks with frontlets and chaines of pearle, and on their heads they weare a sharpe and slender bonet of a span high, being very pretious and rich. Gownes they weare of woollen cloth with streite sleeues, being curiously embrodered with needle-worke, ouer which they cast certaine veiles of most excellent fine cloth of India. They couer their heads and faces with a kinde of blacke scarfe, through which beholding others, they cannot be seene themselves. Vpon their feet they weare fine shooes and pantofles, somewhat after the Turkish fashion. These women are so ambitious & proud, that all of them disdaine either to spin or to play the cookes: wherefore their husbands are constrained to buie victuals ready drest at the cookes shops: for very few, except such as haue a great familie, vse to prepare and dresse their victuals in their owne houses. Also they vouchsafe great libertie vnto their wiues: for the good man being gone to the tauerne or victualling-house, his wife tricking vp her selfe in costly apparell, and being perfumed with sweet and pretious odours, walketh about the citie to solace her selfe, and parley with her kinsfolks and friendes. They vse to ride vpon asses more then horses, which are broken to such a gentle pace, that they goe easier then any ambling horse. These asses they couer with most costly furniture, and let them out vnto women to ride vpon, together with a boy to lead the asse, and certaine footmen to run by. In this citie, like as in diuers others, great store of people carrie about sundrie kindes of victuals to be sold. Many there are also that sell water, which they carrie vp and downe in certaine leather bags vpon the backs of camels: for the citie (as I said before) is two miles distant from Nilus. Others carrie about a more fine and handsome vessell with a cocke or spout of brasse vpon it, hauing a cup of Myrrhe or christall in their hands, and these sell water for men to drinke, and for euery draught they take a farthing. Others sell yong chickens and other fowles by measure, which they hatch after a woondertull and strange manner. They put great numbers of egges into certaine ouens built vpon sundrie lostes, which ouens being moderately het, will within seuen daies conuert all the said egges into chickens. Their measures are bottomlesse, which being put into the basket of the buier, and filled full of chickens, they lift it vp, and so let the chickens fall into the basket. Likewise such as buie those chickens hauing kept them a few daies, carrie them about to sell againe. The cookes shops stand open very late: but the shops of other artificers are shut vp before ten of the clocke, who then walke abroad for their solace and recreation from one suburbe to another. The citizens in their common

The attire of  
the women of  
Cairo.

The libertie of  
the women of  
Cairo.

Birds hatched  
after a strange  
manner in  
Egypt.

common talke vse ribald and filthie speeches: and (that I may passe ouer the rest in silence) it falleth out oftentimes that the wife will complaine of her husband vnto the iudge, that he doth not his dutie nor contenteth her sufficiently in the night season, whereupon (as it is permitted by the Mahumetan law) the women are diuorced and married vnto other husbands. Among the artizans whosoever is the first inuentour of any new and ingenious deuise is <sup>The reward of new and ingenious deuises.</sup> clad in a garment of cloth of gold, and carried with a noife of musitians after him, as it were in triumph from shop to shop, hauing some money giuen him at euery place. I my selfe once saw one carried about with solemne musicke and with great pompe and triumph, because he had bound a flea in a chaine, which lay before him on a peece of paper for all men to behold. And if any of them chance to fall out in the streetes, they presently goe to buffet, and then a great number of people come flocking about them to see the conflict, who will not depart thence, till they haue reconciled them. Their most vsuall foode is buffles flesh and great store of pulle: when they goe to dinner or supper, if their familie be little, they lay a short and rounde table-cloth: but if their household be great, they spread a large cloth, such as is vsed in the halles of princes. Amongst the sundrie sectes of religion in this citie, there is one sect of the Moores called Chenesia: and this sect liueth vpon horse-flesh, so that their butchers when they can heare of any halting or lame iade, buy him forthwith, and set him vp a fattening, and hauing killed him, the said sect of Chenesia come and buy vp his flesh hand-smoothe. This sect is rise also among the Turkes, the Mamaluks, and the people of Asia; and albeit the Turkes might freely vse the foode before-mentioned, yet doe they not inure themselves thereunto. In Egypt and in the citie of Cairo there are permitted fower seuerall sectes, differing each from other both in canon and ciuill lawes: all which sectes haue their originall from the religion of *Mahumet*. For there were in times past fower men of singular learning, who by subtiltie and sharpnesse of wit, founde out a way to make particular deductions out of *Mahumet's* generall preceptes. So that each of them would interpret the opinions of *Mahumet* according to their owne fancie, and would euery man apply them to his owne proper sense; and therefore they must needs disagree much betweene themselves: howbeit growing famous among the common people in regard of their diuers canons & precepts, they were the first authors and founders of the saide fower sects: any one of which whatsoeuer *Mahumet* professeth, cannot renounce the same at his pleasure and embrace another sect, vnlesse he be a man of deepe learning, and knoweth the reasons and allegations of both parts. Also there are in the citie of Cairo fower principall iudges, who giue sentence onely vpon matters of great importance: vnder which fower are substituted other inferiour iudges, in euery streete of the citie, which decide petie contentions and brabbles. And if the parties which are at controuersie chance to bee of diuers sects, the plaintife may summon and conuent the defendand before the iudge of his

Fower seuerall  
sects of the Ma-  
humetan reli-  
gion permitted  
in the citie of  
Cairo.

streete: howbeit the defendant may, if he will, appeale from him vnto the highest iudge of all, being placed ouer the fower principall iudges aforesaid, and being gouernour of the sect called Essafichia; and this high iudge hath authority to disense withal or to disanul the decrees of the fower principal, and of all the other inferiour iudges, according as he shall see cause. Whofocuer attempteth ought against the canons and precepts of his owne religion, is seuerely punished by the iudge of the same religion. Moreouer, albeir the priests of the foresaid sects differ very much, both in their formes of Liturgie or praier, and also in many other respects, yet do they not for that diuerfitie of ceremonies hate one another, neither yet do the common people of sundrie sects fall to mutinie & debate: but men indeed of singular learning & much reading confer oftentimes together, & as in priuate each man affirmeth his owne sect to be the best, so likewise do they confirm their opinions by subtile arguments, neither may any man vnder paine of greuous punishment reproch any of the saide fower ancient doctors. And in verie deed they all of them follow one and the same religion, to wit, that which is prescribed in the canons of *Hashari* the principall doctor of the Mahumetans, which canons go for currant ouer all Africa, and most part of Asia, except in the dominions of the great Sophi of Persia; who bicause he reiecteth the saide canons, is accounted by other Mahumetans an heretike, and a schismatike. But how such varietie of opinions proceeded from the fower doctors aforesaid, it were tedious and troublesome to rehearse: he that is desirous to knowe more of this matter, let him read my Commentaries which I haue written concerning the lawe and religion of Mahumet, according to the doctrine of *Malich*, who was a man of profound learning, and was borne at Medina Tahnabi, where the body of *Mahumet* lieth buried: which doctrine of *Malich* is embraced throughout all Syria, Egypt, and Arabia: wherewith if any man be delighted, let him peruse my foresaide Commentaries, and they will satisfie him to the full. Vpon malefactors they inflict most greuous and horrible punishment, especially vpon such as haue committed any heinous crime in the court. Theeues they condemne to the halter. A murther committed trecherously they punish in manner following: the executioners assistants take the malefactor one by the head, and another by the feete, and then comes the chiefe executioner with a two-hand sword; and cutteth his body in twaine, the one part whereof adioining to the head is put into a fire full of vnslaked lime: and it is a most strange and dreadfull thing to consider, howe the same dismembred and halfe body will remaine aliue in the fire for the space of a quarter of an hower, speaking and making answer vnto the standers by. But rebels or seditious persons they flea aliue, stuffing their skins with bran till they resemble mans shape, which being done, they carrie the saide stuffed skins vpon camels backs through euery streete of the citie, and there publish the crime of the partie executed: then which punishment I neuer sawe a more dreadfull, by reason that the condemned partie liueth so long in torment: but if

An horrible  
kind of execu-  
tion.

the tormenter once toucheth his nauel with the knife, he presently yeeldeth vp the ghost: which he may not do vntill he be commanded by the magistrate standing by. If any be imprisoned for debt, not hauing wherewithall to satisfie the same, the gouernour of the prison payeth their creditors, and sendeth them, poore wretches, bound in chaines, & accompanied with certaine keepers, daily to begge almes from streete to streete, all which almes redoundeth to the gouernour, and he alloweth the saide prisoners very bare maintenance to liue vpon. Moreouer there go crying vp and downe this citie certaine aged women, who (though that which they say in the streetes cannot be vnderstood) are notwithstanding inioined by their office to circuncise women according to the prescript of Mahumet: which ceremonie is obserued in Egypt and Syria.

The nauel being cut is present death.

Women circuncised.

*Of the manner of creating the Soldan, and of the orders, degrees, and officers in his court.*

**T**He dignitie and power of the Soldan was in times past exceeding great; but *Selim* the great Turke in the yeere of Christ (if I be not deceived) 1517. vtterly abolished the saide dignitie, and changed all the customes and lawes of the Soldan. And bicause it hath bene my hap thirfe to trauell into Egypt since the saide woonderfull alteration befell, I suppose it will not be much beside my purpose, if I set downe in this place such particulars as I know to be most certaine true concerning the court of the Soldan. Vnto this high dignitie was wont to be chosen some one of the most noble Mamaluks. These Mamaluks being all Christians at the first, and stolne in their childehoode by the Tartars out of the prouince of Circassia which bordereth vpon the Euxin sea, and being solde at Caffa a towne of Taurica Cherfonesus, were brought from thence by certaine merchants vnto the citie of Cairo, and were there bought by the Soldan; who constraining them foorthwith to abiure and renounce their baptisme, caused them to be instructed in the Arabian and Turkish languages, and to be trained vp in militarie discipline, to the end they might ascend from one degree of honour to another, till at last they were aduanced vnto the high dignitie of the Soldan. But this custome whereby it was enacted, that the Soldan shoulde be chosen out of the number of such as were Mamaluks and slaues by their condition, began about 250. yeeres sithens, whenas the family of the valiant *Saladin* (whose name was so terrible vnto Christians) being supported but by a fewe of the kinned, fell to vtter decay and ruine. At the same time when the last king of Ierusalem was determined to sacke the citie of Cairo, which also in regard of the sloth and cowardize of the Mahumetan *Califa* then raigning ouer it, intended to make it selfe tributary vnto the same king, the iudges and lawyers of the citie with the consent of the *Califa*, sent for a certaine prince of Asia called *Azedudin*, of the nation of Curdu, (the people whereof liue in tents like the Arabians) which

John Leo was thirfe in Egypt

The Mamalukes.

together with his sonne *Saladin*, came with an armie of fiftie thousand horsemen. And albeit *Saladin* was inferiour in age vnto his father, yet in regard of his redoubted valour, and singular knowledge in militarie affaires, they created him generall of the field, and gave him free libertie to bestow all the tributes and reuenues of Egypt, as himselfe should thinke expedient. And so marching at length against the Christians, he got the victorie of them without any bloodshed, and drave them out of Ierusalem and out of all Syria. Then *Saladin* returning backe with triumph vnto Cairo, had an intent to vsurpe the gouernment thereof: whereupon hauing slaine the Califa his guard (who bare principall swaie ouer the Egyptians) he procured the death also of the Califa himselfe, being thus bereft of his guard, with a poisoned cup, and then forthwith submitted himselfe vnto the patronage of the Califa of Bagdet, who was the true & lawfull Mahumetan prelate of Cairo. Thus the iurisdiction of the Califa of Cairo (who had continued lords of that citie by perpetuall succession for the space of two hundred and thirty yeeres) surceased, and returned againe vnto the Califa of Bagdet, who was the true & lawfull gouernour thereof. And so the schismaticall Califas and patriarks being suppressed, there grew a contention between *Saladin* and the Soldan of Bagdet, & *Saladin* made himselfe a soueraigne of Cairo, because the saide Soldan of Bagdet being in times past prince of the prouinces of Mazandran and Ebarizin situate vpon the riuier of Ganges, and being borne in a certaine countrey of Asia, laide claime notwithstanding vnto the dominion of Cairo, and intending to wage warre against *Saladin*, he was restrained by the Tartars of Corasan, who made inuasions and inrodes vpon him. *Saladin* on the other side fearing least the Christians in reuenge of the foresaid iniury would make an expedition into Syria, and considering that his forces were partly slaine in the former warres, and partly consumed by pestilence, except a few which remained for the defence and sauegard of his kingdome, began to employ himselfe about buying of slaues that came from Circassia, whom the king of Armenia by those daies tooke and sent vnto Cairo to be sold: which slaues he caused to abiure the Christian faith and to be trained vp in feats of warre and in the Turkish language, as being the proper language of *Saladin* himselfe: and so the saide slaues within a while increased so exceedingly both in valour and number, that they became not onely valiant souldiers and skilfull commanders, but also gouernours of the whole kingdome. After the decease of *Saladin*, the dominion remained vnto his family 150. yeeres, and all his successours obserued the custome of buying slaues of Circassia: but the family of *Saladin* growing at length to decay, the slaues by a generall consent elected one *Piperis* a valiant Mamaluk of their owne companie to be their soueraigne Lord and Soldan: which custome they afterward so inuiolably kept, that not the Soldans owne sonne nor any other Mamaluk could attaine vnto that high dignitie, vnlesse first he had beene a Christian, and had abiured his faith, and had learned also exactly to speake the Circassian and Turkish languages. Inomuch that

The originall  
of the Mamalukes.

that many Soldans sent their sonnes in their childhood into Circassia, that by learning the language and fashions of the countrey they might prooue in proceesse of time fit to beare soueraigne authoritie; but by the diffension of the Mamalukes they were alwaies defeated of their purpose. And thus much briefly concerning the gouernment of the Mamalukes, and of their Princes, called euen till this present by a word of their owne mother tongue by the names of Soldans: let vs now speake of the honourable degrees and dignities inferiour to the Soldanship.

*Of the principall Peere next vnder the Soldan called Eddagudare.*

His man being in dignitie second vnto the Soldan, and beeing, as it were, his viceroy or lieutenant, had authoritie to place or displace any magistrates or officers; and maintained a family almost as great as the family of the Soldan himselfe.

*Of the Soldans officer called Amir Cabir.*

His man hauing the third place of honour was Lord generall ouer the Soldans militarie forces; who was by office bound to leaue armies against the forraigne enemy, especially against the next Arabians, and to furnish the castles & cities with convenient garisons: and also had authoritie to dispend the Soldans treasure vpon such necessarie affaires as hee thought good.

*Of Nai Bessan.*

THE fourth in dignitie after the Soldan called Nai Bessan, beeing the Soldan his lieutenant in Syria, and gathering vp all the tributes of Assiria, bestowed them at his owne discretion, & yet the Soldan himselfe was to place garisons in the castles and forts of those prouinces. This *Nai Bessan* was bound yearly to pay certaine thousands of Saraffi vnto the Soldan.

*Of the Ostadar.*

THE fift magistrate called the *Ostadar*, was the great master or steward of the palace; whose duetie was to provide apparell for the Soldan, with victuals and other necessities for his whole family. And vnto this dignitie the Soldan vsed to aduance some one of his most ancient, honourable, and vertuous nobles, vnder whose tuition himselfe had in times past beene trained vp.



*Of the Amiri Acher.* engaged in vnto the  
**T**HE sixt called the *Amiri Acher*, was master of the horse and camels; and distributed them vnto each man in court, according to his degree.

*Of the Amiralf.*

**T**HE seventh office was performed by certaine principall Mamalukes, being like vnto the Colonels of Europe; euerie of whom was captain of a thousand inferiour Mamalukes; and their office was to conduct the Soldans forces against the enemy, & to take charge of his armour.

*Of the Amirmia.*

**T**HE eight degree of honour was allotted vnto certaine centurions ouer the Mamalukes; who were continually to attend vpon the Soldan, either when he roode any whither, or when he exercised himselfe in armes.

*Of the Ghazendare.*

**T**HE ninth person was the treasurer, who made an account vnto the Soldan of all the tributes and customes of his kingdome; disbursing money for the daily and necessarie expenses of the Soldans household, and laying vp the rest in the Soldans castle.

*Of the Amirfileh.*

**T**HE tenth called the *Amirfileh* had the armour of the Soldan committed to his charge, which being contained in a great armorie was to be scoured, furnished, and renewed at his direction; for which purpose he had sundrie Mamalukes placed vnder him.

*Of the Testecana.*

**T**HE eleuenth called the *Testecana* was master of the Soldans wardrobe, and tooke charge of all such robes and apparell as were deliuered vnto him by the *Ostadar* or high steward of the household; which robes he distributed according to the appointment of the Soldan; for whomsoever the Soldan promoted vnto any dignitie, him he apparelled also. All the said garments were of cloth of gold, of veluet, or of silke; and whither soeuer the Testecana went, he was attended vpon by a great number of Mamalukes. Certaine other officers there were also: as namely the Serbedare, whose duetie was to provide delicate drinke for the Soldan, and to haue alwaies a readines

readines most excellent compound waters tempered both with sugar and with spices. Moreouer there were other officers called \*Farrafan, that is, diuers chamberlaines, who furnished the place of the Soldan with rich hangings and carpets, and made prouision also of torches and tapers of waxe mixed with amber, which serued both to shew light, and to yeeld most fragrant and odoriferous smells. Others there were also called Seabathia, to wit, the footemen of the Soldan: and certaine others called Taburchania, which were the Soldans Halbardiers, who attended vpon his person when he roode forth, or sat in publique audience. Adauia were those that tooke charge of the Soldans carriages whither soeuer he trauelled: out of which number there was a master-hangman or executioner chosen; and so often as any malefactors were to be punished, all his companions stood by him to learne his bloodie occupation, namely of flaying and skinning men aliue, and of putting them to the torture, to make them confesse their crimes. And Efuha were the Soldans foote-postes that carried letters from Cairo into Syria, and trauelled on foote threescore miles a day, because that betweene Egypt and Syria there is neither mountainous nor mirie way, but a continuall sandie plaine: howbeit such as carried letters of ferious & weightie matters roode vpon camels.

*Of the Soldans militarie forces.*

**O**F soldiers or martiall men the Soldan had fower degrees. The first called Caschia were certaine horsemen, & were most valiant and expert warriors: out of which number the Soldan chose gouernours ouer his cities and castles. Some of these were allowed their stipend in readie money out of the Soldans treasure, and others out of the tributes of townes and castles. The second called Efeifia were a companie of footmen, bearing no armes but swords only, who likewise had their pay allowed them out of the Soldans treasure. The third called Charanifa being voluntaries or such as serued gratis, had no other pay but onely their victuals allowed them: but when any Mamaluke deceased that was well provided for, some one of them supplied his rounce. The fourth and last of all called Galeb, were the yong and new-come Mamalukes, being as yet ignorant of the Turkish and Egyptian languages, and such as had shewed no experiment of their valour.

Of certaine other great officers and magistrates in the Soldans common-wealth.

*Of the magistrate called the Nadheasse.*

**H**E was as it were the Soldans chiefe receiuer; for all the tributes and customes of the whole kingdome came through his hands, and were paid from him vnto the treasurer. Also he was customer of Cairo, by which

\*There is such an officer in the court of England called, The Master of the Revels.

which office he gained infinite summes of mony: neither could any man attaine vnto this office, vnlesse he first paid vnto the Soldan an hundred thousand Saraffi, which he recouered againe within fixe moneths following.

*Of the Chetebeeffere.*

**T**His man being the Soldans secretarie, and writing letters, and making answere on the Soldans behalfe, did (besides his secretariship) take notice and account of all the land-tributes in Egypt, and receiued the particular summes from the collectors thereof.

*Of the Muachih.*

**T**His was a secretarie also, but inferiour to the former, and yet more trustie vnto the Soldan. His office was to reuiue the letters and briefes penned by the former, and to examine whether they were agreeable vnto the Soldans minde, and also in the name of the Soldan to subscribe vnto them. But the other hath so many cunning and expert scribes about him, that the Muachih feldome cancelleth any of his writings.

*Of the Mutesib.*

**T**His mans office was to set a price vpon corne and all other victuals; which price partly according to the increase of Nilus, and partly also according to the resort of ships and other vessels out of the prouinces of Errif and Sahid he either diminished or inhaused, and vpon the offenders imposed such penalties as the Soldan thought good to appoint. Being at Cairo, I vnderstood that the said Mutesib got daily by his office about a thousand Saraffi; hauing his ministers and substitutes not onely in Cairo, but in all other cities and places of Egypt.

*Of the Amir el Cheggi.*

**T**He office of the Amir el Cheggi being of no lesse charge, then dignitie, was imposed by the Soldan vpon one of his most sufficient and wealthie Mamalukes: vnto whom was committed the conduct of the carouan, which went euery yeere from Cairo to Mecca. Which dutie he could not performe without great expences of his owne purse, for being garded with a companie of Mamalukes, he must trauell with maiestically pompe and costly diet, expecting no recompence for his exceeding charges either at the hands of the Soldan, or of the passengers which he conducted. Other offices and dignities there are, which I thinke needlesse to rehearse.

of

*Of the citie of Geza.*

**T**He citie of Geza being situate vpon the banke of Nilus, ouer against the old citie before mentioned, and being separated therefrom by the foresaide Island of Nilus, is a very populus and ciuile place, and is adorned with many sumptuous palaces built by the Mamalukes, whither they vse to retire themselues out of the throng and multitude of Cairo. Here are likewise great store of artificers and merchants, especially such as buie cattell brought from the mountaines of Barca, the drouers of which cattell being Arabians, do sell their ware in this citie vnto the merchants and butchers of Cairo, to the end they may auoide the trouble of passing ouer the riuer. The temple and other principall buildings of this citie stand vpon the shore of Nilus. On all sides of the citie there are gardens and grounds of dates. Such as come hither in the morning from Cairo to buy and sell, vse not to returne home againe till the euening. This way they trauell ouer a sandie desert vnto the Pyramides, and sepulchers of the ancient Egyptian kings, in which place they affirme the stately citie of Memphis to haue stood in times past. And albeit the way thither be very troublesome in regard of the manifold lakes and pits made by the inundation of Nilus, yet by the direction of a trustie and expert guide it may easily be trauiled.

*The pyramides.  
The citie of  
Memphis.*

*Of the towne of Muballaca.*

**T**His little towne built vpon the banke of Nilus, by the ancient Egyptians, and standing three miles from the olde citie, hath a most beautiful temple situate vpon the shore of Nilus, and diuers other stately buildings therein. It aboundeth with dates and with certaine fruites called Egyptian figs; and the inhabitants vse the very same rites and customs that are obserued by the citizens of Cairo.

*Egyptian figs.*

*Of the citie of Chanca.*

**T**He great citie of Chanca situate about fixe miles from Cairo, at the verie entrance of the desert lying in the way to mount Sinai, is replenished with most stately houses, temples, and colleges. All the fields betwene Cairo and this citie abound with great plenty of dates: but from Chanca to mount Sinai, which is an hundred and fortie miles, there are no places of habitation at all. The inhabitants are but of meane wealth: for when any carouan is to passe into Syria, hither resort a companie of people from Cairo, to provide things necessarie for their iourney, because the villages adioining yeeld hought but dates. Through this citie lie two maine roades, the one leading to Syria, and the other to Arabia. This citie hath no other water but such as remaineth in certaine chanelles after the inundation

inundation of Nilus; which chancels being broken, the water runneth forth into the plaines, and there maketh a number of small lakes, from whence it is conueighed backe by certaine sluices into the cisterns of the citie.

*Of the citie of Muhaisira.*

**T**His little citie built vpon the riuer of Nilus, miles eastward of Cairo, aboundeth greatly with the graine or seed called Sefama, and containeth sundrie milles to grinde oile out of the same seede. The inhabitants are most of them husbandmen, except a fewe that exercise trade of merchandise.

*Of the towne of Benisuaif.*

**T**His towne being situate on the west side of Nilus, is distant from Cairo 120. miles. The plaines adiacent abound exceedingly with flaxe and hempe, which is so excellent, that it is carried from thence as farre as Tunis in Barbarie. And this towne furnisheth all Egypt with flaxe, whereof they make very fine and strong cloth. The fields of the same are continually worne & diminished, and especially at this present, by the inundation of Nilus, for now their date-groundes are halfe consumed. The inhabitants for the most part are employed about their flaxe. And beyond this towne there are found Crocodiles that will eate mans flesh, as we will declare in our historie of liuing creatures.

*Of the citie of Munia.*

**V**Pon the same side of Nilus standeth the faire citie of Munia, which was built in the time of the Mahumetans by one *Chasib* a lieutenant and courtier of the Califa of Bagdet, vpon an high place. Here are most excellent grapes, and abundance of all kinde of fruite, which albeit they are carried to Cairo, yet can they not come thither fresh and newe, by reason that this citie is distant from Cairo an hundred and fower-score miles. It is adorned with most stately temples and other buildings: and here are to be seene at this present sundry ruines of the ancient Egyptian buildings. The inhabitants are rich, for they trauaile for their gaine as farre as Gaoga, a kingdome of the land of Negros.

*Of the citie of El Fium.*

**T**His ancient citie was founded by one of the *Pharaos* vpon a little branch of Nilus, and on a high ground, at the same time when the Israelites departed out of Egypt, whom the said *Pharao* greatly oppressed with making of bricke, and with other seruile occupations. In this citie they say that *Ioseph* the sonne of *Jacob* was buried, and that his bones were digged

Store of the  
graine called  
Sefama.

Most excellent  
hempe.

Crocodiles.

The place  
where *Ioseph*  
was buried.

digged vp by *Moses* and the Israelites when they departed. Fruits heere grow great plentie, and especially oliues, which are good to eate, but vnprofitable to make oile of. It is a well gouerned and populous citie, and containeth many artificers especially weauers.

*Of the citie of Mans Loth.*

**T**His great and ancient citie was built by the Egyptians, destroyed by the Romaines, and reedified by the Mahumetans, but not in so stately manner as it was first built. At this present there are found certaine huge and high pillers and porches, whereon are verses engrauen in the Egyptian toong. Neere vnto Nilus stand the ruines of a stately building, which seemeth to haue beene a temple in times past, among which ruines the citizens finde sometimes coine of siluer, sometimes of gold, and sometimes of lead, hauing on the one side hielygraphick notes, and on the other side the pictures of ancient kings. The fields adiacent being very fruitfull, are extremely scorched by the heate of the sunne, and much haunted with Crocodiles, which was the occasion (as some thinke) why the Romaines abandoned this citie. The inhabitants are men of indifferent wealth, for they exercise traffike in the land of Negros.

*Of the citie of Azioth.*

**T**His ancient city founded by the Egyptians vpon the banke of Nilus two hundred and fiftie miles from Cairo, is most admirable in regard of the hugenes, and of the varietie of old buildings and of epitaphes engrauen in Egyptian letters; although at this present the greatest part thereof lyeth desolate. When the Mahumetans were first Lords of this city it was inhabited by honorable personages, and continueth as yet famous in regard of the nobilitie and great wealth of the citizens. There are in this citie almost an hundred families of christians, & three or fower churches still remaining: and without the citie standeth a monasterie containing mo then an hundred monks, who eate neither flesh nor fish, but onely herbes, bread, and oliues. And yet haue they daintie cates without any fatte among them. This monasterie is very rich, and giueth three daies entertainment to all strangers that resort thither, for the welcomming of whom they bring vp great store of dones, of chickens, and of such like commodities.

*Of the citie of Ichmin.*

**I**Chmin being the most ancient citie in all Egypt, was built by *Ichmin* the son of \* *Misraim*, the sonne of *Chus*, which was the son of \* *Hen*, vpon the banke of Nilus next vnto Asia, and three hundred miles eastward from Cairo. This citie the Mahumetans, when they first began to vsurpe

Ff i

ouer

\* It is otherwise  
read in the x.  
chap. of Genesis,  
verse 6.  
\* Dubium.

ouer Egypt, so wasted and destroyed, for certaine causes mentioned in histories, that besides the foundations and rubbish they left nought remaining: for, transporting the pillars and principall stones vnto the other side of Nilus, they built thereof the citie called Munfia, euen as we will now declare.

*Of the citie of Munfia.*

**M**unfia therefore, founded on the other side of Nilus by the lieutenant of a certaine Califa, hath no shew of comelines or beautie, by reason that all the streetes are so narrow. And in sommer-time there riseth so much dust from the ground, that a man can hardly walke the streetes. It aboundeth notwithstanding with corne and cattell. It was once subiect vnto a certaine African prince of Barbarie, whose name was *Haoara*, and whose predecessors were princes and gouernors of *Haoara*. Which citie (they say) was giuen him in regarde of a singular benefite which hee did vnto the foresaide Dalmatian slaue that founded Cairo: howbeit I cannot be perswaded that the gouernment remained so long a time vnto that familie. But in our time *Soliman* the ninth Turkish emperour depriued them of the same gouernment.

*Of the monasterie called Georgia.*

**T**his was in times past a famous monasterie of Christians, called after the name of Saint George, and being fixe miles distant from Munfia. It was inhabited by more then two hundred monkes, who enioying large territories, possessions and reuenues, shewed themselves curteous and beneficiall vnto strangers; and the ouerplus of their yeerely reuenues was sent vnto the patriarke of Cairo, who caused the same to be distributed amongst poore Christians: but about an hundred yeeres ago, all the monkes of this monasterie died of a pestilence, which spred it selfe ouer all the land of Egypt. Whereupon the prince of Munfia compassed the saide monasterie with a wall, and erected diuers houses for artificers and merchants to dwell in. And being allured by the pleasant gardens situate amidst the beautifull hils, he himselfe went thither to inhabite: but the patriarke of the Iacobites making his mone vnto the Soldan, the Soldan caused another monasterie to be built in the same place, where in times past the old citie stode; & assigned so much allowance thereunto, as might maintaine thirty monkes.

*Of the citie of Chian.*

**T**his little citie of Chian was built in times past neere vnto Nilus by the Mahumetans, which notwithstanding is not now inhabited by them but by the christians called Iacobites, who employ themselves either in husbandrie, or in bringing vp of chickens, geese, and doves. There remaine as yet

yet certaine monasteries of Christians, that giue entertainment to strangers. But Mahumetans (besides the gouernour and his family) there are none at all.

*Of the citie of Barbanda.*

**B**arbanda founded by the Egyptians vpon Nilus, about fower hundred miles from Cairo, was laide so waste by the Romaines, that nothing but the ruines thereof remained, most of which ruines were carried vnto Asna, whereof we will forthwith intreate. Amongst the saide ruines are to be found many peeces of golde and siluer coine, and sundrie fragments of Smaragds or emralds.

*Emralds.*

*Of the citie of Cana.*

**T**he ancient citie of Cana built by the Egyptians vpon the banke of Nilus ouer against Barbanda, and enuironed with wals of funne-dried bricke, is inhabited with people of base condition, applying themselves vnto husbandrie, by which meanes the citie aboundeth with corne. Hither are the merchandise brought against the streame of Nilus, which are sent from Cairo to Mecca: for the distance from hence ouer the wildernes vnto the Red sea, is at least 120. miles, all which way there is no water at all to be founde. And at the hauen of Chossir vpon the shore of the red sea are diuers cottages whereinto the saide merchandises are vnladen. And ouer against Chossir on the side of Asia lieth Iambuh another hauen of the red sea, whereat traualers going on pilgrimage to see the tombe of Mahumet at Medina, must make their rendezuous or generall meeting. Moreouer Chana furniseth Medina and Mecca with corne, in which places they suffer great and continuall scarcitie.

*Of the citie of Asna.*

**A**Sna in times past was called Siene: which name was afterward changed by the Arabians, in whose language the worde Siene signifieth a filthie or vncleane thing. Wherefore they called it Asna, that is to say, faire and beautifull, because it standeth in a pleasant situation vpon the westerne banke of Nilus: which citie though it was brought almost to desolation by the Romaines, yet was it forepaired againe in the Mahumerans time, that the inhabitants grewe exceeding rich, both in corne, cattell, and money: for they transport their commodities partly vp the streame of Nilus, and partly ouer the deserts, into the kingdome of Nubia. Round about this citie there are to be seene diuers huge buildings, and admirable sepulchres, together with sundrie epitaphes engrauen both in Egyptian and Latine Letters.



**T**He great, ancient, and populous city of Assuan was built by the Egyptians vpon the riuer of Nilus, about fower-score miles eastward from Asna. The soile adiacent is most apt and fruitefull for corne. And the citizens are exceedingly addicted vnto the trade of merchandise, because they dwell so neere vnto the kingdome of Nubia, vpon the confines whereof standeth their citie: beyond which citie Nilus dispersing himselfe ouer the plaines through many small lakes becommeth innauigable. Also the saide citie standeth neere vnto that desert ouer which they trauell vnto the port of Suachen vpon the red sea, and it adioineth likewise vpon the frontiers of Ethiopia. And heere in sommer time the inhabitants are extremely scorched with the heate of the sunne, being of a swart or browne colour, and being mingled with the people of Nubia and Ethiopia. Heere are to be seene also many buildings of the ancient Egyptians, and most high towers, which they call in the language of that country Barba. Beyond this place there is neither citie nor habitation of any account, besides a few villages of blacke people, whose speech is compounded of the Arabian, Egyptian, and Ethiopian languages. These being subiect vnto the people called \*Bugiha, liue in the fields after the Arabian manner, being free from the Soldans iurisdiction, for there his dominions are limited.

And thus much concerning the principall cities standing along the maine chanel of Nilus: Some wherof I saw, others I entred into, and passed by the residue: but I had most certaine intelligence of them all, either by the inhabitants themselves, or by the mariners which carried me by water from Cairo to Assuan, with whom returning back vnto Chana, I trauelled thence ouer the desert vnto the red sea, ouer which sea I crossed vnto Iambuth, and Ziddem two hauen-townes of Arabia deserta, of which two townes, because they belong vnto Asia, I will not here discourse, least I should seem to transgresse the limits of Africa. But if it shall please god to vouchsafe me longer life, I purpose to describe all the regions of Asia which I haue trauelled; to wit Arabia deserta, Arabia felix, Arabia Petrea, the Asian part of Egypt, Armenia, and some part of Tartaria; all which countries I saw and passed through in the time of my youth. Likewise I will set downe my last voiajes from Fez to Constantinople, from Constantinople to Egypt, and from thence into Italie, in which Iourney I saw diuers and sundry Islands. All which my trauels I meane (by gods assistance) being returned forth of Europe into mine owne countrie, particularly to describe; decyphering first the regions of Europe and Asia which I haue seen, and thereunto annexing this my discourse of Africa; to the end that I may promote the endeouours of such as are desirous to know the state of forren countries.

Suachen.

\* Bugiha are those which in olde time were called Trogodyte.

The great trauels of Iohn Leo.

IOHN

# IOHN LEO HIS NINTH BOOKE OF

the Historie of Africa, and  
of the memorable things  
therein contained.

Wherein he entreateth of the principall riuers, and  
of the strange liuing creatures, plants, and  
minerals of the same countrey.

Of the riuer of Tensist.



He riuer of \*Tensist (that we may begin in Barbarie from the westerne part of Africa) springing forth of the mountaines of Atlas which are next vnto the citie of Hanimmei, to witte, about the east part of the territorie of Maroco, and continuing his course northwarde ouer the plaines, receiue many other riuers thereinto, and at Azafi a towne of Duccala dischargeth his streames into the maine Ocean. Into this mightie riuer of Tensist fall two other great riuers, called Siffelmel and Niffis; the one whereof springeth out of Hantera a mountaine of Maroco; and the other issuing forth of mount Atlas neere vnto Maroco, and winding it selfe along the plaines of that region, disemboueth at last into the saide mightie riuer. And albeit the riuer Tensist be for the most part of an exceeding depth, yet may it in diuers places be waded ouer, where the water reacheth vnto the stirrups of an horseman: but a footman must stripp himselfe naked to passe ouer the same. Neere vnto Maroco there is a bridge of fiftene arches builde by king Mansor vpon this riuer: which bridge is accounted one of the most curious buildings in all Africa. Three of the saide arches were demolished by Abu Dubus the last king and patriarke of Maroco, to the ende he might hinder the passage of Iacob the first Fezsan king of the Marin familie: but this attempt of his was to none effect, as it sufficiently appeered by the successe thereof.

\* Or Tensist.

Ff 3.

of

## Of the two riuers called Teseuhin.

**T**He two riuers called by this one name, springing each of them, three miles asunder, out of mount Gugideme, and running through the plaines of Hascora, exonerate themselues into the riuier called Lebich. These two riuers (as I haue said) haue one onely name; being either of them (according to the African language) called Teseut in the singular number, and in the plural Teseuhin, which signifieth listes or borders.

## Of Quadelhabid, that is to say, the riuier of seruants.

**Q**uadelhabid taking his original among the high and chill mountaines of Atlas, and running through certaine narrow and vneuen valleis, holdeth on his course by the confines of Hascora and Tedle, and then stretching northward ouer a certaine plaine, falleth at length into the riuier of Ommirabih. In Maie when the snow melteth, this riuier increaseth to some bignes.

## Of the riuier of Ommirabih.

**T**He mightie riuier of Ommirabih issuing also forth of the lofty mountaines of Atlas where the prouince of Tedle bordereth vpon the kingdome of Fez, passeth through certain plaines called Adachsun, and being afterward streitned among the narrow valleis, it runneth vnder a stately bridge built by Ibulhasen the fourth king of the Marin family: from thence trending southward it watereth the plaines situate between the regions of Duccala and Temefne, and lastly disburdeneth it selfe vnder the wals of Azamor into the maine Ocean. About the end of Maye they take great store of fishes in this riuier called by the Italians Lasche, wherewith all Azamor being sufficiently stored, they salt the said fishes and send many ships full of them into Portugall.

## Of the riuier of Buregrag.

**B**uregrag arising out of one of the mountaines of Atlas, and continuing his course by sundrie vallies, woods, and hils, proceedeth on ouer a certaine plaine, and neere vnto the townes of Sala and Rabat, being the utmost frontiers of the Fezsan kingdome, it falleth into the Ocean sea. Neither haue the two foresaid townes any other port or harbour, but within the mouth of the said riuier onely, which is so difficult to enter, that vnlesse the pilote be thoroughly acquainted with the place, he is in great hazard of running his ship vpon the shoulds: which shoulds serue instead of bulwarkes to defend either towne from the fleets of the Christians.

of

## Of the riuier of Baht.

**T**His riuier issuing forth of mount Atlas, stretcheth northward by the woods and mountaines, and running among certaine litle hils, disperseth it selfe vpon the plaines of the prouince of Azgar, and from thence it falleth into certaine fens, lakes, and moist valleies, where they take great store of eeles, and of the foresaid fishes called Lasche. The inhabitants liue vpon cattell, and fishing, and by reason of the plentie of milke, fish, and butter which they eate, they are much subiect vnto the disease called in Italian Morphia. This riuier may continually be waded ouer, except it be much increased by abundance of raine and melted snowe.

## Of the riuier of Subu.

**T**He riuier of Subu beginneth vpon mount Selilgo, standing in Cheuz, a prouince of the Fezsan kingdome. And it springeth out of a great fountaine in the midst of a vaste and solitarie woode, and runneth by diuers mountaines and hils: from whence extending vpon the plaines, it approacheth within sixe miles of Fez, diuideth in sunder the regions of Habat and Azgar, and at length about Mahmora, a place not farre from Sala, exonerateth it selfe into the Ocean sea. Into this riuier fall diuers others, two of which, namely Guarga and Aodor, spring out of the mountaines of Gumer, and the residue from the mountaines of the territorie of Teza. And although Subu be a large riuier, yet may it in sundry places be waded ouer, except in winter and the spring, when as it cannot be crossed but in certaine dangerous and small boates. The same riuier also which runneth through the citie of Fez called in the language of that countrey, The riuier of perles, entreteth into the foresaid riuier of Subu. This riuier of Subu aboundeth exceedingly with fish, and especially with the foresaid fishes called Lasche, which are there of no reckoning. The mouth thereof neere vnto the Ocean sea, being very deepe and broad, is nauigable for ships of great burthen, as the Portugals and Spaniards haue found by often experience: and were not the inhabitants so slothfull, it might vsually and commodiously be sailed vpon: yea, if the corne which is carried by the merchants of Fez ouer land through the region of Azgar, were conueighed by water vp this riuier, it might be solde at Fez for halfe the price.

## Of the riuier of Luccus.

**L**uccus issuing forth of the mountaines of Gumer, and stretching westward ouer the plaines of Habat and Azgar, passeth by the city of Casar Elcabir, and neere vnto Harais a city of Azgar vpon the borders of Habat, dischargeth it selfe into the main Ocean: in the mouth of this riuier lyeth the haven of the foresaid city, being very difficult to enter.

of

*Of the riuer of Mulullo.*

**M**ulullo arising out of mount Atlas betweene the cities of Teza, and Dubdu, runneth through the desert and barren plaines of Terrest and Tafrata, and at length exonerateth it selfe into the riuer Muluia.

*Of the riuer of Muluua.*

\* Or Muluia.

**T**he famous riuer of \*Muluua taking his originall from that part of Atlas which is situate in the region of Cheuz, about fife and twentie miles from the citie of Gherseuin, and passing ouer dishabited and drie plaines, as also amidst the deserts of Angad and of Garer, and by the foote of mount Beni Ieznaten, falleth not farre from the towne of Chafasa into the Mediterran sea. This riuer a man may wade ouer alwaies in sommer, in the mouth whereof are caught most excellent fishes.

*Of the riuer of Za.*

**T**his riuer springing out of mount Atlas runneth through a certaine plaine of the desert of Angad, whereas the kingdomes of Fez and of Telenfin confine one vpon an other: which though it be exceeding deepe, yet neuer did I see the water thereof thicke or muddie. It aboundeth with fishes, but the inhabitants being destitute of fit instruments, can not take them, neither indeed be the waters conuenient to fish vpon, because they are so cleere.

*Of the riuer of Tefne.*

**T**he small riuer of Tefne issuing forth of the mountaines bordering vpon Numidia, and continuing a northerly course ouer the desert of Angad, falleth into the Mediterran sea, about fifteene miles from Telenfin, and it affourdeth nought but a fewe small fishes.

*Of the riuer Mina.*

**T**his riuer flowing out of certaine mountaines neere vnto Tegdent, passeth through the fieldes of the citie of Batha, and thence runneth northerly into the Mediterran sea.

*Of the riuer Selef.*

**T**his great riuer falling from the mountaines of Guanferis, and descending through barren plaines to the confines of the kingdomes of Telenfin and Tenez, separateth Mezagran from Mustuganin, and then entreteth into

into the Mediterran sea: in the mouth of which riuer are caught very excellent fishes of diuers kinds.

*Of the riuer Sefsaia.*

**T**his small riuer beginning from mount Atlas, passeth ouer the plaine of Mettegia neere vnto Alger, and not farre from the ancient towne of Temendefust dischargeth it selfe into the Mediterran sea.

*Of that which is called The great riuer.*

**T**his riuer ariseth out of the mountaines adioining vpon the region of Zeb, from whence running along, it disembouqueth into the Mediterran sea about three miles from Bugia. It ouerfloweth not but in rainie and snowie weather: neither vse the people of Bugia to fish therein, hauing the sea so neere them.

*Of the riuer called Sufmare.*

**I**t springeth out of the mountaines bordering vpon mount Auras, and passeth on through the barren fields vnto the territorie of the citie Constantina, and gliding along by the borders thereof, it receiueth a small riuer, and so holding a Northerly course it falleth into the Mediterran sea about the same place where it separateth the fields of Chollo from the fieldes of the castle called Iegel.

*Of the riuer Iadog.*

**T**his small riuer issuing forth of the mountaines neere Constantina, and stretching by the same mountaines towards the east, disburdeneth it selfe into the sea not farre from the citie of Bona.

*Of the riuer called Guadilbarbar.*

**I**t proceedeth out of certaine mountaines adioining vpon the fieldes of the citie called Vrbs, and gliding by the hils and mountaines, it runneth in such a crooked channell, that such as trauell from Bona to Tunis, must crosse ouer it without either boates or bridges aboue twentie times. And so at length it falleth into the sea not farre from the forsaken port of Tabraca, and about fifteene miles from the citie of Bege.

*Of the riuer of Megerada.*

**T**he mightie riuer of Megerada springing forth of the mountaines neere vnto the citie Tebessa, vpon the borders of the prouince of Zeb, continueth a northerly course, vntill at a place called Gharel Meleh,

Melch, fortie miles distant from Tunis it exonerateth it selfe into the Mediterranean sea. In rainie weather it so increaseth, that trauellers, because there are neither boates nor bridges, are constrained to staie two or three daies by the riuers side till it be decreased, especially within fixe miles of Tunis. And hereby you may see how the Africans of these times degenerate both in wit and courage from the ancient Africans, who made the people of Rome to tremble so often at their valour.

*Of the riuier of Capis.*

A riuier of hot  
and salt water.

**I**T proceedeth from a certaine southerne desert, and passing through sandie plaines, falleth into the sea by a towne of that very name. The water thereof is salt, and so hot, that whosoever listeth to drinke of it, must set it a cooling for the space of an hower. Thus much concerning the principall riuers of Barbarie: let vs now proceede on to describe the Numidian riuers.

*Of the riuers of Numidia; and first of the riuier called Sus.*

\* Or Gurt-  
guessen

**T**He great riuier of Sus flowing out of the mountaines of Atlas, that separate the two prouinces of Hea and Sus in sunder, runneth southward among the saide mountaines, stretchyng into the fields of the foresaid region, and from thence trending westward vnto a place called \* Gurtuessen, where it dischargeth it selfe into the maine Ocean. In winter time it mightily ouerfloweth, but in sommer it is verie shallow.

*Of the riuier of Darba.*

**T**His riuier taking his originall from mount Atlas about the confines of Hascora, passeth southward to the prouince called Darba: from whence proceeding through the deserts, it is dispersed among certaine fieldes and pastures, where because of the abundance of grasse, the Arabians feede their camels. In sommer it is so dried vp, that a man shall not wet his shooes in going ouer it: but it so increaseth in winter, that it cannot be passed ouer in boats. And by extreme heate of the sunne the waters thereof prooue bitter.

*Of the riuier of Ziz.*

**T**His riuier springing out of the mountaines of Atlas inhabited by the people called Zanaga, and running along by many other mountaines and by the city of Gherseluin, holdeth on his course through the fields of Cheneg, Metgara, and Reteb, and entreth the territorie of the city Segelmesse: from whence it proceedeth by the desert castle of Sugaihila, and beyond the said castle falleth into a lake amidst the sandie deserts, where  
no

no inhabitants are to be found, whither notwithstanding the Arabian hunters vsually resort, for that they finde great store of game there.

*Of the riuier of Ghir.*

**T**He riuier of Ghir issuing also forth of mount Atlas, stretcheth southward by certaine deserts, and then passing through the region of Benigumi, transformeth it selfe likewise into a lake in the very midst of the deserts.

Whereas in the beginning of this my discourse, intreating of the diuision of Africa, I described the riuier called by *Ptolemy* Niger, it would here be superfluous to make any repetition thereof: wherefore let vs now proceede vnto the description of Nilus.

*Of the mightie riuier of Nilus.*



**T**HE course of this riuier is in very deed most admirable, and the creatures therein contained are exceeding strange, as namely sea-horses, sea-oxen, crocodiles, and other such monstrous and cruel beasts, (as we will afterward declare) which were not so hurtfull either in the ancient times of the Egyptians or of the Romaines, as they are at this present: but they became more dangerous euer since the Mahumetans were lords of Egypt. *Mesludi* in his treatise of the memorable thinges of his time, reporteth that when *Humeth* the sonne of *Thaulon* was lieutenant of Egypt vnder *Gihfare Mutawichil* the Califa of Bagdet, namely in the yeere of the Hegeira 270. there was a certaine leaden image about the bignes of a crocodile found among the ruines of an old Egyptia temple, which in regard of the Hieroglyphick characters & constellations engrauen thereon, serued instead of an inchantment against all crocodiles; but so soone as the saide lieutenant caused it to be broken in peeces, the crocodiles began then to inuade men, and to doe much mischief. Howbeit what the reason should be, why the crocodiles betwene Cairo and the Mediterran sea are harmelesse, and those about Cairo towards the maine land, should deuoure and kill so many persons, it goeth beyond my skill to determine. But, to retorne vnto the description of Nilus, it increaseth (as we haue saide) for the space of fortie daies, beginning from the seuenteenth of Iune; and it continueth iust so long time in decreasing. For whereas in the higher Ethiopia it raineth most abundantly about the beginning of May, the course and inundation of the water is hindred all the moneth of May, & some part of Iune, before it can attaine vnto the plaine countrey of Egypt. Concerning the originall fountaine of this riuier, there are manifold opinions, and all of them vncertaine. Some there are which affirme the same to spring out of the mountaines, called by themselves, The mountaines of the moone; and others say that it beginneth vpon certaine plaines

Sundry opinions  
concerning  
Nilus.



plaines situate beneath the foote of the saide mountaines, and issueth out of sundrie fountaines, being a great way distant one from another. Howbeit the former of these two auouch, that Nilus with great violence falleth down from the saide mountaines into certaine deepe caues vnder the ground, and commeth forth againe at the foresaide fountaines. Both of which opinions are false: for neuer did any man as yet see where Nilus taketh his originall. The Ethiopian merchants which resort for traffike vnto the citie of Dancala, affirme that Nilus towards the south is enlarged into such a mightie lake, that no man can perceiue which way the course thereof trendeth: and that afterward being diuided into manifold branches running in seuerall chanelles, and stretching themselves east and west, it hindereth the passage of traueilers, so that they cannot compasse those intricate windings and turnings. Likewise diuers Ethiopians inhabiting vpon the plaines in manner of the Arabians, say that many of them traueiling fise hundred miles southward to seeke their camels which were strayed away in the heate of their lust, found Nilus to be in all places alike, that is to say, dispersed into manifolde armes and lakes, and that they discovered fundry desert and barren mountaines, where the foresaide *Mesbudi* affirmeth emraulds to be found: which seemeth more probable then that which the same author affirmeth concerning sauage men, which wander vp and downe like wilde goates, and feede vpon the grasse of the deserts in manner of beasts. But if I recorded all the fables which our writers report concerning Nilus, I shoulde seeme ouer tedious vnto the Reader.

*Of the strange beasts and other living creatures of Africa.*



Y purpose is not in this discourse to make a cōplete history of all the liuing creatures in Africa, but only of such as are either not to be founde in Europe, or such as differ in any respect from those that are founde: And heere I intend to describe in order certaine beasts, fishes, and foules, omitting many things reported by *Plinie*, who was doubtlesse a man of rare and singular learning, notwithstanding by the default and negligence of certaine authors which wrote before him, he erred a little in some small matters concerning Africa: howbeit a little blemish ought not quite to disgrace all the beautie of a faire and amiable bodie.

*Of the Elephant.*

THIS wittie beast keepeth in the woods, & is found in great numbers in the forrests of the land of Negros. They vse to go many in one cōpany; and if they chance to meet with any man, they either shun him, or giue place vnto him. But if the Elephant intendeth to hurt any man, he casteth him on the ground with his long snout or trunk, & neuer ceaseth trampling

pling vpon him till he be dead. And although it be a mightie and fierce beast, yet are there great store of them caught by the Ethiopian hunters in manner following. These hunters being acquainted with the woodes and thickets where they keepe, vse to make among the trees a rounde hedge of strong boughes and raftes, leauing a space open on the one side therof, and likewise a doore standing vpon the plaine grounde which may bee lift vp with ropes, wherewith they can easily stoppe the said open place or passage. The elephant therefore comming to take his rest vnder the shady boughes, entreth the hedge or inclosure, where the hunters by drawing the saide rope and fastening the doore hauing imprisoned him, descend downe from the trees, and kill him with their arrowes, to the end they may get his teeth and make sale of them. But if the elephant chanceth to breake through the hedge, he murdereth as many men as he can finde. In Ethiopia the higher, and India, they haue other deuises to take the elephant, which least I shoulde seeme ouer-tedious, I passe ouer in silence.

*Of the beast called Giraffa.*

THIS beast is so sauage and wilde, that it is a very rare matter to see any of them: for they hide themselves among the deserts and woodes, where no other beasts vse to come; and so soone as one of them espieth a man, it flieth forthwith, though not very swiftly. It is headed like a camell, eared like an oxe, and footed like a \* : neither are any taken by hunters, but while they are very yoong.

\* Here is a word wanting in the originall.

*Of the Camell.*

C Amells are gentle and domesticall beasts, and are found in Africa in great numbers, especially in the deserts of Libya, Numidia, and Barbaria. And these the Arabians esteeme to be their principall possessions and riches: so that speaking of the wealth of any of their princes or gouernors, he hath (say they) so many thousand camels, and not so manie thousand ducates. Moreouer the Arabians that possesse camels, liue like lords and potentates in great libertie, because they can remaine with their camels in barren deserts, whither no kings nor princes can bring armies to subdue them. These kindes of beasts are to be seene in \* all parts of the worlde, to wit, in Asia, Africa, and Europe. And they are vsed in Asia by the Tartars, the Curdians, the Dalemians, and the Turcomans. In Europe the Turkes vse them to carrie burthens vpon, as likewise do all the Arabians in Africa, and the inhabitants of the Lybian deserts; yea kings in their armies vse camels also, to conueigh their victuals and carriages: howbeit the African camels farre excell them of Asia; for trauiailing fortie or fiftie daies together, without any prouender at all, they are vnladen in the euening, and turned loose into the next fieldes, where they feede vpon grasse, brambles, and the boughes of trees; which hardnes the camels of Asia cannot endure

\* In all parts of the world which the author at that time knew.

The African camels are the best.

dure, but when they set forth any iourney, they must be well pampered and full of flesh. Experience hath taught, that our camels hauing trauailed laden fiftie daies together without any prouender; haue so wasted, first the flesh of their bunches, secondly of their bellies, and lastly of their hips, that they haue scarce beene able to carrie the weight of 100. pounds. But the merchants of Asia giue their camels prouender, halfe of them being laden with wares, and the other halfe with prouender, and so their whole carouan of camels goeth forth and returneth home laden: by which meanes they keepe them in good plight, and reape double gaines by their labour. Contrariwise the African merchants trauailing with merchandise into Ethiopia, because they returne emptie, and bring backe with them things of no great weight, so soone as they arriue with their leane and galled camels in Ethiopia, they sell them halfe for nought vnto the inhabitants of the deserts. And they that returne into Barbarie or Numidia, need very fewe camels; namely for themselves to ride vpon, for to carrie their victuals, their money, and other light commodities. Of camels there are three kinds; whereof the first being called Hugiun are grosse, and of a tall stature, and most fit to carrie burthens, but ere fower yeeres end they grow vnprofitable: after which time euery camell but of meane stature will carrie a thousand pounds of Italian weight. When any of the saide camels is to be laden, being beaten vpon his knees and necke with a wand, he kneeleth downe, and when he feeleth his load sufficient, he riseth vp againe. And the Africans vse to gelde their camels which they keepe for the burthen, putting but one male camell among ten femals. The second kinde of camels called Becheti, and hauing a double bunch, are fit both to carrie burthens, and to ride vpon: and these are bred onely in Asia. The thirde kinde called Raguahill, are camels of a slender and low stature, which albeit they are vnfit to carry burthens, yet do they so excell the two other kinds in swiftnes, that in the space of one day they will trauell an hundred miles, and will so continue ouer the deserts for eight or ten daies together with very little prouender: and these doe the principal Arabians of Numidia and the Moores of Libya vsually ride vpon. When the king of Tombuto is desirous to sende any message of importance vnto the Numidian merchants with great celeritie, his post or messenger riding vpon one of these camels, will runne from Tombuto to Darha or Segelmesse, being nine hundred miles distant, in the space of eight daies at the farthest: but such as trauell must be expert in the way through the deserts, neither will they demaund lesse then fife hundred ducats for euery iourney. The saide camels about the beginning of the spring inclining to their lust and vnerie, do not onely hurt one another, but also will deadly wound such persons as haue done them any iniury in times past, not forgetting light and easie stripes: and whomsoever they lay holde on with their teeth, they lift him vp on high, and cast him downe againe, trampling vpon him with their feete, and in this madde moode they continue fortie daies together. Neither are they so patient of hunger as of thirst; for they will

Three kinds  
of camels.

Camels of a  
wonderfull  
swiftnes, other-  
wise called  
Dromedaries.

will abstaine from drinke, without any inconuenience, for fiftene daies together: and if their guides water them once in three daies, they doe them great hurt, for they are not vsually watred but once in fife or nine daies, or at an vrgent necessitie, once in fiftene daies. Moreouer the saide camels are of a gentle disposition, and are indured as it were with a kinde of humane reason: for when as betwene Ethiopia and Barbarie they haue a daies iourney to trauell more then their woont, their masters cannot driue them on, being so tired, with whips, but are faine to sing certaine songs vnto them; wherewith being exceedingly delighted, they performe their iourney with such swiftnes, that their saide masters are scarce able to follow them. At my being in Cairo I sawe a camell dance; which arte of dancing howe he learned of his master I will heere in fewe words report. They take a yong camell, and put him for halfe an hower together into a place like a bath-stoue prepared for the same purpose, the floore whereof is het with fire: then play they without vpon a drum, whereat the camell not so much in regard of the noyse, as of the hot pauement which offendeth his feete, listerth vp one legge after another in maner of a dance, and hauing beene accustomed vnto this exercise for the space of a yeere or ten moneths, they then present him vnto the publike view of the people, when as hearing the noyse of a drum, and remembring the time when he trode vpon the hot floore, he presently falleth a dancing and leaping: and so, vs being turned into a kind of nature, he perpetually obserueth the same custome. I could here report other matters concerning the same beast, which for breuities sake I omit.

The camels  
great abstinence  
from drinke.

How the Ca-  
mels of Cairo  
learne to dance.

#### Of the horse of Barbarie.

His name is giuen vnto the Barbarie horses throughout Italy and all Europe, because they come forth of Barbarie, and are a kinde of horses that are bred in those regions; but they which so thinke are deceiued: for the horses of Barbarie differ not in any respect from other horses: but horses of the same swiftnes & agilitie are in the Arabian toong called throughout all Egypt, Syria, Asia, Arabia Felix, and Deserta, by the name of Arabian horses: and the Historiographers affirme, that this kinde of wilde horses ranging vp and downe the Arabian deserts, and being broken and managed by the Arabians, ever since the time of *Ismael*, haue so exceedingly multiplied and increased, that they haue replenished the most part of Africa: which opinion sauoureth of truth; for euen at this present there are great store of wilde horses founde both in the African and Arabian deserts. And I my selfe sawe in the Numidian desert a wilde colte of a white colour, and hauing a curled maine. The most certaine triall of these horses is when they can ouertake the beast called Lant or the Ostrich in a race: which if they be able to performe, they are esteemed woorth a thousand ducats or an hundred camels; Howbeit very fewe of these horses are brought vp in Barbarie, but the Arabians that inhabite the deserts, and the people of Libya bring vp great numbers of them, vsing them not for trauell or warfare, but onely

*Moses fedde  
with camels  
milke.*

for hunting, neither do they giue them any other meate but the milke of camels, and that twice euery day and night, to the end they may keepe them nimble, liuely, and of spare flesh; and in the time of grasse they suffer them to feede in pastures, but then they ride not vpon them. But those that the princes of Barbarie bring vp, are not of such swiftnes, but being fedde with prouender, are more beautifull and comely to the eie; and these they vse vpon an vrgent necessitie, when they would escape the danger of their enemies.

*Of the wilde horse.*

**T**He wilde horse is one of those beasts that come seldome in sight. The Arabians of the deserts take the wilde horse and eate him, saying that the yoonger the horse be, the sweeter is his flesh: but he will hardly be taken either with horses or dogs. In the waters where this beast keepeth they lay certaine snares, couering them ouer with sand, wherein his foote being caught he is intangled and slaine.

*Of the beast called Lam or Dant.*

**T**His beast in shape resembleth an ox, sauing that he hath smaller legs and comelier horns. His haire is white, and his hoofs are as blacke as iet, and he is so exceeding swift, that no beast can ouertake him, but onely the Barbary horse, as is before said. He is easlier caught in sommer then in winter, because that in regard of the extreme fretting heat of the sand his hoofs are then strained and set awry, by which meanes his swiftnes is abated, like as the swiftnes of staggess & roe-deer. Of the hide of this beast are made shields and targets of great defence, which will not be pierced but onely with the forcible shot of a bullet; but they are sold at an extreame price.

*Targets made  
of a skin.*

*Of the wilde ox.*

**I**t resembleth the tame ox, saue that it is lesse in stature, being of a gray or ashe-colour, and of great swiftnes. It haunteth either the deserts, or the confines of the deserts. And the flesh thereof (they say) is very sauiory.

*Of the wild asse.*

**T**His beast also being found either in the deserts or vpon the borders thereof, is of an ashe-colour. In swiftnes they are surpassed onely by the Barbary horses, and when they see a man, they bray out a loude kicking and wincing with their heeles, and standing stone-still, till one approacheth so near them, that he may touch them with his hand, & then they betake themselves to flight. By the Arabians of the deserts they are caught with snares, and other engines. They goe in companies either when they feede

feede or water themselves. Their flesh is hot and vsfauorie, and hath a wilde tast: but being set a cooling two dayes after it is sodden, it becommeth very sauiory and pleasant.

*Of the oxen vpon the mountaines of Africa.*

**A**ll the oxen vpon the mountaines of Africa being tame cattell are of so meane a stature, that in comparison of other oxen they seeme to be but heifers of two yeeres old: but the mountainers, vsing them to the plough, say that they are strong and will indure much labour.

*Of the beast called Adimmain.*

**I**t is a tame beast, beeing shaped like a ramme, and of the stature of an asse, and hauing long and dangle eares. The Libyans vse these beasts instead of kine, and make of their milke great store of cheefe and butter. They haue some wooll, though it be but short. I my selfe vpon a time being merily disposed, roade a quarter of a mile vpon the backe of one of these beasts. Very many of them there are in the deserts of Libya, and but few in other places: and it is a rare matter to see one of them in the Numidian fields.

*Of the African Ramme.*

**T**here is no difference betweene these rammes of Africa and others, saue onely in their tails, which are of a great thicknes, being by so much the grosser, by how much they are more fatte, so that some of their tails waigh tenne, and other twentie pounds a peece, and they become fatte of their owne naturall inclination: but in Egypt there are diuers that feede them fatte with bran and barley, vntill their tails growe so bigge that they cannot remooue themselves from place to place: inso much that those which take charge of them are faine to binde little carts vnder their tails, to the end they may haue strength to walke. I my selfe sawe at a citie in Egypt called Asior, and standing vpon Nilus, about an hundred and fiftie miles from Cairo, one of the saide rams tails that weighed fower-score pounds, and others affirmed that they had seene one of those tails of an hundred and fiftie pounds weight. All the fatte therefore of this beast consisteth in his taile; neither is there any of them to be founde but onely in Tunis and in Egypt.

*Of the Lyon.*

**T**He Lyon is a most fierce and cruell beast, being hurtfull vnto all other beasts, and excelling them both in strength, courage, and crueltie, neither is he onely a deuourer of beasts, but of men also. In some places one Lyon will boldly encounter two hundred horsemen. They range without

all feare among the flocks and droues of cattell, and whatſoeuer beaſt they can lay holde on, they cary it into the next woode vnto their whelpes; yea ſome Lyons there are (as I haue before ſaid) that will vanquiſh and kill ſiue or fixe horſemen in one companie. Howbeit ſuch Lyons as liue vpon the colde mountaines are not ſo outrageous and cruell: but the hotter the places be where they keepe, the more rauinous and bolde are they, as namely vpon the frontiers of Temefna, and of the kingdome of Fez, in the deſert of Angad neere Telenſin, and betweene the citie of Bona and Tunis, all which are accounted the moſt famous and fierce Lyons in all Africa. In the ſpring, while they are giuen to luſt and venerie, they haue moſt fierce and bloudie conflicts one with an other, eight or twelue Lions following after one Lyonneſſe. I haue heard many both men and women report, that if a woman chanceth to meete with a Lyon, and ſheweth him her priuie parts, he will with crying and roaringe, caſt his eies vpon the grounde and ſo depart. Beleeue it they that liſt. But this I am well aſſured of, that whatſoeuer a Lyon getteth in his pawes, though it be a camell, he will carrie it away. I my ſelfe was twiſe in great hazard to haue bene deuoured of Lyons, but by the goodnes of God I eſcaped them.

*Of the Leopard.*

THEſe beaſts liuing in the woods of Barbarie, will not for all their great ſtrength and crueltie hurt any man, vnleſſe it be very ſeldome, when as they meete with a man in a narrow paſſage, and cannot ſhun him, or when they are checked and prouoked vnto furie: for then they will flie vpon a man, laying holde vpon his viſage with their talents, and plucking off ſo much fleſh as they can catch, inſomuch that ſometimes they will cruſh his braines in peeces. They inuade not any flocks or droues of tame cattell, but are at deadly feude with dogs, whom they will kill and deuoure. The mountainerſ of the region of Conſtatina hunt them on horſebacke, ſtopping all paſſages, where they might eſcape. The Leopard ranging vp and downe, and finding euery place ſo beſette with horſemen that he cannot get away, windeth and turneth himſelfe on all ſides, and ſo becommeth a ſiege marke for the hunters to diſcharge their darts and arrowes vpon. But if the Leopard chanceth to eſcape, that man that lets him paſſe, is bounde by an vſuall cuſtome to inuite the reſidue of the hunters vnto a banquet.

*Of the beaſt called Dabuh.*

THIS beaſt called by the Arabians Dabuh, and by the Africans Ieſef, in bignes and ſhape reſembleth a wolfe, ſauing that his legges and feete are like to the legs and feete of a man. It is not hurtful vnto any other beaſt, but will rake the carkeiſes of men out of their graues, and will deuour them, being otherwiſe an abieſt and ſilly creature. The hunters being acquainted with

with his denne, come before it ſinging and playing vpon a drum, by which melodie being allured forth, his legs are intrapped in a ſtrong rope, and ſo he is drawne out and ſlaine.

*Of the ciuet-Cat.*

THEſe Cattes are naturally wilde, and are found in the woods of Ethiopia. The merchants taking their yoong whelps or kittes, feede them with milke, branne, and fleſh, and keepe them in cages or grates. But their odoriferous excrement (which is nought elſe but their ſweat) they gather twiſe or thrice euery day in manner following: firſt they driue them vp and downe the grate with a wand, till they ſweate, and then they take the ſaide ſweate from vnder their flanks, their ſhoulders, their necks, and their tailles: which excrement of ſweate is commonly called ciuet.

*The manner of gathering ciuet.*

*Of the Ape.*

OF Apes there are diuers and ſundry kindes, thoſe which haue tailles, being called in the African toong Monne, and thoſe which haue none, Babuini. They are found in the woods of Mauritania, and vpon the mountaines of Bugia and Conſtantina. They repreſent the ſhape of man, not onely in their feete and hands, but alſo in their viſages, and are naturally indued with woonderfull witte and ſubtiltie. They liue vpon graſſe and corne, and go in great companies to feede in the corne fieldes, and one of their companie which ſtandeth centinell or keepeth watch and ward vpon the borders, when he eſpieth the husbandman comming, he crieth out and giueth as it were an alarme to his fellowes, who euery one of them flee immediately into the next woods, and betake themſelues to the trees. Theſe apes carrie their whelpes vpon their ſhoulders, and will leape with them in that ſort from one tree to another. Such of them as are taught, will do woonderfull feates, but they are angrie and curſt, notwithstanding they will ſoone be appeaſed.

*Of the Conies of Africa.*

THEre are great ſtore of wilde Conies in Mauritania, and vpon the mountaines of Gamera; which albeit they are accounted wilde, yet in my opinion they ſeeme tame, for their fleſh differeth neither in taſte nor colour from the fleſh of tame conies.

*Of the ſtrange fiſhes of Africa and firſt of the*

*fiſh called Ambara.*

THE fiſh called Ambara, being of a monſtrous ſhape and bignes, is neuer ſeen but when it is caſt vp dead vpon the ſea ſhore: and ſome of theſe fiſhes there are which containe twentie ſiue cubites in length.

The



The head of this fish is as hard as a stone. The inhabitants of the Ocean sea coast affirme that this fish casteth forth Amber; but whether the said Amber be the sperma or the excrement therof, they cannot well determine. Howsoever it be, the fish may in regard of the hugenes be called a whale.

*Of the sea-horse.*

**T**His creature is commonly found in the riuers of Niger and Nilus. In shape it resembleneth an horse, and in stature an asse, but it is altogether destitute of haire. It liueth both in the water and vpon the lande, and swimmeth to the shore in the night season. Barkes and botes laden with wares and sayling downe the riuier of Niger are greatly endangered by this sea-horse, for oftentimes he ouerwhelmeth and sinketh them.

*Of the sea-oxe.*

**T**He sea-oxe being couered with an exceeding hard skinne is shaped in all respects like vnto the land-oxe; saue that in bignes it exceedeth not a calfe of fixe moneths olde. It is found in both the riuers of Niger and of Nilus, and being taken by fishers, is kept a long time aliue out of the water. I my selfe sawe one at Cairo led vp and downe by the neck in a chaine, which (they say) was taken at the city of Asna standing vpon the bank of Nilus, about foure hundred miles from Cairo.

*Of the Tortoise.*

**T**His might benumbed among the land-creatures, because it liueth for the most part in the deserts. In the Libyan deserts are found verie many as big as a tunne. And Bicri the Cosmographer in his booke of the regions and Iourneis of Africa reporteth, that a certaine man being weary of traouelling, ascended to his thinking, vpon an high stone lying in the desert, to the end he might free himselfe from the danger of serpents and venomous beasts; who hauing slept soundly thereupon all night found himselfe in the morning remooued three miles from the place where he first lay downe, and thereby vnderstood that it was not a stone but a tortoise whereon he reposed himselfe, which lying still all the day long creepeth for foode in the night season, but so slowly, that her pace can hardly be perceiued. I my selfe haue seen some of these tortoises, as big as a barrell, but neuer any so huge as the last before mentioned. The flesh of a tortoise not aboue seuen yeres old being eaten seuen daies together is said to be a perfect medicine against the leprosie.

*A medicine for the leprosie.*

*Of the Crocodile.*

**T**His cruell and noisome beast commonly frequenteth the riuers of Niger and Nilus, and containeth in length twelue cubites and aboue, the taile thereof being as long as the whole bodie besides, albeit there are but fewe of so huge a bignes. It goeth vpon fower feete like a Lizard, neither is it aboue a cubite and an halfe high. The taile of this beast is full of knots, and the skin thereof is so exceeding hard, that no crossebowe will enter it. Some praie vpon fishes onely, but others vpon beastes and men. Which lurking about the bankes of the riuier, do craftily lay waite for men and beastes that come the same way, about whom suddenly winding their tails, they draw them into the water, and there deuour them. Howbeit some of them are not so cruell by nature: for if they were, no inhabitants could liue neere vnto the riuers of Nilus and Niger. In eating they mooue the vpper iawe onely, their neather iawe being ioined vnto their breast-bone. Not many yeeres sithens, passing vp the riuier of Nilus towards the citie of Cana, standing in the vpper part of Egypt, fower hundred miles from Cairo, on a certaine night whilest wee were in the midst of our iourney, the moone being ouerthadowed with clouds, the marriners and passengers all fast a sleepe, and the barke vnder sailes, I my selfe studying by candle-light in my cabben, was called vpon by a deuout olde man in the barke, who bestowed the same night in watching and praier, and saide vnto me, call (I praie you) some of your company, who may helpe me to drawe vppe this peece of woode floating vpon the water, which will serue to morrow for the dressing of our dinner. My selfe sir (quoth I) will come and helpe you, rather then wake any of our company in the dead of the night. Nay (quoth the old man) I will trie whether I be able to drawe it vp alone or no. And so when the barke was neere vnto the woode, as he supposed, holding a rope in his hande to cast into the water, he was sodainly intangled with a crocodiles long taile, and was in a moment drawn vnder the water. Whereupon I making a shoute, all the people in the barke arose, and striking sailes wee staide for the space of an hower, diuers in the meane time leaping into the water to seeke the man, but altogether in vaine: and therefore all of them affirmed that he was caught by a crocodile. As we sailed farther we sawe great numbers of crocodiles vpon the bankes of Islands in the midst of Nilus lie beaking them in the sunne with their iawes wide open, whereinto certaine little birdes about the bignes of a thrush entring, came flying forth againe presently after. The occasion whereof was tolde me to be this: The crocodiles by reason of their continuall deuouring of beastes and fishes, haue certaine peeces of flesh sticking fast betweene their forked teeth, which flesh being putrified, breedeth a kind of wormes wherewith they are cruelly tormented. Wherefore the said birds flying about, and seeing the wormes, enter into the crocodiles iawes, to satisfie their hunger therewith. But the crocodile

*The craft of the Crocodile in taking both men and beastes.*

*Little birds flying into the crocodiles mouth to picke wormes from betweene their teeth.*

perceiuing

perceiuing himfelfe freed from the wormes of his teeth, offereth to fhut his mouth, and to deuour the little birde that did him fo good a turne, but being hindred from his vngratefull attempt by a pricke which groweth vpon the birds head, he is constrained to open his iawes and to let her depart. The fhee crocodile laying egges vpon the shore, couereth them with fand; and fo foone as the yoong crocodiles are hatched, they crawle into the riuier. Thofe crocodiles that forsake the riuier and haunt the deserts become venomous; but fuch as continue in Nilus, are deftitute of poifon. In Egypt there are many that eate the flefh of the crocodile, and affirme it to be of an excellent tafte. His larde or greafe is folde very deere at Cairo, and is faide to be very medicinable for olde and cankered woundes. They take the crocodile in manner following; The fifhers binding a ftrong and large rope vnto fome tree or poftte ftanding for the nonce vpon the banke of Nilus, faften vnto the end thereof an iron hooke of a cubite long, and about the thickefne of a mans finger, and vpon the hooke they hang a ramme or a goate, by the bleating noife whereof the crocodile being allured, commeth forth of the water, and swalloweth vp both the baite and the hooke, wherewithal feeling himfelfe inwardly wounded, he ftugleth mightily, & beateth the ground, the fifhers in the meane time pulling and flacking the rope, till the crocodile falleth down vanquifhed & dead: then they thruft him in with certaine dartes and iauelins vnder the fhoulders and flanks where his skin is moft tender, and fo make a quicke difpatch of him. His backe is fo harde and thicke, that an harquebuse or caliuier will fcarce pierce it. Of thefe beafts I fawe aboue three hundred heads placed vpon the wals of Cana, with their iawes wide open, being of fo monftrous and incredible a bignes, that they were fufficient to haue fwallowed vp a whole cowe at once; and their teeth were great and sharpe. The Egyptian fifhers vfe to cut off the heads of crocodiles, and to fet them vpon the wals of their cities, and fo doe hunters vfe the heads of wilde beafts.

The manner of  
taking the cro-  
codile.

#### Of the dragon.

**I**N the caues of Atlas are founde many huge and monftrous dragons, which are heauie, and of a flowe motion, bicaufe the midft of their body is groffe, but their necks and tailes are flender. They are moft venomous creatures, infomuch that whofoeuer is bitten or touched by them, his flefh prefently waxeth foft & weak, neither can he by any meane escape death.

#### Of the Hydra.

**T**His ferpent being fhort in proportion of body, and hauing a flender taile and necke, liueth in the Libyan deserts. The poifon thereof is moft deadly, fo that if a man be bitten by this beaft, he hath none other remedie, but to cut off the wounded part, before the poifon difperfe into the other members.

of

#### Of the creature called Dub.

**T**His creature liuing alfo in the deserts, reſembleth in ſhape a Lizzard, ſauing that it is ſomewhat bigger, and containeth in length a cubite, and in breadth fower fingers. It drinketh no water at all, and if a man poure any water into the mouth thereof, it prefently dieth. It laieth egges in manner of a tortoiſe, and is deftitute of poifon. The Arabians take it in the deserts: and I my ſelfe cut the throate of one which I tooke, but it bled a very little. Being flaid and roſted, it taſteth ſomewhat like a frogge. In ſwiftneſſe it is comparable to a Lizzard, and being hunted, if it chanceth to thruſt the head into an hole, it can by no force be drawne out, except the hole be digged wider by the hunters. Hauing bene flaine three daies together, and then being put to the fire, it ſtirreth it ſelfe as if it were newelie dead.

#### Of the Guaral.

**T**His beaſt is like vnto the former, ſauing that it is ſomewhat bigger, and hath poifon both in the head and taile, which two parts being cut off, the Arabians will eate it, notwithstanding it be of a deformed ſhape and vgly colour, in which reſpects I loathed alwaies to eate the fleſh thereof.

#### Of the Camelion.

**T**He camelion being of the ſhape and bigneſſe of a lizzard, is a deformed, crooked, and leane creature, hauing a long and flender rayle like a mouſe, and being of a flowe pace. It is nourifhed by the element of ayer, and the ſun-beames, at the riſing wherof it gapeth, and turneth it ſelfe vp and downe. It changeth the colour according to the varietie of places where it commeth, being ſometimes black and ſometimes greene, as I my ſelfe haue ſeen it. It is at great enmity with venomous ſerpents, for when it ſeeth any lie ſleeping vnder a tree, it prefently climeth vp the ſame tree, and looking downe vpon the ſerpents head, it voideth out of the mouth as it were, a long threede of ſpittle, with a round drop like a perle hanging at the end, which drop falling wrong, the camelion changeth his place, till it may light directly vpon the ſerpents head, by the vertue wherof he prefently dyeth. Our African writers haue reported many things concerning the properties and ſecret qualities of this beaſt, which at this preſent I do not wel remember.

How the camelion  
killeth the  
ſerpent.

#### Of the Oſtrich.

**S**omewhat we will here ſay concerning the ſtrange birdes and fowles of Africa, and firſt of the oſtriche, which in ſhape reſembleth a goole, but that the neck and legges are ſomewhat longer, ſo that ſome of them exceede

exceede the length of two cubites. The body of this birde is large, and the wings therof are full of great feathers both white and black, which wings and feathers being vnfitte to fly withall, do helpe the ostriche, with the motion of her traine, to runne a swifte pace. This fowle liueth in dry deserts, and layeth to the number of ten or twelue egges in the sandes, which being about the bignes of great bullets, waigh fifteene pounds a piece; but the ostrich is offso weake a memorie, that shee presently forgetteth the place where her egges were laide. And afterward the same, or some other ostriche-henne finding the said egges by chance, hatcheth and fosterech them as if they were certainly her owne: the chickens are no sooner crept out of the shell, but they prowle vp and downe the deserts for their foode: and before their feathers be growne, they are so swift, that a man shall hardly ouertake them. The ostriche is a silly and deafe creature, feeding vpon any thing which it findeth, be it as hard and vndigestable as yron. The flesh especially of their legges, is of a flymie and strong tast: and yet the Numidians vse it for foode, for they take yong ostriches and set them vp a fattening. The ostriches wander vp and downe the deserts in orderly troupes, so that a far off a man would take them to bee so many horsemen, which illusion hath often dismaied whole carouans. Being in Numidia I my selfe ate of the ostriches flesh, which seemed to haue not altogether an vnslauory tast.

*Of the Eagle.*

**O**F eagles there are diuers kindes, according to their naturall properties, the proportion of their bodies, or the diuersitie of their colours: and the greatest kinde of eagles are called in the Arabian toong Nesir. The Africans teach their eagles to pray vpon foxes and woolues; which in their encounter seaze vpon the heads of the saide beasts with their bills, and vpon the backs with their talents, to auoide the danger of biting. But if the beast turne his belly vwarde; the eagle will not forsake him, till she hath either peckt out his eies, or slaine him. Many of our African writers affirme, that the male eagle oftentimes ingendring with a shee woofe, begetteth a dragon, hauing the beake and wings of a birde, a serpents taile, the feete of a wolfe, and a skin speckled and partie coloured like the skin of a serpent. Neither can it open the eie-lids, and it liueth in caues. This monster albeit my selfe haue not seene, yet the common report ouer all Africa affirmeth that there is such an one.

*Of the foule called Nesir.*

**T**His is the greatest foule in all Africa, and exceedeth a crane in bignes, though the bill, necke, and legs are somewhat shorter. In flying this birde mouateth vp so high into the aire, that it cannot be disceined; but at the sight of a dead carcase it will immediately descend. This birde liueth a long

*A strange narration.*

long time, and I my selfe haue seene many of them vnfeathered by reason of extreme old age: wherefore hauing cast all their feathers, they returne vnto their nest, as if they were newly hatched, and are there nourished by the yonger birds of the same kinde. The Italians call it by the name of a Vulture, but I thinke it to be of another kinde. They nestle vpon high rockes, and vpon the tops of wilde and desert mountaines, especially vpon mount Atlas: and they are taken by such as are acquainted with those places.

*Of the birde called Bezi, or the hauke.*

**T**His bird called in Latine *Accipiter*, is very common in Africa. But the best African haukes are white, being taken vpon certaine mountaines of the Numidian deserts, and with these haukes they pursue the crane. Of these haukes there are diuers kinds; some being vsed to flie at partridges and quails, and others at the hare.

*Of the Bat.*

**T**Hese vgly night-birdes are rife all the world ouer: but in certaine caues of Atlas there are many of them founde as bigge and bigger then doves, especially in their wings: which albeit my selfe neuer sawe, yet haue I heard of them by diuers persons.

*Of the parrat or poppiniay.*

**T**Hese parrats are commonly founde in the woods of Ethiopia: but the better sort of them, and such as will imitate mans voice more perfectly, are the greene ones. Parrats there are as big as a doue, of diuers colours, some red, some blacke, and some ash-coloured, which albeit they cannot so fitly expresse mans speech, yet haue they most sweete and shrill voices.

*Of the locusts.*

**O**F locusts there are sometimes seene such monstrous swarmes in Africa, that in flying they intercept the sunne-beames like a thicke cloude. They deuoure trees, leaues, fruites, and all greene things growing out of the earth. At their departure they leaue egges behinde them, whereof other yong locusts breede, which in the places where they are left, will eate and consume al things euen to the very barke of trees, procuring thereby extreme dearth of corne, especially in Mauritania. Howbeit the inhabitants of Arabia deserta, and of Libya, esteeme the comming of these locusts as a fortunate boading: for, seething or drying them in the sun, they bruiſe them to powder, and so eate them.

And now let thus much suffice to haue spoken of the African beastes,  
Hh 1  
foules,

foules, fishes, serpents, &c. which are either not to be found in Europe, or such as differ from creatures of the same kinde there. Wherefore hauing once briefly intreated in the chapters following of certaine minerals, trees, and fruits of Africa, I purpose then to conclude this my present discourse.

Whereas mine author *John Leo* intreateth but briefly of these locusts, which God vseth as a most sharp scourge between times to discipline all the nations of Africa; I thought it not vnmeet to adde two other relations or testimonies of the same argument: the one being reuerend in regard of the authors antiquitie; and the other credible and to be accepted, for that the reporter himselfe was a most diligent and faithfull eie-witnes of the same.

The first testimonie, taken out of the 11. chap.  
of the fift booke of *Paulus Orosius*  
*contra Paganos.*

*Of an huge and pernicious companie of Locusts in Africa, which after they had wasted the countrey, being drowned in the sea, and cast vp dead on the shore, bred a most woonderfull pestilence both of man and beast.*

**I**N the consulship of *Marcus Plantius Hypsæus*, and *Marcus Fulvius Flaccus*, Africa scarce breathing from bloudie warres, an horrible and extraordinarie destruction ensued. For whereas now throughout all Africa, infinite multitudes of locusts were gathered together, & had not only quite deuoured the corne on the ground, and consumed the herbes with part of their rootes, and the leaues and tender boughes of the trees, but had gnawne also the bitter barke, and drie woode; being with a violent and sudden winde hoised aloft in mightie swarmes, and carried a long time in the aire, they were at length drowned in the African sea. Whose lothsome and putrified carcases being by the waues of the sea cast vp in huge heapes farre and wide along the shore, bred an incredible stinking & infectious smell: whereupon followed so general a pestilence of all liuing creatures, that the corrupt dead bodies of foules, cattell, and wilde beasts dissolved by the contagion of the aire, augmented the furie of the plague. But how great and extraordinarie a death of men there was, I cannot but tremble to report: for in *Numidia*, where *Micipsa* was then king, died fower score thousand persons; and vpon the sea-coast next adioining to *Carthage* and *Vtica*, about two hundred thousand are saide to haue perished. Yea in the citie of *Vtica* it selfe were by this meanes swept from the face of the earth thirtie thousand braue soldiers, which

which were appointed to be the garrison for all Africa. And the destruction was so sudaine and violent, as they report, that out of one gate of *Vtica*, in one and the same day, were carried about fiftene hundred dead corpes of those lustie yong gallants. So that by the grace and fauour of almighty God (through whose mercy, and in confidence of whom, I doe speake these things) I may boldly affirme; that albeit sometime in our daies the locusts in diuers parts, and vsually, doe some damage which is tolerable: yet neuer befell there in the time of the Christians so insupportable a mischiefe, as that this scourge of locusts, which being alieue are by no meanes sufferable, should after their death proue farre more pernicious: and which also liuing, the fruits of the earth would haue bene quite deuoured; it had bene much better they had neuer died, to the plague and destruction of all earthly creatures. Hitherto *Paulus Orosius*.

The second testimonie taken out of the 32. and 33. chapters  
of the Ethiopian historie of *Francis Aluarez*, which for  
the satisfaction of euerie Reader, I haue put  
downe with all particularities and  
circumstances.

*Of the great multitude of Locusts, and the infinite damage that they procure in the dominions of Prete Ianni,*  
Chap. 32.

**I**N this quarter and throughout all the dominion of *Prete Ianni*, there is an horrible and great plague, to wit an innumerable companie of Locusts, which eate and consume the corne, and trees of fruite; and so great is the number of these creatures, as it is not credible, for with the multitude of them the earth is couered, and the aire so ouerspred, as one may hardlie discern the sunne: and further I affirme, that it is a thing most strange to him who hath not seene it; and if the damage they performe were generall through all the prouinces and kingdomes of *Prete Ianni*, his people would die with famine, neither could men possiblie there inhabite: But one yeere they destroy one prouince, and the next yeere another prouince: as if for example, they waste the kingdome of *Portugall* or *Castile* this yeere, an other yeere they are in the quarters of *Lenteio*, an other in *Estremadura*, an other in *Beira*, or betwene the riuer *Dorus* and *Minus*, an other on the mountaines, an other in old *Castilia*, *Aragon* or *Andaluzia*, and otherwhiles in two or three of these prouinces at once; and wheresoeuer they come, the earth is more wasted and destroyed by them, then if it had bene all ouer consumed with a fire. These locusts are as bigge as the greatest grass



hoppers, hauing yellow wings. Their comming into the countrie is knowne a day before: not for that we can see them, but we know it by the sunne, who is yellow of colour, this being a signe that they draw neere to the countrie, as also the earth looketh yellowe, by reason of the light which reflecteth from their wings: whereupon the people in a manner become presentlie halfe dead, saying, we are vndone, for the Ambati, that is to say, the locustes are come. And I can not forbear to set downe that which I sawe three sundrie times, and first in Barua, where we had now bene for the space of three yeeres, and heere we often heard it saide, that such a countrey and such a realme was destroyed by the Locusts: and being in this prouince we sawe the sunne and the vpper part of the earth looke all yellow, the people being in a manner halfe dead for sorrow: But the day following it was an incredible thing to see the number of these creatures that came, which to our iudgement couered fower and twentie miles of lande, as afterward we were enformed. When this scourge and plague was come, the priestes of that place came and sought me out, requesting me to giue them some remedie for the driuing of them away, and I answered, that I could tel them nothing, but only that they shoulde deuoutly pray vnto God, that he woulde driue them out of the countrie. And so I went to the Ambassadour, and told him, that it would be very good to goe on proceffion, beseeching God that hee woulde deliuer the countrie, who peraduenture in his great mercie might heare vs. This liked the Ambassadour very well: and the day following we gathered together the people of the land, with all the priests, and taking the consecrated stone, and the crosse, according to their custome, all we Portugals sung the Letanie, and appointed those of the land, that they should lift vp their voices aloud as we did, saying in their language *Zio marina Christos*, which is as much to say, as Lord God haue mercy vpon vs: and with this manner of inuocation we went ouer a peece of grounde, where there were fieldes of wheate, for the space of a mile, euen to a little hill: and heere I caused many of these locustes to be taken, pronouncing ouer them a certaine coniuration, which I had about me in writing, hauing made it that night, requesting, admonishing, and excommunicating them, enioining them within the space of three howers to depart towards the sea, or the lande of the Moores, or the desert mountaines, and to let the Christians alone: and they not performing this, I summoned and charged the birdes of heaven, the beasts of the earth, and all sorts of tempests, to scatter, destroy, and eate vp their bodies: and to this effect I tooke a quantitie of locusts, making this admonition to them present, in the behalfe likewise of them absent, and so giuing them libertie, I suffered them to depart. It pleased God to heare vs sinners, for in our returne home, they came so thicke vpon our backs, as it seemed that they woulde haue broken our heads, or shoulders, so hard they strooke against vs, as if we had bene beaten with stones and cudgels, and in this sort they went towards the sea: The men, women, and children remaining at home, were gotten vpon the tops, or tarrasses of their houses, giuing

God

A strange  
exorcisme.

God thanks that the locusts were going away, some afore, and others followed. In the meane while towards the sea, there arose a great cloude with thunder, which met them full in the teeth, and continued for the space of three howers with much raine, and tempest, that filled all the riuers, and when the raine ceased, it was a fearefull thing to behold the dead Locustes, which were more then two \* yardes in height vpon the bankes of the riuers, \* Or fathomes. and in some riuers there were mightie heapes of them, so that the morning following there was not one of them found aliue vpon the earth. The people of the places adioining hearing this, came in great numbers to enquire how this matter was effected; many of the inhabitants said, these Portugals be holy men, and by the power of their God, they haue killed and driuen away the locusts: others saide, especially the priests and friers of those places neere about, that we were witches, and by power of enchantments had driuen away the saide creatures, and that for this cause we feared neither lions, nor any other wilde beaft: Three daies after this effect, there came vnto vs a Xuum, that is, a captaine of a place called Coiberia, with men, priests, and friers, to request vs, that we woulde for the loue of God helpe them, saying that they were in a manner destroyed by the locustes; and that place was a daies iourney off towards the sea. They came to vs about euening, and at the same instant, I and fower other Portugals departed awaie with them, we went all night, and came thither an hower within daie, where we found, that all those of the countrey, with many of the other places adioining were assembled together, for they were also molested by the locusts. And as soone as we were come, we went our proceffion rounde about the land, which was seated vpon an high hill, from whence we might discern manie countries and places all yellow by reason of the multitude of locusts. Such inuocations and ceremonies being ended, as we performed in the other place, we went to dinner, & the men that were borderers, requested vs to goe with them, promising vs great rewardes: It pleased god, that as soon as we had dined, we saw all the earth so cleared that there was not soe much as one locust to be seene: The people seeing this and not being satisfied with the fauour and grace receiued, they requested vs to goe and blesse their possessions, for they were yet afraid least the locusts would returne; and so wee departed.

*Of the damage we sawe done in another prouince by  
the Locustes in two sundrie places.*

Chap. 33.

**A**N other time also we sawe the Locustes, being in a towne called *Abuguna*: *Prete Ianni* sent vs to this towne which is in the kingdome of *Angote*, and distant from *Barua*, where we continued, thirtie daies iourney, to the ende that there we might be furnished with victuals: Being come thither, I went with the ambassadour *Zugazabo*, who came into Portugall,

and

Hh 3

and five Genoueses, towards a certain towne & a moûtaine called Aguoan, & we trauailed five daies through places all desert & destroied, which places were sowne with Maiz, hauing stalkes as great as those props which we vse about our vines, and we might see them all broken and troden vnderfoote, as if there had beene a tempest, and this had the locusts done. Their wheate, barley, and Taffo da guza were so eaten, as it seemed they neuer had beene either tilled or sowne. The trees were without leaues, and their barks all gnawne & eaten, and there was not so much as a spire of grasse, for they had deuoured euery thing; and if we had not beene aduised, and foreseene the same (for when we departed, we laded our mules with victuals) we and our beastes had died together for hunger. The countrey was couered all ouer with wingleffe locustes; and they saide, that those were the seede of them, which had deuoured all, and that when they had gotten wings, they would go seeke out the rest, the number of these was so great, as I am loath to report, because I shoulde not perhaps be credited: but this I may well affirme, that I sawe men, women, and children, sit as it were amazed amongst these locusts, and I saide vnto them, why sit you thus halfe dead, and doe not kill these creatures, and so reuenge your selues of the wrong, that their fathers and mothers haue done you, or at least that those which you kill may be able to doe you no more harme? They answered, that they had not the hart, to withstand the scourge of God which hee had sent vpon them for their sins: And all the people of this place departed hence, so that we found the waies full of men and women on foot, with their children in their armes, and vpon their heads, going into other countries, where they might finde victuall, and it was great pittie to behold them. VVe being in the saide prouince of Abuguna, in a place called Aquate, there came such swarmes of locustes as were innumerable: which one day began to fall vpon the grounde about nine of the clocke in the morning, and ceased not while night; where they lighted, there they staid, and then the next day in the morning went away: so that at three of the clocke in the afternoone there was not one of them to be seene, and in this short time they left the trees vterly destitute of leaues. On the same day and hower there came an other squadron, and these left neither tree nor bough vngnawen and eaten, and thus did they for five daies one after an other: they said that those were yoong ones which went to seeke their fathers, and they did the like, as those we sawe without wings: the space that these locustes tooke vp, was nine miles, for which circuit there remained neither barke nor leaues vpon the trees, & the countrey looked not as though it had bin burnt, but as though it had snowed thereupon, and this was by reason of the whitenes of the trees which were pilled bare by the Locustes, and the earth was all swepr cleare: It was Gods will that the harvest was already in: wee could not vnderstande which way they afterwards went, because they came from the seauarde, out of the kingdome of Dauali, which belongeth to the Moores, who are continually in warre, as also we could by no meanes knowe the

the ende of their iourney or course. Thus much out of Francis Aluarez.

*Of the minerals: And first of minerall salt.*

**T**He greater part of Africa hath none other salt but such as is digged out of quarries & mines, after the maner of marble or free stone, being of a white, red, and graie colour. Barbarie aboundeth with salt, and Numidia is indifferently furnished therewith: but the lande of Negros, and especially the inner part of Ethiopia, is so destitute thereof, that a pound of salt is there solde for halfe a ducate. And the people of the saide regions vse not to set salt vpon their tables; but holding a crum of salte in hands, they lick the same at euery morsell of meate which they put in their mouthes. In certaine lakes of Barbarie all the sommer time there is faire and white salt congealed or kernerd, as famously in diuers places neere vnto the citie of Fez.

*Of the minerall called Antimonie.*

**T**His minerall growing in many places of Africa in the lead-mines is separated from the lead by the helpe of brimstone. Great plentie of this minerall is digged out of the bottome of mount Atlas, especially where Numidia bordereth vpon the kingdome of Fez. Brimstone likewise is digged in great abundance out of other places of Africa.

*Of Euphorbium.*

**E**Vphorbium is the iuice or gumme of a certaine herbe growing like the head of a wilde thistle, betweene the branches wherof grow certain fruits as big in compasse as a greene cucumber; after which shape or likenes it beareth certain little graines or feedes; and some of the said fruits are an elle long, and some are longer. They grow not out of the branches of the herbe but spring out of the firme ground, and out of one flag you shall see sometimes 20. and sometimes 30. of them issue forth. The people of the same region, when the said fruits are once ripe, do prick them with their knives, and out of the holes proceedeth a liquor or iuice much like vnto milke, which by little and little, groweth thick and slimy. And so being grown thick, they take it off with their knives, putting it in bladders & drying it. And the plant or herb it selfe is full of sharpe prickles.

*Of pitch.*

**O**F pitch there are two kindes, the one being naturall, and taken out of certaine stones, which are in fountaines; the water wherof retaineth the vsuall smell and tast of the same; and the other being artificiall,

al, and proceeding out of the iuniper or pine-tree: and this artificiall pitch I saw made vpon mount Atlas in manner following. They make a deepe and round furnace with an hole in the bottome, through which hole the pitch may fall downe into an hollow place within the ground being made in form of a litle vessel: and putting into the said furnace the boughes of the foresaid trees broken into small pieces, they close vp the mouth of the furnace, and make a fire vnder it, by the heate wherof the pitch distilleth forth of the wood through the bottome of the furnace into the foresaide hollow place: and so it is taken vp and put in bladders or bagges.

*Of the fruite called Mam or Musi.*

**T**His fruite growing vpon a smal tree which beareth large and broad leaues of a cubite long, hath a most excellent and delicate taste, and springeth forth about the bignes of a small cucumber. The Mahumetan doctours affirme, that this was the fruite which God forbad our first parents to eat in Paradise, which when they had eaten they couered their nakednes with leaues of the same fruit; as being of all other leaues most meete for that purpose. They grow in great abundance at Sela a towne of the kingdom of Fez; but in farre greater plenty in the land of Egypt, and especially at Damiata.

*Of Cassia.*

**T**He trees bearing Cassia are of great thicknes, hauing leaues like vnto the mulberie-tree. They bear a broad and white blossome, and are so laden with fruits, that they are constrained to gather great store before they be ripe, least the tree should breake with ouermuch waight. And this kinde of tree groweth onely in Egypt.

*Of the fruit called Terfez.*

**T**erfez is to be called rather by the name of a root then of a fruit, and is like vnto a mushroom or toad-stoole, but that it is somewhat bigger. It is enclosed with a white rinde and groweth in hot and sandy places. Where it lyeth, it may easilie be perceiued by the swelling and opening of the ground. Some of them are as bigge as a walnut, and others as a limon. The phisicians, which call it Camba, affirme it to be a refrigeratiue or cooling fruit. It groweth in great plenty vpon the Numidian deserts, and the Arabians take as great delight in eating of the same as in eating of sugar. This fruit being stued vpon the coles, and afterward made cleane, and sodden in fat broath they esteeme for great dainties. Also the Arabians seeth it in water and milk, and so eat it. It groweth likewise plentifully in the sandes neare vnto the towne of Sela. Of the date or palme-tree, because we haue sufficiently spoken in our description of Segelmess in Numidia, we will here in this place say nothing at all.

of

*Of the Egyptian figg called by the Egyptians them-  
selues Ginmeiz.*

**T**He tree of this figg resembleth other fig-trees both in outward forme and in leaues, but it is of an exceeding height: neither doth the fruit grow among the leaues, or vpon the ends of the twigs, but out of the very body of the tree, where no leaues at all grow. These figs tast like vnto other figes, but they haue a thicker skin and are of a tawnie colour.

*Of the tree called Ettalche.*

**I**T is an high and a thornie tree, hauing such leaues as the iuniper hath, and bearing a gum like vnto mastick, wherwith the African apothecaries vse to mingle and adulterate their mastick, because it hath the same colour and yealdeth some smell also. There are found likewise such trees in the Numidian and Lybian deserts and in the land of Negros: but the trees of Numidia being cut in the midst, consist of white wood like vnto the trees beforenamed, and the Lybian trees of a browne or tawnie wood, but the trees of the land of Negros are extreame black within. And that black pith or hart of this tree, wherof musical instruments are made, is called by the Italians Sangu. That wood which is of the browne or tawnie colour is vsed by the African phisicians for the curing of the French poxe, wherupon it is commonly called by the name of pock-wood.

*Of the root called Tanzarghente.*

**T**His root growing in the westerne part of Africa vpon the Ocean sea shore, yeeldeth a fragrant and odoriferous smel. And the merchants of Mauritania carry the same into the land of Negros, where the people vse it for a most excellent perfume, and yet they neither burne it nor put any fire at all thereto: for being kept onely in an house, it yeeldeth a naturall sent of it selfe. In Mauritania they sell a bunche of these rootes for halfe a ducate, which being carried to the land of Negros is sold again for eightie or one hundred ducates and sometimes for more.

*Of the rooe called Addad.*

**T**He herbe therof is bitter, and the root it selfe is so venomous, that one drop of the water distilled therout, will kill a man within the space of an hower, which is commonly knowen euen to the women of Africa.

of

*Of the root called Surnag.*

**T**His roote growing also vpon the westerne part of mount Atlas, is said to be verie comfortable and preferuatiue vnto the priuie parts of man, & being drunk in an electuarie, to stir vp venereal lust, &c. Neither must I here omit that which the inhabitants of mount Atlas do commonly report, that many of those damosels which keepe cattel vpon the said mountaines haue lost their virginity by none other occasion, but by making water vpon the said roote: vnto whom I would in merriment answere, that I belceued all which experience had taught concerning the secret vertue of the same roote. Yea they affirmed moreouer, that some of their maidens were so infected with this roote, that they were not only deflowred of their virginity, but had also their whole bodies puffed vp and swolne.

**T**Hese are the things memorable and woorthie of knowledge, scene and obserued by me *Iohn Leo*, throughout al Africa, which countrey I haue in \* all places traueiled quite ouer: wherein whatsoeuer I sawe woorthy the obseruation, I presently committed to writing: and those things which I sawe not, I procured to be at large declared vnto me by most credible and substantiall persons, which were themselues eie-witneses of the same: and so hauing gotten a fitte oportunitie, I thought good to reduce these my trauels and studies into this one volume.

*Written at Rome in the yeere of Christ  
1526. and vpon the tenth of March.*

Heere endeth the description of Africa written by  
*Iohn Leo*, borne in Granada, and brought  
vp in Barbarie.

A

A brieue relation concerning the dominions, re-  
uenues, forces, and maner of gouernment of sundry the  
greatest princes either inhabiting within the  
bounds of Africa, or at least possessing  
some parts thereof, translated,  
for the most part, out  
of Italian.



Fricke hath euer beene the least knowen and haunted parte in the world, chiefly by reason of the situation thereof vnder the torride Zone; which the ancients thought to be vnhabitable. Whose opinion, although in very deepe it is not true, because we knowe that betweene the two Tropickes there are most fruitefull countries, as namely Abassia, and the kingdomes of Angola, & Congo, with all India, new Spaine, and Brasile; yet neither is it altogether false: For no part of the world hath greater deserts, nor vaster wildernes, then this of Africa. These deserts, which extend themselues from the Atlanticke Ocean euen vnto the borders of Egypt, for more then a thousand miles, and runne out sometimes two hundred, and otherwhiles 300, miles in bredth, diuide Africke into two parts: whereof the southerly part was neuer thoroughly knowne to the people of Europe, as also Atlas, which diuideth Numidia from Africa the lesse, is some impediment to the same: And towards the east it seemeth that nature also ment to conceale the same, by those deserts that lye bewixt the Red sea and the lande of Egypt. In the first times after the flood we finde mention very often made of the kingdomes of Egypt, and Ethiopia: and as for Ethiopia the notice we had thereof, was but obscure and confused: But Egypt, by reason of the commodious situation thereof betweene the Mediterran, and the Red seas, hath alwaies beene renowned and famous: yea king *Sesostris* that Egyptian monarch enlarged his empire from the Atlantick Ocean, euen to the Euxine sea: Afterwards the kings of Numidia, & Mauritania, & the Carthaginians flourished in those prouinces which are bounded by the Mediterran sea. In our times, wherein all Africke hath beene and is daily enuironed, there is sufficient knowledge had of the Marine parts thereof, but for the inland prouinces there is not so much knowne as might be, rather through want of writers then for default of discouerie & trade. Now therfore leauing those parts of Africa which are possessed by the Turke and the king of Spaine, to a  
brieue

\* That is, in  
Barbarie, Nu-  
midia, Libya,  
the lande of  
Negros, and  
Egypt.



briefe narration in the last place, we haue reduced al the residue of our relations to three princes: that is, to *Prete Ianni*, the *Monomotapa*, and the *Xerisso*, who is king of Maroco and Fez; for the rest referring you to *John Leo*, and the discourse prefixed before him: the *Xerisso* raigneth betweene Atlas and the Atlantike Ocean; *Prete Ianni* about the center of Africke: and the *Monomotapa* hath his Empire towards the Sinus Barbaricus, or the Barbarian gulphe.

*The Empire of Prete Ianni.*



He Empire of *Prete Ianni* answereth not certainly in effect, (although it be very large) vnto the same and opinion which the common sort, and most writers haue of it: For latest of any other *Horatio Malugucci* in a certaine discourse of his, touching the greatnes of states at this day, would needes haue his dominion to be greater then any other princes, but the king of Spaine. I confesse indeede, that in times past his state had most ample and large confines, as may be iudged by the multitude of kingdomes, with which he adorneth and setteth forth his stile; for he entitleth himselfe king of *Goiame*, a kingdom seated beyond Nilus, and of *Vangue*, and *Damut* situate beyond *Zaire*; and yet it is at this day evidently knowne, that his Empire scarcely reacheth vnto Nilus: yea and *John Barros* writeth, that the *Abassins* haue little notice of that riuer, by reason of the mountaines lying betweene them and it: The hart or center of his state, is the lake *Barcena*: for on the east it extendeth from *Suaquen*, as farre as the entrance of the Red sea, for the space of an hundred and two and twentie leagues: howbeit betwixt the Red sea and it, there thwarteth a long ranke of mountaines, inhabited by the *Moores*, who also commaund the sea-coast. On the west it hath another ridge of mountaines along the channell of Nilus, inhabited by the *Gentiles*, who pay tribute vnto the *Prete*. On the north it confineth with an imaginarie line drawne from *Suaquen* to the furthest part of the isle of *Meroe*, which is an hundred and fife and twentie leagues long: From hence it maketh as it were a bow, but not very crooked, towards the south, euen to the kingdom of *Adel* (from the mountaines whereof springeth that riuer which *Ptolemey* calleth *Raptus*, and placeth to the south of *Melinde*) for the space of two hundred and thirtie leagues; all which distance is bordered vpon by the *Gentiles*: from whence it turneth and endeth eastward at the kingdom of *Adel*, whose head citie is *Arar*, in the northerly latitude of nine degrees: So that this whole empire, little more or lesse, amounteth to fixe hundred threescore and twelue leagues in circuite: The countrie (which is distinguished with ample plaines, pleasant hills, and high mountaines, most of them manurable, and well inhabited) bringeth fourth barley and myll (for it aboundeth not greatly with other sortes of graine) and likewise *Taffo da guza*, another good and durable seede: But there

there is mill, and *Zaburto* (which we call the graine of India, or *Ginnie wheate*) great plenty, with all sorts of our pulse, and some also vnknown to vs: Some of them weare clothes of cotton: but the greater part are clad in sheeps skinnies, and those which are more honourable, in the skins of *Lions*, *Tigres*, and *Ounces*. They haue all kindes of our domestick creatures, as *hiennes*, geese, and such like, as also abundance of kine, and wild swine, harts, goates, bates, but no conies, besides panthers, *lyons*, *Ounces*, and elephants. To conclude, there cannot be a countrie more apt then this, for the generation and increase of all plants and creatures. True it is, that it hath little helpe or furtherance by the industrie of the inhabitants, because they are of a sloathfull dul nature, and capacite. They haue flaxe, and yet can make no cloath, sugar canes, and know not the arte of getting the sugar thereout; yron, and haue no vse thereof, but take all smithes to be negro-mancers: They haue riuers, and waters, and know not how to better their possessions by them. They conceaue not greatly of hunting or fishing: whereupon the fieldes are full of birdes and wild beastes, and the riuers and lakes, of fish. An other reason of their slacknes and negligence, is the euill intreatie of the communitie by those of the mightier sort: for the poore seeing every thing taken from them that they haue, sow no more, then verie necessity vrgeth them vnto. Their speech also is without any rule or prescription, and to write a letter, requireth a great assembly of men, and many dayes to deliberate thereon. The nobles, cittizens, and peasants liue distinctly and apart, and any of these may purchase nobility by some famous, or worthie act. The first borne inherite all things.

There is not in all the countrie a castel, or fortified place, for they thinke, as the *Spartanes* did, that a countrie should be mayntained and defended by force of armes, and not with rampires of earth or stone. They dwell for the most part disperfed in townes and villages. Their trade of marchandise is performed by exchanging one thing for an other, supplying the ouerplus of their prizes with wheat or salt: pepper, incense, myrrhe, & salt, they sell for the waight in gold. In their bargaines they vse gold also, but by waight, siluer is not ordinary among them. Their greatest city is the *Princes court*, which is neuer firme and resident in one place, but remoueth here & there, and remaineth in the open fieldes vnder tentes. This court comprehendeth ten, or more miles in compasse.

*His Gouvernement.*

*Prete Ianni* his gouernment is very absolute, for he holdeth his subiects in most base seruitude, and no lesse the noble and great, then those of meaner qualitie and condition, intreating them rather like slaues, then subiects: and the better to doe this, he maintaineth him selfe amongst them in the reputation of a sacred and diuine person. Al men bow at the name of the Prince, and touch the earth with their hand: they reuerence the tent where-

in he lyeth, and that when he is absent also. The *Pretes* in times past were wonte to be seene of the people but onely once in three yeeres space; and afterwarde they shewed themselves thrice in a yere, that is on Christmas, and Easter daye, as also on holy Rood day in September. *Panufius* who now reigneth, albeit he is growen more familiar then his predecessors, yet when any commission cometh from him, the partie to whom it is directed heareth the wordes thereof naked, from the girdle vpward, neither putteth he on his apparrell, but when the king permitteth him. The people though they bind it with an oath, yet do they seldome speake truth, but when they sweare by the kings life, who giueth and taketh away, what great signiorie fouer it pleaseth him, neither may he, from whom it is taken, so much as shew him selfe agreed therewith. Except the giuing of holy orders and the administration of the sacraments, he disposeth as well of the religious as of the laye sort, and of their goodes.

On the way he rideth, enuironed with high and long red curtaynes, which compasse him on every side. He weareth vsually vpon his head, a crowne halfe gold, halfe siluer, and a crosse of siluer in his hand: his face is couered with a peece of blew taffata, which he lifteth vp, or letteth downe, more or lesse, according as he fauoreth them that he treateth withall: and sometimes he only sheweth the end of his foot, which he putteth forth from vnder the said curtaynes. They that carrie and returne ambassages, come not to his curtaine, but with long time, diuers ceremonies, and sundry obseruations. None hath flates but himselfe, to whome every yeere his subiects come to do homage. This prince (as the *Abassins* report) descendeth from a sonne of *Salomon*, & the Queen of *Saba*, called *Meilech*: they receiued the faith vnder Queene *Candaces*, in whose time the familie of *Gaspar* began to reigne and flourish in *Ethiopia*, and from him after thirteene generations came *John* called the holie. This man about the time of *Constantinus* the Emperour, because he had no children, leauing the kingdome to his brother *Caim* eldest sonne, inuested *Baltasar*, and *Melchior*, younger brothers, one in the kingdome of *Fatigar*, and the other in *Giomedi*: whereupon the royall blood grew to be deuided into three families, namely that of *Baltasar*, that of *Gaspar*, and the third of *Melchior*, ordaining that the Empire aboue all others should be giuen by election to some one of the foresaid families, soe it were not to the eldest borne. For these first borne there were particular kingdomes appointed. And to auoide scandale and tumult, hee decreed that the Emperours brothers with his neereft kindred should be enclosed as in a

strong castell, within mount *Amara*; where he would also haue the Emperours sonnes to be put, who cannot succedd in the Empire, nor haue any State at all, for which cause the Emperour ordinarily marrieth not.

\*Of this mountaine read in the discourse before the beginning of *Leo*.

of

His forces both in reuenues and people.

HE hath two kindes of reuenues, for one consisteth in the fruits of his possessions, which he causeth to be manured by his slaues, and oxen. These slaues multiplie continuallie, for they marrie among themselves and their sonnes remaine in the condition of their progenitors. An other great reuenue cometh of his tributes, which are brought vnto him, from all those that hold dominion vnder him. And of these, some giue horses, some oxen, some gold, some cotton, and others other thinges. It is thought he hath great treasure as well of cloaths and iewels, as of gold, and also that he hath treasuries and large magazins of the same riches, so that writing once to the king of *Portugal*, he offered to giue for the maintenance of war against the *Infidels*, an hundred thousand drams of gold, with infinite store of men and victuall. They say, that he putteth ordinarilie euerie yeere into the castel of *Amara*, the value of three millions of ducates. It is true, that before the dayes of King *Alexander* they layde not vp so much golde, because they knew not how to purifie it: but rather iewels and wedges of gold. Also his commings in may be said to bee of three sorts: for some he raiseth as it were, out of his crowne-landes: another part he leuieth of the people, that pay him so much for an house, and the tenth of all those mines that are digged by others then by himselfe: and a third reuenue he draweth from his tributarie princes and gouernours: and these giue him the entire reuenues of one of their cities, so as he choose not that citie wherein they make their residence. But though his wealth and reuenues be great, yet are his people of little worth, as well because he holdeth them in the estimation of slaues, by meanes whereof they want that generositie of minde, which maketh men ready to take vp armes, & to be couragious in dangers: as also it seemeth they haue euer their handes bound with that awefull reuerence which they beare towards their Prince, and the feare they haue of him: and further, in that they haue no armes of defence but bad head peeces, halfe sculles, and coats of maile, carried thither by the *Portugals*. Hereunto may be added his want of fortresses: for neither hauing strong places whither to retire, nor armes to defend themselves; they and their townes remaine as a pray to the enemy; their offensive armes being vnfeathered arrowes, and some darts. They haue a lent of fiftie daies continuance, which through the great abstinence, wherein they passe all that time; doth so weaken and afflict them, that neither for those daies, nor many other following, they haue the strength to stirre abroad: whereupon the *Moores* attend this opportunitie, and assaile them with great aduantage. *Francis Aluarez* writeth, that *Prete Ianuic* can bring into the field, an hundred thousand men: neuertheless in time of neede it hath bene seene, that he could make nothing so many. He hath a militarie religion, or order of knighthood, vnder the protection of *Saint Antonie*, whereunto euerie noble man must ordaine one of euerie

now

li 2

three

three male children, but not the eldest. And out of these are constituted twelue thousand knights or gentlemen for the kings garde. The ende of this order is, to defend the confines of the empire, and to make head against the enimies of the faith.

*Princes confining vpon the Prete Ianni.*



His Prince, as farre as we can certainly vnderstand, consisteth especially with three other mightie princes: one is the king of Borno; another the great Turke; and the third the king of Adel. The king of Buruo ruleth ouer that countrey which extendeth from Guangara towards the east, about fiftie hundred miles, betweene the deserts of Seu, and Barca, being of an vneuen situation, because it is partly mountainous, and partly plaine. In the plaines there dwelleth a very ciuill people in populous and much frequented villages, by reason of the abundance of graine, as also there is some course of merchants thither. On the mountaines, shepherdes of great and smal beasts do inhabite, and their chiefe sustenance is milke: They lead a brutish life, without religion, with their wiues and children in common: They vse no other proper names, but those which are taken from the qualitie or forme of mens persons: the lame, the squint eyed, the long, the stutering. This king of Borno is most mightie in men, vpon whom he laierth no other imposition but the tenth of their fruits; their profession is to robbe and steale from their neighbours, and to make them slaues: in exchange of whom, they haue of the merchants of Barbarie, horses. He hath vnder him many kingdomes, and people, partly white, and partly blacke. He molesteth the Abassines exceedingly with thestes, leadeth away their cattell, robbeth their mines, & maketh their men slaues. They fight on horse backe after the Gynnet fashion, they vse lances with two heads, & darts & arrowes: they assault a countrey sometimes in one part, and otherwhiles in another, suddenly: but these may rather be termed theues and robbers then right enimies.

The Turke confineth with Abassia on the east; as likewise the king of Adel, who hemmeth it in betweene the east and the south. They disturbe the Prete exceedingly, restraining the limites of his Empire, and bringing his countrey into great miserie: For the Turkes besides the putting of a great part of Barnagasso, to sacke and spoile; (vpon which they entred the yeere of our Lord, 1558.) although they were driuen out againe, haue further taken all that from the Prete which he possessed on the sea coast: especiallie the portes and townes of Suaquen and Ercoco: In which two places, the mountaines lying betwixt Abassia and the red sea, doe open, and make a passage, for conueiance of victual, and trafficke, betweene the Abassins, and the Arabians: And it is not long, since the Lord Barnagasso was constrained to accord with the Turke, and to buie the peace of his countrey with

with the tribute of a thousand ounces of gold by the yeere. Also the King of Adel procureth hym no lesse molestation: This man confineth with the kingdom of Fatigar, and extendeth his dominion euen to the Red sea, where he hath Assum, Salir, Meth, Barbora, Pidar, and Zeila. At Barbora manie shippes of Aden, and Cambaia arriue with their marchandize for exchange; from whence they receiue much flesh, honie, wax, and victuals for Aden; and gold, Iuorie, and other thinges for Cambaia. A greater quantitie of victuall is carried from Zeila, because there is abundance of waxe, and honie, with corne and diuers fruites, which are laden for Aden, and for Arabia, and beastes also, as namely sheepe, with tayles wayghing more then fise and twentie poundes, with their heads and necks all blacke, but the rest of them is white: as also certaine other all white with tayles a fathome long, and writhen like a vine branche, hauing thropples vnder their throtes like bulles. There be also certaine kine with branched hornes like to wild hartes, being blacke in colour and some others red, with one onely horne vpon their foreheads of an handfull and an halfe long, turning backward. The chiefe city of this kingdom is Arar eight and thirtie leagues from Zeila towards the South east. This king being a Mahumetan by a perpetuall profession of making war against the christians of Abassia, who are the subiects of the Prete, hath obtained of those Barbarians the surname of Holy: He stayeth his oportunitie while the Abassins be weakened, and brought downe with that long and hard fast of fiftie daies, when they can scarcely go about their domesticall affaires; and then he entred into the countrey, sacketh the townes, leadeth the people away into seruitude, and doth a thousand iniuries vnto them. The Abassin slaues are of great valew out of their owne countrey: whereupon the bordering, and other Princes both farre and neere esteeme them much, and many of them by meanes of their industrie in seruice, of slaues haue become captaines and great Commanders, in Arabia, Cambaia, Bengala, and Sumatra: Because the Mahumetan princes of the east, being all tirants ouer kingdomes vsurped from the Gentiles, for securitie of their state, put no trust in their owne subiects: but arme themselues with a multitude of strange slaues, to whom they commit their persons, and the gouernment of their kingdom. And among all other slaues the Abassins beare away the bell, as well for fidelitie, as for sound and good complexion. And because the king of Adel, with the multitude of these Abassin slaues, which he taketh in the townes and territories of Prete Ianni, filleth all Egypt, and Arabia (in exchange of whom he hath armour, munition, and soldiers, both from the Turke, and the Arabian Princes) in the yeere of our Lord 1550. *Claudio* king of Abassia, being after this sort sorely oppressed by *Gradaamed* king of Adel, who now for the space of fowerteene yeeres had with continuall incurfions greuously molested, and disturbed him, enforcing him to leaue his confines, and to retire into the hart of his empire, demaunded aide of *Stephano Gama*, the Indian Viceroy of *Iohn* the third king of Portugale, who was then with a good

fleete vpon The red sea. Whereupon he sent him fower hundred Portugals, with a good quantitie of armes, and small shot, vnder the gouernment of *Christopher da Gama* his brother. With these men by the benefit of shot, he ouerthrew the enimie in two battailes; but in the third, the king of Adel hauing receiued a thousand Turkish harquebuziers from the gouernour of Zebit, with ten peeces of artillerie, the Abassins were put to flight; and discomfited, and their captaine taken prisoner, and put to death. But the king of Adel afterwards sending backe the said Turkes; he and his people were sodainly assailed, neere the riuer of Zeila, and mount Saual, by king *Claudius* with threescore thousand foote, and five hundred Abassin horie, together with those Portugales, who remained of the former ouerthrow, one of whom wounded *Gradamed* dangerously. But in the moneth of March, the yeere of our Lord 1559. king *Claudius* being set vpon againe by the *Malacai* Mores, he was slaine in the battaile: and the enimie-king acknowledging so great a victorie from the handes of God, triumphed vpon an asse:

*Adamas* brother vnto king *Claudius* succeeded him, against whom (for he was halfe a Mahumetan) the best part of the Abassine nobilitie rebelled, and he was defeated by the *Barnagasso* in the yeere 1562. who hauing thus for a while disturbed the affaires of Ethiopia, it seemed that they were at length asswaged, & reestablished vnder *Alexander*, by the aide of the Portugals, who haue carried thither armes as well of offence, as defence, and stirred vp the mindes and courages of the Abassines, by their example, to warre; For all those that remained of the discomfiture giuen to *Christopher Gama*, and diuers others which came thither afterwards, and do daily there arriue and staie, do marrie wiues, and haue children; and *Alexander* permitted them to elect a iudge, who might execute iustice among them: So that they haue, and do daily bring into Abassia, the manner of warfare in Europe, with our vse of armes, and the manner of fortifying passages and places of importance. Afterwards certaine Florentines went into those countries, partly vpon pleasure, and partly for affaires of merchandize. For *Francesco di Medici* great Duke of Florence, had some commerce with the Abassines. The *Prete* therefore giues entertainment, and maketh much of the Frankes, (for so do they call the people of Europe) and hardly giueth them license to depart out of his kingdome. Besides these the *Prete Ianni* hath diuers other enimies, amongst whom is the king of Dancali, to whom the towne and port of Vela vpon the red sea pertaineth; he confineth with *Balgada*. The Moores also vexe him greatly, which inhabite the prouince, called *Dobas*, deuided into fowerteene Signiories; for though they be within the confines of *Prete Ianni* his empire, yet notwithstanding for the most part they rebell from him: they haue a lawe, that none of them may marrie, before he first giue testimoniall that he hath slaine twelue Christians.

of

## Of the Emperour of Monomotapa.

Concerning the state of this mightie Emperour, and of his neighbour of *Mohenemugi*, and of the limits of both their dominions, as likewise of the *Amazones* and *Giacchi* the chiefe strength of their militarie forces, and other memorable matters; to auoide tedious repetitions, I referre the reader to the discourse going before the booke: saue onely that I will heere annexe a brieue testimony out of *Oforius* lib 4 de reb gest. Eman, which may adde some small light vnto the treatise before mentioned.

But (saith he) in this part of Ethiopia lying beyond the cape of good hope which is bounded by the south Ocean, there is a most ample kingdome called *Benomotapa*, whereunto before such time as the Portugals discovered those parts, all the kinges vpon that coast were most obedientlie subiect. It aboundeth with gold beyond all credite: which is taken euen out of their riuers and lakes. Yea many kinges there are which pay yeerely tribute of gold vnto this king of *Benomotapa*. The people worship no Idols, but acknowledge one God the creatour of heauen and earth. In habite and apparell they are not much vnlike to other Ethiopians. They worship their king with wonderfull superstition. This king in his scutcheon or coate of armes hath two signes of maiestie. One is a certaine little spade with a handle of iuorie. The other are two small darts. By the spade he exhorteth his subiects to husbandrie, that they may not through sloth and negligence let the earth lie vtilld, and so for want be constrained to play the theecues. The one of his darts berokeneth, that he will be a seuerer punisher of malefactors; & the other, that he will by valour & force of armes resist all forren inuasions. The sonnes of his tributarie kinges are trained vp in his court; both to the end that by this education they may learne loialtie and loue towards him their soueraigne, and also that they may remaine as pledges to keepe their fathers in awe and due obedience. He is continually guarded with a mightie armie; notwithstanding he be conioined in most firme league with all his neighbour-princes. For by this meanes he supposeth that warre cannot procure him any danger at all, knowing right well that oftentimes in the midst of peace it is readie to disturbe the securitie of Princes. Euery yeere this king sendeth certaine of his courtiers and seruants to bestow in his namenewe fire vpon all the princes and kinges within his dominions, that from them it may be distributed vnto others also. Which is done in manner following. The messenger being come to the house of any prince, his fire is immediately quenched. Then is there a new fire kindled by the messenger: and forthwith all the neighbours resort thither to fetch of the said new fire for their houses. Which whosoever refuseth to performe, is helde as a traitorous rebell, and receiue such punishment as is liable to high treason; yea if need be, an armie is leued to apprehend him, to the end that being taken, he may be put to such torments as are correspondent to his disloialtie. Hitherto *Oforius*.

Benomotapa  
most rich in  
gold.The kings  
armes.A discreet  
course.A secretly  
superstition: cu-  
stome of distri-  
buting fire from  
the king to his  
tributarie prin-  
ces.

of



The Xeriffo, commonly called The king of Maroco  
Sus, and Fez.



Mong all the princes of Africa, I suppose that there is not anie one, who in riches of state, or greatnes of power, may be preferred before the Xeriffo. In that his dominion, which comprehendeth all that part of Mauritania, called by the Romaines Tingitana, extendeth it selfe north & south from Capo Boiador, euen to Tanger, and east and west from the Atlantieke Ocean, as farre as the riuer Muluia, and somewhat further also, in which space is comprehended the fairest, fruitfullst, best inhabited, and most ciuill part of all Africk, and among other the states, the most famous kingdomes of Maroco and Fez. With the particular description whereof, and of all the prouinces, cities, townes, riuers, mountaines, &c. therein contained, the Reader may satisfie himselfe to the full in the second and third bookes of the historie of *Iohn Leo* before set downe.

These kingdomes besides their natural fertilitie, are very traffickable; for though the king of Fez hath no haue of importance vpon the Mediterranean sea, neuertheless the English, French, and other nations traffick much to his ports vpon the Ocean, especially to \**Larache*, *Santa Cruz*, *Cabo de Guer*, and in other places pertaining partly to the kingdome of Fez, and partly to Maroco; and they bring thither copper, and brasle, with armes and diuers commodities of Europe, for which among other things they returne sugar.

But because these kingdomes of Maroco and Fez, and diuers other Signories, and Principalities, at first separate and deuided, were vnited not long sithence vnder one Prince, who is called \*the Xeriffo, it will not be much from our purpose (because among the accidents of our times, I think there is not any one, more notable or wonderfull then this) to set downe here how the matter passed.

About the yeere of our Lord 1508 a certaine Alchaide borne in Tigumedet a towne of Dara, whose name was *Mahumet Benametto*, and who caused himselfe to be called *Xeriffo*, being a subtile man, and of a minde no lesse ambitious, then learned in those sciences, whereunto the Mahumetans are most addicted, began to grow famous in the townes of Numidia. This man vaunting himselfe to be descended of *Mahumets* progenie, was possessed with an imagination (trusting in the deuision of the States of Affricke, wherein then the Portugals bore great sway) of taking into his owne hands all \**Mauritania Tingitana*. For performance of this, he first sent his three sonnes, *Abdel*, *Abner*, and *Mahumet*, in pilgrimage to Mecca and Medina, there to visit & do reuerence to the sepulchre of their Seducer *Mahumet*. The yoong men performed this voyage with so great fame and reputation of sanctitie and religion (if these words may be vsed, in declaring of such an impietic

impietic) that in their returne, the people came out to meete them, kissed their garments, and reuerenced them as saints. They sayning themselues to be rauished into deepe contemplation, went vp and downe the streetes sighing, and crying out in words interrupted with lamentation & yerning: *Alá*, *Alá*; and they liued of nothing but almes. Their father hauing taken them home with great mirth and ioy: but yet not minding to suffer this sudden applause & credit, which they had obtayned by such a pilgrimage, to freeze and wax cold; he sent two of them which were \**Amet* and *Mahumet* to Fez, \**Or Abnet*, where being courteously receiued by the king, one of them became a Reader in the *Amodoraccia*, a most famous colledge of that citie, and the other the yoongest was made tutor to the same kings yoong sonnes. These two seeing themselues so entirely beloued of the king, and in so great fauour with the people, being aduised by their father, and taking occasion vpon the damage which the Arabians & Moores did to those of their owne law & sect, vnder the ensignes of the Portugals, in whose paie they serued. They demanded leaue of the king to display a banner against the Christians, putting him in hope, (as indeed it fell out) that they would easily draw those Moores vnto him, who were followers of the crowne of Portugall, and by this meanes secure the prouinces of *Sus*, *Hea*, *Ducala*, *Maroco*, with others molested, & euilly entreated by the Portugals. This request was contradicted by *Mullei Nazer*, brother to the king: for (said he) if these men, vnder pretence of holines, and defence of their law, shall haue some prosperous proceedings with armes in hand, it will not afterwards be in thy power (O king) to bridle or bring them downe: for armes make men couragious, & by victories they prooue insolent, & the rout of ambitious people are alwaies desirous of innouation. But the king who had a great opinion of their sanctitie, making small account of the reasons his brother alleaged vnto him, gaue them a banner, and drumme, and twentie horse to accompanie them, with letters of recommendation to the Arabians, the princes, and the cities of Barbarie. With these beginnings many people running headlong after their fame, they ouercame *Ducala*, and the countrey of \**Saphia*, and \**Or Azaphi*, and went forward euen as farre as *Cabo de Guer*, (which places then were subiect to the Portugals) and finding themselues strong, both in retinue and credite, they demanded of the people (who at that time liued for the most part freely, and came in to none, but such as they liked of themselues) that seeing they now tooke vp armes, for the Mahumetane law against the Christians, they should aide them with their tenthes due vnto God: the which were presently yeelded vnto them by the people of *Dara*, and so they seized by little and little vpon *Tarodant* (where their father was made gouernour) and likewise of *Sus*, *Hea*, *Ducala*, and other places adioining. They first planted themselues in *Tednest*, and then in *Tesarote*, and in a conflict ouerthrew *Lopes Barriga*, a famous captaine amongst the Portugals: but so they lost their owne elder brother therein. And afterwards by faire words entering into the citie of *Maroco*, they poisoned the king, and in his stead made

\* Described by  
Leo in his fifth  
booke vnder the  
name of *Lharais*.

\* Or *Miramoun*.

The manner how  
the Xeriffo  
aspired to the  
kingdomes of  
*Maroco*, *Sus*,  
and *Fez*.

\* Or the king-  
domes of *Maro-  
co*, and *Fez*.

made *Amer Xeriffo* to be proclaimed king of Maroco. In the meane while the Arabians of Ducala, & Xarquia came to hand blowes with those of Garbia, each partie holding themselves in the *Xeriffes* fauour; but the *Xeriffes* perceiuing the skirmish to grow hot, and that many both of the one and of the other party went to wrack, turned their armes against them both, and enriched themselves with their spoiles. In former times they vsed to send vnto the king of Fez the fift of all those booties which they got; but after this victory, making no reckoning of their said custom, they presented him only with six horses, and six camels, & those but silly ones: wherat being moued, he sent to demand of them the fift part of their spoiles, and the tribute that the king of Maroco paid him, threatening otherwise warre vpon them. But in the meane while, this man dying, *Amer* his sonne, who was scholler to the yoonger *Xeriffo*, was not onely content, but further confirmed *Amer* in the Signiorie of Maroco, so that in some small matter he would acknowledge the kings of Fez for soueraigne Princes ouer that citie. But on the other side the *Xeriffi*, whose reputation and power daily encreased, when the time of paying tribute came, sent to certifie this yoong king, that being lawfull successors to *Mahumet*, they were not bound to paie tribute to any, and that they had more right to Affrica then he: so that if he would haue them his friends, so it were; otherwise if he ment to diuert them from this their warre against the Christians, they should not want courage nor power to defend themselves. Wherewith the Fessan king being offended, proclaimed warre against them, and went himselfe in person to the siege of Maroco: but at the very first he was driuen to dislodge: and afterwards returning with eightene thousand horse, amongst whom were two thousand harquebuziers, or bowmen, he was vanquished by the *Xeriffi*, who had no more but seuen thousand horse, and twelue hundred harquebuziers which were placed on the way at the passage of a riuer. By meanes of this victorie the *Xeriffi* hooke off the tribute of that countrie, and passing ouer Atlas, they tooke Tafilete, an important citie: and partly by faire meanes, partly by force, they brought diuers people of Numidia to their obedience, as also those of the mountaines. In the yeere of our Lord 1536. the yoonger *Xeriffo* who was now called king of Sus, hauing gathered together a mightie armie, and much artillerie, taken in part from the king of Fez, and partly cast by the French Renegados, he went to the enterprife of Cabo de Guer, a very important fortification, held then by the Portugals, which was built and fortified first at the charge of *Lopes Sequeira*: and afterward, knowing their opportunitie from the king *Don Emanuel*, there was fought on both sides a most terrible battell. In the end, fire taking hold on the munition, and vpon this the souldiers being daunted that defended the fortresse, the *Xeriff* entered thereinto, tooke the towne, and made the greatest part of the garrison his prisoners. By this victorie the *Xeriffi* brought in a manner all Atlas and the kingdome of Maroco to their obedience, & those Arabians who serued the crowne of Portugall. Whereupon king *John* the third,

seeing

seeing that his expences farre exceeded the reuenues which came in, of his owne accord gaue ouer Safia, Azamor, Arzilla, and Alcazar, holds which he had on the coast of Mauritania.

This prosperitie was an occasion of grievous discord betwixt the Brothers: the issue whereof was, that the younger hauing in two battels subdued the elder (whereof the second was in the yeere of our Lord 1554) and taken him prisoner, he banished him to Tafilet: and afterwards turning his armes against the king of Fez, after hauing taken him once prisoner, and then releasing him, he yet the second time (because he brake promise) got him into his handes againe, depriued him of his estate, and in the end caused both him and his sonnes to be slaine; and by meanes of his owne sonnes he also tooke Tremizen.

In the meane while *Sal Araes* viceroy of Algier fearing the *Xeriffos* prosperous successe, gathered together a great army, with which he first recovered Tremizen, & afterwards defeating the *Xeriffo*, conquered Fez, and gaue the gouernment thereof to *Buasson* Prince of Veles: but this man ioyning battaile with the *Xeriffo*, lost at one instant both his citie and kingdome. In the ende *Mahumet* going to Tarodant was vpon the way slaine in his pavilion, by the treason of some Turkes, suborned thereunto by the viceroy of Algier, of whom one *Affen* was the chiefe: who together with his companions went into Tarodant, and there made hauock of the kinges treasures: But in their returne home, they were all, but five, slaine by the people, in the yeere 1559: and *Mullei Abdala* the *Xeriffos* sonne, was proclaimed and saluted king.

Let thus much suffice to haue bin spoken of the *Xeriffo*: whose proceedings appeare much like to those of *Ismael* the sophie of Persia. Both of them procured followers by bloud and the cloake of religion: both of them subdued in short time many countries: both of them grew great by the ruine of their neighbours both of them receiued greuous checkes by the Turkes, and lost a part of their states: for *Selym* tooke from *Ismael*, *Cacamit* and diuers other cities of Diarbena: And the viceroy of Algier did driue the *Xeriffo* out of Tremizen, and his other quarters: And euen as *Selim* won Tauris, the head citie of Persia, and afterwards gaue it ouer: so *Sal Araes* tooke Fez the head citie of Mauritania, and then after abandoned the same.

#### The *Xeriffo* his reuenues, or commings in.

THE *Xeriffo* is absolute Lord of all his subiects goods, yea and of their persons also. For though he charge them with neuer so burdensome tributes, and impositions; yet dare they not so much as open their mouths: He receiueth from his tributarie vassals, the tenthes, and first fruits of their come and cattell. True it is, that for the first fruits he taketh no more but one fortieth; and the whole being aboute twentie, he demandeth no more

more then two, though it amount to an hundred. For euery dayes, tilth of grounde he hath a ducate, and a quarter, and so much likewise for euerie house; as also, he hath after the same rate of euerie person aboue fiftene yeeres old, male, or female; and when need requireth, a greater summe: and to the end that the people may the more cheerefullie pay that which is imposed vpon them, he alwaies demaundeth halfe as much more, as he is to receiue. Most true it is, that on the mountaines there inhabite certaine fierce and vntamed people, who by reason of the steep, craggie, and inexpugnable situation of their countrie cannot be forced to tributes; that which is gotten of them, is the tenth of their corne and fruits, onely that they may be permitted to haue recourse into the plaines. Besides these reuenues, the king hath the towles and customes of Fez, and of other cities: For at the entring of their goods, the naturall citizen payeth two in the hundred, and the stranger ten.

He hath further, the reuenues of milles, and many other things, the summe whereof is very great: for the milles yeelde him little lesse then halfe a royall of plate, for euerie Hanega of corne that is ground in Fez, where, (as they say) there are aboute foure hundred mils. The moschea of Carriuen had fourescore thousand ducates of rent: the colledges and hospitals of Fez had also many thousands. Al which the king hath at this present. And further he is heire to all the Alcaydes, and them that haue pension of him, and at their deaths he possesseth their horses, armour, garments, and al their goodes. Howbeit if the deceased leaue any sonnes apt for the seruice of the warres, he granteth them their fathers prouision; but if they be but young, he bringeth vp the male children to yeeres of seruice, and the daughters, till they be married. And therefore, that he may haue some interest in the goods of rich men, he bestoweth vpon them some gouernment, or charge, with prouision. Wherefore for feare of confiscation after death, euery one coueteth to hyde his wealth, or to remoue far from the court, and the kings sight. For which cause the citie of Fez commeth far short of hir ancient glorie. Besides, his reuenues haue bene augmented of late yeeres by mightie summs of gold, which he fetcheth from Tombuto and Gago in the lande of Negros; which gold (according to the report of some) may yeerely amount to three millions of ducates.

#### His Forces.

**T**He *Xeriffo* hath not any Fortresses of great importance, but only vpon the sea-coast, as Cabo de Guer, Larache, and Tetuan: for as the Turks and Persians do, so he placeth the strength of his state in armed men: but especially in horse. And for this cause he standeth not much vpon his artillerie; although hee hath very great store (which his predecessors tooke from the Portugals and others) in Fez, Maroco, Tarodant, and in the foresaide portes; causing also more to bee cast, when neede requireth, for he wanteth

wanteth not masters of Europe in this Science. He hath an house of munition in Maroco, where they make ordinarily six and fortie quintals of powder euery moneth; as likewise also caliuers and steele-bowes. In the yeere of our Lord 1569. a fire tooke hold on these houses with such furie, that a great part of the citie was destroyed therewith. But for the *Xeriffoes* forces, they are of two sorts: the first is of two thousand seuen hundred horse, and two thousand harquibuziers, which he hath partly in Fez, but most in Maroco (where he is resident) being as it were of his daily guard. The second is of a roiall squadron of sixe thousand gentlemen, being all of noble parentage, and of great account. These men are mounted vpon excellent horses, with furniture and armes, for varietie of colour most beautifull, and for riches of ornament beyonde measure estimable: for euery thing about them shineth with gold, siluer, pearle, iewels, and whatsoeuer else may please the eie, or satisfie the curiositie of beholders. These men, besides prouision of corne, oile, butter, and flesh, for themselves, their wiues, children, and seruants, receiue further in wages, from seuentie to an hundred ounces of siluer a man. The third sort of forces which he hath, consisteth of his \* *Timariotti*; for the *Xeriffo* granteth to all his sons, and brothers, and other persons of account or authoritie among the people of Africke, or to the princes of the Arabians, the benefite of great Lordships & tenures for sustentation of his Cauallarie: and the Alchaides themselves till the fields, and afterwardees reape rice, oile, barley, butter, sheepe, hens, and monie, and distribute the same monethly to the souldiers; according to the seuerall qualitie of their persons. They also giue them cloth, linnen, and silke to apparell themselves, armes of offence, and defence, and horses, with which they serue in the warres, and if they die or be killed, they allow them other. A thing which was also vsed in Rome, towards them that serued on publike horses. Euerie one of these leaders contendeth to bring his people into the fiede well ordered, for armes, apparell, and horses: besides this, they haue betweene fower and twentie and thirtie ounces of siluer wages euery yeere. His fourth militarie forces, are the Arabians, who liue continually in their Auari, (for so they call their habitations, each one of them consisting of an hundred, or two hundred pavilions) governed by diuers Alchaides, to the end they may be readie in time of need. These serue on horse-backe, but they are rather to be accounted theues, then true soldiers. His fift kinde of forces militarie, are somewhat like vnto the trained soldiers of Christian princes; and among these, the inhabitants of cities and villages of the kingdome, and of the mountaines are enrolled. It is true, that the king makes but little account of them, & very seldome puts armes into their hands, for feare of insurrections and rebellions, except in the warres against the Christians, for then he cannot conueniently forbid them: For it being written in their law, that if a Moore kil a Christian, or is slaine by him, he goeth directly into Paradise, (a diabolicall inuention) men, women, and those of euery age and degree, run to the warres hand ouer head, that at least they may there be slaine; and

by this meanes ( according to their foolish opinion ) gaine heauen. No lesse zeale, to our confusion, may we perceiue in the Turks especially for defence of their sect: for one would thinke they went to a marriage, and not to the warre, scarcely being able with patience to attend their prefixed time of going thither. They repute them holy and happie, that die with armes in hand against their enemies; as on the contrarie, those men vnhappie, and of little woorth, that die at home, amidst the lamentation of children, and outcries of women.

By the things aboue set downe, we may easily comprehend, what numbers of men the *Xeriffo* can bring into the field: but yet we may learne better by experience. For *Mullei Abdala* in the yeere 1562. besieged *Mazagan* with two hundred thousand men, choaking the ditch with a mountaine of earth, and beating downe the walles thereof with his Artillerie: but for all this, he was enforced by the valour of the Portugals, and the damage which he receiued by their mines, to giue ouer his siege. Besides, this Prince can not continue a great war, aboue two, or three moneths: and the reason hereof is, because his forces liuing on that prouision which he hath daylie comming in, as well for sustenance as for apparrell, and not being able to haue all this conducted thither, where the war requireth, it followeth of necessitie, that in short time they must needs returne home for their maintenance of life: and further it is an euident thing, that no man can protract a war at length, except he be rich in treasure. *Molucco* who ouerthrew *Sebastian* king of Portugal, had in pay vnder his ensignes fortie thousand horse, and eight thousand foote besides Arabians and aduenturers: But it is thought, he could haue brought into the field, seuentie thousand horse, and more foot then he did.

*Of the dominions and fortresses which the king of Spaine hath vpon the Isles and maine landes of Africa, and of the great quantity of treasure and other commodities which are brought from thence.*

**B**esides *Oran*, *Merfaluquibir*, *Melilla* and *Pennon* which the king of Spaine possesseth within the streights; as likewise, *seuta*, *Tanger*, and *Arzil*, which by the title of Portugal he holdeth very neere the streights of *Gibraltar*; and *Mazagan* in like sort without the streights mouth, twentie miles to the southward of *Arzil*: he hath along the coast of *Affrick*, from *Cape de Guer*, to that of *Guardafu*, two sorts of states: for some are immediately vnder him; and others are as it were his adherents. The Islands of *Madera*, *Puerto Santo*, the *Canaries*, the Isles of *Arguin*, of *Cabo Verde*, the isle *Del Principe*, with that of *Sant Thomas*, and others neere adioining, are immediately vnder his dominion. These islands are maintained with their owne victuall, and prouision, and yet they haue also some out of Europe, as in like manner they send some thither: especially *sugars* and *fruits*, wherewith

wherewith the isle of *Madera* woonderfully aboundeth, as also with wine. And the island of *Sant Thomas* likewise hath great abundance of *sugars*. These States haue no incumbrance, but by the English and French men of warre, \* which for all that go not beyond *Cape Verde*. At the islands of *Arguin*, and at *Sant George de la Mina*, the Portugals haue planted factories in forme of fortresses, by meanes of which, they trade with the bordering people of *Guinie* and *Libya*, and get into their hands the gold of *Mandinga*, and other places neere about. Among the adherent Princes, the richest and most honorable, is the king of *Congo*, in that his kingdome is one of the most flourishing, and plentifull countries in all *Ethiopia*. The Portugals haue there two Colonies, one in the cite of *S. Saluador*, and an other in the island *Loanda*. They haue diuers rich commodities from this kingdome, but the most important is euery yeere about 5000. slaues, which they transport from thence, and sell them at good round prizes in all the isles and maine lands of the west Indies: and for the head of euery slaue so taken vp, there is a good taxe paid to the crowne of Portugall. From this kingdome one might easily go to the countrie of *Prete Ianni*, for it is not thought to be very farre off: and it doth so abound with Elephants, victuall, and all other necessarie things, as would bring singular ease and commodity to such an enterprize. Vpon the kingdome of *Congo* confineth *Angola*, with whose prince of late yeeres *Paulo Dias* a Portugall captaine made war: And the principall occasion of this warre are certaine mines of siluer, in the mountaines of *Cabambe*, no whit inferior to those of *Potosi*; but by so much are they better, as fine siluer goeth beyond that which is base, and course. And out of doubt, if the Portugals had esteemed so well of things neere at hand, as they did of those farther off and remote, and had thither bent their forces wherewith they passed *Capo de buena esperança*, and went to *India*, *Malaca*; and the *Malucoes*; they had more easily, and with lesse charge found greater wealth: for there are no countries in the world richer in gold and siluer, then the kingdomes of *Mandinga*, *Ethiopia*, *Congo*, *Angola*, *Butua*, *Toroa*, *Maticuo*, *Boro*, *Quiticui*, *Monomotapa*, *Cafati*, and *Mohenemugi*. But humane avarice esteemeth more of an other mans, then his owne, and things remote appeere greater then those neere at hand. Betweene *Cabo de buena esperança*, and *Cape Guardafu*, the Portugals haue the fortresses of *Sena*, *Cephala*, and *Mozambique*. And by these they continue masters of the trade with the bordering nations, all which abound in gold and iuorie. By these fortresses they haue speciall commoditie, for their navigation to the Indies; bicause their fleetes sometimes winter, and otherwhiles victuall, and refresh themselues there. In these parts the king of *Melinde* is their greatest friend, and those of *Quiloa*, and other neighbour islands, are their tributaries. The Portugals want nothing but men. For besides other islands, which they leaue in a manner abandoned, there is that of *Saint Laurence*, one of the greatest in all the world (being a thousand two hundred miles long, and fower hundred and fower-score broad)

\* Mine authors here much mistake the matter.



the which, though it be not well tilled, yet for the goodnes of the soile it is apt and fit to be manured, nature hauing distinguished it with riuers, harbours, & most commodious baies. These States belonging to the crowne of Portugall, feare no other but such sea-forces, as may be brought thither by the Turkes. But the daily going to and fro of the Portugall fleetes, which coast along vp and downe those seas, altogether secureth them. In the yeere 1589. they tooke neere vnto Mombaza, fower gallies, and a galliot, belonging to the Turkes, who were so bold as to come euen thither.

*The dominions of the great Turke in Africa.*

**T**He great Turk possesseth in Africa all the sea-coast from Velez de Gu-mera, or (as some hold opinion) from the riuier Multia, which is the easterne limite of the kingdome of Fez, euen to the Arabian gulfe or Red sea, except some few places (as namely Mersalcabir, Melilla, Oran, and Pennon) which the king of Spaine holdeth. In which space before mentioned are situate fundrie of the most famous cities and kingdomes in all Barbarie; that is to say, Tremizen, Alger, Tenez, Bugia, Constantina, Tunis, Tripolis, and all the countrey of Egypt; from Alexandria to the citie of Asna, called of old Siene, together with some part of Arabia Tro-glodytica, from the towne of Suez to that of Suachen. Also in Africa the grand Signor hath fise viceroyes, called by the names of Beglerbegs or Bassas, namely at Alger, Tunis, Tripolis, at Miffir for all Egypt, and at Suachen for those places which are chalenged by the great Turke in the dominions of *Prete Ianni*. Finally, in this part at Suez in the bottome of the Arabian gulfe, is one of his fower principall Arsenals, or places for the building, repairing, docking, and harbouring of his warlike gallies, which may lie heere vnder couert, to the number of fise and twentie bottomes.



*A*

*A summarie discourse of the manifold  
Religions professed in Africa:  
and first of the Gentiles.*



Africa containeth fower sorts of people different in religion: that is to say, Gentiles, Iewes, Mahumetans, and Christians. The Gentiles extend themselues along the shoare of the Ocean, in a manner from Cabo Blanco, or the white Cape, euen to the northren borders of Congo; as likewise, from the southerly bounds of the same kingdome, euen to Capo de buena Esperança; & from thence, to that De los Corrientes: and within the land they spred out, from the Ethiopick Ocean, euen vnto Nilus, and beyond Nilus also from the Ethiopick, to the Arabian sea. These Gentiles are of diuers sorts, for some of them haue no light of God, or religion, neither they are gouerned by any rule or law. Wherupon the Arabians call them *Casri*, that is to say, lawlesse, or without law. They haue but fewe habitations, and they liue for the most part in cayes of mountaines, or in woods, wherein they finde some harbour from winde and raine. The ciuilest among them, who haue some vnderstanding and light of diuinitie and religion, obey the Monomotapa, whose dominion extendeth with a great circuite, from the confines of Matama, to the riuier Cuama: but the noblest part thereof is comprehended betwene the mightie riuier of Magnice or Spirito Sancto, and that of Cuania, for the space of sixe hundred leagues. They haue no idols, and beleue in one only God, called by them *Mozimo*. Little differing from these we may esteeme the subiects of *Mohenemugi*. But among all the *Casri*, the people called *Agag* or *Giacchi*, are reputed most brutish, inhabiting in woods and dens, and being deuourers of mans flesh. They dwell vpon the left banke of Nilus, betwene the first and second lake. The *Anzichi* also haue a sham-bles of mans flesh, as we haue of the flesh of oxen. They eate their enemies whom they take in war; they sell their slaues to butchers, if they can light on no greater prise: and they inhabit from the riuier *Zaire*, euen to the deserts of Nubia. Some others of them are rather addicted to witchcraft, then to idolatrie: considering that in a man, the feare of a superior power is so naturall, that though he adore nothing vnder the name and title of a God, yet doth he reuerence and feare some superioritie, although he know not what it is. Such are the *Biafresi*, and their neighbours, all of them being addicted in such sort to witchcraft, as that they vaunt, that by force of enchantment, they can not onely charme, and make men die, much more molest and

bring them to hard point: but further, raise windes and raine, and make the skie to thunder and lighten, and that they can destroy all herbes and plants, and make the flockes and heards of cattell to fall downe dead. Whereupon they reuerence more the diuell then any thing else: sacrificing vnto him of their beasts and fruits of the earth, yea their owne blood also, and their children. Such are likewise the priests of Angola, whom they call Ganghe. These make profession that they haue in their hands dearth and abundance; faire weather and foule; life and death. For which cause it can not be expressed, in what veneration they are held among these Barbarians. In the yeere 1587. a Portugall captaine being in a part of Angola with his souldiers, a Ganga was requested by the people, to refresh the fields, which were drie and withered, with some quantitie of water. He needed no great intreatie, but going forth with diuers little bells, in presence of the Portugals, he spent an halfe hower in fetching suudry gambols & skips, & vntering diuers superstitious murmurings: and behold, a cloud arose in the aire, with lightning and thunder. The Portugals grew amazed; but all the Barbarians with great ioy admired and extolled vnto heauen, their Ganga, who now gaue out intolerable brags, not knowing what hung ouer his head: For the windes outrageously blowing, the skie thundring after a dreadfull manner, in stead of the raine by him promised, there fell a thunderbolt, which like a sword cut his head cleane from his shoulders. Some other idolaters not looking much aloft, worship earthly things: such were the people of Congo before their conuersion, and are at this day those that haue not yet receiued the Gospell. For these men worship certaine dragons with wings, and they foolishly nourish them in their houses, with the delicatest meates that they haue. They worship also serpents of horrible shape, goats, tygers, and other creatures, and the more they feare and reuerence them, by how much the more deformed and monstrous they are. Amongst the number of their gods also, they reckon bats, owles, owlets, trees, and herbes, with their figures in wood and stone: and they do not onely worship these beasts liuing, but euen their versy kins when they are dead, being filled with straw, or some other matter: and the manner of their idolatrie is, to bow downe before the foresaid things, to cast themselves groueling vpon the earth, to couer their faces with dust, and to offer vnto them of their best substance. Some lifting vp their mindes a little higher, worship starres, such be the people of Guinie, and their neighbours, who are enclined to the worship of the sunne, the greatest part of them: and they hold opinion, that the soules of those dead that liued well, mount vp into heauen, and there dwell perpetually neere vnto the sunne. Neither want there amongst these, certaine others so superstitious, as they worship for God the first thing they meete withall, coming out of their houses. They also hold their kings in the account & estimation of Gods, whom they suppose to be descended from heauen, & their kings, to maintaine themselves in such high reputation, are serued with woonderfull ceremonies, neither will they be seene but very seldome.

of

*Of the Iewes.*

THE Iewes who haue bene dispersed by god throughout the whole world, to confirme vs in the holie faith, entered into Ethiopia in the *Queene of Sabas* daies, in companie of a son that *Salomon* had by her, to the number (as the *Abassins* affirme) of twelue thousand, and there multiplied their generation exceedingly. In that they not onely filled *Abassia*, but spread themselves likewise all ouer the neighbour prouinces. So that at this day also the *Abassins* affirme, that vpon *Nilus* towards the west, there inhabiteth a most populous nation of the Iewish stock, vnder a mightie *K*. And some of our moderne Cosmographers set downe a prouince in those quarters, which they call The land of the Hebrewes, placed as it were vnder the equinoctiall, in certaine vknowne mountaines, betweene the confines of *Abassia*, and *Congo*. And likewise on the north part of the kingdome of *Goiame*, and the southerly quarter of the kingdome of *Gorham*, there are certaine mountaines, peopled with Iewes, who there maintaine themselves free, and absolute, through the inaccessible situations of the same. For in truth by this means, the inhabitants of the mountaines (speaking generally) are the most ancient, and freest people: in that the strong situation of their native soile secureth them, from the incursions of forraigne nations, and the violence of their neighbours. Such are the *Scottes* in *Britaine*, and the *Biskaines* in *Spaine*. But to return againe to our purpose: the *Anzichi*, who extend from the bankes of the riuer *Zaire*, euen to the confines of *Nubia*, vnto circumcision, as also diuers other bordering people do, a thing that must necessarilie haue been brought in by the Iewes, & yet remayning still in vse, after the annihilation of the Mosaicall law amongst them. Some also think, that the people called *Casri* or *Casates* at this day, who are gentiles, draw their originall from the Iewes, but being enuironed on euery side by Idolaters, they haue by little and little swarued from the law of *Moses*: and so are become, as it were, insensibly, Idolaters. On the other side, the Iewes being woonderfully increased in *Spaine*, passed one after an other into *Affricke* and *Mauritania*, and dispersed themselves euen to the confines of *Numidia*, especiallie by meanes of traffick, and the profession of goldsmithes, the which being utterly forbidden the *Mahumetans*, is altogether practised amongst them by the Iewes, as are likewise diuers other mechanicall crafts, but principallie that of black smithes. A thing which notable appeareth in mount *Sessaua* in the kingdome of *Maroco*, and in mount *Antera*. It is said that *Eirdeuet*, a towne in the kingdome of *Maroco*, was inhabited by the Iewes, of the stock (as they affirme) of *Dauid*, who notwithstanding by little and little are growne *Mahumetans*. The Iewes increased afterwards in *Affricke*, when first *Ferdinando* king of *Spaine* called The catholicke, and after him *Emanuel* king of *Portugal*, put them forth of their dominions: For then many went ouer into the kingdomes of *Fez* and *Maroco*, and brought in thither

thither the artes and professions of Europe vnkowne before to those Barbarians. In Bedis, Teza, Elmedina, Tessa, and in Segelmesse euery placeis full of them. They passe also by way of traffick euen to Tombuto, although *John Leo* writeth how that king was so greatly their enemy, that he confiscated the goods of those that traded with them. It importeth me not to speake of Egypt, because it hath euer beene, as well by reason of the neernes of Palestina, as for the commodity of traffick, whereunto they are much enclined, as it were, their second countrie. Here in great number, and in a manner in all the cities and townes thereof, they exercise mechanickall artes, and vse traffick and merchandize, as also take vpon them the receipt of taxes and customes: but aboue all other places, in Alexandria and Cairo, where they amount to the number of fife and twentie thousand, and the ciuill sort among them do vsually speake the Castilian tounge.

This much may suffice to haue been spoken concerning the Iewes. It now remaineth, that we come to intreat of the Mahumetans of Africa. Concerning whom, before we make any particular relation, it will not be amisse; for the readers more perfect instruction, to speake somewhat in generall: as namely of the sinister proceedings of their first seducer Mahumet; of the variety and propagation of their damned sects ouer the east and south parts of the world; of the fower principall nations which are the maintainers and vpholders of this diabolicall religion; and of sundry other particulars most worthie the obseruation.

*Of Mahumet, and of his accursed religion in generall.*

*\* Or Emina.* **M**ahumet his father, was a certaine prophane Idolater called *Abdala*, of the stock of *Ismael*, and his mother was one *\* Heminna* a Iew, both of them being of very humble, and poore condition. He was borne in the yeere of our Lord 562. and was endowed with a graue countenance and a quick wit. Being growne to mans estate, the Scenite Arabians, accustomed to rob, and runne all ouer the countrie, tooke him prisoner, and sold him to a Persian merchant, who discerning him to be apt, and subtile about busines, affected and held him in such account, that after his death his mistresse remaining a widow, scorned not to take him for her husband. Being therefore enriched by this meanes, with goods and credit, he raised vp his minde to greater matters. The times then answered very fitly for one that would disturbe or worke any innouation. For the Arabians vpon some euill entreatie were malecontented with the Emperour *Heraclius*. The heresies of *Arrius* and *Nestorius*, had in a miserable sort shaken and annoied the church of God. The Iewes, though they wanted power, yet amounted they to a great number. The Saracens preuailed mightily, both in humber and force. And the Romaine Empire was full of slaues. *Mahumet* therefore taking hold on this opportunitie, framed a law, wherein all of them should haue some part, or prerogatiue. In this two Apostata Iewes, and two

heretikes,

heretikes, assisted him: of which, one was *John*, being a scholler of *Nestorius* schoole; and the other *Sergius*, of the sect of *Arrius*. Whereupon the principall intention of this cursed law was wholie aimed against the diuinitie of our Sauour Iesus Christ, wickedly oppugned by the Iewes and Arrians. He perswaded this law, first by giuing his wife to vnderstand, and his neighbours by her meanes, and by little and little others also, that he conuerled with the angell *Gabriel*, vnto whose brightnes he ascribed the falling sicknes, which many times prostrated him vpon the earth: dilating and amplifying the same in like sort, by permitting all that which was plausible to sense and the flesh; as also by offering libertie to all slaues that would come to him, and receiue his law. Wherefore being prosecuted hard by the masters of those fugitiue slaues led away by him, he fledde to Medina Talnabi, and there remained some time. From this flight the Mahumetans fetch the originall of their Hegeira. But questionlesse there was nothing that furthered more the enlargement of the Mahumetan sect, then prosperitie in armes, and the multitude of victories; whereby *Mahumet* overthrew the Persians, became lord of Arabia, and draue the Romaines out of Syria. And his successors afterwards extended their empire from Euphrates to the Atlantick Ocean, and from the riuier Niger to the Pirenei mountaines, and beyond. They occupied Sicilia, assailed Italy, and with continuall prosperitie, as it were, for three hundred yeeres, either subdued, or encumbred, both the east & west. But to returne to *Mahumet* his law, it embraceth circumcision, & maketh a difference between meats pure & vnpure, partly to allure the Iewes. It denieth the Diuinitie of Christ, to reconcile the Arrians, who were then most mightie; it foisteth in many friuolous fables, that it might fit the Gentiles: & looseth the bridle to the flesh, which is a thing acceptable to the greatest part of men. Whereupon *Auicen* (though he were a Mahumetan) writeth thus of such a law: *Lex nostra* (saith he) *quam dedit Mahumeth, &c.* that is to say, *Our Law, which Mahumet gaue vs, regardeth the disposition of felicitie or miserie, according to the body. But there is another promise, which concerneth the minde, or the soule: which wise Diuines had a farre greater desire to apprehend, then that of the body, which though it be giuen vnto them, yet respect they it not, nor hold it in any estimation, in comparison of that felicitie which is a coniunction with truth.*

*Mahumet* being dead, *\* Allé*, *Abubequer*, *Omar*, and *Odoman* his kinsmen, each of them pretending to be his true successor, wrote distinctly euerie one by himselfe. Vpon which there did arise fower seuerall sects. *Allé* was head of the sect *Imemia*, being followed by the Persians, Indians, and many Arabians, and Gelbines of Africa. *Abubequer* gaue foundation to the sect *Melchia*, embraced generally by the Arabians, Saracens, and Africans. *Omar* was author of the *Anesia*, which is on foote among the Turks in Syria, and in that part of Africk which is called *Zahará*. *Odman* left behind him the *Baneaia*, or *Xefaia*, as we may terme it, which wanteth not followers among the foresaid nations. Of these fower sects, in proceesse of time,

haue

*\* Or Haly.*

grown sixtie eight other verie famous, besides some of lesse renowme and fame. Among the many Mahumetan sects, there are the Morabites, who lead their liues for the most part in Hermitages, and make profession of Morall Philosophie, with certaine principles differing from the Alcoran. One of these was that Morabite, which certaine yeeres past, shewing *Mahumet* his name imprinted in his brest (being done with Aqua Fortis, as I suppose, or some such thing) raised vp a great number of Arabians in Africk, and laide siege to Tripolis; where being betrayed by his captaine, he remained the Turkes prisoner, who sent his skin to the grand Signor. This man being in prison, said to an Italian slaue, his familiar, who went to visite him; I greeue at nothing but you Christians, who haue abandoned me. In that the knights of Malta onely sent him small succour, of powder and shot. These Morabites affirme, (to declare some of their fooleries) that when *Allé* fought, he killed ten thousand Christians with one blow of a sworde, and that this sword was an hundred cubits long. Then there is the foolish, and brutish sect of *Cobrini*. One of these shewed himselfe not many yeeres sithence in the market places and quarters of Algier, mounted on a reed, with a bridle and raines of leather, giuing the multitude to vnderstand, that vpon that horse in one night, he rid an hundred leagues; and he was for this greatly honored and reuerenced.

In tract of time, there grew amongst the Mahumetans, through the vanitie of their law, and the incredible variety and difference of opinions, great disorders: For their sect being not onely wicked, and treacherous (as we haue declared) but also grosse and foolish, those that made profession thereof to defend and maintaine it, were enforced to make a thousand interpretations and constructions, far sometimes from reason, and otherwhiles from the expresse words of *Mahumet* him selfe. The *Califas* endeuoured mightily to reforme this; but their prouisions of greatest importance were two. For first, *Moania* (this man florished about the yeere of our Lord 770) called an assembly of learned and iudiciall men, to establish that which in their sect should be beleueed, and to this end he caused all the bookes of Mahumet, and his successors, to be gathered together. But they not agreeing amongst themselves, he chose out of them, fixe of the most learned, and shutting them within an house, with the said writings, he commaunded them, that euery one should make choise of that, which seemed best vnto him. These men reduced the Mahumetan doctrine into fixe books, setting downe the pennaltie of losse of life, to them that should otherwise speake, or write of the law. But because the Arabians gaue their mindes to Philosophie, in the vniversities of Bagdet, Fez, Maroco, and Cordoua (and being of piercing and subtil wits) they could not but looke into the fopperies of their sect. There was added vnto this another prouiso, which was a statute, that forbade them the studie of Philosophie: by meanes of which statute, their Vniuersities before most flourishing, haue within these fower hundred yeeres daily declined. At this day the sects of *Mahumet* in impietie are distinguished more

more through the might and power of those nations that follow them, then of themselves: and the principall nations are fower, that is to say, Arabians, Persians, Tartars, and Turkes. The Arabians are most superstitious, and zealous. The Persians stand more vpon reason and nature: The Tartars hold much gentleness and simplicitie: and the Turkes (especially in Europe) are most of them Libertines, and Martialistes.

The Arabians, as they that esteeme it for great glorie, that *Mahumet* was of their nation, and buried in Mecca (or as others thinke in Medina Talnabi) haue laboured with all arte, and yet procure to spread their sect ouer the whole world. In India they first preuailed with preaching, and afterwards with armes. Considering that seuen hundred yeeres sithence (king *Perimal* reigning in Malabar) they began there to sow this cockle: and to bring the Gentiles more easily within their net, they tooke (and at this daie take) their daughters to wife, a matter greatly esteemed of them, by reason of these mens wealth. By this policie and the traffike of spices, which yielded them infinite profite, they quickly set foote, and fastned it in India. They built townes, and planted colonies, and the first place, where they grew to a bodie, was Calicut, which of a small thing, by their concurrence and traffike, became a mightie citie. They drew king *Perimal* to their sect, who at their perswasion resolved to go and end his daies at Mecca; and for that purpose he put himselfe onward on the voiage, with certaine ships laden with pepper and other precious commodities: but a terrible tempest met him in the midst of his course, and drowned him in the sea. They inhabite in Malabar where two sorts of Arabians or Moores (as we may terme them) haue more exceedingly increased and preuailed, then in any other part of the Indies: one is of strangers that arriue there by reason of the traffike of Arabia, Cambaia, and Persia: and the other be those that dayly are borne of a Moorish father, and a mother Gentile, or both of father and mother Moores, and these (who are called Nateani, and differ from the other people, in person, customes, and habit) make as it were a fourth part of the inhabitants of that countrey. From Malabar, they went to the Maldiuæ, and Zeilan. Here they began to take vpon them the managing of the customs and impositions of cities and townes; and by making them greater then in times past, they attained to the grace and fauour of the Princes and Lords, together with great reputation and authority, yea preeminence and superiority ouer the common people: and fauouring those who embraced their sect, daylie preached and diuulged by the Papassi; but holding their hands heauie ouer such as shewed themselves repugnant, they incredibly aduanced mahumetisme. Afterwards perceiuing themselves strong and mightie, both in riches, and followers, they seized on the townes and cities. So that at this day, they commaund a good part of the Maldiuæ, and the ports of the most noble island of Zeilan, except that of Columbo where the Portugals haue a fortresse. By like stratagem are they become masters of the west part of Sumatra, within little more then these two hundred yeeres, first preuailing by trade



trade, and commerce, then by marriage and affinity, and last of all by armes. From hence going forward, they have taken into their hands the greatest part of the ports of that large Archipelago of the Luçones, Malucos, Iauas, &c. They are Lords of the citie of Sunda, in the greater Iaua, they enjoy the greatest part of the Ilands of Banda, and Maluco; they raigne in Burneo, & Gilolo. They came once as far as Luçon, a most noble Iland, and one of the Philippinas, & had planted therein three colonies. On the other side, they conquered vpon the firme land, first the rich kingdome of Cambaia, & there established their sect, as they did the like, in all the places adjoining; from hence they went to Bengala, and became Lords thereof. They cut off by little and little, from the crowne of Siam, the state of Malaca, (which the Portugals holde at this day) as likewise those of Ior, and Pam; and more then two hundred leagues along the coast. Finally they are entred into the most ample kingdome of China, and haue built Moscheas in the same; and if the Portugals in India and the Malucos, and afterwards the Spaniards in the Philippinas had not met them on the way, and with the gospel and armes, interrupted their course, they would at this instant haue possessed infinite kingdomes of the east: yea in this they are so industrious and bould, to our confusion, that euen the Arabian mariners, that go in the Portugall ships will tarrie behind in the Gentile-townes, there to publish their sect; and in the yeere 1555. one of these men had passed euen as far as Iapon, for this purpose; so that if the Portugals had not remedied it in due time, he would peradventure haue wrought there some alteration.

The Persian nation, as touching their sect, a little before our time, haue beene made renowned among those barbarous people, by the valor and armes of *Ismael*, called the Sophi. This man accounting himselfe to be of the race and blood of *Alle*, brought his owne sect into credit and reputation, and waged warre against those borderers, who would not accept of it. He wore a redde Turbant, with twelue points or corners, in memoriall of the twelue sonnes of *Ocen*, the sonne of *Alle*, willing that all his followers should weare the like; and many people came in vnto him, and in a maner all those nations which inhabite betwene the riuers Euphrates and Abianus, and between the Caspian sea & the Persian gulphe. *Tammas* his sonne sent the said twelue-cornered Turbant to the Mahumetan Princes of Malabar and Decan, perswading them to receiue it with his sect, and bestowing the title of a king, on whomsoever would accept of it, but no others receiued it, saue Nizzamaluco. It is a common voice and opinion, that the greatest part of the Mahumetans of Syria and the lesser Asia follow and affect inwardly the sect of *Allé*, and of the Persians; the which the Turkes perceiuing in the uproare of Techelle, made a mightie slaughter of them, carrying the kinsmen of the slaine, and those suspected, out of Asia into Europe.

But now let vs passe to the Tartars. These (\*as otherwhiles we declared) descended of the ten tribes of Israel, being transported by the order and commission of *Salmanazar*, king of the Assyrians, beyond India, into the land

of Arsareth. Here degenerating into rude and barbarous customes, and forgetting in a greate part, or altogether, the Moysaicall ceremonies, they hardly retained circumcision. They came out of this their banishment, in the yeere of our Lord 1200. and in a small time, with the ruine of infinite nations; made themselves terrible to all the east, and no lesse to the north. Pope Innocent the fourth, being amazed at the horrible storme, that hung ouer the head of Christendome (for they had spread themselves like locusts euen to the bankes of Danubius) sent from the councill of Lyons, Fryer *Ascellino*, of the order of Dominicus, with other Fryers, to the great C A N in the yeere 1246. to exhort him to embrace the name and faith of Christ; or at least to let the Christians alone in peace. Of baptism he accepted not, but promised a league with the Christians, for five yeeres. Others notwithstanding will needes haue it, that he was conuerted, and that taking vp armes in fauour of the Christians, he caused Multaceno the Califa of Baldach, to dy with famine, amidst the treasures heaped vp by him. But afterwards either hee, or his successor, together with his people, denying their Christianity, became Mahumetans in religion. And sithence that time, the Tartarian name and fame growing obscure, that of the Turkes began to flourish. The Tartars *Petegorski* notwithstanding vpon the mountaines of Cumania, remained firme in the Christian faith, but yet corrupted with the errors of the Greekes and Moscouites. The Colmugineere the Caspian sea, continued in Paganisme, who are termed Capigliati, because they shauie not off their hayres, as the other Tartars do. The Kirgeffi also be Idolaters, as otherwhiles we declared. The other Tartars that are come on this side of Imaus, haue all, from one to an other, embraced Mahumetisme. And amongst others the Zagatai, who through the emulation they haue with the Persians (vpon whome they border and contend for Empire) as concerning sect, follow the opinion of the Turkes, as also the Mogores their descendents, who in these our dayes haue enlarged their Empire, betwene mount Caucasus and the Ocean, and between Ganges, and Indus. But the Tartars of Caraya, resident beyond Imaus, and vpon the desert called Lop, remaine generallie in Idolatry, although there continue many Christians amongst them, of the sect of Nestorius, neither want there some Mahumetans.

Now let vs come to the Turkes, who in largenes of Empire, are superior to the other sects. Of these, part inhabite in Asia, part in Europe. Those of Asia incline much to the opinion of the Persians, and especially they that inhabite in Natolia, and the borders. But those of Europe are generally lesse superstitious then the Asians, and by reason of their daily conuersation with Christians, they haue a deeper opinion and conceit of Christ then the others, yea, and many of them hold him for God, and Redeemer. And it is not long sithence there were diuers put to death in Constantinople with speciall constancie on their part: and it was thought that many of the grand Signors court held the same opinion. The Turkes, especially those of Europe, are of two sorts: for some are naturall Turkes, others accessorie, or accidentall.

With this frier  
Ascellino was  
sent Iohannes  
de Plano Car-  
pini, whose  
voiage is put  
downe in the  
first volume  
of the English  
voiaiges.

accidentall. Naturall I terme them, that are borne of Turkish parents: and them I call accidentall, who leauing our sacred faith, or the Moyfaicall law, become Mahumetans: the which the Christians performe by circumcising themselves, and the Lewes by lifting vp a finger. Now the Christians become Turkes, partly vpon some extreme & violent passion. *Cherseagli* (who afterwards was great with *Bazaieth*) turned Turke to bee reuenged of his father, who tooke from him his wife, amidst the solemnitie of the marriage. *Plucciali* denied the faith to be reuenged of a slaue, his companion in the gal-  
*lie*, who called him scald pate. Some abiure the faith to release themselves of torments and cruelties; others for hope of honors and temporall great-  
 nes: and of these two sorts there are a great number in Constantinople, be-  
 ing thought to be Christians in hart: and yet through slothfulnes, or first  
 to gather together more wealth, or expecting opportunitie to carrie with  
 them, their wiues and children, or for feare of being discouered in their de-  
 parture and voiage, or else through sensualitie, and for that they would not  
 be deprived of the licentiousnes and libertie of the life they lead, resolute not  
 to performe that they are bound vnto; deferring thus from moneth to  
 moneth, & from yeere to yeere, to leaue this Babylon & sinke of sin. But the  
 greatest part of Renegados become Mahumetans without perceiuing it. In  
 that the grand Signor sendeth euery fower yeeres, more or lesse, according as  
 need requireth, to take through his states of Europe, of euery three christian  
 male children one, at the discretion of his Commissaries, by way of tribute,  
 and they take them from the age of ten, to the yeeres of seuentene. These  
 being brought to Constantinople, are without other ceremonies circumci-  
 sed, and part of them are sent into Natolia and Caramania to learne the  
 tongue, religion, and fashions of the Turkes: and part are emploied about  
 the seruice of the Seraglios, or palaces of Constantinople, Pera, and Andri-  
 nople. Heere liuing among the Turkes, farre from their parents, separate  
 from all conuersation with the faithfull, and deprived of all spirituall aide  
 and helpe, without perceiuing, it they are made Turkes. The author of this,  
 the most diabolicall institution that euer was made, was a certaine Turkish  
 saint, called *Abewir*, in the daies of *Amurath* the second: and in the be-  
 ginning the number was but three thousand, and afterwards they exceeded  
 not twelue thousand, vntill the time of *Amurath* the third, who increased  
 them to the number of fower and twentie thousand. But returning to their  
 education: after some time they are called home againe to the Seraglios  
 of the Zamoglans (for so are they termed, till they be enrolled among the  
 Ianissaries) to remaine there vnder their heads and gouernours: and in short  
 time they become Ianissaries, or Spahies; and either they go to the warre,  
 or are bestowed in some garrison, or else are resident in the court of the  
 Turke. They are called The sonnes of the grand Signor: they liue with great  
 license and libertie: they do whatsoeuer pleaseth themselves: neither can  
 they be iudged by any but the Agads: during their liues they are seldomes  
 punished, and yet when it is done, it is with great secrecie: in buying they  
 make

Or Olouchali.

make their owne prizes. These snares are strong enough to procure, that  
 they neuer care for returning any more to the bosome of the church. But  
 that which is woorst of all: euery new Prince bestoweth on them a great  
 larges, and augmenteth their pay, at the Christians charge. They also kill  
 and robbe whomsoeuer they please, especially the Christians throughout  
 the whole countie, or in marching to the warre, and the Christians dare not  
 so much as in a word finde themselves agreed: whereupon there groweth  
 in them such a scorne and contempt of the Christian name, that they re-  
 maine strangers to it. That which I haue said of yoong male children taken  
 from out their mothers bosomes, who without perceiuing it become Ma-  
 humetanes, hapneth in like manner vnto them, whom the pirates by sea, or  
 soldiers by land make slaues, presenting them to the grand Signor. Besides  
 the foresaid deuises, the Turkes further spread abroad their sect with all kind  
 of vantage and furtherance. For they abase and bring to extreme miserie  
 the Christians and Moores their subiects, not permitting them to ride, nor  
 beare any kinde of armes, nor to exercise any maner of iustice, or govern-  
 ment. They make it lawfull to take Christian women that are not married. If  
 the wife of a Christian turneth Turke, and marrieth herselfe with a Turke,  
 their law permitteth, that the Christian husband by turning Turke may take  
 her againe. They forbid the Christians to repaire their ruinate Churches,  
 and suffer them in no wise to reedifie them fallen downe, without great  
 bribes; and so the Christians through pouertie let them come to ruine: by  
 meanes whereof the publike worship of God faileth, and in progresse of  
 time also, the very Christian faith and beleefe. In Asia they will not permit  
 the Greekes the vse of their language, but onely in sacred administrations,  
 to the end that together with their language, they may also loose and forget  
 their Christian fashions and customes. The Spahi being Lords for terme  
 of life, of infinite villages, take such young men into their seruitude, as best  
 pleaseth them; who in proesse of time, by cōuersation with their maisters,  
 and the fauours they hope after, and by the wicked fashions and customes  
 which they learne, as also through the sinnes and vices, wherein they are  
 drowned, do become Turkes. And the Greekes children, after the example  
 of their companions, being thus fauoured and made much of, incline in  
 such a sort vnto this euill, that vpon euery light occasion, they threaten their  
 fathers and mothers to turne Turkes. Further it is forbidden the Mahume-  
 tanes to make restitution of any place, once taken with armes, and wherein  
 they haue built a Moschea. To conclude, they vse all manner of circum-  
 stances, by meane of which they may amplifie or enlarge their dominion  
 and sect.

## Of the Mahumetans of Africa in particular.



He Mahumetan impietie hath spread it selfe throughout Africa beyond measure: this pestilence entred into Egypt in the yeere of our Lord 637. by the armes of *Omar*. From whence a captaine of *Odoman* first passed into Africa in the yeere 650. with fower-score thousand fighting men, who there defeated *Gregorius Patricius*. But they perpetually cast out of Africk the Romaines with the people of *Abstimacus*, and *Leontius* the emperour, in the yeere 699. and wholie impatronized themselves of Barbarie. They pierced into Numidia & Libya in the yeere 710. and ouerthrew the *Azanaghi*, and the people of *Gualata*, *Oden*, and *Tombuto*. The yeere afterwards 973. hauing passed *Gambea*, they infected the Negroes, and the first that drunke of their poison were those of *Melli*. In the yeere 1067. *Iataia* the sonne of *Abubequer* entred into the lower Ethiopia, and by little and little subuerred those people which confine vpon the deserts of Libya and Egypt, piercing euen to Nubia & Guinea. The Arabians haue augmented their sect in Africk, first with force of armes, by banishing of the naturall inhabitants, the which they might well do, by reason of their infinite multitude: and of them, that verse of *Dauid* may well be vnderstood: *In circuitu impij ambulans: secundum altitudinem tuam, multiplicasti filios hominum, &c.* The wicked walke round about; according to thy greatnes, thou hast multiplied the sonnes of men. Where they could not come, nor giue no blow with armes; there they haue ingrafted themselves, by preaching and traffike. The heresie of *Arrius* furthered their enterprize, wherewith the Vandales and Gothes being then inhabitants of Africa were infected. To further their designments they brought in the Arabicke language and letters. They founded Vniuersities and Studies, both for riches of reuenue, and magnificence of building most noble, especially in Marocco, and Fez. But there is nothing that hath greater furthered the progression of the Mahumetan sect, then perpetuities of victorie, & the greatnes of conquests, first of the Califas in the east, & afterwards of the Miramolines in Affrick: In that the greatest part of men, yea, and in a manner all, except such as haue fastned their confidence vpon the crosse of Christ, and settled their hope in eternitie, follow that which best agreeth with sense, and measure the grace of God by worldly prosperitie. And yet Christ (as *Iustinus* the Philosopher, and glorious martyr testifieth) promised no earthly reward to good works. Carnal men therefore perceiuing the empire of the Califas and Mahumetans continually to encrease in the east and west, taking into their hands both sea and land, (for this their felicitie in armes continued three hundred yeeres, wherein they conquered all that which lieth betweene the riuer *Abianus* and the Atlantike Ocean, and subdued Spaine, Sicilia, and a part of Italie and France) and iudging that temporall prosperitie and victories were the effects and fruits, or at least the

arguments

arguments and signes of the grace and fauour of God, they easily fell into Apostasie, whereunto the impietie of *Arrius* and other heretikes opened the way, who for long tract of time estranging themselves more and more from the Euangelicall truth, fell in the end into Atheisme: as we see hath fallen out in the course of some moderne enormities. But to returne from whence we haue digressed; in progresse of time there grew great differences betweene the Mahumetans: for their sect being no lesse sottish and foolish, then wicked and perfidious, the maintainers of it were driuen to fetch reasons farre off for defence of the same. But the Arabians not contented in Africa to haue subiugated with armes, and with false doctrine to haue pestered Barbarie, Numidia, Libya, and the countrey of Negroes, they further on the other side assailed the lower Ethiopia, both by sea and land. By lande entred thereinto in the yeere 1067. *Faiaia* the sonne of *Abubequer*, and by meanes of certaine *Alfachi*, he dispersed that pestilence into Nubia, and the neighbour prouinces. On the other side passing the Red sea, they first tooke knowledge of the coast of Ethiopia, euen to Cabo de los corrientes, by their continuall traffike thither: and afterwards being encouraged by the weakenes of the naturall inhabitants, they erected the kingdomes of *Magadazo*, *Melinde*, *Mombazza*, *Quiloa*, *Mozambique*, and seized on some ports of the island of *Saint Laurence*: and gathering force by little and little, they enlarged their empire within the land, and established therein the kingdomes of *Dangali* and *Adel*. So that on the one side they haue spread their sect, from the Red sea to the Atlantike Ocean, and from the Mediterranean sea to the riuer *Niger*, and farther: and on the other, haue taken into their hands all the easterne coast of Africk, from *Suez* to *Cape Guardafu*, and from this, euen to that *De los corrientes*, and the adioining islands. In which places though the people be not altogether Mahumetans, yet haue the Mahumetans the weapons & dominion in their hands; the which how much it importeth for the bringing in of sects, we may easily conceiue. To conclude, they haue often assailed the *Prete Ianni*; sometimes the *Turkes*, who haue taken from him the ports of the Red sea; and otherwhiles the *Moores*, vnder the conduct of the king of *Adel*, who hath, and doth molest them greatly, leading into captiuitie a great number of *Abassins*, where they become for the most part Mahumetans.

## Of the Christians of Africa.

NOW that we haue declared the miseries and darknes of Affrick, it remaineth that we set downe that little light of true religion which there is; the which I can not passe ouer, without exceeding glorie to the Portugall nation. In that they with inestimable charge, and infinite traualle, haue first fought to open the way to Ethiopia, and to bring the great *Negus* of *Abassia*, called by vs *Prete Ianni*, to the vniion of the christian church of Europe, performing whatsoeuer, after this, for the conuersion of

L1 3

the

the princes of Guinia and Meleghette to the faith, and yet more happily of the king of Congo and the Princes of Angola; and likewise with diuers colonies sent to the islands of the Atlantick Ocean, they haue no lesse aduanced the honor of their owne nation, then the propagating of the christian faith. And finally, passing beyond Cabo de buena esperanza, they haue resisted the Mahumetan sect, which had now extended it selfe on the backside of Africa, as far as Cabo de los corrientes.

*Of the Christians in Egypt.*

**T**He Christians of Egypt are partly strangers, partlie home-borne in the country; strangers come thither in regarde of traffick which there flourisheth aboue measure, especiallie in the cities of Alexandria and Cairo; by reason that this kingdome being most commodiously situate betweene the Red and Mediterran seas, vniteth the west parts of the world with the east, by meane of an infinite traffick; and therefore is it as it were a ladder, whereby the wealth of India and of the Eoan Ocean, passeth into the lesser Asia, into Africke, and Europe. Whereupon not onely the Venetians, Florentines, and Ragusians come thither in great numbers; but also the French, and English. The naturall Christians of Egypt, remaining after the spoiles and hauock of the Barbarians and the crueltie of the Saracens, Mamelucks, and Turkes, exceed not the number of fiftie thousand persons, and these dwell disperfed here and there, but principallie in the cities of Cairo, Messia, Monfalatto, Bucco, and Elchiafa, all placed vpon the bankes of Nilus. There are also many in the prouince of Minia, in which quarter appeare diuers monasteries. But among the monasteries of Egypt those of Saint *Anthony*, Saint *Paul*, and Saint *Macarius* are the principal. The first lieth in Troglodytica right ouer against Sait vpon a hill, where Saint *Anthony* was said to be beaten by diuels: the second is seated not far from this, in the midst of a desert: the third standeth in the wildernes, to the west of Bulac. This is the monasterie which in some histories is called Nitria, as I thinke, bicause in that quarter the waters of Nilus, being thickned by the heate of the sun in low places, are conuerted into salt and niter. Georgia stood vpon Nilus, six miles from the city of Munfia, a rich and magnificent Conuent, so called after the name of Saint *George*. There were in the same more then two hundred monkes, to the notable benefite and ease of pilgrimes & strangers, who were there curteously lodged. But they dying all of the plague, (about some hundred and fiftie yeeres sithence,) the place was abandoned.

Now to deliuer somewhat concerning the estates of these Christians: They are called by some \**Costi*, and by others, Christians from the girdle vpward: for albeit they be baptized, as we are, yet do they circumcise themselves like to the Iewes: so as a man may say, their Christianitie comes no lower then the girdle-stead. But that which is woorse, they haue for these 1000. yeeres followed the heresie of *Eutiches*, which alloweth but of one nature in Christ: by which heresie they also separate and dismember themselves

\* Or *Coptite*.

selues, from the vnion of the Church of Europe. The occasion of this separation and schisme, was the Ephesine councill, assembled by *Dioscorus* in defence of *Eutiches*, who was now condemned in the Calcedon councill by sixe hundred and thirtie fathers congregated together, by the authoritie of *Leo* the first. For the *Costi* fearing, that to attribute two natures vnto Christ, might be all one, as if they had assigned him two hypostases or persons, to auoid the heresie of the Nestorians, they became Eutichians. They say their diuine seruice in the Chaldean toong, oftentimes repeating Alleluia. They read the Gospell first in Chaldean, and then in Arabick. When the priest saith *Pax vobis*, the yoongeest amongst them laith his hand vpon all the people that are present. After consecration, they giue a simple peece of bread to the standers by: a ceremonie vsed also in Greece. They exercise their function in the church of Saint Marke amidst the ruines of Alexandria, and in that of Suez, vpon the red sea: they obey the Patriarke of Alexandria, and affirme themselves to be of the faith of *Prese Ianni*. In our daies two Popes haue attempted to reduce them to the vnion of the Romish church; *Pius* the fourth, and *Gregorie* the thirteenth. *Pius* the fourth in the yeere 1563. sent two Iesuit-priests for this purpose to Cairo; who staid there almost a yeere, but to no purpose, and with great danger of life: for one of them was appointed to the fire, from which he escaped by meanes of a merchant; who with eight hundred crownes pacified the Turkes, and caused the priest sodainly to flie away. But Pope *Gregorie* entred into this enterprise with more hope: for *Paulo Mariani* a famous Christian merchant, was at the same time in Cairo, who for his wisdom, magnificence, knowledge of toongs, and long practise in the affaires of the world, ioined with woonderfull eloquence, and presence of bodie, was in great esteeme and reputation, not onely among the Christians, but also with the Turkes, who equally loued him for his liberality, and honored him for his valour. This man had conference with the Patriarke of Alexandria about the reconciling of his people to the Romish church: whereunto the Patriarke not shewing himselfe difficult, or hard to be entreated, was contented to call by his letters into those parts, two priests of the same order, who were then with the Maronites in mount Libanus. In the meane while the Pope, who was aduertised of al this busines, taking the matter quickly in hand, wrote vnto the two priests, appointing one of them to go directlie to Cairo; and the other to returne back to Rome. Wherefore in the yeere 1582 in the moneth of October one of the said priests arriuing at Cairo, was courteously receiued by Mariani, and afterwards conducted to the Patriarke, who also made shew of great ioy and consolation. One might likewise perceiue a reasonable disposition in others who had any authority among the *Costi*. He aduertised the Pope of all; who sent a certaine other priest, with one breefe to the Patriarke, and an other to the Iesuites, wherein he exhorted them to go forward, and to bring the vnion, whereof so assured hope was conceiued, to good effect. The Patriarke receiued the breefe with



with great reuerence he kissed it, and according to their custome, laide it vpon his head, and afterwards demanded what it comprehended: the which with great feeling, and contentment hauing vnderstood, within fewe daies he instituted a Synod of some bishops, and certaine other principall persons of the nation. Heere the said priests hauing declared vnto them vpon how little ground they, who at the first receiued the faith from Saint *Marke*, were sequestred from the western church by the authoritie of one heretike, tooke much paines afterward in making them capable of the difference that is betweene a nature and an Hypostasis or person, to their exceeding great admiration, bicause they were in a manner destitute of all learning. For the Patriarke euen from his youth had led his life in the monasterie of Saint *Macarius*, farre not onely from the studies of learning, but also from the conuersation of men, neither appeered there any greater knowledge in the bishops. They had scarcely any booke of the ancient fathers, and yet those they had, were all dustie, and eaten with mothes: That whereof they made chiefest account, was an old volume, being torne and rent, which they called *The confession of the Fathers*, full of diuers dreames and fables, whereof notwithstanding, and of some other Arabicke bookes, the priests made speciall good vse, for the conuincing of them in their errors. Also hauing framed a *compendium* of most necessarie doctrine, they caused diuers copies of the same to be drawne, and gaue them to the learned of the Copti, to be considered of, who wondring at the strangenes of the things propounded vnto them, and not knowing how to answer the arguments of the priestes, demaunded time to search their owne writings, and to see what opinion their predecessors had held as concerning that point. In the meane while, they came often to the priests, and inquired of them the doctrine and forme of speech vsed in the Romish church. Whereupon they shewed them how greatly the same church had euer detested heresies: and how seuerely it had condemned the impietie of *Nestorius*, and contrariwise highly esteemed the authoritie of *Cyrillus Alexandrinus*, and the decrees of the first Ephesine Councell. Neither (bicause it confesseth two natures in Christ, ioined in one person without confusion) doth it therefore inferre two hypostasis or persons. In that a nature and a person are not the selfe same things. The which may cleerely be vnderstoode by the deepe mysterie of the holy Trinitie, wherein we acknowledge one nature, and three Hypostasis or persons. We auer therefore, that there are two natures in Christ, one diuine, which he hath eternally from his Father, the other humane, which he tooke temporally from the immaculate wombe of his mother; both of them ioined in one hypostasis or person. By these and other like demonstrations, they cleered the vnderstandings, and confirmed the mindes of the Copti. Howbeit, all this notwithstanding, the Synod being againe assembled (wherein were present, the Patriarke, siue bishops, diuers abbots of monasteries, and thirtie other principall persons) they plainly answered the priests that they had turned ouer their *Annales* & writings, & were resolved

in

in no wise to depart from the doctrine and faith of their predecessors. This vlooked-for answer, though it greatly troubled and displeased the priests, yet were they determined still to continue, and to proceed further in the enterprise. Whereupon declaring vnto them againe, how farre they were by *Disforum* meanes estranged from the doctrine taught in the Nicen, Constantinopolitan, and first Ephesine counsels, grounded on the authoritie of holy Scripture, and the ancient Fathers: and that to disallow of two natures in Christ, was no other but to denie, that he was neither true God nor man, (a matter abhominable, not only to their eares, but euen to their very vnderstandings) they preuailed so much, as that the matter was yet deferred off to another moneth. Being therefore congregated the third time, it seemed that God himselfe furthered this affaire more then vsually: for first with common consent they abrogated the law of circumcision, and withall after a disputation of fixe howers continuance, it was decreed, that as concerning the truth of this point, the priests were to be beleued, that there were two natures in Christ, and that the Copti though they auoided the name and title of two natures, yet denied they not, but that Christ was true man, and true God. Onely they were warie of the two natures, for feare of falling by litle & litle into two hypostases. Thus this busines being brought to so good a passe, was by the ambition and obstinacie of one man vterly crossed and hindred. This was the Vicar or Suffragan to the Patriarke, who aspiring himselfe to the Patriarkship, and seeing that if he followed this vnion begun with the Romaine church, he could not attaine to that dignitie, but by the Popes authoritie, (which he altogether misdoubted) he first made the decree of two natures to be deferred, commanding afterwards that none should subscribe thereunto, and finally caused the Patriarke wholie to giue ouer this busines, and to retire himselfe into the wilderness; whereas he continued for certaine months. Afterwards the priests vnderstanding where he was, wrot vnto him a letter, signifying therein, what a special desire they had to see him, and what damage the retiring of himselfe would procure to the sillie sheepe recommended vnto him by God, if he ratified not fully those things which were decreed vpon in the last assemblie. He curteously answered, making shew, that he would returne, when he had visited his dioces, and in the meane while they should expect him at Cairo. But while he thought vpon returne, his owne death interrupted him. The Copti haue a law, or custome, that betweene the death of one Patriarke and the creation of an other, there must be in a maner an whole yeeres space, for so long it is requisite, say they, that the church should bewaile the death of her spouse. Whereupon the priests, not to loose so much time, determined to go home into Italy, to acquaint the Pope with the successe of all things, and afterwards (neede so requiring) to returne. The Copti vnderstanding thus much, writ letters to the Pope, wherein they partly thanked him for the care he had of them; & partly lamented, that their recôciliation with the Romish church was not fully confirmed and finished. While the priests were about

to

to depart on Saint Mathewes day in the morning, there came a route of armed Turkes to their lodging. These layde hands suddenly on two priests, and another companion of theirs, and on three Fryers of the order of Saint Francis, lodged in the same house. No man knew the reason of this hurly burly, but for as much as could be learned, all this grew through the enuie of a Frenchman. This man aspiring to the degree of Consull or Gouvernor ouer his nation, which *Mariani* had obtayned, maliciously gaue the Bassa of Cairo to vnderstand, that *Mariani* suborned the people against the grād Signor, & that he had order from the K. of Spaine to leuie Christian men. And that to this end he kept in his house certaine priests, who practised in this behalf with *Mariani* for the king. There was nothing that more preiudiced the priests, then the Costies letters, which bred a vehement suspition in the Turkes, that such an vnion might be concluded with the Roman Church, as might worke some extraordinarie innovation. They were therefore cast into a filthie and stinking prison. The Venetian Consull assayed first by word of mouth, and after by suite and supplication, to assuage the furie and anger of the Bassa; Howbeit he received such bitter and nipping answers, that he himselfe was also afraid. But nothing preuaileth further with the Turkes then money. For it seemeth that with this onely their sauage furie is mitigated, and their fierceness appeased. Fiue thousand crownes therefore were disbursed for the priests libertie, wherein the Costi shewed themselves verie friendly, the richest of them offering one after another to lend money without any interest for the same. But this matter cost *Mariani* more then ten thousand crownes; and besides that, he was deprived of his degree of Consulship. The priests being thus freed out of prison, and observing how things went, returned one after another backe to Rome.



A

A relation touching the state of Christian Religion in the dominions of Prete Ianni, taken out of an oration of *Matthew Dresserus*, professour of the Greeke and Latine tongues, and of *Histories*, in the Vniuersitie of Lipska.

Who hauing first made a generall exordium to his auditors, proceedeth at length to the peculiar handling of the foresaid argument, in manner following.

**N**ondum (saith hee) *unius seculi atas exacta est* &c. The space of one hundred yeeres is not as yet fullie expired, since the same of the Ethiopians religion came first vnto our eares. Which, because it is in many points agreeable vnto Christian veritie, and carrieth an honest shew of pietie therewith, is to be esteemed as a matter most worthie of our knowledge. Of this therefore, so far forth as the short time of an oration will permit, I purpose to intreate; to the end it may appeare, both where, and what manner of Christian church that of Ethiopia is, and what were the first beginnings thereof.

This Ethiopian, not vnjustly called \*The southerne church, is situate in Africa far south, namely vnder the Torrid Zone, betweene the Tropique of Cancer and the Equinoctial; some part thereof also stretching beyond the Equinoctial, towards the Tropique of Capricornie. Two summers they haue euery yeere, yea in a manner, one continual summer: so that at the very same time in some fields they sowe, and in others they reape. Somewhere also they haue euery moneth ripe, some kinde of earthlie fruits or other, especiallie pulse. The people are skorched with the heate of the sun, and they are black, and go naked: saue onely that some couer their priuities with cloth of cotton or of silke. The countie is very great, and containeth well nigh twentie kingdomes; \*so that it is almost as large as Europe, or as all Christendome in these parts. At the beginning indeed it had not about two kingdomes; but in proceesse of time it was mightily enlarged by the conquest of countries adiacent. For it is environed on all sides by vnbelieuing gentiles and Mahumetans, who are most deadly enemies to the Christian religion; with whom the emperor of Ethiopia is at continuall wars, endeavouring by all possible meanes to reclaime them from their heathenish Idolatry to the faith of Iesus Christ. It is reported that certaine bordering \*Mores beare such implacable hatred against these Christians, that none of them may marry, before he bringeth testimony, that he hath slaine twelue of them.

The Emperour of Ethiopia is not called (as some imagine) Presbiter or priest;

\* As the church in all the higher parts of Europe hath bene called the western, and that of Greece and Asia, the eastern church.

\* Whatsoeuer *Dresserus* thinketh; yet diuers other authors of good note do hold the dominions of Prete Ianni to be nothing so large.

\* These Mores are called *Domas*.

priest; but Pretious *John*. For in the Ethiopian tongue he is termed Belul Gian, and in the Chaldean, Encoc Gian, both which additions signifie pretious or high; so that in a maner he commeth neer vnto the titles of our princes, who are called Illustres, Excelsi, Serenissimi, &c. to signifie, that they are exalted and aduanced aboue other people. And this is a common name to all the christian kings of Ethiopia; as *Pharao* was to the Egyptian kings, and *Augustus*, to the Roman emperours. Neither is this Pretious *John* a priest by profession, but a ciuill magistrate; nor is he armed so much with religion and lawes, as with military forces.

Howbeit he calleth himselfe The pillar of faith; because he is the maintainer of the Christian faith, not onely enioining his owne subiects to the obseruation thereof; but (what in him lyeth) enforcing his enemies also to embrace it.

In times past Ethiopia was gouerned by Queenes onely. Whereupon we reade in the history of the old testament, that the Queene of the south came to King *Salomon* from Saba, to heare his admirable wisdom, about the yeere of the world 2954. The name of this Queen (as the Ethiopians report) was *Maqueda*, who from the head-city of Ethiopia called Saba (which like an Isle, is enuironed on all sides by the riuer Nilus) trauelled by Egypt and the Red sea to Ierusalem. And she brought vnto *Salomon* an hundred & twenty talents of gold, which amount to 720000 golden ducates of Hungarie, that is, seuen tunnes of gold, and 20000 Hungarian ducates besides. This mightie sum of gold, with other things of great value, she presented vnto *Salomon*, who likewise requited her with most princely gifts. She contended with him also in propounding of sage questions, & obscure riddles. Amongst other matters (as it is reported by *Cedrenus*) she brought before him certaine damosels, and yoong men in maides attire, asking the king, how he could discerne one sexe from another. He answered, that he would finde them out by the washing of their faces. And forthwith he commanded all their faces to be washed, and they which washed themselves strongly, were found to be males; but the residue by their tender washing bewraied themselves to be damosels.

The Ethiopian kings suppose, that they are descended from the lineage of *Dauid*, and from the family of *Salomon*. And therefore they vse to terme themselves the sonnes of *Dauid*, and of *Salomon*, and of the holy patriarkes also, as being sprung from their progenie. For Queene *Maqueda* (say they) had a sonne by *Salomon*, whome they named *Meilech*. But afterward he was called *Dauid*. This *Meilech* (as they report) being growen to twentie yeeres of age, was sent backe by his mother vnto his father and instructor *Salomon*, that he might learne of him, wisdom and vnderstanding. Which so soone as the said *Meilech* or *Dauid* had attained: by the permission of *Salomon*, taking with him many priests and nobles, out of all the twelue tribes, he returned to his kingdom of Ethiopia, and tooke vpon him the gouernment thereof. As likewise he carried home with him the law of God, and the rite

of

of circumcision.

These were the beginnings of the Iewish religion in Ethiopia. And it is reported, that euen till this present none are admitted into any ministry or canonship in the court, but such as are descended of their race that came first out of Iury. By these therefore the doctrine of God in Ethiopia was first planted, which afterward tooke such deepe root, as it hath since remained to all succeeding ages. For the Ethiopians did both retaine the bookes of the Prophets, and traualled also to Ierusalem, that they might there worship the true God reuealed in the kingdom of Israel. Which manifestly appeereth out of the Historie of the Ethiopian Eunuch, whose name was *Indich*, Acts of the Apost. cap. 8. verse 26. which was a principall gouernour vnder Queene *Candaces*, properly called *Indirh*. For he about the tenth yeere after the death and resurrection of our blessed Saniour, traualled for the space of two hundred and fortie miles, to Ierusalem. Where hauing performed due worship vnto God, returning homeward, as he sat in his chariot, he read the prophet *Esaïas*. And by the commandement of the holy Spirit, *Philip* one of Christ his disciples was sent vnto him. And when they were both come to the citie Bethzur, three miles distant from Ierusalem; the Eunuch at the foote of a mountaine espied a certaine water, wherein he was baptized by *Philip*. And being returned into Ethiopia, this Eunuch baptized the Queene, and a great part of her family and people. From which time the Ethiopians began to be Christians, who since that haue continually professed the Christian faith.

They beleue also that *Philip* sent into Ethiopia a disciple of his called *Lycanon*, who (as they suppose) ordained the verie forme of religion which they now holde.

Now these beginnings aswel of the Iewish as the christian religion among the Ethiopians being thus declared: we are next to intreat of the doctrine & religion it selfe, together with the rites & ceremonies vsed at this present in the Ethiopie church, so far forth as we can gather out of the ambassages which haue bin performed from these parts thither, & backe againe. Besides which there is no historie nor discourse of any worth to be found, which entreateth of the religion, maners, and customes of the Ethiopians. So as it is a matter very strange, that for so many hundred yeeres together, Ethiopia was so barred from our knowledge, that we had not so much as any report thereof. Vntill about the yeere of our Lord 1440. certaine ambassadours sent from thence to Pope *Eugenius*, returned backe with his letters, and Papall benediction to their king. Which letters are most charily kept among the records of this Ethiopian king, and are preserved for perpetuall monuments.

From which time also, as though Ethiopia had beene againe quite debarred from the knowledge and conuersation of our men, there were not any Europeans that went into Ethiopia, nor any Ethiopians that came into Europe, till the yeere of our Lord 1486. what time *John* the second king of Portugall sent *Pedro de. Conilham*, and *Alonço de. Paiva*, to search out

M m 1

Ethiopia.

Ethiopia. This *Pedro* was a man very learned, eloquent, skilfull in sundrie languages, painfull in his endeours, fortunate in his attempts, and most desirous to finde out new countries and people both by sea and land. He therefore in the yeere aboue mentioned, together with his companion *Alonso de Paiva*, (who died in the voiage) traualled first to Alexandria and Cairo in Egypt: from whence in the companie of certaine Mores of Fez and Tremizen, he proceeded on to El Tor, an hauen towne vpon the Arabian shore of the Red sea, and thence to Aden, situate without the entrance of the Arabian gulf. Where hauing imbarqued himselfe in a ship of Mores, he traualled to Calicut, Goa, and other places of the east Indies; and being fully informed of the state of the Spiceries, he crossed ouer the maine Ocean to çofala, sailed thence to Ormuz, and then returned backe to Cairo. From whence (hauing dispatched letters vnto his king) in the company of *Rabbi Ioseph* a Iew, he made a second voiage to Ormuz; and in his returne he tooke his iourney towards Ethiopia, the Emperour whereof at that time, was called *Alexander*. Vnto whom when he had deliuered a letter and a mappe of the world sent from king *John*, he was most kindly entertained, and rewarded with many rich gifts. And albeit he most earnestly desired to returne into his owne country, yet could he neuer obtaine leaue; but had wealth, honour, and a wife of a noble family bestowed vpon him, to assuage his desire of returning home. Wherefore in the yeere 1526. which was fortie yeeres after his departure out of Portugall, hee was left, by *Rodrigo de Lima* the Portugall ambassadour, still remaining in the court of *Prete Ianni*.

In all this meane while sundry Portugals came out of India to the court of the *Prete*, not so much to visite and salute him, as to declare the good will and kinde affection of their king towards him. Whereupon *Queene Helena*, which was then protectresse of the Ethiopian or Abassin empire, to requite the king of Portugal with like friendship, sent vnto him in the company of the foresaid Portugals an ambassador or messenger of hers, called *Matthew*, who was a merchant borne in Armenia, being a man skilfull in sundry languages and in many other matters. This *Matthew* shee not onely furnished with letters requisite for such an ambassage; but enioined him also to declare by word of mouth vnto the king of Portugal the principall heads of their doctrine or beleefe, together with their rites and customes, and the present state of the whole church of Ethiopia. Moreouer shee presented him with a little crosse made (as they suppose) of a piece of that very crosse, whereon our sauour Christ was crucified; with many other tokens and pledges of mutuall christian amity. Thus *Matthew* being dismissed, tooke his iourney to the east Indies; from whence he was conducted by sea into Portugal; where arriuing in the yeere 1513, he did his message, according to *Queene Helens* directions, vnto the king *Don Emanuel*.

The king taking wonderfull delight at this message, and at these giftes which were sent him from a Christian prince so far remote, not long after prepared

Matthew: the  
first ambassa-  
dor sent from  
Aethiopia to  
Portugall.

prepared a new ambassage, with letters, and presents of exceeding value; in which ambassage the pietie and vertue of *Francis Aluarez* a Portugal priest extraordinarily appeered. For he remaining sixe whole yeeres in the court and countrie of Ethiopia, tooke there most diligent notice of all matters worthie the obseruation. And he had often and familiar conference not onely with the emperour himselfe, but also with the patriarke, concerning the whole state of their religion, and of matters ecclesiasticall; as also he was a most curious obseruer of all their rites and ceremonies. Who in the yeere of Christ 1526. being dismissed by *Prete Ianni*, was accompanied into Portugall by another Ethiopian or Abassin ambassadour called *Zagazabo*, and brought letters also to Pope *Clement* the seuenth, with a golden crosse of a pound weight. It seemeth likewise that the said ambassadour of *Prete Ianni* was a very honest, vpriight, and godly man, who by reason of their continuall warres was detained in Portugall till the yeere of our Lord 1539.

The letters of *Prete Ianni* to the Pope, were by *Francis Aluarez* deliuered at Bononia, in the yeere of Christ 1533. Where in the presence of *Charles* the Emperour, and before a mightie assembly of people, they were read and approoued with great ioy and acclamation. Both which letters, as well to the Pope as to the king *Don Emanuel*, were full of Christian pietie and loue: wherein first that mightie Emperour (though therein he was deceiued) with singular reuerence and dutie, submitted himselfe vnto the Pope of Rome, as to the head of all the church; offering by the said *Francis* most humble obedience, after the manner of other Christian princes. As likewise he profered vnto them both, the offices of beneuolence, charity, and true friendship, intending to ioine a firme league of amitie with them, and signifying that his dominions were free and open to all Christians, that would by sea or land frequent the same. Also he plainly seemed to detest the mutuall discords of Christians, exhorting them to bandy their forces against the Mahumetans, and promising his roiall assistance, and most earnest endeouour, for the vanquishing of Christs enimies, and their conuersion to the truth. Lastly he required, that men of learning, and of skill in the holy Scriptures, as likewise diligent Printers, and all sorts of artificers might be sent him, to be employed in the seruice of his church and common wealth. Signifying that he would not violently detaine any man in his dominions, but would dismiss him into his owne countrey, with honour, and liberall rewards. And that he might testifie his louing and kind affection to the king of Portugall, by a most woorthie monument, he sent him the crowne off his owne head, as the present of a dutifull sonne to his most deere father.

Wherefore by this most admirable diligence and industrie of the Portugals, Ethiopia in these last times hath beene discovered and made knowne vnto vs. Neither is there any thing in the Ethiopians religion so hidden and yreuealed, which hath not either beene found out by *Francis Aluarez*, or most largely declared by *Zagazabo* the Ethiopian ambassadour. Out of the

\* This ambassage was at the first undertaken by *Idoardo Gaiuano*: who dying at the isle of Camaran in the Red sea, it was performed by *Rodrigo de Lima*.

*Zagazabo* the second ambassador sent from Aethiopia to Portugall.



relations therefore of these two woorthy authors, as out of a fountaine, we will deriue the whole substance of our speech.

The ground of the Ethiopicke religion is the profession of one true God, and of his sonne Iesus Christ, which of all Christians is the peculiar and proper marke, whereby onely they are to be named Christians. Concerning this maine point the Ethiopians faith stands most firme and entire: for they together with vs do confesse and adore one God and three persons of the deitie, God the father, God the sonne begotten of his father from euerlasting, who for vs men was incarnate, died, and rose againe; and God the holy Ghost proceeding from the father and the sonne. In this article they follow the holy creed of the Apostles, and the Nicene creed. Saue that they hold that Christ descended into hell for his owne soule, and for the soule of *Adam*, which he receiued of the virgine *Marie*. For this opinion they do most stedfastly embrace; saying that it came by most ancient tradition from Christ himselfe to his Apostles.

The old testament they so conioine with the new, as they allow and receiue both Iewish & Christian ceremonies. Vpon the eight day after their birth,\* they circumsise all children both male and female. And vnlesse sicknesses vrgeth them to make the more haste, they defer the baptisme of their male children till they be fortie, and of their females, till they be eightie daies old. Circumcision (they say) they receiued from *Queene Maqueda*, which went to heare the wisdom of *Salomon*: and baptisme from *Saint Philip*, and from the Eunuch which *Philip* baptized. Yet do they stedfastly hold, that not by circumcision, but by faith in Iesus Christ they attaine vnto true felicitie. Their baptisme they renewe euerie yeere: for vpon the day of the three Sages, otherwise called Epiphanie, whereon Christ was baptized in Iordan, they meet in great assemblies, and enter naked into the water; where the priest layeth his hand vpon them, dippeth them thrise, and pronounceth the words of baptisme, saying, I baptise thee in the name of the father, the sonne, and the holy ghost; adding thereto the signe of the crosse. This custome receiued from their predecessors they doe most carefully obserue, not thereby to abase or extenuate their first baptisme; but that euerie yeere they may receiue a new absolution from their sinnes. Also vnto their infants vpon the verie day of their baptisme, they giue the bodie of our Lord, vnder a small morcell of bread. But such as are grown to yeeres of discretion before they come vnto the Lords holy supper, do make confession and receiue absolution of all their sinnes from the priest. Then doe they all betimes in the morning both clergie and laytie receiue the whole sacrament of the bodie and true blood of Iesus Christ in their churches. Which being receiued, they may not vnder paine of grieuous punishment, so much as once spit, till the going downe of the sunne.

Popish confirmation and vnction, they neither esteeme for sacraments nor vse them. The Pope of Rome, either in regard of error and ignorance, or to win his fauour, they acknowledge to be head of the church, and doe pretend

\* whereas the  
Iewes circum-  
cised the males  
onely.

pretend a kinde of obedience to the sea of Rome. Albeit that the Pope, before the Portugals discouerie of the east Indies could neuer communicate any assistance vnto them,\* nor yet since that time, by reason of the huge distance almost of fifteene thousand miles. For so many miles the ambassadeur, which was sent out of Portugall to Ethiopia, said that he had trauailed. [*It is nothing so long a iourney through Egypt, Troglodytica, and Barnagasso, but that the way through those countries is stopped by the tyrannie of the Turkes.*] Howbeit *Queene Helena*, and after her king *Dauid*, seeme onely to haue sought and desired some coniunction with the Roman church, and the Christians of Europe: to the end that with their powers and forces vnited, they might assaile and vanquish the Mahumetans, being most deadly enemies to the Christian name.

Moreouer these Ethiopick Christians do vse to fast vpon certaine daies of the weeke till sun set: as namely vpon Wednesdaies, to renewe the sadde memorie of the Iewes counsell, wherein they decreed to crucifie our Redeemer: and vpon Fridaies, that they may with thankfull mindes acknowledge his most bitter passion and death. Likewise the day of Good Fridaie, whereon our blessed Sauour was nailed to the crosse, they celebrate with great deuotion, especially towards the euening. Vnto these they adde a Lent of fortie daies, wherein they liue onely by bread and water. The feasts both of Christ, of the virgine *Marie*, and of certaine Saints, they keepe holie: vpon which daies meeting in their churches three houres after sunne rising, they read the bookes of the Prophets, and emploie themselves in holy exercises. They sanctifie the Sabaoth in imitation of the Iewes: and keepe holy the Lords day according to the apostles institution. On both these daies they worship God by performing things holie, and eschewing matters prophane. Into their churches they may not come but barefoote onely; neither is it there lawfull for any man to walke vp and downe, nor to talke of worldly affaires, nor to spit, nor cough.

The chiefe vse of the law (they say) is to shew vs our sinnes: neither do they thinke any man liuing able to performe the same, but onely Iesus Christ who fulfilled it on our behalfe. The Saints they loue indeed and reuerence, but doe not pray vnto them. Vnto the blessed virgine *Marie* the mother of Christ, they ascribe great honour, but neither do they adore her, nor craue assistance at her hands. They haue euery day one masse onely, and that a short one, in stead of a sacrifice: but gaine thereby they make none at all. Neither do they eleuate or holde vp the sacrament of the supper, as the masse-priests do: nor applie the same to redeeme dead mens soules from the paines of purgatorie. Howbeit, that there is a place of purgatorie, they do not denie. Wherefore their dead are buried with crosses and supplications, and especially with the rehearfall of the beginning of *Saint Johns* Gospell. Then the day following they offer almes for them, and vpon certaine daies after they adde funerall-banquets; supposing that vpon Sabaoths and the Lords daies, they which died godly, are freed from all

\* Yet in the  
time of Pope  
Paul the 4.  
were sent cer-  
taine priests  
with a new  
created Patri-  
arke, and two  
Bishops: who  
notwithstan-  
ding when they  
went seriously  
about to bring  
in the Romish  
religion, and  
the supremacie  
of the Pope,  
were crossed by  
the Emperour  
in all their pro-  
ceedings.

torments in Purgatorie, and at length, hauing receiued the full measure of chastisement for their sinnes, that then they go into eternall rest. For the effecting whereof, they do not thinke any indulgences of their patriarke, but onely the meere mercy and grace of God to be auailable.

Mariage is no lesse permitted to their clergie and priests, then to their laie-people: yet so, that his first wife being dead, a priest cannot marry another without the Patriarkes dispensation. Whosoeuer keepeth a concubine is debarred from all sacred administrations. And whatsoeuer bishop or clergie-man is found to haue a bastard, he is vtterly depriued of holy orders, and of all his benefices and spirituall dignities. Mariages are often solemnized without the church, a bed being placed before the house of the bride and the bridegroom. Then come three priests, who going thrise about the bridegromes bed, sing with a loud voice Halleluah, and other things. This done, they cut one locke of haire from the bridegromes head, and another from the head of the bride, which they wash in wine made of hony; and then putting vpon either of their heads the others lock, they sprinkle them with a kinde of holy-water, and so depart. Which being performed, the mariage-feast beginneth, and holdeth on till the night be far spent. At length the bride and bridegroom are brought vnto their owne house, out of which neither of them may go forth for the space of an whole moneth after.

In some places they are married in the church by the patriarke himselfe. Where the mariage-bed standing in manner aforesaid, the patriarke with sweet incense and crosses walketh thrise about it, and then turning himselfe towards them, he layeth his hand vpon the bridegromes head, saying: *Do that which god hath commanded in his gospel, and thinke now that you are not two but one flesh.* Hauing spoken these words, he administret the communion vnto them, and blesteth them. Polygamie, or many wiues at once, are permitted by the emperour and ciuill magistrate vnto the Ethiopians: but in their churches there is no place at all for such as haue more wiues then one. Neither may any such persons presume to enter into their churches, but are held as excommunicate, and are not receiued into the congregation, before hauing put away all the residue of their wiues, they betake themselves to one onely.

Diuorcements they vse very commonlie, and often vpon light occasions except onely the priests, who may by no meanes depart from their wiues. Whereby it appeareth, that their priests approue not that inconstancie in a matter of so great moment. The best remedy which they haue to preuent this mischiefe, is at the daye of mariage to allotte some great penalty vpon that person which shall first forsake the other. Amongst them likewise, according to the law of Moses, brothers vse to marry their brothers wiues, to raise vp seede vnto them. Howbeit this abuse of mariage is not practised by all, but onely by the mightier sort. For the country-people and those of poorer condition, being euery one contented with his owne wife, do so painefully employ themselves about their labour, and the getting of their

living,

living, that they are free from those violent passions of lust.

Infants that die before baptisme they name halfe christians, because being sanctified onely by the faith of Christian parents, they are not as yet by baptisme thoroughly engrafted into the church. From meates, which the law of Moses accounted vncleane, they also do abstaine. The heresies of Arius, Macedonius, and Nestorius, they reiect and condemne.

The whole church of Ethiopia is gouerned by a patriarke called in the Ethiopick language *Abuna*, which signifieth, A Father. This patriarke of theirs is first solemnely created at Ierusalem by the voices of those monkes which keepe the sepulchre of our Lord. Afterward hee is confirmed, and sent into Ethiopia by the patriarke of Alexandria. The emperour *Prere Ianni*, so often as there is need of a new patriarke, sendeth an ambassage with many gifts to Ierusalem, and requireth a patriarke from thence. Which patriarke, together with a monke of the order of Saint *Antony* the Hermite, being come into Ethiopia, is, according to an ancient custome, receiued with the generall consent, congratulation, applause, and reioycing of all degrees and estates of people. To this high function is singled out some one man of singular piety, grauity, learning, and of more ancient yeeres then the rest. His speciall duties are to giue holy orders, to administer church-discipline, and to excommunicate contumaces or obstinate offenders, which are for their stubbornnes famished to death. But the authoritie of giuing Bishopricks and spirituall benefices, the Emperour reserueth to himselfe. In Ethiopia there are infinit numbers of priests, and of monkes. *Francis Aluarez* saw at one time ordained by the Patriarke two thousand three hundred fiftie fixe priests. And the like manner of ordaining or instalment they haue euery yeere twise. It seemeth that those which are chosen into that order, are men destitute of learning and liberall artes. Vnto their priesthood none is admitted before he be full thirtie yeeres of age. It falleth out likewise, that during the vacation of the Patriarkship, the church hath great want of priests. Which vacation is oftentimes prolonged by reason of the continual wars betweene the Christians and the bordering Mahumetans, and Gentiles: whereby all passage from Ethiopia to the monkes of Ierusalem is quite cut off. Hence proceedeth great desolation in that church. But with monkes all places in this Abassin empire do mightily swarme. These do not onely confine themselves in monasteries, wherof here are great numbers, but also take vpon them offices in the court, and intangle themselves in militarie affaires, and in buying and selling of merchandize. Neither are there anie kinde of people in those easterne parts more conuersant in trade of merchandize then priests and monkes. So that the old said sawe is most truelie verified:

*What ere the world doth put in v're,*

*The Monke will intermeddle, sure.*

It is likewise to be noted, that the priests, monkes, and other ministers of the Ethiopian church, are not maintained by tithes and almes as they are in

Europe.

Europe. They haue onelie certaine fieldes and gardens, which must be manured by the monkes and clergie themselves. To beg ought of the common people they are in no wise permitted, vnlesse perhaps some man will of his owne accorde bestowe somewhat in their churches for the exequies of the dead, or for some other sacred vses.

These Ethiopians haue a certaine booke, which they suppose to haue beene written by all the Apostles when they were assembled at Ierusalem. This booke in their language they call Manda and Abetilis: and do beleue that all thinges therein contained are to be holden for gospel. In it, amongst other matters, are contained certaine penal statutes; as for example. If a priest be conuicted of Adultery, Man-slaughter, Robberie, or periurie, he is to receiue like punishment with other malefactors. Likewise, that aswell ecclesiasticall, as secular persons, are to abstaine from comming to church for the space of fower and twentie howers after carnall copulation. Some lawes also there are, concerning the purification of women after their moneths, and their child-birth: which, because we can make but little vse of them, I do heere passe ouer in silence. One thing there is in this booke very well provided, namely, that twise euery yeere there be a Synod assembled in the church of Christ, for the handling and discussing of all matters ecclesiasticall.

These are the principall points of the religion, faith, and ceremonies of the Ethiopicke church vnder *Prese Ianni*, which hitherto haue come to our knowledge. A good part whereof is agreeable vnto the scriptures of the old and new testament. And such in very deed they are, as represent vnto vs the acknowledgement of one true God, and the faith and worship of our onely Lord and Sauour Iesus Christ. But as neuer any church vpon earth was quite void of blemish: so neither is this of Ethiopia free from all staynes of errour. Which notwithstanding may seeme the lesse strange, because in Ethiopia there are no schooles nor Seminaries of liberall artes, saue only, that the priests themselves (according to their simple skill) traine vp their sonnes vnto such learning, as may in time make them capable of priesthood. Neither was there euer any man yet, that reformed their errors. *Francis Alvarez* reporteth, that the Patriarke of this Ethiopick church, in a certaine priuate conference, did grieuously complaine of all such errors as were there maintained, and was most earnestly desirous of a reformation. Which desire of his, as it is most holy & comendable; so is it by all christians to be approoued. God almightie grant, that the Ethiopians may one daie attaine to the accomplishment of this his compassionate well-wishing, and may haue a happie reformation of their church. For this to desire and praie for, is farre more conuenient and Christian-like, then to disgrace them with reprochfull words, and to bereaue them of the name of Christians. Which harde and vnchristian measure, *Zagazabo* the Ethiopian ambassadour, reporteth with griefe, that he found among the Popish priests of Portugall; by whom he was quite restrained from the vse and communion of the holie supper,

supper, as if he had beene a meere Gentile, or Anathema.

It is indeed an errour, or rather a great infirmite, that they do as yet retaine and vse some of the Iewish ceremonies. But we are wholie to impute it to their ignorance of Christian liberty. And whereas they permit mariage to their priests, it is neither repugnant to the sacred word of God, nor to the institution of the Apostles. Wherefore it ought not to be disallowed of any Christians. Vnlesse they will preferre the decrees of the Pope before the commandement of God, established by Christ and his apostles. Whereby it may plainly appeere how impiously and sauagely the Priests of Portugall dealt, in that especially for this cause they so sharply inneeded against the Ethiopick ambassadour, and so vnciuilly entreated him.

Their yeerely renewing of baptisme, was at the first brought in by errour, and since by ancient vse and tradition, hath growen authentickall. For in very deed so great is the force of antiquitie and custome, that where they once take roote, they can hardly be remooued. And it is a woonder that the Ethiopians do so often repeat baptisme, when as they cannot be circumcised any more then once. But in regard of all these defects, what can we better deuise to do, then in our daily praiers to wish them mindes better informed, and the puritie and integritie of faith, which is agreeable vnto gods worde? The Ethiopians conceiued exceeding ioy at the first arriual of the Portugals in their countrie: hoping that their mutuall acquaintance and familiaritie, would breed a similitude and coniunction, as well of their religions, as of their affections and mindes. But I am verily afraid, least the reprochfull and sterne carriage of the Popish priests and monkes towards the Ethiopick ambassadours before mentioned, hath more then euer in times past estranged the mindes of that nation from the Christians of Europe.

Howbeit the singular care and industrie of those two renowned Princes, *John* the second, and *Emanuel*, kings of Portugall, is most highly to be extolled and celebrated, who by infinit charges employed vpon their nauigations to The east Indies, and to these parts; haue opened a way for the European Christians, to the southerne church of Ethiopia; and for the Ethiopians to this western church of Europe. Which had not these two woorthie Princes brought to effect, we should not so much as haue knowne the name of a Christian church in Ethiopia. For thither by the way of Arabia and Egypt, in regard of the Arabians and Mahumetans most deadly enmitie to the Christian faith, it is so dangerous and difficult to trauell, as it seemeth to be quite barred and shut vp. Vnlesse therefore ouer the Atlantike Ethiopick, and Indian seas the Portugals had thither found a passage by nauigation; it had almost beene impossible for any ambassadours or other persons, to haue come out of Ethiopia into these western parts. Thus saue *Matthew Dresserus*.

An ambassage sent from Pope *Paule* the fourth to *Claudius the Emperour of Abassia* or the higher Ethiopia, for planting of the religion and ceremonies of the church of Rome in his dominions; which ambassage tooke none effect at all.

**I**N the yeere 1555 *John* the third king of Portugal, determined to leaue no meanes vnattempted for the absolute reconciliation of *Prete Ianni* vnto the church of Rome. For though *Dauids* ambassador had performed obedience to Pope *Clement* the seuenth on his emperours behalfe; yet doubted the king of Portugal (as true it was) that for want of speedie prosecution, those forward beginnings would proue but altogether fruitlesse; in that for all this, they still embraced the heresies of *Dioscorus* and *Eutiches*, and depended on the authoritie of the Patriark of Alexandria, receiuing their *Abuna* from him, who is the sole arbitrator of all their matters ecclesiasticall, the administret of their sacraments, the giuer of orders ouer all Ethiopia, master of their ceremonies, and Instrueter of their faith. Whereupon he supposed, that he could not do any thing more profitable, or necessarie, then to send thither a Patriark appointed at Rome, who might exercise spirituall authority ouer them, as also with him some priests, of singular integrity and learning, who with their sermons, disputations, & discourses both publike and priuate, might reduce those people from their errors and heresies to the trueth, and might confirme and strengthen them in the same. And vnto this, it seemed a wide gate was already open; because not many yeeres before, *Claudius* the emperour of Ethiopia receiued great succours from the Portugals, against *Graadamet* king of Zeila, who had brought him to an hard point; and in a letter written from him to *Stephen Gama*, he called *Christopher Gama* his brother, who died in this war, by the reuerend name of a Martyr. The king of Portugal therefore hauing imparted this his resolution, first with Pope *Iulius* the third, and then with *Paul* the fourth, it was by them concluded to send into Ethiopia thirteene priests, men of principall estimation and account aboue others of their qualitie. *John Nunnes Barretto* was made Patriark, and there were ioyned vnto him two assisting Bishops, *Melchior Carnero*, and *Andrea Ouedo*, vnder title of the Bishops of Nicea, and Hierapolis. King *John* set forth this ambassage, not onely with whatsoeuer the voiage it selfe necessarily required, but further with all royall preparation, and rich presents for *Prete Ianni*. Neuerthelesse, the better to lay open an entrance for the Patriarke, there was by the kings appointment sent before from the city of Goa, *Iago Dias*, and with him

*Gonsaluo*

*Gonsaluo Rodrigo*, into Ethiopia, to discouer the minde of the Neguz, and the disposition of his people. These two being admitted to the presence of that Prince, shewed him the letters of king *John*, wherein he congratulated with him, on the behalfe of all Christians; for that following the example of his grandfather, and father, he had embraced the Christian faith, and vnion. Whereat *Claudius* was amazed, as at a thing neuer before thought of. And it being demaunded, why he had written to the king of Portugal to that effect, he excused himselfe by the writer, and interpreter of his letter: adding thereunto, that though hee esteemed that king as his very good brother, yet was he neuer minded to swerue one iot from the faith of his predecessors. *Roderigo* for all this, was no whit daunted, but wrought all meanes to bring *Claudius* to his opinion. But the greatest difficultie against this his busie enterprise, was the ignorance of the emperour and the princes of Ethiopia in all the generall Councils, and ancient Histories. Afterwards perceiuing that the Neguz did not willingly admit him to audiance, he wrote and diuulged a booke in the Chaldean toong; wherein confuting the opinions of the the Abassins, he laboured mightily to aduance the authoritie of the Romaine church. Which booke raised so great a tumult, that the emperour, to auoide woofse inconueniences which were likely to ensue, was faine quickly to suppress it. *Iago Dias* perceiuing that he did but loose time, & the terme of his returne approaching, tooke his leaue of the Neguz. And hauing made knowne in Goa, how matters stood, it was not thought requisite that the Patriarke should expose his owne person, together with the reputation of the Romaine church, vnto so great hazard. But rather, not wholly to abandon the enterprise, they determined to send thither *Andrew Ouedo*, (newe elect bishop of Hierapolis) with two or three assistants, who with greater authoritie might debate of that which *Roderigo* already had so vnfruitfully treated of. *Ouedo* most willingly vndertaking this attempr, put himselfe on the voiage, with father *Emanuel Fernandez*, and some fewe others. When he was come into Abassia, he stood in more need of patience then disputation. For king *Claudius* within a fewe moneths after, being vanquished and slaine, *Adamas* his brother succeeded, who was a great enimie to the sea of Rome. This man drew *Ouedo* and his assistants, to the warres with him, and intreated them most barbarously, as also those Abassins whom they had conuerted. He likewise was afterwards ouerthrowne in bataille by the Turkes, who stripped *Ouedo* and his companions of all things that they had. Whereupon they grew into such pouertie and miserie, as (all helpe failing them) they were enforced to get their liuing with the plough and spade, till they all died one after another. This Ethiopian Christianitie is brought at this day to an hard point, by the inuasions of the Turkes and Mores, as is before declared. Notwithstanding their religious men affirme, that they haue prophesies of the comming of a Christian nation to their Ports from farre countries, with whom they shall go to the destruction of the Mores: and these they hold to bee Portugals. They haue farther, certain

The Emperour of Ethiopia wil by no meanes admit the supremacy and religion of the Romaine church.

*Adamas* a new Emperour of Ethiopia.



taine prefagements of Saint *Sinoda*, who was an Egyptian Hermite, of the ruine of Meca, the recouerie of the holy sepulcher, and the taking of Egypt and Cairo, by the Abassins, vnited with the Latines.

*Of the Christians of the isle of Socotera.*

**V**icinitie of place and conformitie of customes inuite me to crosse the sea, and to visite the Christians of Socotera. This island is sixtie miles long, and five and twentie in bredth. It is situate ouer against the Red sea. The people thereof receiued the faith from Saint *Thomas* the Apostle: for they affirme, that heere he suffered shipwracke, and that of the broken and battered ship he built a church, which is as yet extant. They imitate for the most part the rites, customes, and fashions of the Abassins, but with great ignorance and error: for being separated from all commerce with the Christians of these parts, they remaine depriued of that spirituall helpe, which the westerne church by communication might impart vnto them. They retaine circumcision, and some other Moisaicall ceremonies. Also they pray for the dead, and obserue ordinarie fasts: hauing prefixed howers for praier, and bearing great reuerence to their religion, in honour whereof, they build chappels, wherein assembling together, with an high and loude voice, they make supplications and praiers in the Hebrew toong. But their farre distance (as I said) from these parts of Christendome, the sterilitie of the island, and the pouertie of the people, are occasions that the little light of truth which they haue, is in a manner quite eclipsed by multitudes of errors. Vnto other things may be added the tyrannie of the king of Fartac a Mahumetan, who subdued them about the yeere of our Lord 1482. and partly by dominion, partly by affinitie and kined, and partly also by conuersation, brought in amongst them the deadly poison of *Mahumer*. From this seruitude they were deliuered by *Tristan d'Acunna*, one of the king of Portugals captaines; fixe and twentie yeeres after they fell into the same. And for their better securitie, he repaired the fortresse, leauing therein a Portugall garrison. But bicause the charges farre surmounted any benefite that came of the island, not long after the said fortresse was ruinated, and the island abandoned by the Portugals. *John* the third king of Portugall had a great desire to assist and free them from the tyrannie of the Turkes: whereunto after the taking of Aden they were subiect. But for feare of prouoking the great Turke, or giuing him occasion to disturbe and molest those seas with his fleetes, as also: for the dispatching of other affaires he had in hand, he neuer went about that enterprise.

*Fartac a countrey of Arabia Felix; the king whereof subdued the isle of Socotera, 1482.*

of

*Of the Christians of Nubia.*

**R**ancis *Aluarez* in his Aethiopicke relation, writeth, that he being at the court of *Prete Ianni*, there arriued certaine ambassadors from Nubia, to make suit vnto that prince, for some priests, and ministers of the Gospell and sacraments, by whom they might be instructed in the Christian faith. But *Prete Ianni* answered them, that he had not enough for his owne countrey: whereupon they returned home very discōtent, so that hauing no helpe from the Christians, & on the other side being daily sollicitied by the Mahumetans, vpon whom they border on many sides, it is thought, that at this present, they remaine in a manner without any religion at all. Notwithstanding at this day, there are more then an hundred and fiftie churches standing, with diuers other notes and signes of Christianitie. Their language partaketh much with the Egyptian, and no lesse with the Chaldean and Arabick.

*Of the Christians in the kingdome of Congo.*

**H**itherto we haue described that little, which remaineth of the ancient Christianity of Africk. It now resteth, that we giue some notice of that, which hath beene brought in of late. Congo is a kingdome about the bignes of France, situate (as is before said) beyond the equinoctiall betweene Caboda Catherina, and Bahia das vacas. It was conuerted to Christian religion, by the meanes of *Don Iohn* the second king of Portugal, in manner following. *Don Diego Cano* a captaine of that king, by his commission coasting along Africa, after a great nauigation, arriued at length in the great riuer of Zaire; and attempting to saile vp into it, he discovered along the banks thereof many townes, where he found much more affability in the inhabitants, then in those of other countries which before he had discovered. And that he might be able to giue the more faithfull aduertisement thereof to his king, his hart moued him to go to the court of that kingdome. Whither being come, and courteously brought to the kings presence, he shewed them the vanity of their Idolatry, & the high reuerence of christian faith. And he found in that Prince so good a disposition, as returning into Portugal, besides an ambassador he was permitted to carry with him certaine youths of noble parentage, to the end they might learne the Christian doctrine, and be well instructed therein; and being baptized also, might afterwards be sent back with Portugall priests to preache the gospel, and to plant the Christian faith in that kingdome. These youthes remained in Portugal two yeeres, and were there liberally entertained, and with all diligence instructed in matters of religion; and were at length with great solemnity baptized. When they came to riper yeeres, king *Iohn* sent them backe againe into their owne countrey, with an honorable ambassage,

N n i

in

in whose company went for teachers and instructors of that nation three Dominick-Fryers, reputed for men of exquisite learning and holy life. Being arrived in Congo, they first converted *Mani-Sogno* the kings vncle, with one of his sonnes. After that ensued the baptisme of the king and Queene; for which cause in short time, there was a goodly Church erected, vnder the name and title of *Santa Cruz*. And in the meane while there were infinit Idols burnt. The king was called *John*, the Queene *Leonora*, and his eldest sonne *Alonso*. This *Alonso* was a singular good man, who not being satisfied in his owne conuersion, laboured also with a kind of Apostolicall zeale for the conuersion of his subiects. But let no man thinke, that the planting of religion can euer passe without some labour and trouble. These Dominick-Fryers, besides the intemperature of the aire and vnusuall heat, which consumed them, were also euilly entreated by the \*Moci-Contigi. For although they shewed themselves docible, and tractable enough, while they were instructed onely about ceremonies, and diuine mysteries, (because they thought, that the higher those matters were about humane capacity, the more they feared and were agreeable to the maiestie of God) neuertheless when they began to entreate seriously of Temperance, continence, restitution of other mens goods, forgiuing of iniuries, and other heades of Christian pietie, they found not onely great hinderance and difficultie, but euen plaine resistance and opposition. The king himselfe, who had from the beginning shewed notable zeale, was now somewhat cooled; who because he was loth to abandon his soothsaiers and fortune-tellers, but about all, the multitude of his concubines (this being a generall difficultie among the Barbarians) would by no meanes giue care vnto the Preachers. Also the women (who were now reiecting one after another) not enduring so suddenly to be banished from their husbandes, brought the court and roiall citie of Saint Saluador into a great vproare. \* *Paulo Aquitino* second sonne to the king, put tow to this fire, who would by no meanes be baptized; for which cause there grew great enmity betwixt him and *Alonso* his elder brother, who with all his power furthered the proceedings, and maintained the growth of the Christian religion. During these troubles, the old king died, and the two brothers fought a battell, which had this successe; that *Alonso* the \* true heire, with fixe and thirtie soldiers, calling vpon the name of Iesus, discomfited the huge armie of his heathenish brother, who was himselfe also taken aliue, and died prisoner in this his rebellion. God fauoured *Alonso* in this warre, with manifest miracles. For first they affirme, that being readie to enter into battaile, he saw a light so cleere and resplendent, that he and his companie which beheld it, remained for a good while with their eies declined, and their mindes so full and replenished with ioy, and a kind of tender affection, that cannot easily be expressed. And then lifting vp their eies vnto heauen, they saw fixe shining swords, which the king tooke afterwards for his armes, and his successors vse the same at this day. Having obtained this victorie, he assembled all his nobles, and strenghtly enioined

\* So are the inhabitants of Congo called.

\* So called by Orosius lib. 3. de Reb. Gest. Eman. But by Phil. Pigafetta. lib. 2. Cap. 2. Mani-Pango.

\* Orosius de Reb. Gest. Eman. lib. 3.

enioined them to bring all the idols of his countrey to an appointed place, and so vpon an high hill, he caused them all to be burned. This *Alonso* reigned prosperously for fiftie yeeres together, in which space he exceedingly furthered by authoritie and example, as also by preaching and doctrine, the new-planted Christianitie. Neither did *Don Emanuell* the King of Portugall giue ouer this enterprise: for he sent from thence to Congo, twelue of those Fryers which the Portugals call *Azzurri*, of whom Fryer *John Mariano* was head: with architects and smiths for the building and seruice of Churches, and with rich furniture for the same. After king *Alonso*, succeeded *Don Pedro* his sonne: in whose time there was a Bishop appointed ouer the isle of Saint Thomas, who had also committed vnto him the administration of Congo. Where, at the citie of Saint Saluador, was instituted a colledge of eight and twentie Canons in the Church of *Santa Cruz*. The second bishop was of the bloud roiall of Congo, who traualled to Rome, and died in his returne homeward. *Don Francisco* succeeded *Don Pedro*, who continued but a small space: & *Don Diego* his neere kinsman was after his decesse aduanced to the crowne. In whose time *John* the third king of Portugall, vnderstanding that neither the king himselfe cared greatly for religion, and that the merchants and priests of Europe furthered not, but rather with their bad life scandalized the people new conuerted, he sent thither fower Iesuits, to renew and reestablish matters of religion. These men arriuing first at the isle of Saint Thomas, and then at Congo, were courteously receiued by the king: and presently going about the busines they came for, one of them tooke vpon him to teach fixe hundred yoong children, the principles of christian religion: and the other dispersed themselves ouer the whole countrey to preach. But all of them, one after another, falling into tedious and long diseases, they were enforced to returne into Europe. At this time there was appointed ouer Congo a third bishop of the Portugall nation, who through the contumacie of the Canons and clergie, found trouble enough. In the meane while *Don Diego* dying, there arose great tumults touching the succession, by meanes whereof, all the Portugals in a manner, that were in Saint Saluador (except priests) were slaine. In the end, *Henrie* brother to *Don Diego* obtained the crowne, and after him (for he quicklie died in the warres of the Anzichi) *Don Aluaro* his son in law. This man reconciled vnto himselfe the Portugall nation, caused all the religious and lay sort dispersed heere and there, throughout the kingdome, to be gathered together, and wrote for his discharge to the king, and to the Bishop of Saint Thomas. The bishop hauing perused the letters, passed himselfe into Congo: and giuing some order for the discipline of the clergie, he returned to Saint Thomas, where hee ended his daies. It so fell out, that what for the absence, and what for the want of Bishoppes, the progression of religion was much hindred. For one *Don Francisco*, a man for bloud and wealth of no small authoritie, began freely to say, that it was a vaine thing to cleaue to one wife onely, and afterwarde in the end, he fell altogether

\* Called by Philippo Pigafetta Bulla-matate.

altogether from the faith, and was an occasion that the king grew woonderfully cold. They affirme, that this *Francisco* dying, and being buried in the church of Santa Cruz, the diuels vncovered a part of that churches rooffe, and with terrible noise drew his dead carcase out of the tombe, and carried it quite away: a matter that made the king exceedingly amazed: but yet another accident that ensued withall, strooke him neerer to the hart: For the *Giacchi* leauing their owne habitations, entred like Locusts into the kingdom of Congo, and coming to battaile against *Don Aluaro* the king, put him to flight: who not being secure in the head citie, abandoned his kingdom, and together with the Portugall priests, and his owne princes, retired himselfe vnto an island of the riuer Zaire, called The isle of horses. Thus seeing himselfe brought to such extremitie (for besides the losse of his kingdom, his people died of famine and miserie, and for maintenance of life sold themselves one to another, and to the Portugals also at a base price) for reparation of his state and religion, he had recourse to *Don Sebastian* king of Portugall, and obtained of him fixe hundred soldiers, by whose valour he draue his enimies out of the kingdom, and within a yeere and an halfe, reestablished himselfe in his throne. In his time *Antonio di Gloua* a Spaniard, was made bishop of Saint Thomas, who after much molestation procured him by the captaine of that island, went at length into Congo, with two friers and fower priests, and ordered matters reasonable well. In the meane while *Don Aluaro* died, and his sonne of the same name succeeded him, who failed not to sollicite, both *Don Sebastian* and *Don Henrie* kings of Portugall, and the king of Spaine also, that they would send him some competent number of preachers and ecclesiasticall persons for the augmentation of the Christian faith in his kingdom: and amidst these determinations he died, and a sonne of his called also *Don Aluaro* succeeded him.

During these tumults, certaine other Portugall Priests went into Congo, labouring to prune that vine which had beene long time giuen ouer, and forsaken. These men haue built them an house in the island of Loanda, where do remaine fixe or seauen of their companie, that are readie to goe sometimes hither, and sometimes thither, as neede requireth. In the yeere of our Lord 1587. king Aluaro, (who bicause hee was not borne of lawfull matrimonie, was but little esteemed by his people) would needes haue one of these priests about him, by whose meanes and authoritie he came to reputation and credite. And God himselfe fauoured his proceedings: for meeting a sister of his by the fathers side, and one of her brothers, with a great armie in the fielde, he gaue him battaile, and bore himselfe therein with such valour, as he did not onely ouerthrow the forces of his enimie but further slew the ring-leader and generall thereof, and in the place where he was slaine, he would needes build a church to the honour of Christianitie. And the more by his owne example to mooue others, himselfe was the very first man that put hand to this worke: and likewise with

edicts

Concerning these Giacchi, otherwise called Agag, read the discourse of Mohenemugi before the beginning of John Leo.

edicts and fauourable proclamations, he furthered and doth still aduance the preaching of the Gospell, and the propagation of religion.

Who so is desirous to be more fully instructed concerning the Christianitie of this kingdome, let him read the third and eight bookes of *Ossorius de Reb. gest. Eman.* & the second booke of *Philippo Pigasetta* his story of Congo, most properly and decently translated by the iudicious master *ABRAHAM HARTWELL*.

*Of the Christian religion in the kingdome of Angola.*



Those Portugal priests that remaine in the Iland Loanda, as aboue we declared, bend themselves more to the conuersion of Angola, then of Congo. The reason is (as I suppose) because the enterprise is new, and more neerely concerneth the Portugals, who there make war vnder the conduct of *Paulo Diaz*, to get possession of the mountaines of Cabambe which abound with rich mines of very fine siluer. It seemeth that god hath fauoured the amplification of his holy name in those parts with some myraculous victories. For first in the yeere 1582, a few Portugals in an excursion that they made, put to flight an innumerable companie of the Angolans. And by this victory, they brought in a manner the halfe of that kingdom into their handes: and many Princes and nobles of the land vpon this, were moued to request and make suit to be baptized. Among whom was *Songa* prince of Banza, the kinges Father in law, whose brother and children were baptized already. *Tondella* also, the second person of Angola was conuerted: many Idols were throwne to the ground, and insteede thereof they erected crosses, and built some churches. And within this little while all the Prouince of Corimba is in a manner conuerted. Also in the yeere 1584, an hundred and fiftie Portugals, together with such succors as were conducted by *Paule* Prince of Angola, who was not long before conuerted; discomfited more then a million of Ethiopians. In an other place we declared the readie meanes and oportunities that the Princes of Ethiopia and of India haue, to assemble and bring together such infinite armies. They say, that certaine Ethiopians being demaunded by a Portugal, how it came to passe that so great a multitude turned their backs to so few men; they answered, that the Portugals strength did it not, which with a blast they would haue confounded, but a woman of incomparable beawty, apparelled in shining light and brightnes, and an old man that kept her company with a flaming sword in his hand, who went aloft in the ayre before the Portugals, and ouerthrew the squadrons of the Angolans, putting them to flight and destruction. In the yeere 1588, were conuerted *Don Paulo* Prince of Mocumba, and with him a thousand persons more.

## The Christian religion of Monomotapa.



In the dominions of the Monomotapa, the light of the faith being with incredible ease kindled, was also as suddenly extinguished by the deuises of the Mahumetans. For some Portugals going to the court of that monarche, and giuing him selfe, with some of his Princes and vassals, a taste of the gospel, were an occasion afterwards that *Gonsaluo de Sylua*, a man no lesse famous for the integrity of his life, then for his bloud and parentage, went ouer thither from Goa in the yeere 1570. This man arriuing with a prosperous voiage, in the kingdome of Inambane, conuerted and baptized the king, his wife, children, and sister, with his Barons and nobility, and the grea test part of his people. Through whose perswasion *Gonsaluo* left his companions, prosecuting his voiage towards the Monomotapa, onely with fixe Portugals. Thus hauing passed Mozambique, and the mouth of the riuer Mafuta, and of Colimane, they came to Mengoaxano king of Quiloa, where they were courteously receiued & entertained. And though they had licence in this place to preach the gospell, yet would not *Gonsaluo* here stay, iudging that vpon the cōuersion of the Monomotapa, that of the neighbor kings would follow without delaie. Embarking themselues therefore vpon the riuer Cuana, they sailed along the coast of Africa eight daies, till they came to Sena, a very populous village: where *Gonsaluo* baptized about five hundred slaues, belonging to the Portugal merchants, and prepared for the receiuing of the gospel the king of Inamor, one of the Monomotapaes vassals. In the ende *Antonio Caiado* a Portugall gentleman came from the court, to guide *Gonsaluo* towards the same place. Whither being in short time come, he was presently visited on the emperours behalfe, and bountifullie presented with a great summe of gold, and many oxen. But he returning back these presents, gaue the Monomotapa to vnderstand, that he should know of *Caiado*, what he desired. The emperour was astonished at this his magnanimity, & receiued him afterwards with the greatest honor, that could possibly be deuised. And causing him to sit vpon the same carpet, whereon also his owne mother sate, he presently demanded how many women, how much ground, and how many oxen (thinges mightily esteemed of in those countries) he would haue. *Gonsaluo* answered, that he would haue no other thing but himselfe. Whereupon the emperour turning to *Caiado* (who was their interpreter) said; that surely it could not be otherwise, but that he, who made so little account of thinges so highly valued by others, was no ordinary man; and so with much courtesie he sent him back to his lodging.

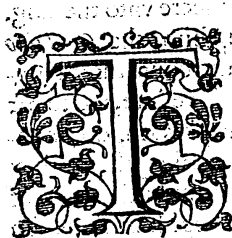
Not long time after, the emperour let *Gonsaluo* to vnderstand, that he and his mother were resolued to become Christians, and that therefore he should come to baptize them. But he to instruct them better in the faith, deferred

deferred it off for some daies. Finally five and twentie daies after his arrival, with vnspokeable solemnity and preparation, he gaue the water of baptism to the king, and to his mother. He was called *Sebastian*, and *Suec Maria*. And presently after, about three hundred of the principall in this emperours court were baptized. *Gonsaluo* for his wonderfull abstinence, charity, wisdom, and for many other his singular vertues was so reuerenced and esteemed by those people, as if he had come downe from heauen among them. Now as matters proceeded thus prosperously, and with so desirable successe, behold, an horrible tempest arose which drowned the ship. There were in the court fower Mahumetans most deere vnto the king. These men finding out some occasion, suggested vnto him, that *Gonsaluo* was a Magician, who by witchcraftes and enchantments could turne kingdomes topsie turvie: and that he was come to prie into his estate, and to stir vp his people to rebellion, and so by this meanes to bring his kingdome vnder subiection to the Portugals. With these and such like suggestions they brought the king (who was but a young man) to determine the death of *Gonsaluo*. The effect whereof was, that after long praier, reposing himselfe a little, he was by eight of the kings seruants slaine, and his body throwne into the riuer Mensigine. Neere vnto the same place, were with like violence put to death, fiftie new-conuerted Christians. This rage and furie being ouer, the king was aduertised by the Principall of his kingdome, and then by the Portugals, of the excesse and outrage he had therein committed. He excused himselfe the best he could, causing those Mahumetans to be slaine, who had seduced him; and he sought out some others also who lay hid, to put them to death. Whereupon it seemed that by the death of father *Gonsaluo*, the conuersion of this great king, and of his empire, should haue bin furthered, and no whit hindered, if the Portugals would rather haue preuailed by the word of God, then by force of armes. The which I say, bicause instead of sending new preachers into those countries, to preferue that which was already gotten, and to make new conuersions, they resolued to reuenge themselves by warre. There departed therefore out of Portugall a good fleete, with a great number of noble Portugals therein, conducted by *Francisco Barretto*. At the same of this warre, mooued against him, the Monomotapa full of feare, sent to demand peace of *Barretto*. But he aspiring to the infinite mines of gold in that kingdome, contemned all conditions offered him. The effect of this enterprise was, that this armie which was so terrible to a mightie Monarke, was in fewe daies consumed by the intemperature of the aire, which is there insupportable to the people of Europe.



Of the fortresses and colonies maintained by the Spaniards and Portugals vpon the maine of Africa: by meanes whereof the Christian religion hath there

some small footing. Which albeit in other respects they haue bene mentioned before, yet heere also in this one regard, it seemeth not from our purpose briefly to remember them.



O the propagation of Christianity, those fortresses & colonies woonderfully helpe, which the Castilians, but much more the Portugals, haue planted on the coast of Africa. For they serue very fitly either to conuert infidels vpon diuers occasions, or by getting an habite of their languages and customes, to make a more easie way to their conuersion. For those who are not sufficient to preach, serue for interpreters to the preachers. And thus God hath oftentimes bene well serued, and with excellent fruit and effect, by the indeuour of some soldiers. On the coast of Africa vpon the Mediterranean sea, the Spaniards haue Oran, Mersalchibir, Melilla, &c. and the Portugals, Tanger, and çeura: and without the streights of Gibraltar, Arzilla, and Mazagan; and in Ethiopia, Saint George de la mina. They haue also a settled habitation in the cite of Saint Saluador, the Metropolitan of the kingdome of Congo, and in Cumbiba, a countrie of Angola. Beyond the cape de Buena esperança, they hold the fortresses, and colonies of Sena, Cefala, and Mozambiche. Heere besides their secular clergie, is a conuent of Dominicans, who indeuour themselves to instruct the Portugals, and the Pagans also which there inhabite, and do traffike thither.

*Of the Islands of the Atlanticke Ocean, where the Spaniards and Portugals haue plantied religion.*

The Christian name is also augmented, and doth still increase in the Atlantick Ocean, by meanes of the colonies conducted thither, partly by the Spaniards and partly by the Portugals. The Spaniards vnderooke the enterprize of the Canaries, in the yeere of our Lord 1405. vsing therein the assistance of John Betancort, a French gentleman, who subdued Lançarota, & Fuerteuentura. They were taken againe certaine yeeres after, and were first subdued by force of armes, & afterwards by the establishment of religion: so that at this present, all the inhabitants are Christians. Also the Portugals haue assaied to inhabite certaine other islands of that Ocean, & especially Madera, which was discovered in the yeere 1420. This at the first was all ouer a thicke and mightie wood: but now it is one of the best

best manured islands that is knowne. There is in the same, the cite of Funcial, being the seate of a bishop. Puerto santo, which is fortie miles distant from Madera, was found out in the yeere 1428. and this also began presently to be inhabited. The isles of Arguin, being sixe or seauen, and all but little ones, came to the knowledge of the Portugals in the yeere 1443. Heere the king hath a fortress for the traffike of those countries. The islands of Cabo Verde were discovered in the yeere 1440. by Antonio di Nollia Geniway, or (as others affirme) in the yeere 1455. by Aloizius Cadamosto. These be nine in number: the principall of them is Sant Iago, being seuentie miles in length: where the Portugals haue a towne situate vpon a most pleasant riuer, called Ribera grande, which consisteth at the least of fife hundred families. The isle of Saint Thomas being somewhat greater then Madera, was the last island discovered by the Portugals, before they doubled the cape De buena Esperança. They haue heere a colonie called Pouaçon, with a bishop, who is also the bishop of Congo, and it containeth seuen hundred families. Vnder the government of Saint Thomas are the neighbour islands of Fernando Pó, and that del Principe, which are as it were boroughs belonging to the same. The island Loanda, though it be vnder the king of Congo, yet is a great part thereof inhabited by the Portugals. For heere is the famous port of \*Mazagan, whither the ships of Portugall and Brasile do resort. Heere the fleetes are harboured, and the soldiers refreshed, and heere they haue their hospitall. As also heere the Portugall priests (who indeuour the conuersion of the naturall inhabitants) haue a place of residence.

*Of the Negros.*



Of the Islands inhabited by the Portugals, especially those of Saint Thomas and Madera, besides the Portugals themselves, containe a great multitude of Negro-slaues, brought thither out of Congo and Angola, who till the earth, water the sugar-canes, and serue both in the cities, and in the countrie. These are for the most part gentiles, but they are daily conuerted rather through continual conuersation, then any other helpe that they haue; and it is a matter likelie, that in proesse of some few yceres, they will all become Christians. There is no greater hinderance to their conuersion, then the auarice of their masters, who, to hold them in the more subiection, are not willing that they should become Christians.

*Of those poore distressed European Christians in Africa, who are holden as slaues vnto the Turkes and Moors.*

Vt the best and most sincere christianity in all Africa, is that of those poore christians, who are fettered by the feet with chaines, being slaues to the Arabians & Turkes. For besides them that haue remained there euer

euere since the daies of Barbarossa and other Turkish captaines (which were brought into the mediterranean seas by the French) as also since the great losse at Gerbi, and the battell of Alcazar wherein *Don Sebastian* the king of Portugal was ouerthrowne: there passeth not a yeere, but the rousers and pirates of those parts, without graunting any league or respite to the Northren shore of the Meditterran sea, take great numbers of Christians from off the coasts of Spaine, Sardinia, Corsica, Sicilia, yea euen from the very mouth of Tyber. It is generallie thought, that the number of slaues, which are in Alger amount to eighteene thousand. In Tunis, Bona, and Biserta there are great multitudes: but many more in Fez, and Maroco; as likewise in Mequenez and Tarodant, and in diuers other cities of those kingdomes. The estate surely of these distressed people is most woorthie of compassion, not so much for the miserie wherein they lead their liues, as for the danger whereto their soules are subiect. They passe the day in continuall trauaile, and the greatest part of the night without repose or quiet, vnder insupportable burdens, and cruell stripes. Beasts among vs labour not more, nor are more slauiishly intreated. Yea, albeit vnder those brutish Barbarians, they endure all that toile, which beasts do heere with vs: yet are they neither so well fed, nor so carefully looked vnto, as our beasts commonly are. They weare out the whole day in the sunne, raine, and winde, in continuall labour, sometimes carrying burdens, sometimes digging or ploughing the fields, and otherwhiles in turning of hand-milles, feeding of beasts, or in performance of other labours: being bound to bring in so much euery day to their masters, and they themselues to liue of the rest, which many times is nothing at ail, or (if it were possible) lesse then nothing. They haue alwaies the chaine at their neckes and feete, being naked winter and sommer, and therefore are sometimes scorched with heate, and otherwhiles frozen with cold. They must not faile in any iotte of their duties, and yet though they do not, it can not be expressed with what cruelties they are tormented. They vse for the chastizing & torture of their bodies, chaines of iron, dried sinewes of oxen, but-hoops steeped in water, boiling oile, melted tallow, & scalding hot lard. The houses of those Barbarians resound againe, with the blowes that are giuen these miserable men, on the feete and bellie: and the prisons are filled with hideous lamentations and yellings. Their companions haire at this noise standes an end, and their very blood freezeth within them, by considering how neere themselues are to the like outrages. They passe the nights in prisons, or in some caues of the earth, being hampered and yoked together like brute beasts. Heere the vapor and dampe choaketh them, and the vnclannes and filth of their lodging consumeth them (as rust doth iron) euen aliue. But though the labours of their bodies be so grieuous, yet those of their minds are much more intolerable, for (besides that they want such as might feed them with the word of God, & with the sacramentes, and might teach them how to liue and die well, so as they remaine like plants without moisture) it can not be expressed, with what forcible temptations their faith

is continuallie assailed. For not onelie the desire to come forth of these vnspcakable miseries, doth tempt them; but the commodities and delights also wherein they see others to liue, that haue damnable renounced their Christianity. The persecutors of the primitiue church, to induce the Martyrs to denie Christ and to sacrifice to their idols, tried them first with tortments, and then with ease and delights, which they propounded vnto them, if they would become as themselues. For to those, who in the midst of winter were throwne into frozen lakes, there were contrariwise appointed soft and delicate beds, with a fier kindled hard by, and a thousand other restoratiues and comforts; to the end they might be double tempted, both by the rigor of the cold which benumbed them, and by the sweetnes of things comfortable and nourishing, which allured them. The Christian slaues are at this day no lesse tormented; for on the one side, they are afflicted with beggerie, nakednes, hunger, famine, blowes, reproches, and tortures, without any hope in a manner euere to come out thereof: and on the other side they see them that haue reneged our holy faith for Mahumets superstition, to liue in all worldly prosperitie and delight, to abound with wealth, to flourish in honour, to gouerne cities, to conduct armies, and to enioy most ample libertie. But amidst all these so great miseries, they haue a double comfort. The one is of priests, who together with themselues were taken captiue. These men somerimes administering the sacraments, & otherwhiles deliuering the word of God in the best manner that they can, are some helpe and assistance to others, being for this greatly reuerenced and respected amongst them. The other is of the religious in generall, who contend and labour for their freedome. Wherein Spaine deserueth most high commendation. For there be two most honorable orders, whose exercise it is, to moue and sollicite for the freedome of captiues. The one is called *La orden de la merced*, and it flourisheth most in Aragon; and the other (which is farre greater) is named *Del Resgate* or of raunsome or redemption, the which although it largely extendeth ouer all France, yet at this day aboue all other places, it is most rise in Castilia. From whence some of them haue gone into Sicilie, to the kingdome of Naples, and to Rome: and haue there begun to lay foundations of their conuents. These two religious orders gather euery yeere mightie summes of money, wherewith they make speedie redemption of the forsaide captiues. They send their Agents to Fez, and to Alger, who managing this affaire, with no lesse diligence, then loialtie, redeeme first all the religious, and priests, and after them those of the yoonger sort, first the king of Spaines subiects, and then others. They alwaies leaue one religious man in Alger, and another in Fez, who informe themselues of the state & qualitie of the slaues, with their necessitie, to make the better way for their libertie the yeere following. The king of Spaine (whom it most concerneth) furthereth this so charitable worke, with a bountifull and liberall hand. For ordinarily he giueth as much more, as the foresaid orders haue gathered and collected by way of almes.

For this is so good an enterprife, that by the ancient canons no other is so much fauoured and allowed of. Yea S. *Ambrose* and other holy men haue pawned, for the deliuerie of Christian captiues, the chalices and siluer vessels of their churches. And Saint *Paulinus* for the same end and purpose, solde his owne selfe. For all other actions of charitie are some spirituall, and others corporall, but this in a very eminent degree is both spirituall and corporall together. For among corporall miseries the seruitude of infidels is most grievous, & among spirituall calamities the danger of apostasie is of all others the greatest: but those slaues so redeemed, are set free both from the one and from the other. Whereupon there are very few borne in Spain, who dying, leaue not some almes behinde them, for the ransoming of slaues. The fathers of redemption haue gone also many times to Constantinople: where in the yeere 1583. by the order of Pope *Gregorie* the thirteenth, they redeemed fiue hundred persons. The brotherhood also of the Consalone in Rome, labour verie diligently in this point, who in *Sixtus Quintus* time, redeemed a great number of captiues. Of whom many also, vrged partly by the hardnes of seruitude, & partly by the sweetenes of libertie, free themselues, either by that which they gaine ouer & aboue their masters due, or by their good demeanour, or else by flight. And they flie awaie, sometimes by repairing speedily to such fortresses as the king of Spaine hath in Africke and in Barbarie: and otherwhiles they seaze on some shipping, or on the selfe same galleies wherein they are chained. Many also retire themselues to the Princes of Brisck, &c. who willingly receiue and arme them, vsing their assistance in the warre which they continually make with the Turkes of Alger.

F I N I S.